www.forgottenbooks.com

Copyright © 2016 FB &c Ltd.
All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including photocopying, recording, or other electronic or mechanical methods, without the prior written permission of the publisher, except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical reviews and certain other noncommercial uses permitted by copyright law.

PRINCIPLES AND PRACTICE

OF

HYDROTHERAPY

FOR

STUDENTS AND PRACTITIONERS

OF

MEDICINE

Embodying a Consideration of the
Scientific Basis, Technique and Therapeutics
of Hydrotherapy and some Allied Branches of
Physiologic Therapy

BY

GEORGE KNAPP ABBOTT, A. B., M. D.

Dean of Faculty and
Professor of Physiologic Therapy and Practice of Medicine
in The College of Medical Evangelists
Superintendent of The Loma Linda Hospital

SECOND EDITION, REVISED AND ENLARGED

WITH 128 ILLUSTRATIONS

THE COLLEGE PRESS

LOMA LINDA, CAL.

Copyright, 1914, by G. K. Abbott
Loma Linda, California

PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION

THE kindly reception given the first edition of HYDROTHERAPY, in spite of its many faults, and the requests for a text thoroughly illustrated, have induced the author and publishers to prepare this revised and enlarged edition. The writer more than ever realizes the impossibility of making any text-book a complete treatise, and especially so in therapeutics, the science and art of which are advancing so rapidly.

Much new matter has been added, among which are: A chapter on *Insanity and Drug Addictions*, for which the author desires to thank Dr. Jessie H. Simpson of the Southern California State Hospital for the Insane; a section on *Prescription Writing and Treatment Combinations;* and one on *Hydrotherapeutic Apparatus and Treatment Rooms*. For conducting an original research into the effects of tonic hydrotherapy upon the metabolism of individuals on a low proteid diet, the author is indebted to his colleague, Dr. E. H. Risley.

Many of the new illustrations have been prepared in the Laboratory of Physiologic Therapy of The College of Medical Evangelists and in The Loma Linda Hospital. For aid in this work the author desires to acknowledge the helpful assistance of medical students, nurses and others, and especially medical students, Wm. Richli and L. D. Trott, in the preparation of drawings and charts. For diagrams and illustrations copied from medical literature we have endeavored to give full credit. For cuts furnished thanks are due to Dr. H. P. Coile, the Hoffmann & Billings Manufacturing Company, James B. Clow & Sons, the Boston Surgical Supply Company, and Mr. A. Campbell.

Last, but not least, thanks are due to The College Press for its endeavor to fulfill the wishes of the author in the preparation of a presentable text.

Loma Linda, California

G. K. A.

PREFACE

NO apology need be given for the presentation of a work on hydrotherapy. In spite of the advances made in modern physiologic therapy in general, hydrotherapy is still a branch of therapeutics but little used by the general practitioner. The reason is not difficult to find. As a science, it receives but scant attention from teachers of therapeutics, and in the medical curriculum is usually allotted a few hours from the combined course on materia medica and therapeutics, which is already overcrowded by the presentation of a needlessly large number of preparations of doubtful or very limited usefulness. As an art, even less time is devoted to it. It must, however, be acknowledged that this brief consideration is a distinct advance over twenty years ago, when the medical curriculum was quite innocent of even a mention of physiologic therapy.

It is the author's firm belief, strengthened by years of experience in the teaching of both medical students and nurses, that the student or practitioner should first acquire a knowledge of the technique of hydrotherapy in the same way that nurses are taught, *i. e.*, by actual drill under an experienced instructor. Insistance upon accurate, personal observation of patients during their treatment will help to strengthen in the mind of the student the necessity for close clinical observation. In the management of disease, such observation can not be replaced by instruments of precision. In this connection we can not refrain from expressing our opinion that instruction in practical therapeutics and the care of patients should not be left to the later years of the medical curriculum.

With this practical knowledge of the visible results to be obtained, the student should devote careful study to the physiologic and therapeutic effects of each representative class of treatments. This study should include personal laboratory investigation into the effects of thermic and mechanical stimuli upon blood pressure, the heart rate and force, general changes in blood distribution and its cellular composition, muscular

capacity, and metabolic changes as revealed by chemical examination of the excretions, particularly the urine.

In the presentation of the subject, the author has tried to preserve the closest connection between experimental physiology and therapeutic deductions and recommendations. We have at all times endeavored to seek out a reason for the results obtained in practice. It is only in this way that varying conditions can be successfully met.

The modern search for "specifics" has greatly aided in the development of scientific medicine. The same principles, however, must not, without modification, be applied to hydrotherapy. *Specific results* are to be sought by proper adaptation of the treatment to the individual case in hand, rather than by rigid adherence to this or that type of application. For this reason physiologic effects have been dwelt upon quite at length and have been considered apart from the technique.

The subject of therapeutics has been presented with a view to the elucidation of basic principles. It is the morbid physiologic or structural state present in a given disease that requires treatment rather than the "disease" as an entity. Diseases most amenable to hydrotherapy have, therefore, been grouped in classes according to the general principles involved in the treatment, after an explanation of which, each disease is given particular attention.

While hydrotherapy is the most important branch of physiologic therapy, it is not by any means a "cure all." The borderline between physiologic and radical therapeutics can not be drawn by disease lists but must be settled by rational, conscientious consideration of the ends to be sought and the trend of the morbid condition in hand.

In presentation of this work, the author lays no claims to originality. In addition to personal experience, all available sources of information have been drawn upon. The text matter and diagrams are those used by the author in his lectures to medical students. The part on technique is an amplification of a brief treatise on the "Technique of Hydrotherapy" published by the author in 1908.

Loma Linda, Cal.

G. K. A.

CONTENTS

PART I

SCIENTIFIC BASIS AND PHYSIOLOGIC EFFECTS

CHAPTER I

THE PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF WATER

Communication and Absorption of Heat. Physics of Heat. Calories. Specific Heat. Latent Heat. Thermic Stimuli. Mechanical Stimuli. Solvent and Chemical Properties. Use of Water in all Three States. 17—25

CHAPTER II

PRINCIPLES OF EFFECTS AND THERAPY

Therapy from Within. Warm- and Cold-blooded Animals. Intrinsic Effects. Reaction. Types and Degrees of Reaction. Conditions Influencing Reaction. Common Names of Temperatures. 26—38

CHAPTER III

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY OF THE SKIN

Muscular and Elastic Tissue. Blood Vessels. Lymphatics. 39—44

CHAPTER IV

THE PERIPHERAL HEART

Traube-Hering Waves. Principles of Vascular Effects. Quantity of Circulating Fluid. 45—53

CHAPTER V

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY OF THE SKIN (CONTINUED)

Sudoriparous Glands. Summary of Perspiratory Influences. Sebaceous Glands. Absorption by the Skin. Cutaneous Respiration. The Skin a Heat Regulator. Nerves of the Skin. 54—61

CHAPTER VI

THE CIRCULATION—REFLEX EFFECTS

Reflex Areas. Reflex Arc. Special Reflex Areas. Classes of Reflex Effects. Special Reflex Effects. 62—77

CONTENTS

CHAPTER VII

THE CIRCULATION—HYDROSTATIC EFFECTS

Principles of Hydrostasis. Law of Antagonism. Arte[illegible] derivation. 78—85

CHAPTER VIII

THE CIRCULATION—BALANCE BETWEEN REFLEX AND HYDROSTATIC EFFECTS

Laws of Balance. Examples. Double Effects. 86—88

CHAPTER IX

THE CIRCULATION—BLOOD PRESSURE

Force of Heart Beat. Amount of Circulating Fluid. Vascular Calibre and Action. Müller's Laws. 89—99

CHAPTER X

THE CIRCULATION—CHANGES IN COMPOSITION OF THE BLOOD

Corpuscular Elements. Mechanism of Distribution. Viscosity. Reaction. Practical Application. 100—110

CHAPTER XI

NITROGENOUS METABOLISM AND EXCRETION

Effects of Cold. Nitrogen Economy. Urea and Ammonia. Uric Acid and Purin Bases. Extractives. Phosphoric Acid. Sulphates and Chlorides. Effects of Heat. Effects on Diet. Proteid Diet. 111—124

CHAPTER XII

RESPIRATION, RESPIRATORY CHANGES AND CARBONACEOUS METABOLISM

Respiratory Effects. Gaseous Interchange. Carbon Dioxide. Oxygen. 125—129

CHAPTER XIII

MUSCULAR CAPACITY

Effects of Cold. Effects of Heat. Ergograph and Dynamometer Experiments. Fatigue Poisons. Therapeutic Applications. 130—138

CHAPTER XIV

THE HEAT MECHANISM

Regulation of Heat Production. Regulation of Heat Loss. Experiments in Heat Production and Elimination. Summary. 139—154

CONTENTS

PART II

THERAPEUTICS

CHAPTER XV

THE REALM AND LIMITATIONS OF PHYSIOLOGIC THERAPY

Functional and Organic Diseases. Natural Means. Radical Means. Basic Principles of Therapy. 155—159

CHAPTER XVI

FEVERS AND ANTIPYRETIC EFFECTS

Causes and Symptoms of Fever. Principles of Treatment. Rationale of Hydrotherapy in Infectious Fevers. Toxic Vasomotor Paralysis. Medicinal Antipyretics. Antipyretic Effects of Thermic Applications. The Heat Mechanism in Fever. Variations that Produce Fever and Their Relation to Treatment. 160—178

CHAPTER XVII

THE TREATMENT OF FEVERS

Typhoid Fever. Malaria. Measles. Scarlet Fever. Influenza. 179—211

CHAPTER XVIII

INFLAMMATIONS AND ANTIPHLOGISTIC EFFECTS

Depletion. . Fluxion. Revulsion. Pathogenesis of Inflammation. Principles of Treatment. 212—224

CHAPTER XIX

THE TREATMENT OF INFAMMATIONS

Inflammations of the Eye. Erysipelas. Otitis Media. Mastoiditis. Alveolar Abscess. Pharyngitis. Tonsillitis. Boils. Septicemia. Poison Ivy. Pneumonia. Bronchopneumonia. Pleurisy. Pericarditis. Myocarditis. Rheumatic Fever. Infectious Arthritides. Meningitis. Biliary Inflammations. Appendicitis. Pelvic Inflammations. Phlebitis. Mucous Colitis. Cystitis. Specific Urethritis. 225—259

CHAPTER XX

STIMULANTS AND TONICS

Hydriatic Tonics. Anemia. Neurasthenia. Splanchnic Neurasthenia. Hysteria. Dyspepsia. Pulmonary Tubercu-

losis. Insomnia. Chronic Inebriety. Chronic Ap... Rheumatism. Diabetes. Sunstroke. Valvular Heart... ease. Obesity with Fatty Heart. Excitant and Stim... Effects. Uterine, Vesical and Intestinal Stimulants. 260

CHAPTER XXI

SEDATIVE EFFECTS

General Sedatives. Pure Sedatives. Tonic Sedatives. cal Sedatives. Insomnia. Chorea. Paralysis Agitans. tic Spinal Paralyses. Locomotor Ataxia. Parenchym... Goitre. The Relief of Pain. Ulcer. Hemorrhoids. ... ralgia. Tenesmus. Dysmenorrhœa. Renal and Biliary ... Burns. Sprains and Bruises. Fractures. Headache. 300

CHAPTER XXII

EXPECTORANT EFFECTS

Colds. Acute Coryza. Acute Bronchitis. Croup. Ast... Chronic Bronchitis. 331—336

CHAPTER XXIII

DIAPHORETIC AND DIURETIC EFFECTS

Diaphoretic Effects. Diuretic Effects. 337—340

CHAPTER XXIV

SYSTEMIC AND METABOLIC DISEASES

Obesity. Icterus. Systemic Poisoning. Internal Congest... tions. Gout and Gouty Rheumatism. Bright's Disease... Uremia and Eclampsia. 341—362

CHAPTER XXV

PEPTOGENIC EFFECTS

Atonic Dyspepsia. Gastrectasia. Hypochlorhydria. Hyper-chlorhydria. 363—369

CHAPTER XXVI

HEMOSTATIC EFFECTS

Epistaxis. Pulmonary Hemorrhage. Gastric Hemorrhage. Uterine Hemorrhage. Apoplexy. 370—372

CHAPTER XXVII

HYDROTHERAPY IN SURGERY

Preparatory Treatment. Immediate Care. Surgical Shock.

Vasomotor and Cardiac Changes. Hydriatic Treatment of Shock. Drug Treatment of Shock. After Treatment. 373—393

CHAPTER XXVIII

INSANITY AND DRUG ADDICTIONS

Mania. Depressed Cases. Morphinism. Alcoholism. 394—396

PART III

TECHNIQUE OF HYDROTHERAPY

CLASSIFICATION OF PROCEDURES AND GLOSSARY OF TERMS

Basis of Classification. Definitions. 397—400

LOCAL APPLICATIONS OF HEAT

Fomentations. Hot Compress. Stupes. Alternate and Simultaneous Hot and Cold Treatments. Hot-Water Bottles. Hot Water Coil. Radiant Heat. 401—409

LOCAL APPLICATIONS OF COLD

Cold Compress. Ice Pack. Ice Cravat. Ice Bag. Cold Water Coil. 409—412

HEATING COMPRESSES

Moist Chest Pack. Dry Chest Pack. Moist Abdominal Bandage. Heating Throat Compress. Heating Joint Compress. Medicated Compresses. 412—417

POULTICES

White Clay and Glycerine. Charcoal. 417—418

TONIC FRICTIONS

Cold Mitten Friction. Wet Hand Rub. Cold Towel Rub. Wet Sheet Rub. Dripping Sheet Rub. Ice Rub. Salt Glow. 418—423

SPONGING

Hot, Cold and Tepid Sponge. Saline Sponge. Alkaline Sponge. Vinegar and Salt Rub. Alcohol Rub. Witchhazel Rub. Menthol Rub. Soap Wash. 423—425

RUBS AND FRICTIONS

Centripetal Friction. Oil Rub. Talcum Rub. Dry Friction. 425—430

BATHS

Partial Immersion. Hand and Arm Bath. Foot Bath. Immersion Bath. Graduated Bath. Hot, Cold and Neutral Tub Baths. Brand Bath. Cold Shallow Bath. Hydro-Electric Baths. Medicated Baths. Nauheim Bath. Oxygen Bath. Russian Bath. Saline Bath. Turkish Bath. Superheated Air Bath. Electric Light Bath. 430—452

SHAMPOOS

Swedish Shampoo. Tub Shampoo. Turkish Shampoo. 454.

PACKS

Full Hot Blanket Pack. Dry Blanket Pack. Trunk Pack. Pelvic Pack. Hip and Leg Pack. Hot Packs with Ice Bag. Electro-thermal Pack. Evaporating, Neutral, Heating Pack. Sweating Wet Sheet Packs. Heating Trunk Pack. Hot Heating Trunk Pack. Heating Pelvic Pack. 454—467

SPRAYS AND DOUCHES

Shower Bath. Spray Bath. Revulsive, Alternate, Percussion and Spray Douches. Spray and Douche Prescriptions. Affusions. Pail Pour. 467—476

ENEMATA

Hot, Cold and Graduated Enemata. Cold and Alternate Rectal Irrigation. Coloclyster. Saline Enema. Proctoclysis. Soapsuds, Oil, Asafœtida, Glycerine and Epsom Salts, Starch, Astringent, Quassia, Quinin Enemata. 476—486

VAGINAL IRRIGATION

Hot, and Alternate Hot and Cold Vaginal Irrigation. Disinfectant and Styptic Vaginal Irrigation. 486—489

PRESCRIPTION WRITING AND TREATMENT COMBINATIONS

General Rules, Illustrations and Prescriptions. 490—494

HYDROTHERAPEUTIC APPARATUS AND TREATMENT ROOMS

General Treatment Rooms. Fomentation Tank. Steam Boxes. Leg Tubs. Foot Tubs. Bath Tubs. Sitz Tubs. Electric Light Cabinets. Russian and Turkish Bath Rooms. Dryer. Enema and Douche Outfit. Spray and Douche Controller. Douches. 495—510

ILLUSTRATIONS

PLATES

PLATE		OPP PAGE
	Frontisplate, Reflex arc from skin to heart	
I	Diagrammatic section of skin	40
II	Visceral sympathetic nerves	62
III	The innervation of the heart	68
IV	The effect of baths on blood pressure	98
V	Portable tub on wheels	182
VI	Portable tub with raising device	182
VII	The Coile bed bath	186
VIII	Continuous cooling in typhoid fever	186
IX	Sudorific treatment in influenza	210
X	Depletion by simultaneous heat and cold	212
XI	Hot and cold immersion for infected hand	232
XII	Fomentations to chest for pleurisy	246
XIII	Ice pack to knee in acute arthritis	250
XIV	Fomentations to knee in chronic arthritis	250
XV	Local superheated air bath, preparing	348
XVI	Local superheated air bath, using	348
XVII	Hot air bath in bed	356
XVIII	The Winternitz pack with hot water coil	366
XIX	The Winternitz pack with hot-water bottle	366
XX	The continuous flowing bath	396
XXI	The sedative wet sheet pack	396
XXII	Wringing a fomentation by hand	402
XXIII	A fomentation tank with wringers	402
XXIV	Steam boxes for heating fomentations, closed	404
XXV	Steam boxes for heating fomentations, in use	404
XXVI	Hot-water bottles	408
XXVII	Ice bags	408
XXVIII	Square chest pack, roller chest pack, and moist abdominal bandage	412
XXIX	The roller chest pack, applying	414
XXX	The roller chest pack, finished	414

XXXI The square chest pack, applying
XXXII The square chest pack, finished
XXXIII The moist abdominal bandage
XXXIV The cold towel rub
XXXV The cold mitten friction
XXXVI The wet sheet rub, applying the sheet
XXXVII The wet sheet rub, rubbing the patient
XXXVIII The sitz bath
XXXIX The hot half bath
XL The Russian bath room, in use
XLI The Russian bath room, open, showing shower
XLII The Turkish bath cabinets
XLIII Superheated air bath, ready for use
XLIV Superheated air bath, patient in Turkish toweling suit
XLV Superheated air bath, in use
XLVI Electric light bath cabinet, upright form
XLVII Electric light bath cabinet, horizontal form
XLVIII The hot blanket pack
XLIX The evaporating wet sheet pack
L The author's hydrotherapy control table
LI A seepage apparatus
LII Continuous proctoclysis
LIII Adjustable standard for enema and douche cans
LIV Enema cans arranged for alternate hot and cold rectal irrigation
LV Rectal and vaginal tubes

TEXT FIGURES

FIGURE PAGE
1 Expansion of water at different temperatures 18
2 Comparative thermometer scales 19
3 Chart of wave energies 26
4 Diagram illustrating time factor in intrinsic and reactionary effects 32
5 Origin of lymphatic vessels in a papilla of the hand (Sappey) 42
6 Superficial lymphatics of the arm (Sappey) 43
7 Valves of mesenteric chyliferous vessels (Delamere) 43

8 Blood pressure tracing, showing Traube-Hering curves taken from a dog under artificial respiration 46

9 Blood pressure tracing, showing Traube-Hering curves taken from a dog after cessation of respiration 46

10 Rhythmical vasomotor waves of blood pressure in a dog 47

11 Tone waves in heart muscle 48

12 Periodic fluctuations in blood pressure tracing taken from man at rest 49

13 Diagram of glomerulus and uriniferous tubule 55

14 Diagram of coil gland of skin and vascular network 55

15 Diagram to show vasomotor reflex arc (Howell) 66

16 Anterior reflex areas (Kellogg) 70

17 Sphygmograph tracing showing effect of proximal application on pulse wave (Kellogg) 74

18 Plethysmographic tracing showing effect of proximal application on volume curve (Kellogg) 74

19 Diagram showing congestion of lungs 75

20 Diagram showing reflex action of ice bag on congested lung 75

21 Volume curve of right arm during a hot sitz bath, showing derivative effect (Winternitz) 80

22 Volume curve of right arm during cold sitz bath, showing retrostatic effect (Winternitz) 81

23 Curve showing effect of a sudden rise in the arterial resistance on the output and volume of the ventricles (Starling) 90

24 Cardiometer tracing showing effect of increasing the volume of circulating fluid on the total output and volume of the heart (Roy) 91

25 Faught's sphygmomanometer 96

26 Riva-Rocci sphygmomanometer 97

27 Gärtner's tonometer 98

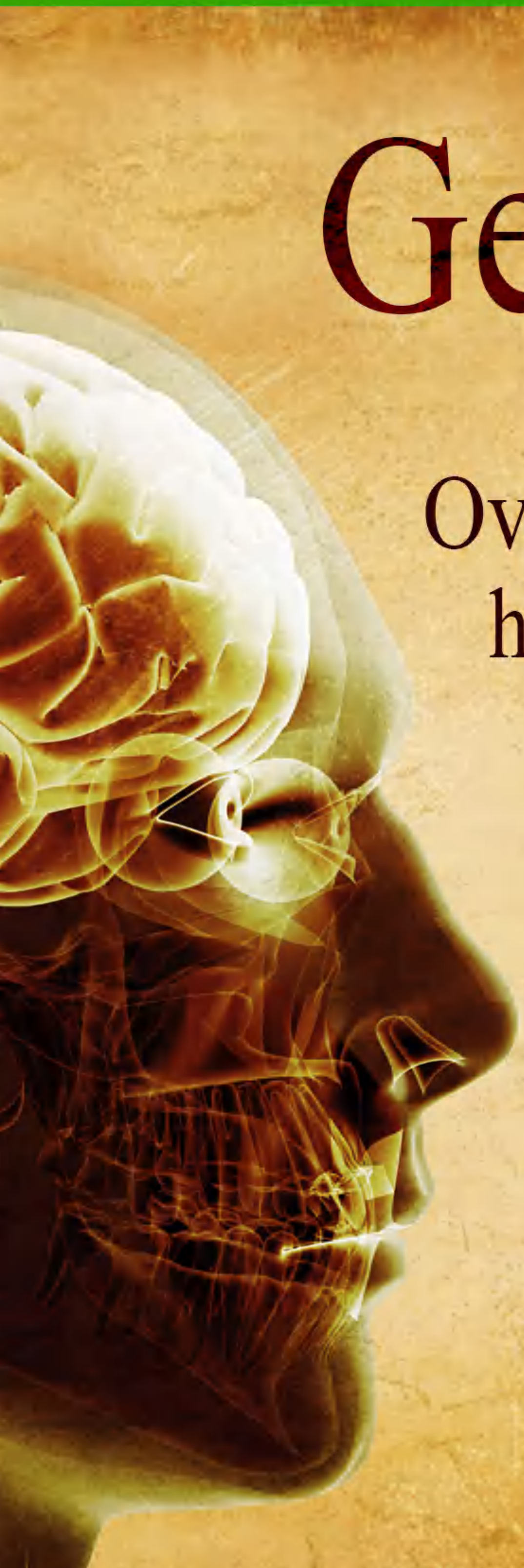
28 Chart showing effect of cold on blood count and hemoglobin 101

29 Plethysmographic tracing of spleen, showing the spontaneous rhythmical contractions of this organ (Howell) 104

30 Chart showing effect of thermic procedures on alkalinity of blood 106

31 Chart showing effect of thermic procedures on ac... of urine
32 Curve showing effect of cold treatment on fecal ... urinary nitrogen (Strasser)
33 Curve showing effect of cold treatment on urea, pho... phates and ammonia (Strasser)
34 Curve showing effect of cold treatment on the oxida... tion of purins (Strasser)
35 Curve showing effect of cold treatment on the alka... line and earthy phosphates (Strasser)
36 Mosso's ergograph
37 Ergograms showing effect of cold bath on muscular capacity
38 Ergograms showing effect of graduated bath on muscular capacity
39 Ergograms showing effect of graduated bath on fatigue
40 Ergograms showing effect of cold wet sheet rub on fatigue
41 Ergograms showing effect of warm bath and warm douche on fatigue
42 Tracings showing effect of caffeine on voluntary muscle (Wood)
43 Rubner's chart showing manner of heat loss at different temperatures
44 Diagram illustrating heat regulating mechanism (Wood)
45 Reichert's water calorimeter
46 Chart showing effect of physical measures on heat elimination (Winternitz)
47 Diagram showing quantitative relation between temperature-raising and temperature-lowering capacity of different treatments
48 Burr portable bath
49 Maragliano's chart of temperature and peripheral vasoconstriction in malaria
50 Capillaries as affected by irritant and inflammation (Brunton)
51 Apparatus for treating inflammations of eye
52 The window tent for the fresh air treatment of fevers
53 The perineal douche

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

PART 1

SCIENTIFIC BASIS AND PHYSIOLOGIC EFFECTS

CHAPTER I

THE PHYSICAL PROPERTIES OF WATER

IN the application of any therapeutic agent, it is essential to obtain an understanding of those properties of the agent itself, of which particular use is made in the treatment of disease. In the case of water, these essential properties may be discussed under the following heads:—

1. Its ability to communicate and absorb large quantities of heat by contact.

(*a*) *Specific heat.* (*b*) *Latent heat.*

2. Its great temperature-conducting capacity—thermic stimulation.

3. The perfect fluidity of water—its use in mechanical stimulation.

4. Its solvent properties and use in nutritive and metabolic changes.

5. Existence of water in the three states of matter within a short range of temperature—practicability of applying it to the body in all these three states.

1. The Communication and Absorption of Heat. Hydrotherapy consists chiefly in the application of heat and cold to the body by means of water. Its most helpful results are obtained from the heat applied. In its most scientific and practical phases it is a study of thermotherapy. This being true, in the power of water to communicate and absorb large quantities of heat, without itself undergoing a corresponding change in temperature, lies its most useful property. To rightly apply so powerful an agent, one should understand the physics of heat as it applies to water. A brief summary of this subject will not, therefore, be out of place.

PHYSICS OF HEAT

When heated, the particles of any substance separate s
thus moving more freely upon each other when hot tha
cold. Solids are thus made softer, more porous, and p
With some solids this is so marked that they may be m
into various shapes even before hot enough to become h
The body tissues are likewise made soft and pliable throu
influence of heat. The skin is expanded, the muscles rel
and the blood-vessels dilated.

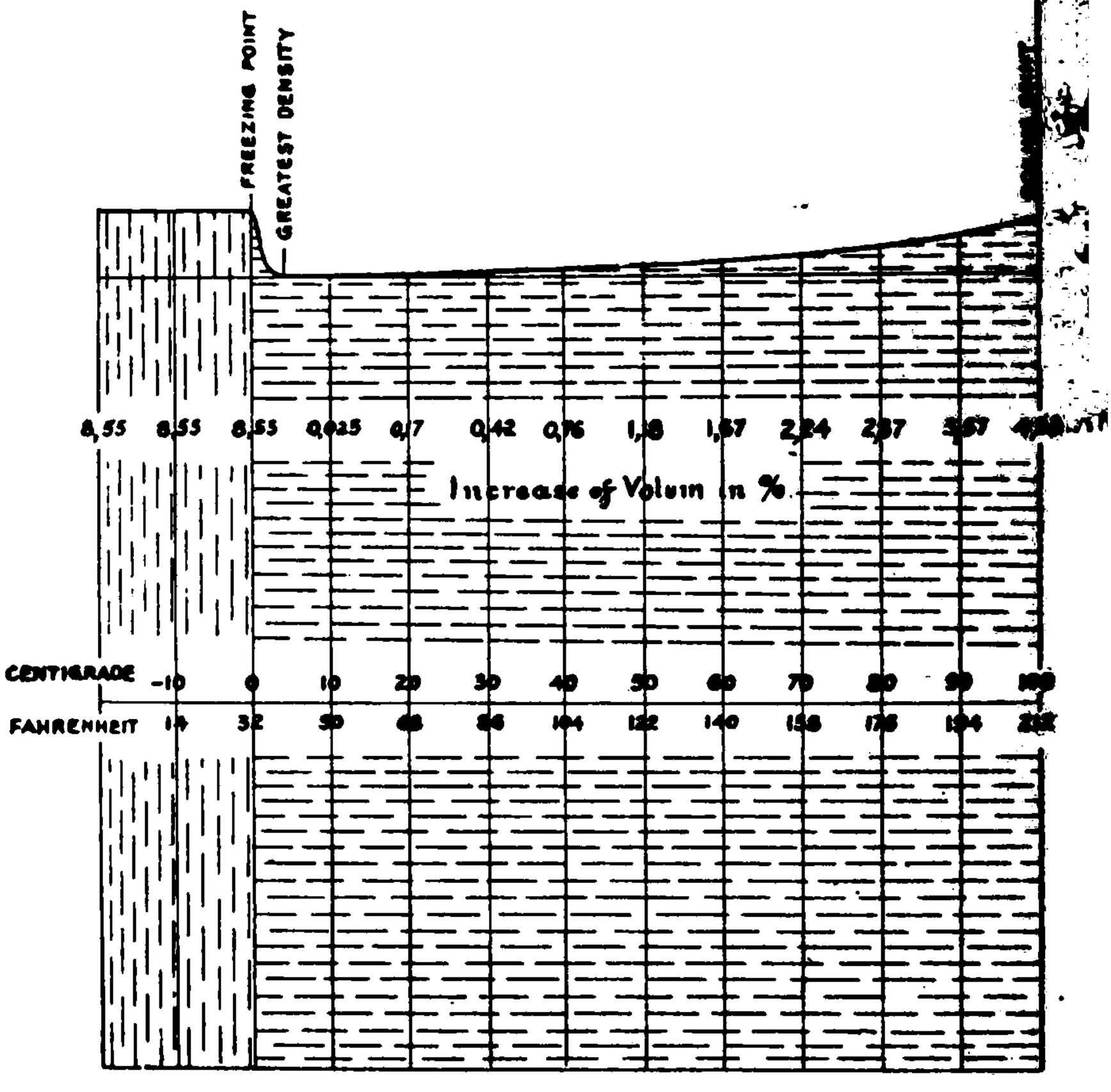


Fig 1. Expansion of water at temperatures from 0° C. to 100° C.

In general, heat expands all substances, some, however, to
greater degree than others. Each metal, for example, shows
definite degree of increase in bulk when heated. Water e
pands, occupying more space as its temperature increases abov
4° C. (39.2° F.). Nearly all substances continue to contract
indefinitely under the influence of cold; *i. e.*, the withdrawal o

heat. But water, after cooling to 4° C., expands until frozen. Four degrees C., or 39.2° F., is, therefore, said to be the point of maximum density of water. (*Fig. 1.*) At this temperature a given weight of water occupies (is crowded into) the least possible space. It is because of this change (expansion) in freezing that ice floats. If water continued to contract on freezing, it then being denser, would sink to the bottom, and so remain frozen for a much longer time, as solar heat loses its effect in penetrating so far. Did this occur, only very shallow bodies of water would ever entirely thaw out at temperatures common to temperate and frigid zones.

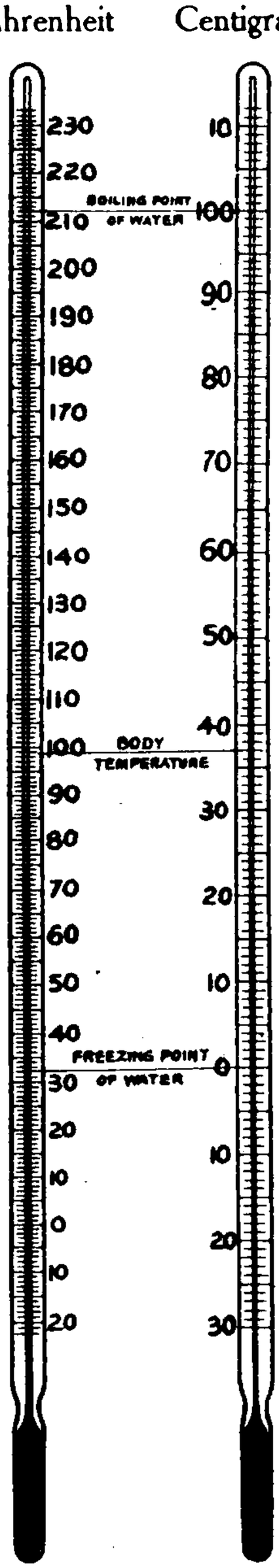


Fig. 2. Comparative thermometer scales.

Degrees or the Intensity of Heat. The *intensity* or degree of heat is measured by a thermometer, (thermo—heat, meter—measure). Only the Fahrenheit and Centigrade scales need be described. The Fahrenheit thermometer, more commonly used for domestic and clinical purposes will be described first. The *freezing point* of water is marked as 32° F., that is, 32° above the zero or starting point of this scale. Water boils at 212° F., *i. e.*, 180° F. above freezing.

The Centigrade thermometer is a more simple instrument, as the freezing point of water is marked 0°, while the boiling point is marked 100°. From this we see that 32° Fahrenheit corresponds to 0° C., and 212° F. corresponds to 100° C., and, therefore, 180 Fahrenheit degrees (212 minus 32) are the equivalent of 100 Centigrade degrees, or 1.8° F. equal 1° C. (*Fig. 2.*).

Equivalent Readings. To change a given reading on the tigrade scale to Fahrenheit, it is necessary first to multi 9-5 (180-100). This gives the number of Fahrenheit d above the freezing point. Since this point on the Fahr scale is 32° above zero, 32 should be added to the re obtain the correct Fahrenheit reading. For example, fi Fahrenheit reading which corresponds to 35° C. Mult 35° by 9-5 gives 63° above freezing; adding 32° gives 95

To obtain the correct Centigrade reading of a given F heit temperature, it is only necessary to reverse the pr Take, for example, 98.6° F., the normal body temperature mouth. This is 66.6° (98.6 minus 32) above freezing; multiplied by 5-9 equals 37° C. Since 0° C. is the freez point, this is the correct Centigrade reading.

Condensed Rules:—

To change Centigrade to Fahrenheit, multiply by 9-5 add 32.

To change Fahrenheit to Centigrade, subtract 32 and mul ply by 5-9.

Heat Units or Quantity of Heat. (a) SPECIFIC HEAT. T *amount* of heat required to raise a gram of water 1° C. is call a heat unit, or *calorie.* The large Calorie (written with initial capital) is the amount of heat necessary to raise 100 grams (1 liter) of water 1° C., and is, therefore, equal to 100 small calories.

The amount of heat that would raise the temperature of a given weight of water 1° C. would raise the temperature of the same weight of mercury 30° C. Therefore, one gram of mercury in being heated through 1° C. would absorb only 1-30 of a calorie, *i. e.*, 1-30 of the amount of heat absorbed by the same weight of water in being heated through 1° C. From this fact it will be seen that water absorbs a large amount of heat without manifesting a corresponding change in temperature; while a small amount of heat produces a considerable change in the temperature of mercury.

The heat necessary to raise a given weight of water 1° is greater than that of any other substance. Therefore, water is said to have a high specific heat. *Specific heat is the capacity of*

a substance for absorbing heat as compared with the capacity of a standard substance. More accurately, it is the amount of heat a given weight of a substance absorbs in being raised in temperature 1° C. as compared with the amount of heat necessary to accomplish the same rise in temperature in the same weight of a standard substance. Since water absorbs more heat than any other substance, it is taken as the standard. A gram of mercury, absorbing only 1-30 the amount of heat absorbed by 1 gram of water, is said to have a specific heat of 1-30 that of water. Copper has a specific heat of 1-12 that of water.

It will be seen from the preceding discussion, that a large amount of heat is stored in hot water. It is this high specific heat of water that makes it especially valuable in applying heat to the body. A pound of hot water will communicate thirty times as much heat to the body as a pound of mercury. And conversely, a pound of cold water will abstract from the body thirty times as much heat as a pound of mercury. In each case the temperature of the water or the mercury will be changed only 1°. The hot water not only stores up a great amount of heat, but it communicates this very readily to things with which it comes in contact. Conversely, cold water very readily absorbs heat by contact with other bodies. Hence, if applied to the human body, it quickly cools the skin, adjacent tissues, and their blood current.

(b) LATENT HEAT. A thermometer placed on ice as it is melting and another placed in the water just after, register exactly the same degree or intensity of heat, *viz.*, 0° C. Since it requires heat to melt ice, a mere change in physical state, we may very naturally ask, What becomes of this heat when the solid changes to a liquid? It is not apparent nor manifest by a change in the thermometer. We may call it *hidden* or *latent* heat. By careful experimentation, it is found that an astonishingly large quantity of heat is absorbed in this process; in the melting of one gram of ice, sufficient, in fact, to raise the temperature of one gram of water 79.2° C. This gram of ice in melting, therefore, absorbs 79.2 calories, with no consequent rise in the temperature, as measured in degrees. This amount of heat is made latent. The latent heat of fusion, or melting of

ice, is thus fixed at 79.2 calories. This is the reason
the body so much more rapidly than cold water, ever
ice that melts abstracting nearly eighty times as muc
the same weight of water warmed through 1° C. The
the ice rub is thus amply demonstrated. For the sam
an ice bag produces a greater intensity of effect than
compress.

The same principle applies to the boiling of water or t
densing of steam, except that a much greater number o
units is respectively made latent or given off. Water
boiling point registers the same degree of heat as steam
after it is formed; and yet this change from liquid to gas re
537 calories to each gram of water. The latent heat of v
zation of water is, therefore, 537 calories.

When steam condenses it gives off this heat. In this
nomenon lies the explanation of the fact that a Russian
gives a great intensity of effect, since much of the steam
denses, the water particles remaining suspended in the
the room as a thick fog. For every gram of steam that
condenses, 537 calories of heat are liberated. The intens
burns produced by the condensing of steam directly on the
surface is readily understood when this fact is kept in m
The marked cooling effects of the evaporating wet sheet p
or hot and cold sponging, are due to the large amounts of h
abstracted from the body by the process of evaporation.

With all these facts before one, it is apparent that the g
value of water as a thermic agent lies in its exceedingly hi
specific and latent heat coefficients.

Specific heat refers to the amount of heat concerned in t
temperature changes of matter *within a single state.*

Latent heat refers to the amount of heat concerned in t
change of matter *from one state to another without any change i*
temperature.

2. Temperature-Conducting Capacity of Water—Thermic Stimuli. It might, on first thought, seem that a thermic stim
ulus is identical with the communicating of heat. It, however,
does not depend upon the amount of heat communicated to
or absorbed from the body, but rather upon the impression

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

mitten friction. In this case it is the bare hand or rough ten that is the chief source of friction. The Brand or cold bing bath is another example of this combination of mech and thermic stimuli, each enhancing each. It must not b posed, however, that the marked effect of this form of b due merely to a *combination* of the *thermic* and *mech* stimuli. It is necessary that water be used. Apropos o question, we quote the following from Baruch: "We w again insist upon the fact that neither in typhoid nor in c inadequacy, can these effects, or anything like them, be duced by cold alone (for that has been thoroughly tried in cases), by the temporary application of water alone, of w ever temperature, or by either dry saline or gaseous or m anical irritants. It is absolutely necessary that, not m cold, but *cold water* should be used, that the surface shou literally rubbed with this for a considerable length of tim

The same may be said of the cold mitten friction. The as ishing results of this procedure can be obtained, neither by application of cold alone nor by friction with the dry mitt is only by vigorous rubbing with the mitt, dipped in cold wa that the maximum effects are produced.

4. Solvent and Chemical Properties. That these proper are of less importance than the preceding will be granted those familiar with hydriatic measures. The solvent proper of water are utilized in the shampoo, enema, etc. Its value a solvent in the processes of osmosis and dialysis are likew made use of in hypodermoclysis and saline enemata. As means of combining thermic and chemical stimuli, it is used a a solvent in the Nauheim or effervescent bath, saline baths, etc.

Internal Hydrotherapy. Going a little further from the physi cal into the chemical activities, and almost outside of the range of hydrotherapy, unless it be in water-drinking, we may consider water in its relation to the nutritive and metabolic pro cesses of the human body. It is the medium of all commerce and exchange in the carrying of nutrition to the tissues, and wastes from them to the excretory organs. It constitutes 75 per cent of the body weight. Without it life would be impos-

2 Baruch—Principles and Practice of Hydrotherapy, p. 12.

sible. Not only is it concerned in the mere physical interchange of nutrient and waste substances, but it is actually necessary in by far the greater number of all chemical changes which these substances undergo. Many body wastes are but sparingly soluble, and for this reason require large amounts of water to hold them in solution. The flushing of the system consequent on free water-drinking is, therefore, one of the greatest of all aids to elimination.[3]

The popular belief that particular virtue resides in the mineral constituents of water used for hydrotherapeutic purposes is almost wholly erroneous. This is rarely the case and is confined to a very few procedures such as the Nauheim bath above mentioned. The treatment of rheumatism and obesity at various hot springs derives but little advantage from minerals present in the water (unless it be that "faith" in these induces the patient to drink more water than usual). The results are due to the thermic effects of the hot water, combined with regulation of diet and copious water-drinking. Balneology—the use of mineral waters in the treatment of disease, therefore, adds little or nothing to the science of hydrotherapy.

5. Use of Water in Solid, Liquid, and Gaseous States. No other substance, capable of such diversified utility as water, exists in all the three states of matter in such a short range of temperature. The change from the solid through the liquid to the gaseous state is accomplished in a range of 180° F. (100° C.). Not only is this true, but it also changes readily from one form to another. It is possible to apply water to the body in any of these forms; even the application of the two extreme forms—ice and steam—is of practical utility. The ice bag is an indispensable adjunct to a great variety of treatments. The ice rub has also been mentioned. The use of Russian and similar vapor baths is well known. The steam douche has also acquired some degree of reputation as a therapeutic agent in certain conditions. This practicability of employing water in all three states of matter and its ready change from one to another within a comparatively short range of temperature, greatly enhances its utility as a therapeutic agent.

---

3 See Chapter XI, Hawk's observations.

CHART OF WAVE ENERGIES

in order of wave length and frequency.

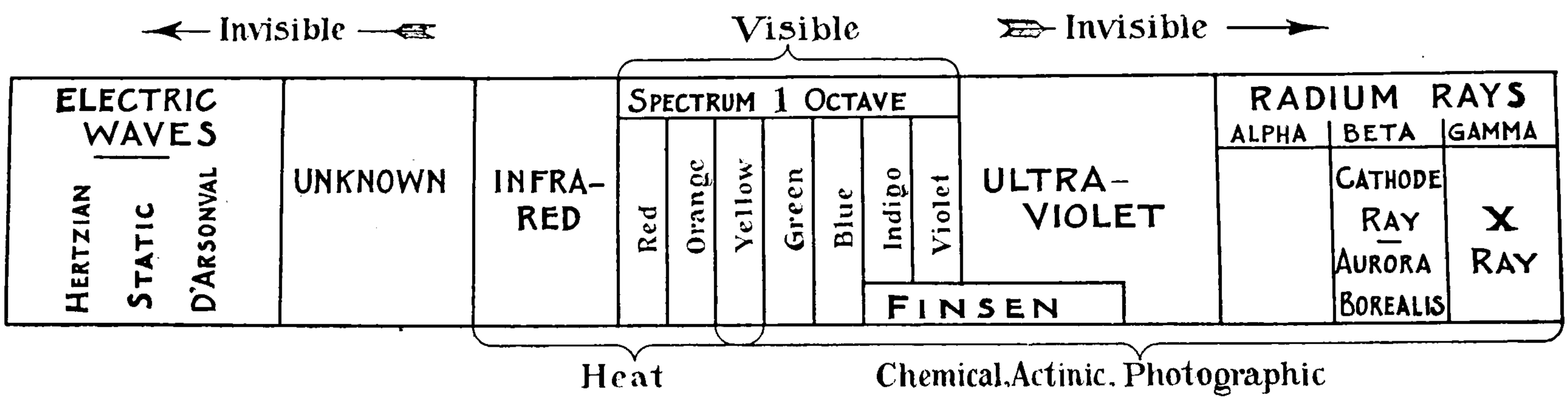


Fig. 3. The waves represented at the left end of the chart are of the greatest length but of low frequency. Proceeding from left to right, the wave length decreases while the wave frequency increases. The space marked "Unknown" is many times the length of the entire chart. Langley with his bolometer or platinum nerve found the infra-red end of the spectrum 13 times as long as the visible spectrum, i. e., 13 octaves in length. The wave length at the red end of the visible spectrum is .0,007,000 mm.; at the violet end .0,004,059 mm. The Finsen ray includes violet and ultraviolet radiations. The alpha group of radium emanations is not affected by a strong magnetic field and has but slight penetrating properties. The beta rays are identical with the cathode rays, they have greater penetrating properties but are deviated by a magnetic field. The gamma rays find their counterpart in the X-rays; they have great penetrating properties and are non-deviable by a strong magnetic field. Reasoning from Helmholtz' theory of dispersion, the waves of the X-ray are smaller than atoms. Upon this depends the property of non-refrangibility.

CHAPTER II

PRINCIPLES OF EFFECTS AND THERAPY

THE basic principles of hydrotherapy are found chiefly in an explanation of the effects of heat and cold. Viewed in this light, the science is that of thermotherapy. Effects similar to those produced by thermic impressions can be obtained by sunlight, friction, percussion, and in fact, all physiologic agents. This is most notably true of light, many of the physiologic effects of which run parallel with those of hydrotherapy. In fact, thermic and actinic energies are so closely related that they overlap each other in the visible spectrum (*Fig. 3.*). From the lowest limit of the scale of energies, up through electric energy, heat, light, and actinic rays to radium emanations and the X-ray, there is laid out before the physician a greater supply of efficient curative means than can be found anywhere else in the whole realm of therapeutics.

THERAPY FROM WITHIN

Those agents which, by their toxic action, arouse the body to resist their intrusion, can not be classed as physiologic means. They excite abnormal and unusual activities which are largely directed against the toxic agent itself, rather than heightening the normal activities which keep the body in health and repel the onset of morbid processes. Merely to relieve temporarily a distressing condition, without enabling the body itself to overcome that condition, is doing no permanent good. The sick can not always be applying special means. After recovery, they must depend upon the natural surroundings and ordinary agencies which keep the body in health. For example, to relieve pain by cocaine, an ice bag, pressure, or a fomentation is pro-

ductive of no lasting good, unless that cocaine, ice bag, pr
ure, or fomentation causes *the body* to overcome the condi
producing the pain; and its repeated application brings ab
such a change that the pain (or diseased condition) does
reappear after the curative agent is withdrawn. The t
must be made to "cure" itself. The restorative power lies
nature. The natural God-given forces must be rejuvena
The power from without must produce or arouse power f
within.

WARM- AND COLD-BLOODED ANIMALS

The reason that thermic applications and impressions are
powerful in arousing body functions lies in the fact that
activities are carried on only within a certain limited range
temperature. With regard to body temperature, there are
general classes of animals, *viz.*, the warm- and the cold-blood

The temperature of so-called "cold-blooded" (poikilo
mic) animals rises and falls with their surroundings.
organism is not injured by comparatively wide variations.
frog, for example, is lively in water at 70° F., and slug
in water at 45° F., but it nevertheless lives and remains n
mal in either. These variations do not seriously depress vi
activities. The organism is able to withstand such radi
changes in the temperature of its blood and body generall
without this change being inimical to its life. The body tem
perature of these animals remains slightly above that of th
cold water they may be in and slightly below that of warm
water. Cold-blooded animals are principally aquatic and
amphibian.

Certain other animals maintain a constant temperature under
varying conditions. The surrounding air, whether hot or cold,
does not materially alter their body temperature. The heat
mechanism is so nicely adjusted that more heat is produced
when the surrounding medium is cold, and less when the air or
other medium is hot. This class of animals is called "warm-
blooded" (homeothermic) because of the constant temperature
at which their blood is kept. Arterial blood is slightly warmer
than venous. The ordinary limits for man are about 101°—
103° F.

Organs of constant activity, such as the heart, liver, and brain have a temperature 2°—4° higher than the average of the blood stream. At ordinary room temperature, the uncovered skin has a temperature of from 92°—95° F. This fact is of importance in the administration of neutral baths. The water should be 1° or 2° higher than that of the general skin temperature. This secures a full sedation by adding a slightly relaxing effect. As noted above, the internal temperature of warm-blooded animals is comparatively a fixed point, or varies within only very narrow limits, not more than one degree in health. Any radical or prolonged departure from this fixed point (98.6° F. by mouth) interferes with vital functions.

INTRINSIC EFFECTS

When the body becomes thoroughly chilled, as by a long ride in the cold, the pulse and respiration are slowed, the circulation is less rapid, the nerves benumbed, the muscles respond sluggishly and clumsily, the finer skilled movements are impossible, digestion is retarded, the body temperature is lowered. Cold is, therefore, in itself, a vital depressant, *i. e.*, it retards vital processes. This is its intrinsic effect. Kellogg records an experiment in which immersion of the body in water at 55° F. for ten minutes reduced the pulse rate from seventy-six to fifty per minute. Another, in which twenty minutes in water at 45° F., the patient being rubbed continuously, reduced the pulse rate from eighty to fifty-eight. Both experiments were upon healthy persons. In another experiment exposure to cold showed tactile sensibility decreased. Before the exposure the points of an esthesiometer were detected as two separate points at a minimum separation of 2 mm. After five minutes immersion in water at 40° F., the minimum distance was increased to 6 mm. Another, in which five minutes in water at 68.4° F., reduced the body temperature 0.8° F. These data serve to make definite, facts with which we are acquainted in a general way only.

It will be seen from this that an overactive process may be retarded and brought back *toward* the normal by an application of cold, continued until its intrinsic effects are manifest. The

longer the duration of the cold application, the gr... effect. The same is true of the degree of cold. The l... temperature, the more pronounced the effects.

While cold retards, heat stimulates vital activities. W... what it is to experience the vivifying effects of the warm... a fire or sunlight after being in very cold air for som... The circulation is quickened; the heart beats faster; resp... is more rapid; nerve sensibility is heightened; muscular... is quicker, more certain, and precise; and digestion p... more rapidly. In watching the activity of the white blo... under the microscope, the stage must be kept warm o... movements will cease. The amœba, paramœcium, and... one-celled animals exhibit their peculiar movements only i... presence of a certain amount of heat. When cold, their m... ments cease entirely. Cold, *per se*, decreases oxidation... metabolic activities; heat increases the oxidizing capacity... tissues and metabolic activities are hastened.

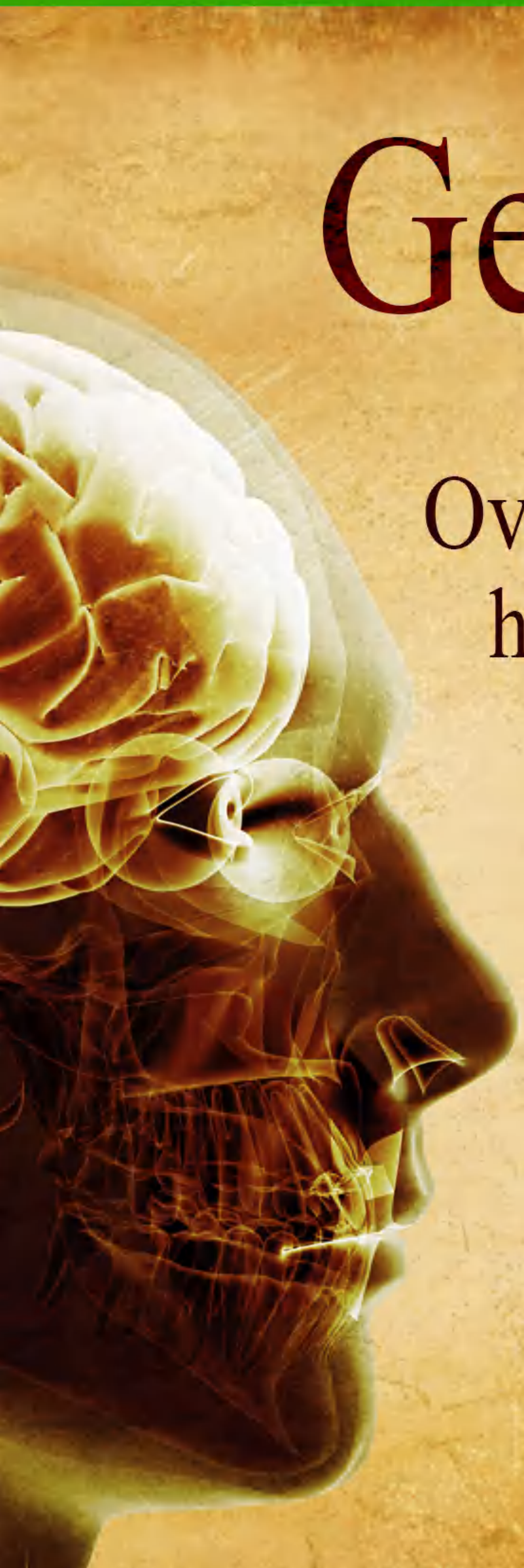
When the body is overheated its functions are abnorm... increased and, if long continued, permanent injury may r... When heated only to a slight degree, however, sluggish a... ties are whipped up and, if the applications of heat are rep... at intervals, the retarded functions tend to return to norm...

REACTION

The most interesting and phenomenal results of hydrother... are due to that complex process—reaction, *i. e.*, the part w... the body itself takes in its own recuperation and healing. T... interesting phenomenon, in its entirety, is observed only i... homeothermic animals. Cold-blooded animals, instead of r... acting to their external medium, are subject to the vicissitu... of their environment. On the contrary, warm-blooded anim... maintain more or less uniformity of function because of the p... feet control exercised over vital processes by the nervous syste... This control is more highly developed and complicated than i... poikilothermic animals.

We have seen that the influence of cold is to depress vital activities; that is, if continued long enough, its intrinsic effect is manifest in depression. But let us notice the effects of a...

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

tions of cold, so that what is seen as a result of these long applications is really a mixture of the intrinsic and reactionary effects. As to which shall predominate depends upon the intensity and duration of the application. With the more prolonged applications, the reaction is suppressed or obscured; while in those of intermediate duration, we often see as much of one as of the other.

With heat, as used in actual practice, we observe its intrinsic effects when the hot application is short, *i. e.*, of brief duration. The first effect of heat is that of a stimulant and tonic; but, if long continued, depression results. This depression is, by some, termed "a reaction." Baruch objects to this term as applied to heat. If we define reaction as the vital response to an external force, or the attempt on the part of the organism to counteract an external agent, we can see no great objection to the term, or to saying that the *reaction* to heat is of an atonic nature.

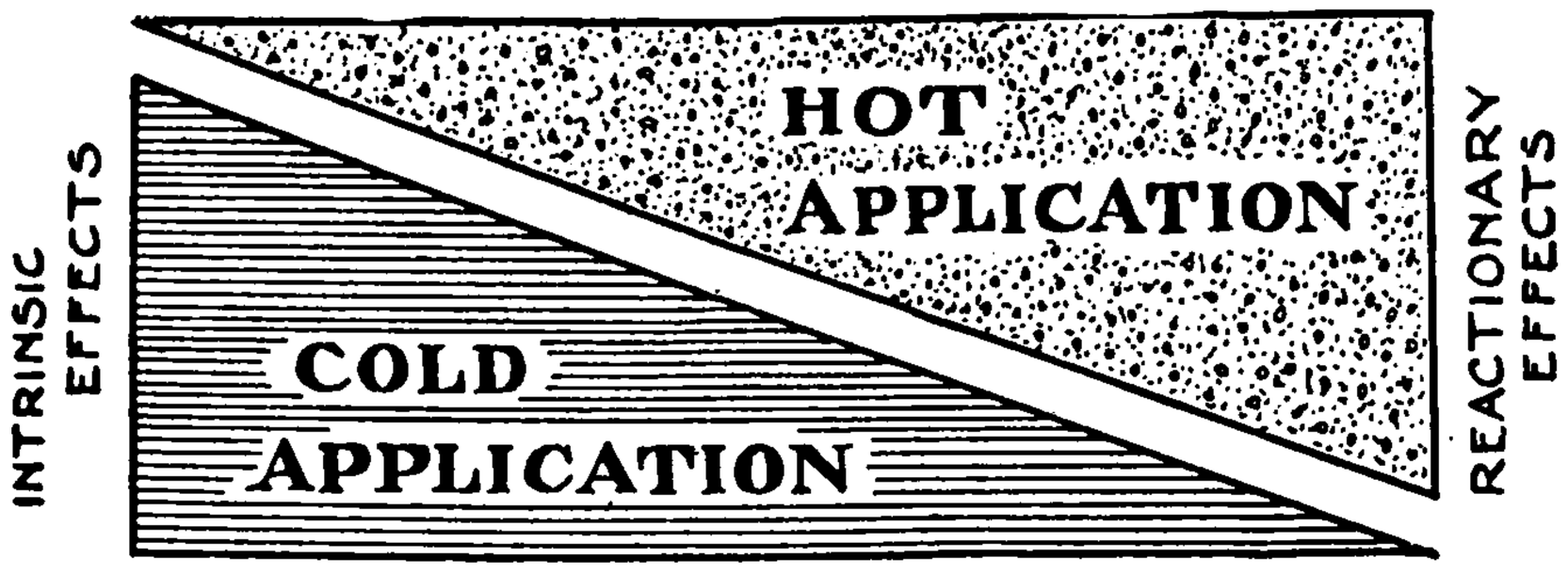


Fig 4. Diagram illustrating the time factor in the obtaining of intrinsic and reactionary effects.

The accompanying diagram (*Fig. 4.*) illustrates the relation existing between the duration of the application and the obtaining of intrinsic and reactionary effects. The thick ends of the wedges indicate prolonged applications; the thin ends, brief applications. Intrinsic effects are shown at the left and reactions at the right.

Tonic effects are obtained from the: Intrinsic effects of heat (short); reaction to cold (short).

Retarding and depressant effects are obtained from the: Reaction to heat (long); intrinsic effects of cold (long).

It must not be concluded from the above grouping that the depressant effects of a long cold application (intrinsic) and those of a long hot application (reaction) are identical in nature. The depression is manifest in different ways. With cold the depression is in the nature of a simple retardation of vital functions, whereas with the heat the depression is manifest chiefly in the nervous and muscular systems,[4] and is perhaps best described as atonic. That this is largely a nervous phenomenon is apparent from the fact that a vigorous cold treatment following prolonged heat often quickly restores the patient to a normal condition.

Abrams[2] makes the following statement: "Respecting the physiologic effects of heat, it suffices to say, that a prolonged application of a high temperature is primarily an excitant, and secondarily a depressant; a brief application, however, is strongly excitant and the depressing effects, if any, are imperceptible." In discussing the effects of thermic stimuli (on secretion) Pope[3] says, "In general terms it may be stated that brief applications of thermic stimuli, whether hot or cold, stimulate secretion, differing in degree rather than *in toto;* long-continued applications depress."

Phases of Reaction. There are two important phases of reaction, *viz.*, the circulatory and the nervous. The *circulatory* is most apparent and is that by which we judge of the completeness of reaction. The skin should become ruddy and warm. The patient feels a warm glow over the entire skin surface. There should be nothing of stasis, no cyanosis, or goose flesh. The skin should be smooth, soft, and pliable. The *nervous* reaction is appreciated not only by the patient but by the observer. The dull, listless appearance of the eye and countenance generally, gives way to a decided brightening. If there is delirium or stupor, as in typhoid, pneumonia, etc., it may be replaced by quiet sleep. In fact, the salutary effects are visible in all the nervous functions of the body. With a neurasthenie patient the feeling of languor, restlessness and

2 Spondylotherapy, p. 175.
3 Hydrotherapy, p. 35.
4 Metabolic changes are hastened by prolonged heat

weight in the abdomen is replaced by that of vigor and aration. Another phase of reaction is that termed It is the response of the heat mechanism to stimulation of less practical importance since it can not be conv utilized in judging of the completeness of reaction.

TYPES AND DEGREES OF REACTION

Suppressed Reaction. It is often desirable to supp limit the reaction arising from some application. This is ially true with long cold applications which are desig delay vital activities or reduce fever. Of course, the attempts to react to all such measures, as has been men The reaction may be limited, *e. g.*, by a cold applicati as an ice bag to a part. The nervous excitability is l by the continuous and severe cold, so that the phenom reaction do not appear in their entirety and completene the case of a Brand bath, the exciting stage soon gives w a slower heart beat, slower and deeper respiration, etc. reason of the continuance of the cold. In general, the supp sion of the reaction depends upon the *intensity* of the cold its *duration*, being greater with the lower temperatures and the prolonging of the application.

Repeated Reaction. In the giving of alternate hot and c treatments, the body is called upon to react several times. A two or three applications, the reactions are less complete. oscillatory changes occurring in the blood-vessels become l and less in amplitude after each succeeding application. order to produce complete reactions where the applications repeated, it is necessary to increase the intensity of the stimu lus. This may be done in the case of alternate hot and cold using a higher temperature for the hot and a lower temperatu for the cold, or by adding mechanical stimuli.

Incomplete Reaction. Applications not properly suited to the reactive ability of a patient will result in an incomplete reaction. Should this occur, the patient experiencies quite unpleasant symptoms, such as chilliness, shivering, cold feet, a feeling of fulness in the head, and even faintness and nausea.

These are due mostly to the internal congestion which has not been relieved or has been made more intense.

CONDITIONS INFLUENCING REACTION

Age and Vitality of the Patient. In either extreme of life the ability to react is quite limited. Neither infants nor aged persons bear cold treatment well. We have treated persons in advanced life who were utterly unable to react to even cool water as applied by the wet hand rub, and who invariably chilled after a cold mitten friction.

In certain diseases or states the vitality is so reduced as to render reaction extremely difficult. This is true of nearly all those diseases which produce a profound asthenia. In anemia and extreme emaciation the same conditions prevail. In all such cases it is necessary to thoroughly warm the body previous to the cold application and give vigorous friction during and following the treatment. Even these means will not always insure a reaction.

Exercise, sufficient to warm the body, promotes reaction. This is true whether taken before or after the treatment. It quickens the circulation and brings the blood to the surface. Body heat is increased so that the surface blood-vessels become dilated in order to increase heat elimination. Fatigue is not conducive to completeness of reaction. In case it is necessary to treat persons who are fatigued, a short hot application should be given first, quickly followed by some short but very vigorous cold treatment, accompanied by friction or percussion.

The Warmth of the Body. When the body is warm, reaction appears promptly. The internal heat of the body may be ever so much and yet reaction be impossible, if the skin is cold and clammy, pale, cyanotic, or goose flesh in appearance. The skin should be warm and, if possible, ruddy before cold applications are used. In case it is not, some sort of hot treatment should be used first, in order to draw the blood to the skin. The air of the room in which the patient is treated should be warm and he should remain in a warm room after treatment until reaction is complete. It may be necessary to give a drink of hot water in order to warm the body. More essential

than all of these is the warmth of the feet. It is im... secure full reaction or the best possible results, if th... cold. It should, therefore, be a general rule that... should be warmed by a hot foot bath or alternate hot... foot bath or hot foot pack, previous to any and all m... In the giving of even an enema, this is necessary. A... ment it may be necessary to provide the patient with a... covering, either in the form of bedding or clothing, in... secure full reaction.

Psychic Attitude. It is difficult to produce complete... in a patient that dislikes the measures used. That the m... exercise an inhibitory influence over body functions ca... doubted by those whose practice brings them in cont... profound neurasthenia. Those under great mental... worry, or anxiety, react poorly.

Character of Treatment and Mode of Application. ... cases where reaction is likely to be tardy, the cold t... should be preceded by a hot treatment. In ordinary c... hot application should exceed in duration the cold app... It should thoroughly warm the body and make the cold... come change. The reaction is more prompt in its app... if extreme cold is used and accompanied by friction or ... sion. The colder the water, the greater the reaction;... cold treatment should be given quickly. The treating ... part at a time favors the quick appearance of the re... The larger an application or more general the surface tr... the less promptly will the reaction appear. Friction with ... dry hand or a rough towel, following the drying, enh... the reaction. Percussion has the same effect. The dr... from sprays and general applications of water should be d... as quickly and as thoroughly as possible. If moisture is le... the surface, the resulting evaporation cools the body and ... action is delayed. The patient should be dried in a w... room near the place where the last application of water ... made. To properly shape circumstances so as to favor ... action, requires much care and forethought on the part of ... attendant nurse. A little carelessness may undo much of ... of the benefit which should accrue from a given treatment.

Test of Reactive Ability. Ability to react to cold applications varies with the climate of usual residence, state of health, occupation, and habits of the patient. As to the reactive capacity little can be determined by questioning the patient. Often those who say they are unable to take cold baths react as well or better than those who affirm their ability to react. What one calls very cold another regards as only cool. Some persons consider that they have been taking cold baths when bathing in water at 90°—95° F. The response of a patient with anemia is usually in direct proportion to the degree of anemia. The state of the vasomotors and the readiness with which they react to mechanical stimuli serve as a rough test of the ability to respond to cold treatment. This test is mentioned by nearly all writers on hydrotherapy. Baruch[5] makes the following statement:—

"I have found that the response of the cutaneous circulation to mechanical excitation furnishes an index to the probable reactive capacity of the patient. Passing the back of the nail of the index finger rapidly but gently across the abdomen, and increasing the pressure of the nail with a second stroke parallel to the first, induces a more or less deep reddening of the irritated skin. The rapidity with which the red line develops after the nail is removed, and the pressure required to produce it, afford the trained eye a crude, but fairly correct, test of the patient's reactive capacity. By applying this test frequently before each procedure, one may readily train the appreciation of this test and thus avoid the necessity of slow development of the reaction by gradual increase of the intensity of the treatment which the author adopts in most cases."

COMMON NAMES OF TEMPERATURES

Heat and cold are relative, not absolute, terms and must needs be defined. This can not be done with accuracy, since patients differ in their toleration of heat and cold. What one designates as very cold may be only cool to another. The extent of skin surface exposed to thermic stimulation also makes a difference in the degree of the temperature impression re-

5 Hydrotherapy, p. 102.

ceived. For example, immersion of the hand in water [illegible] will give an impression of cold; but, if the entire [illegible] immersed, the water will seem *very* cold. Again, a [illegible] bath at 105° F. will seem very hot; while, if only one [illegible] immersed, the impression received is that of only *moderate* [illegible] The most satisfactory way of designating temperature [illegible] define the limits in terms of degrees. The table below [illegible] been found practical. The designations above neutral [illegible] those that would be used for full tub baths; those below [illegible] are such as would be used for partial immersion.

Very hot - - - - -	104° and above
Hot - - - - - -	100°—104° F.
Warm (neutral, 94°—97°) -	92°—100° F.
Tepid - - - - -	80°— 92° F.
Cool - - - - - -	70°— 80° F.
Cold - - - - -	55°— 70° F.
Very cold - - - - -	32°— 55° F.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

deeper layers, nearer the subcutaneous fat, are coarser and loosely arranged.

MUSCULAR AND ELASTIC TISSUE

Smooth muscle fibers are intimately associated with the elastic fibers. The two together constitute one of the most important anatomic arrangements in the skin, as we shall see presently. In many parts of the skin the muscle fibers are present in the form of a network, contracting diagonally.[2] The muscular tissue exists mostly as the erectores pilorum disposed in relation with the hair follicles and lying in an oblique direction through the thickness of the skin. These muscular bundles are surrounded and traversed by elastic fibers and they are enclosed in a dense network of elastic tissue, some of which serve as tendons to connect the ends of the muscular fasciculi to the connective tissue bundles of the corium. The varied degrees of tension of the skin are due to the changes in this musculo-elastic mechanism. Baruch lays much stress upon these changes as being the chief cause of alterations in the cutaneous circulation, which are brought about by thermic impressions. Under medium temperatures the muscle fasciculi are in a state of medium tension and the skin is ordinarily pliable. Cold causes contraction of these muscular bundles and they, embracing in their action the smaller vessels of the corium, especially the terminal capillary loops (both arterial and venous) of the papillæ, produce blanching of the skin. Heat relaxes the muscles; the tension being relieved, the elastic fibers return to their usual condition and the skin is again soft, loose, and pliable. Higher degrees cause increased relaxation up to a certain point, where heightened tension is again manifested. These facts explain the mechanism and the great importance of the contractility of the skin in the propulsive movement of both blood and lymph. This contractility supplies the place of the muscular coat of the blood-vessels which is absent in this situation. The elastic fibers, forming as they do a fine membrane around the blood-vessels and opposing the action of the muscular fibers, may be supposed to support vasodilatation.

2 Baruch—Principles and Practice of Hydrotherapy, p. 5.
3 Hyde and Montgomery—Diseases of the Skin, p. 35.

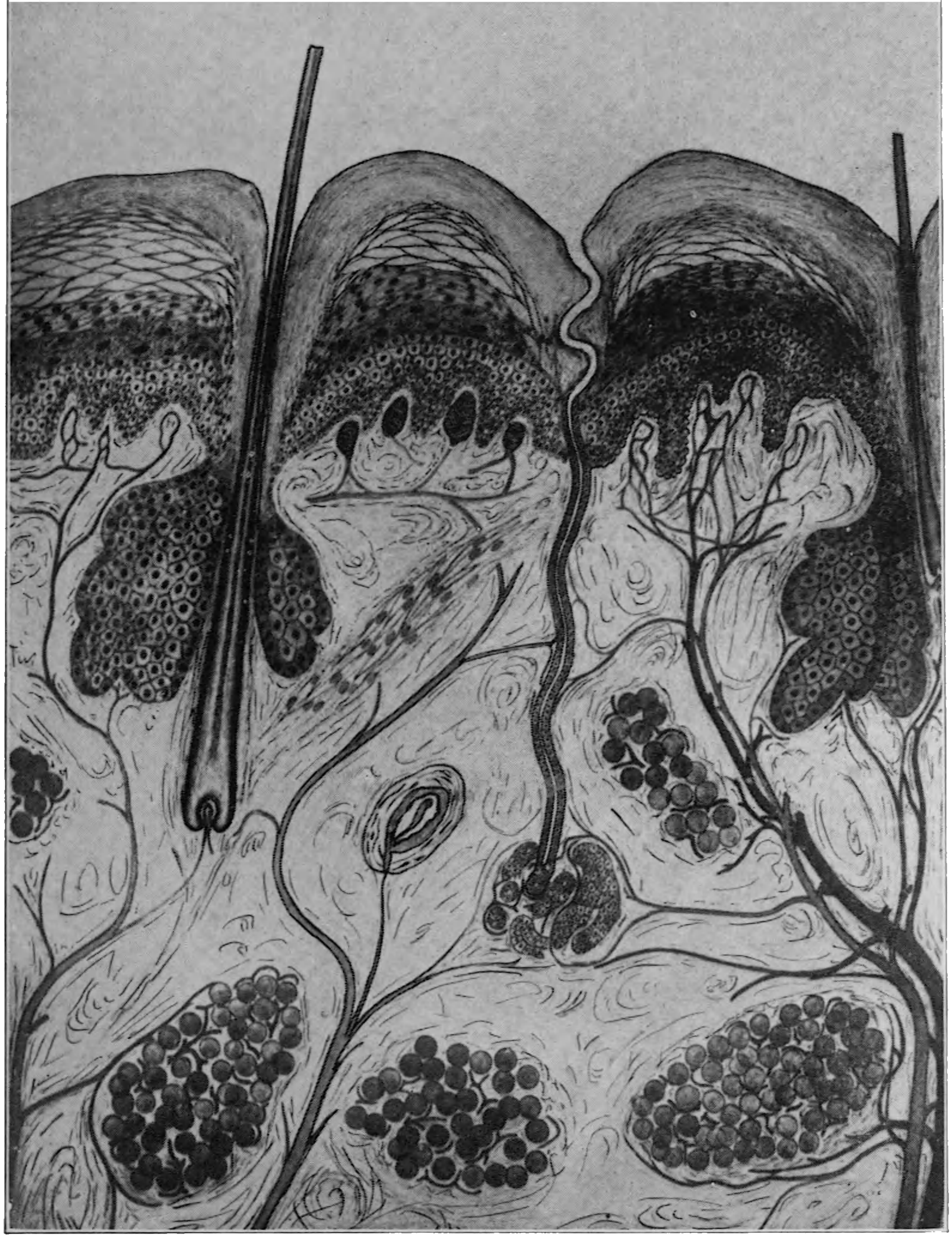


PLATE I. Diagrammatic section of the skin.

The disappearance of elastic fibers from the skin in arteriosclerosis (Meissner) where rigidity and high tension are essential accompaniments, may lend color to this view and possibly reveal something of the pathogenesis of high tension and subsequent vascular sclerosis.

THE BLOOD-VESSELS

The blood vascular system of the skin on the arterial side is arranged in two quite distinct horizontal networks—an upper and a lower, besides being especially abundant about the hair follicles and coil glands. The latter structures are surrounded by a basket-like network of blood-vessels. The lower or inferior plexus lies in the deepest part of the derma. It consists of comparatively large vessels. From this plexus, vessels extend more or less vertically upward to form the upper or subpapillary plexus. From this plexus, vascular loops extend directly into the papillæ above. "In the papillary vascular system the arteries are narrow and the veins wide."[4]

Baruch states that the papillary loop may be so filled with blood, that it may double and fold over in spiral windings until it occupies almost the entire space of the papilla. This capacity for increasing or diminishing the size of the papillary loop furnishes an important agency by which hydrotherapy may affect the circulation.[5]

Both papillary veins and arteries consist of an endothelial tube only. Near the middle of the subcutaneous tissue, the media and adventitia appear. In the veins the muscular coat is found earlier, *i. e.*, in the plexus at the base of the derma, where they also seem to possess valves.[6] In the case of the capillary vessels these coats are supplied by the musculo-elastic tissues of the skin itself, as mentioned above. Vasomotor nerves are twined around these vessels in all their ramifications.[7]

THE LYMPHATICS

"The lymph vessels of the true skin are also distributed in two layers—a deep and wide-meshed plexus (collecting trunks)

4 Hyde and Montgomery—Diseases of the Skin, p. 29.
5 Baruch—Principles and Practice of Hydrotherapy, p. 6.
6 Bohm, Davidoff, and Huber—Histology, p. 386.
7 Hyde and Montgomery—Ibid., p. 29.

in the subcutis and a superficial narrow-meshed plexus (c… laries) immediately beneath the papillæ."[8] The latter v… (*Fig. 5.*) begin in the papillæ as an exceedingly fine mesh… of endothelial-lined and absolutely closed cul-de-sac spa… the connective tissue. These culs-de-sac divide and a… mose in a very free manner. The capillaries of the sub… lary plexus also possess endothelial walls of their own. … are devoid of valves.

While the lymphatic capillaries communicate neither wi… connective tissue spaces nor with the blood-vessels, the… nevertheless in very intimate physiologic relation with … these structures. Cellular … grations and osmotic exch… take place readily, so that … capillaries fulfill their funct… as drains, and according to … naut, selective drains.[9] Acc… ing to Unna, the intersp… spaces, delicate channeling… the cement substance bet… the epithelial cells, are in c… munication with the lymph… spaces of the papillary regio… of the corium. But, as stated … above, this is not an anatomic… communication, but a physio… logical relation and is doubt… less the path taken by sub… stances which are absorbed fro… the skin surface. Some affirm that absorption occurs partly … through the coil glands. The epithelium of excretory glands … has, however, but slight absorptive powers. At their com… mencement in the capillaries, the lymphatics have a capacity equal to and greater than that of the veins. This diminishes, the nearer we approach to the thoracic duct, the calibre of which is much smaller than that of the vena cava.[10]

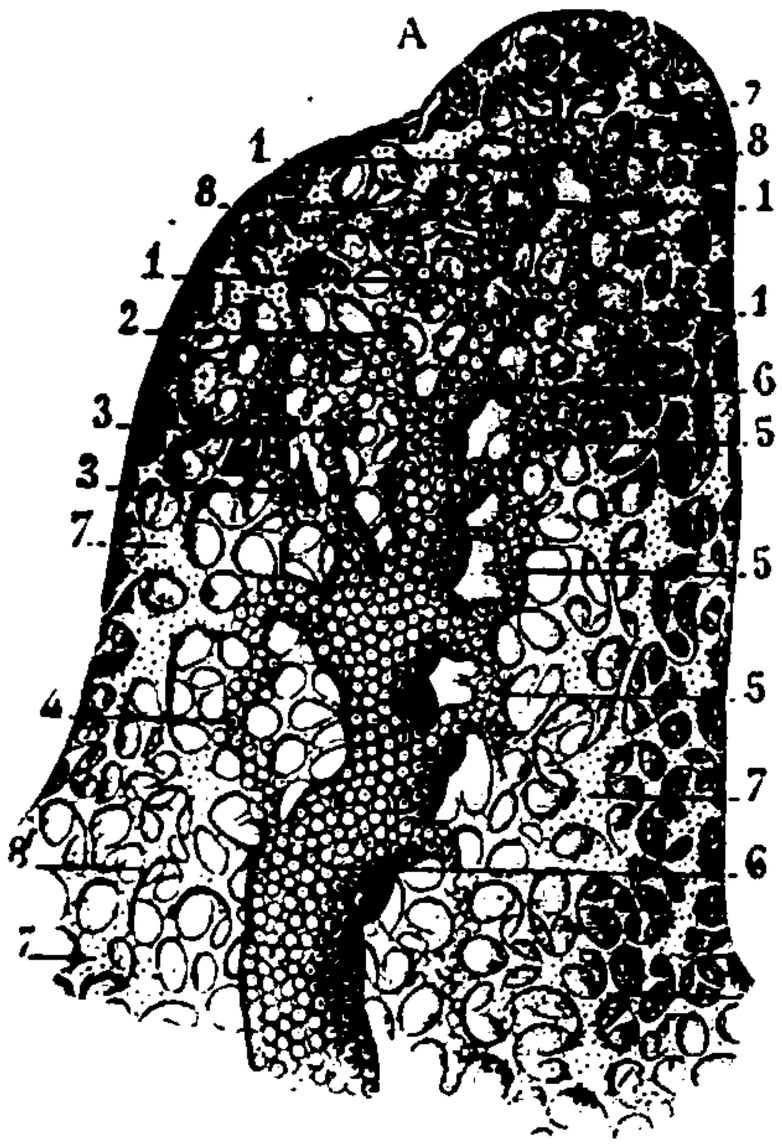


Fig. 5. Origin of lymphatic vessels in a papilla of the hand. (Sappey.)

8 Bohm, Davidoff, and Huber—Histology, p. 387.
9 Pourier, Cuneo, and Delamere—The Lymphatics, pp. 74, 75.
10 Pourier, Cuneo, and Delamere—Ibid., p. 62.

The deep, wide-meshed plexus located in the subcutis, forms part of the superficial lymphatics (collecting trunks) of gross anatomy (*Fig. 6.*). They are larger, though very irregular and sacciform channels, dividing and anastomosing freely. The wall consists of endothelium, together with an elastic and muscular coat. They are provided with valves at variable distances. From the fingers to the axillary

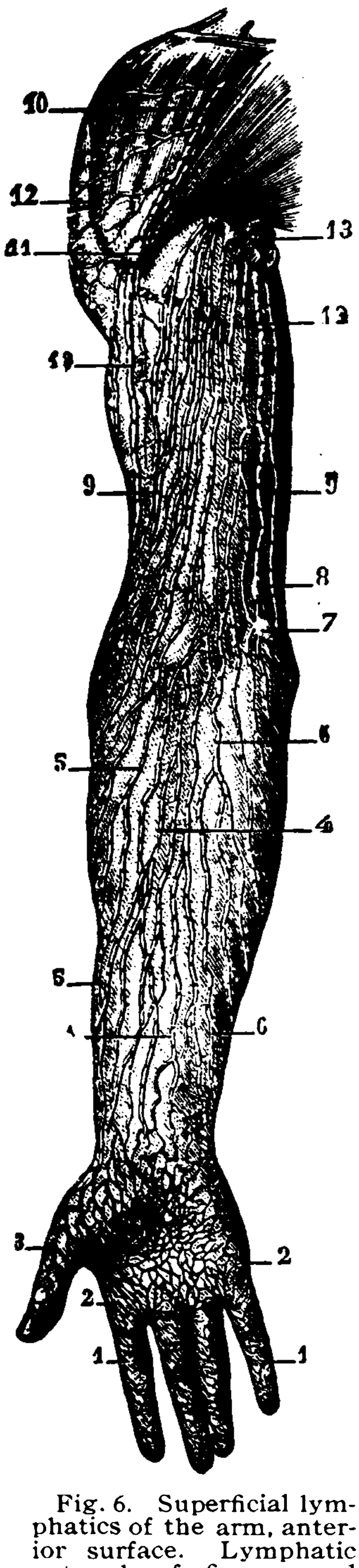


Fig. 6. Superficial lymphatics of the arm, anterior surface. Lymphatic network of fingers and palm. Collecting trunks of the arm and forearm (Sappey.)

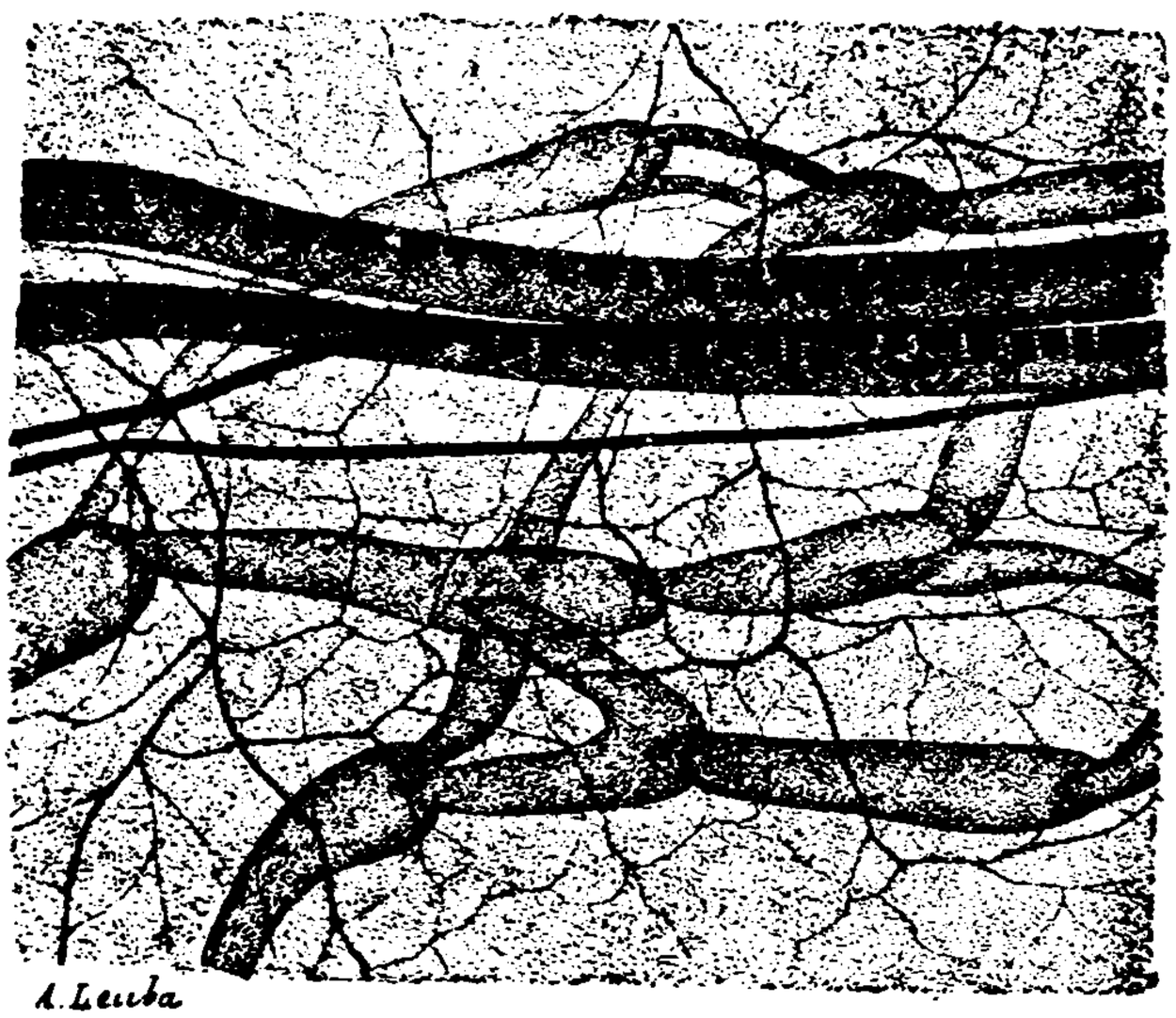


Fig. 7. Valves of the mesenteric chyliferous vessels of the new born cat. (Delamere.)

glands, Sappey counted sixty to eighty. These are crescentic folds of endothelium, resembling the aortic semilunar valves and arranged in pairs (*Fig. 7.*). The alternate constrictions and swellings which give the lymphatic vessels their beaded appearance are due to these valves. According to Delamere, the supravalvular enlargements are true contractile sacs, similar to the lymphatic hearts of batrachians. From the standpoint of hydrotherapy, the following statement by the same writer is significant. He says that because of the

elastic fibers, connective tissue, and muscle, the lym
walls are, in spite of their fineness, resistant, extensil
retractile. They withstand, without rupture, the pressu
column of mercury of from thirty to forty centimet

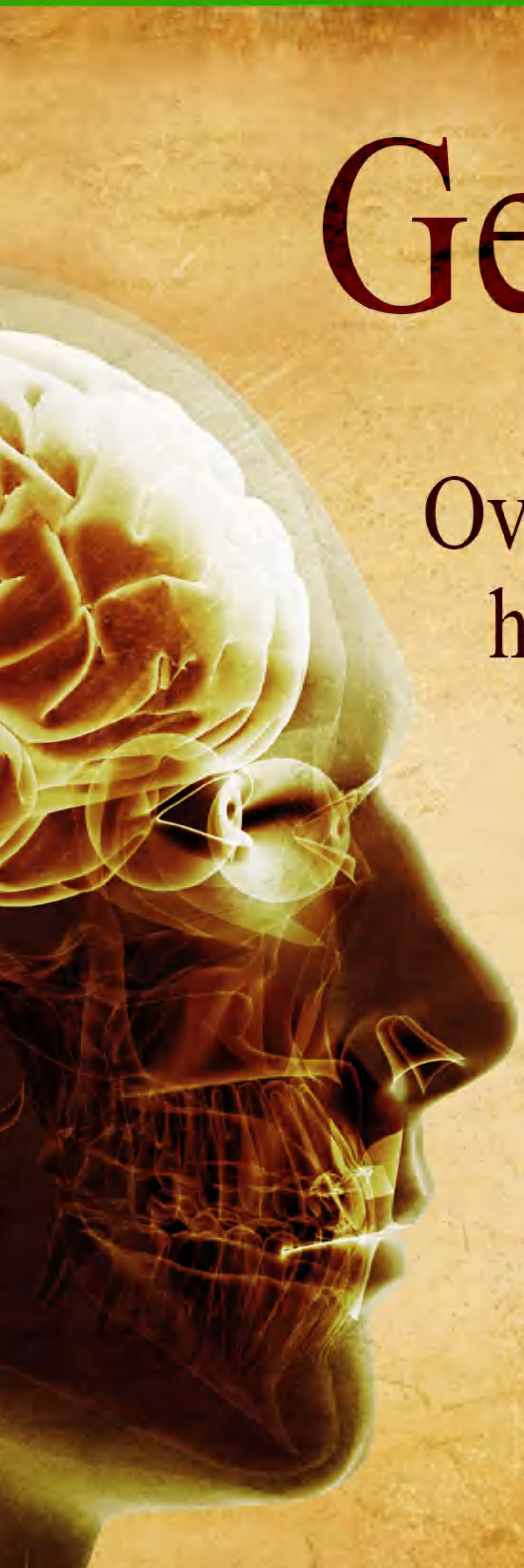
We have noted above the various structures by w
blood and the lymph vessels are rendered contracti
ought now to consider briefly the contractility of the e
lium. This is of no little importance in those ve
blood and lymph capillaries, which possess no othe
These endothelial cells contract and expand, causing
in the calibre of the capillary channel. According to
these contractions are allied to the changes in muscle
which constitute contraction. Landois [13] states that these
phenomena are to be observed especially after irritation
living animal. Schmetkin found nerve fibers distributed
large blood-vessels, not only in the adventitia and mu
also in the intima. [14]

It seems, then, a well established fact that all part
vascular system, whether large or small, arterioles, cap
or venules, whether blood or lymph vessels, of whatever
all possess the power of contractility. Practically all th
sels of the body are under the control of the nervous sy
through those filaments known as vasomotor nerves, or
played upon by such contractile mechanisms as the skin, wh
is itself influenced by stimuli similar to those of a vasom
nature. These vasomotor fibers are said to be of two classes,
first, those which, when stimulated, produce vasoconstriction;
second, those that produce vasodilatation. The controversy as
to the existence of the latter, or whether vasodilatation is pro-
duced by a cessation of vasoconstrictor influences, does not co
cern us in the practical application of physiologic measu
While the vasomotors originate in more or less definite centers,
and seem to be more abundant in certain localities and in cer-
tain nerve trunks, they are, nevertheless, distributed with other
nerve fibers, and are found in all parts of the body.

---

11 Pourier, Cuneo, and Delamere—The Lymphatics, p. 70.
12 Physiology, 1898, p. 289.
13 Human Physiology, 1905, p. 132.
14 Bohm, Davidoff, and Huber—Histology, p. 223.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

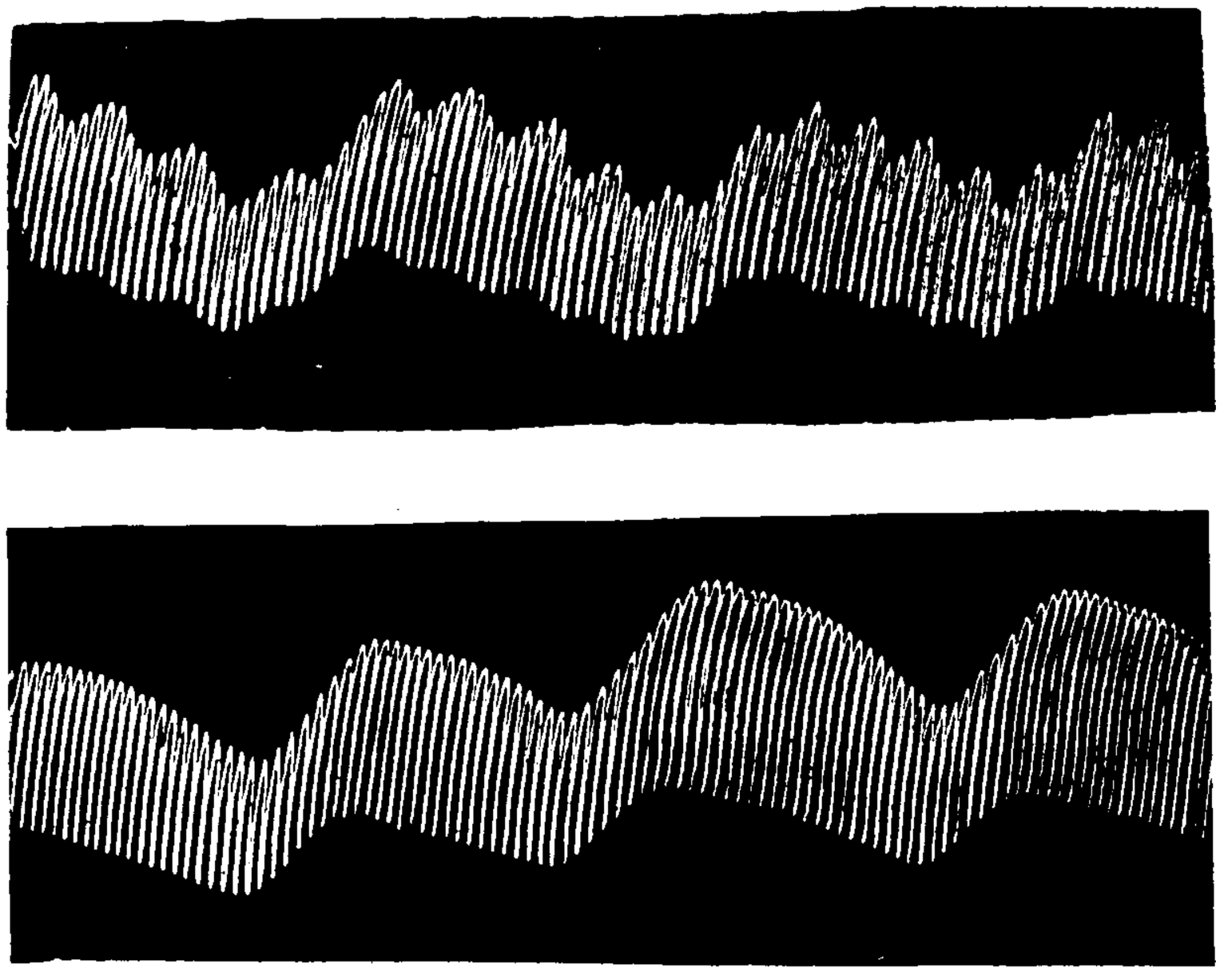
Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

pressure being due to a widening or dilatation of the vessels and an increase of pressure to the opposite condition, a narrowing or contraction of the vessels. The vascular condition entering into the normal rapidity of the circulation is neither the one nor the other extreme. A permanent widening of the vessels leads to stasis of blood, while a permanent narrowing results in heightened blood pressure, arteriosclerosis, and its resultant chain of disasters.



Figs. 8 and 9. Blood pressure tracings showing Traube-Hering curves taken from a dog. (Martin) The upper tracing, taken while artificial respiration was being carried on, shows the three curves,—the pulse wave, represented by each double stroke; the respiratory wave, covering about five pulse waves; and the vasomotor or Traube-Hering wave, the slower undulations covering five respiratory waves. The lower tracing, taken just after the cessation of artificial respiration, shows only the pulse waves and the Traube-Hering waves.

Traube-Hering Waves. In health there are continuous and more or less rhythmic alterations in the calibre of the blood-vessels. Speaking along this line, Landois[1] says the diameter of the vessels "is subject to periodic variations, not only in the vessels provided with muscular tissue, but also in the capillaries—in the latter, in consequence of the spontaneous contraction of the protoplasmic cells that form their walls." More-

1 Human Physiology, 1905, p. 180

over, Sir Michael Foster states that these changes which vary considerably, both in their rhythm and extent, occur without any obvious changes in either the heart beat or the general circulation, and when the animal (under observation) is apparently subjected to no disturbing causes. He regards them as spontaneous, although subject to vasomotor control.

In determining changes in the amount of blood in the arm by the plethysmograph, the fluctuations in volume, as registered by the kymograph, permit recognition of the following phenomena.[2] (*Figs. 8 and 9.*) 1. Pulsatory fluctuations due to each individual heart beat. 2. Respiratory fluctuations. 3. Certain periodic fluctuations dependent upon periodic-regulatory movements of the blood-vessels, particularly the smaller vessels.

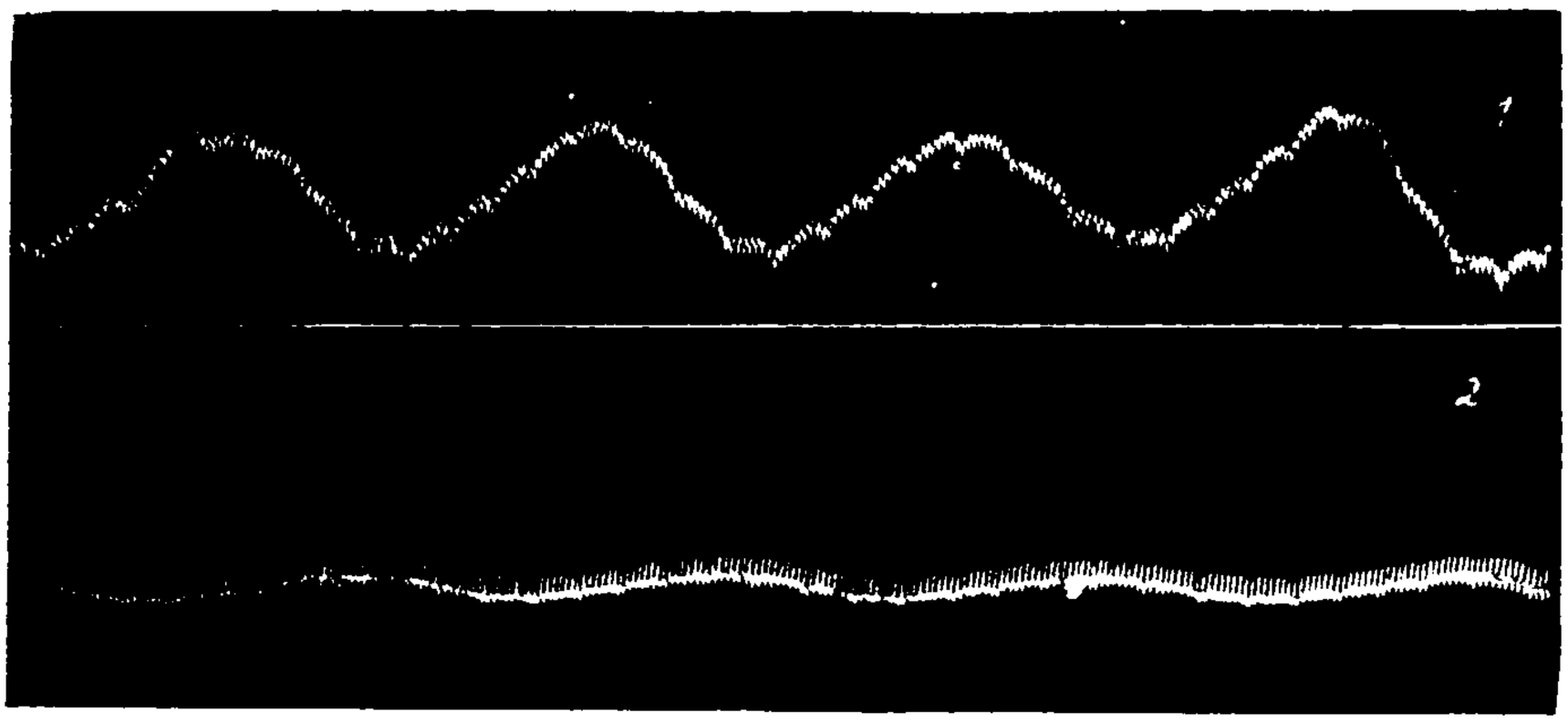


Fig. 10. Rhythmical vasomotor waves of blood pressure in a dog (Traube-Hering waves). The upper tracing (1) is the blood pressure record as taken with the mercury manometer; the lower tracing (2) is taken with a Hurthle manometer.

"Waves are often observed on the blood pressure curve, which must arise in a slow rhythmic variation of the constrictor impulses sent out from the vasomotor center. These waves are known as the Traube-Hering curves."[3] Relative to the blood pressure tracing as taken with a mercury manometer (*Fig. 10*) Howell[4] says, "The latter waves (Traube-Hering) are . . . due to a rhythmic action of the vasomotor center. During sleep, certain much longer, wave-like variations in the blood pressure also occur that are again due, doubtless, to a rhythmic

2 Landois—Human Physiology, p. 190.
3 Starling—Elements of Human Physiology, p. 276.
4 Physiology, 1908, pp. 564, 565.

change of tone in the vasoconstrictor center." Changes similar to those producing the Traube-Hering wave may also be observed in the spleen (*See Chapter X.*) and in heart muscle (*Fig. 11.*). The manifestation of periodic variations in tone is, therefore, common to the involuntary muscle of several different organs and structures. Some observers regard these tone waves as spontaneous, though subject to nerve control.

In discussing periodic variations in blood pressure Janeway[5] gives the following: "These are evident in the human being as in the animal. The respiratory and the Traube-Hering waves,

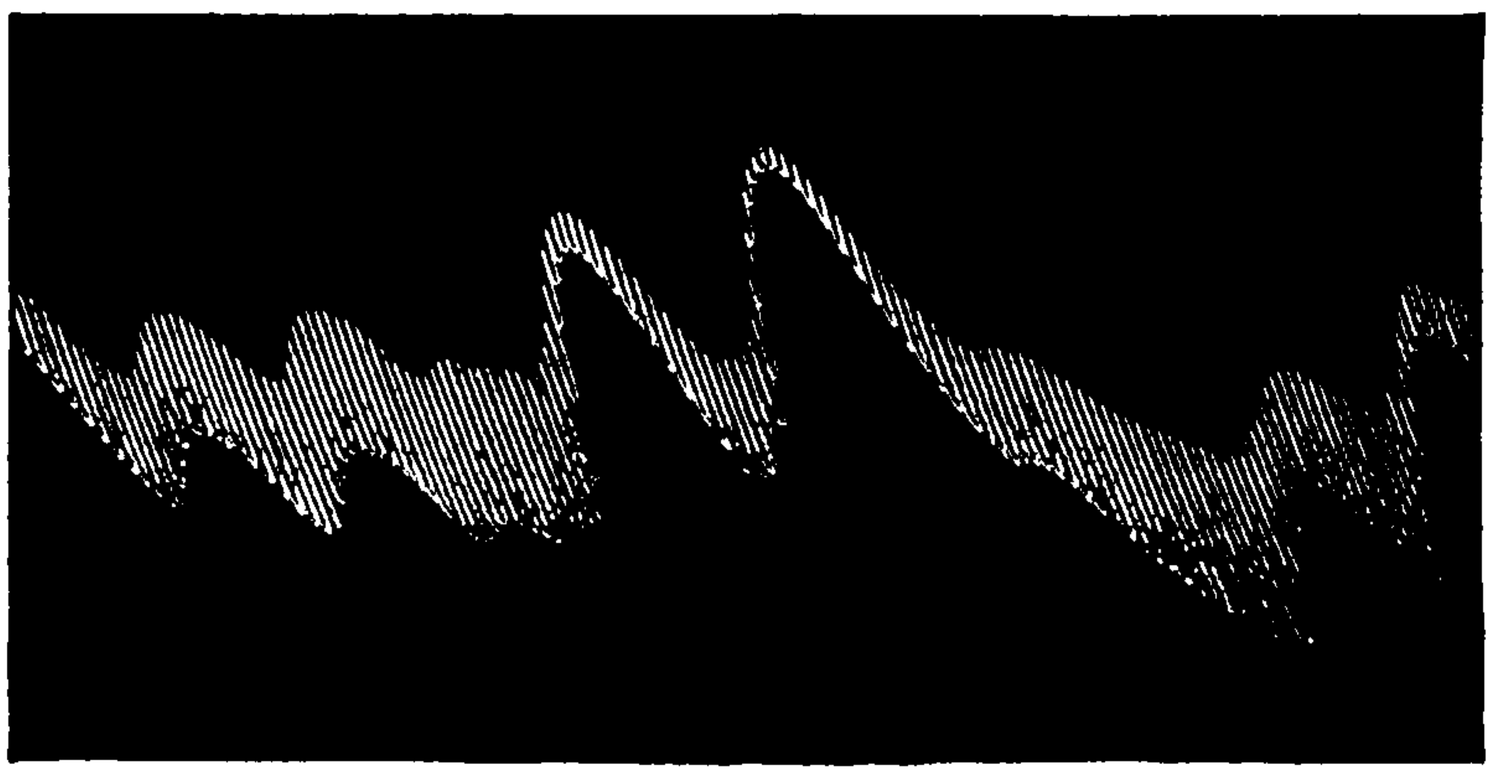


Fig. 11. Tone waves in heart muscle. The record shows contractions of a strip of the sinus venosus (terrapin's heart) suspended in a bath of blood-serum. In addition to the sharp contractions marked by the lines there are longer, wave-like shortenings and relaxations, irregular in character, which are due to variations in tone. (Howell.)

and the other less rhythmical but apparently spontaneous fluctuations in mean blood pressure, must be in mind during every clinical experiment. . . . Exact figures for the possible pressure variations due to these causes are hard to give, but their extent in animals, combined with my observations on the changes noted in patients from moment to moment, lead me to place 30 mm. Hg. as the probable maximum rise which may be attributed to them. One sees these larger fluctuations mainly in patients with hypertension. Ordinarily, 5—10 mm. would be a liberal estimate." In this connection Janeway gives a tracing (*Fig. 12.*) by Mosso, taken from a man at rest, in which the Traube-Hering wave covers on an average of fifteen pulse

5 Clinical Study of Blood Pressure, pp. 112, 113; see also pp. 16—21.

waves, thus showing a fluctuation recurring about four or five times a minute.

Events occurring in other parts of the body may give rise to large changes, so that the arterioles may become constricted almost to obliteration, or dilated to more than double their usual diameter. These observations apply to arteries, capillaries, and veins. In the vessels of the web of a frog's foot, direct treatment of the web may bring about the same changes.

Since these rhythmic vascular changes normally occur quite independently of the heart beat, we have here a factor in the circulation which, under proper physiologic stimulation, may be utilized to relieve that organ of much of its work, so that

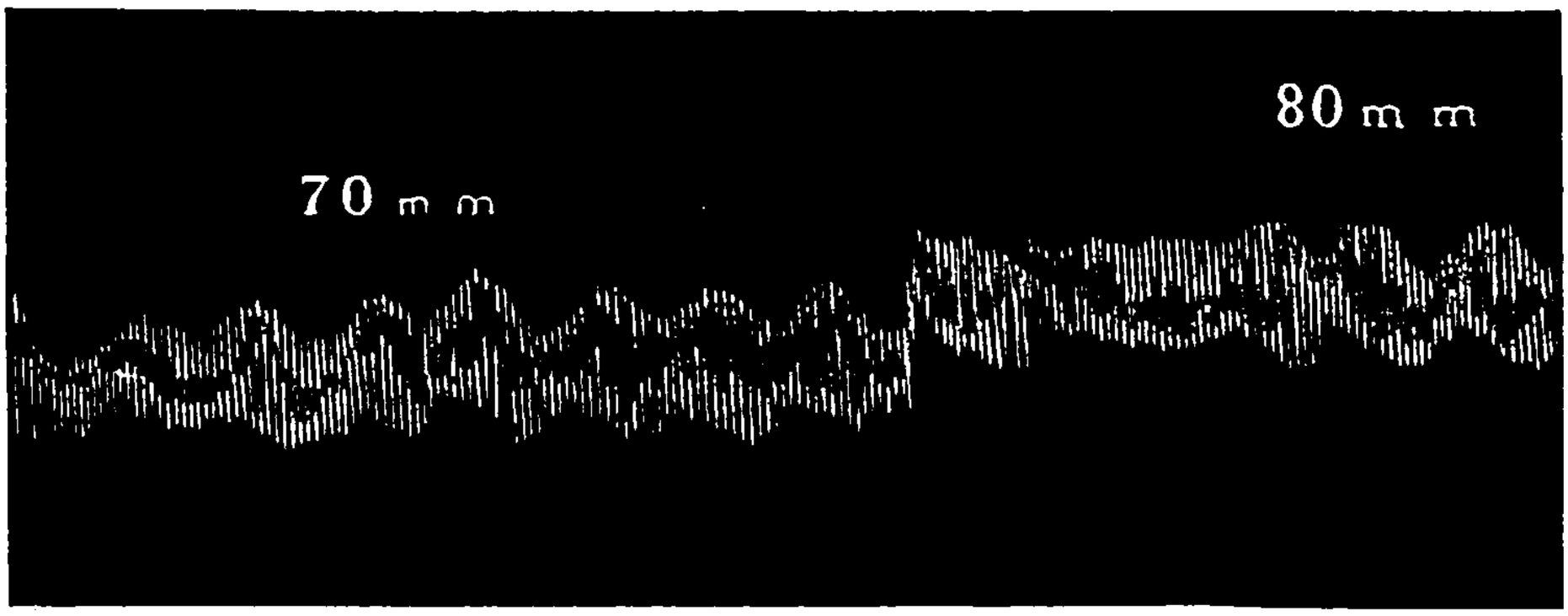


Fig. 12. Periodic fluctuations in the tracing of blood pressure taken from Doctor Colombo (at rest). (Mosso s sphygmograph.)

when overburdened, it may obtain needed rest through the slowing of the rate and the increasing of the force consequent upon this help. Landois,[6] in discussing blood pressure as altered by changes in the size of the vessels, mentions the application of heat and cold to circumscribed areas as influencing blood pressure through the vasomotor nerves. It is to the applications which bring about such changes as these that we now turn our attention.

THE PRINCIPLES OF VASCULAR EFFECTS

The underlying principle of applications calculated to awaken an activity of the circulation is found in the old dictum, *ubi irritatio, ibi affluxus*. Where there is an irritation, there is an

6 Human Physiology, p. 166.

afflux of blood. Rub vigorously the back of the hand [illegible] skin becomes reddened with an increase of blood. Pe[illegible] or a dash of cold water produce the same results. T[illegible] examples of what we may term physiologic irritation. [illegible] of irritation produce an initial contraction of the blood-[illegible] *i. e.*, the primary effect of an irritation from any sour[illegible] traction. The oscillatory changes which soon result (r[illegible] are different with the different kinds of irritation. In [illegible] this reaction with which we are principally concerned. [illegible] cases the first effect is of no practical importance, [illegible] others, it is utilized. Heat, for example, causes an ini[illegible] constriction. The secondary vascular contractions bec[illegible] and become less and less the greater the duration of [illegible] cation, so that a prolonged application of heat result[illegible] mum dilatation. The remote effect is not a redde[illegible] skin from quickened circulation, but a slight dus[illegible] stasis of blood (passive hyperemia). These are th[illegible] fomentation, heating compress, radiant heat, etc. T[illegible] to heat is, therefore, of an atonic and depressing nat[illegible]

With a cold application to the skin, the first effect is [illegible] ing (vasoconstriction), but this is soon followed by a r[illegible] (active hyperemia) which, as we know, is maintained for [illegible] siderable length of time and does not result in a dusky c[illegible] Here, the oscillations in vascular calibre are stimulated in [illegible] a way that they are greater, more forcible and do not te[illegible] passive dilatation. This is the reactionary effect of cold. [illegible] chanical irritation, such as friction and percussion, give sim[illegible] results. However, the two combined, as in the cold mitten f[illegible] tion, cold percussion douche, etc., give quicker, better, and [illegible] lasting effects.

Kellogg[7] records the following experiment as showing the [illegible] vantage of mechanical irritation combined with cold. A c[illegible] compress and a percussion douche, both at 65° F., were simul[illegible] taneously administered to opposite and corresponding parts for [illegible] five seconds. After the cold compress the reaction appeared [illegible] forty seconds, whereas, after the cold percussion douche, the [illegible] circulatory reaction appears in five seconds.

7 Rational Hydrotherapy, 1901, p. 1126.

As the cold application is prolonged, the amplitude of the vascular oscillations becomes less and less until the condition is more nearly that of a constant vasoconstriction. "Following the process to an extreme point, we find that, by intensely low temperatures, the circulation in the capillaries is at first accelerated and the number of blood corpuscles diminished, when the part becomes pale. Quickly following this acceleration there is a stasis in the capillaries, while in the smaller veins and arteries, the slowing of the circulation is followed by brief and rapid oscillations, which become slower and more infrequent. Slowly the vessels become more pale, less transparent, and finally the movements cease."[8] This is, of course, providing reaction occurs at all, as it usually does if the cold is applied to a limited area. If the reaction does not occur, as where there is a general application of cold without friction, the skin becomes blanched and goose flesh appears, due to the contraction of the erectores pilorum. In case an ice-cold application remains long enough on one part, paralysis of the vessels results and a consequent dilatation.

Saline substances and certain gaseous irritants, chief among which is CO_2, when applied to the skin, also produce an active dilatation and contraction of the blood-vessels which results in quickened circulation and increase of blood in the skin. Saline baths are often more effective than plain water. Carbon dioxide and salines are most effectively used in the combination constituting the Nauheim or effervescent bath. Here the cool water itself plays some part, since temperatures somewhat below neutral are used. "So marked is the effect of this skin tonic that in severe cases of dilatation (of the heart) the almost incredible result is attained, of causing the apex actually to retract three quarters of an inch toward its normal position in a single treatment."[9] The heart beat is decreased in frequency and increased in force; its previously labored beat gives way to a steady, easy movement and, in some cases, we have actually been unable to detect murmurs which were previously distinctly heard. These results are by all conceded to be due chiefly, if

---

8 Baruch—Principles and Practice of Hydrotherapy, p. 39.

9 Baruch—Ibid., p. 10.

not almost wholly, to the stimulation of the great vascu
of the skin, the so-called "peripheral heart" or "skin h
When we consider the magnitude of this peripheral hea
longer becomes a wonder that its influence is so po
Vierordt estimates the combined calibres of the capillari
systemic circulation at 800 times that of the aorta in cro
tion. With this fact in mind, we may gather some idea
magnitude of the effect produced by saline and gaseous in
acting simultaneously upon such a great system of co
tubes. Such results can not be obtained by digitalis or
nine. That these results are not due to simple atonic va
tation is shown by the fact that these patients are freq
cyanotic, an evidence of already existing venous stasis and
dilatation, while on emerging from the bath, the skin
brighter and more normal color. Neither vasodilatati
vasoconstriction are conducive to a slower, easier heart
The result is, therefore, not a passive change, but an activ

Electric currents applied to the skin also stimulate the
motors. Near the positive pole vasoconstriction is ma
while in the region of the cathode vasodilatation occurs.
alternating or interrupted currents the vasomotors are
more powerfully stimulated. This stimulation is greatest
the sinusoidal current, the use of which in the obtaining of
cular effects will be mentioned more in detail in the part
therapeutics.

THE QUANTITY OF CIRCULATING FLUIDS

When we consider the total quantity of blood and lymph in
body, and the fact that the skin and adjacent tissues may con
tain a large share of this, or influence its distribution elsewhere,
we see how powerful an agent the skin is in controlling the cir
culation of these fluids in the various organs.

About one-thirteenth of the body weight is blood. Of this
nearly 30 per cent may be contained in the skin under the
influence of certain conditions and applications. Ordinarily
there is one-fourth of the blood in the heart, lungs, and great
blood-vessels; one-fourth in the liver; one-fourth in the skeletal
muscles; and one-fourth in other organs. The circulation of the

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

CHAPTER V

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY OF THE SKIN

(Continued)

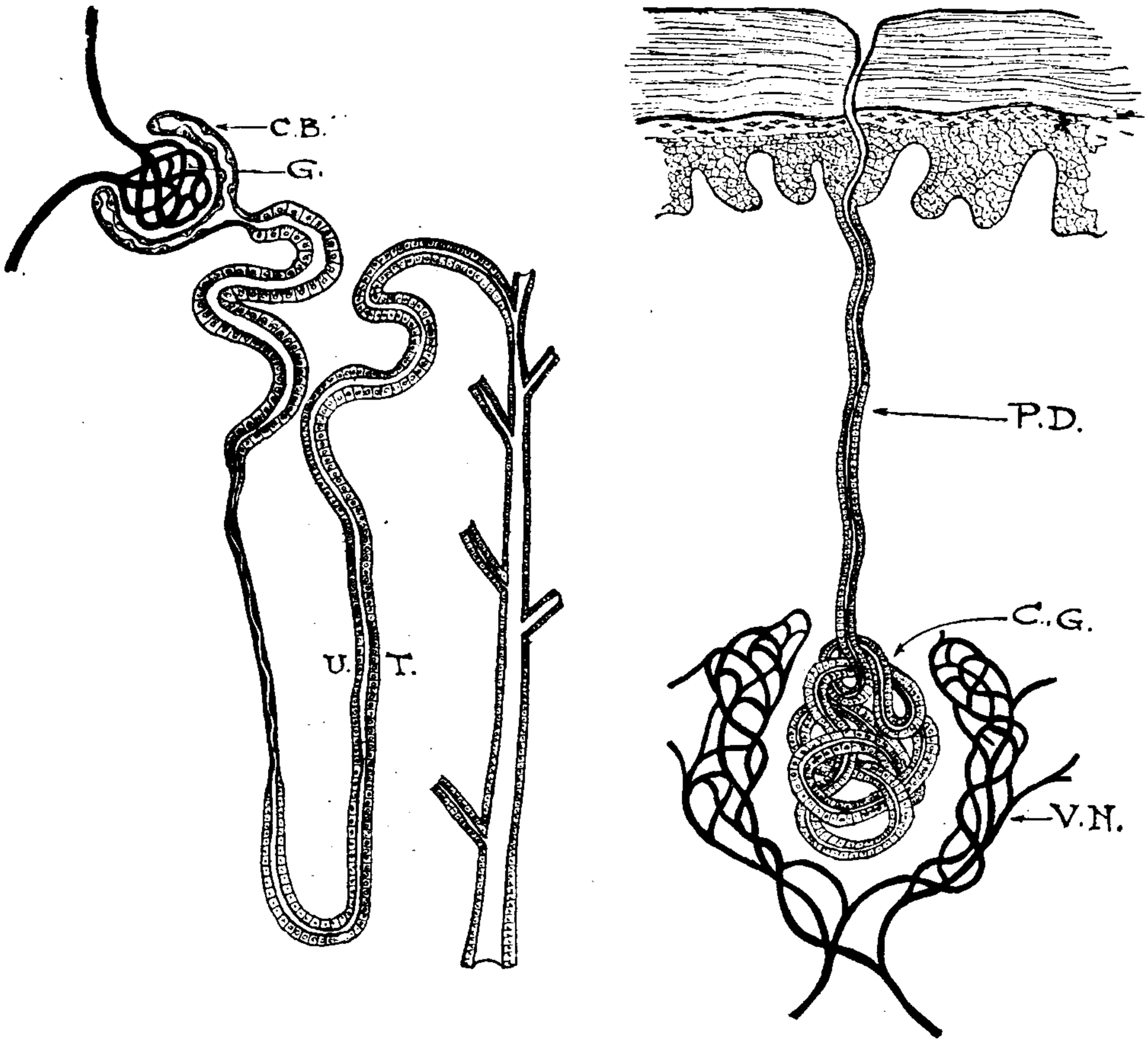
THE SUDORIPAROUS OR COIL GLANDS

THE sweat glands are distributed throughout the entire skin. They are most numerous in the axilla, palms, and soles, where they are also of unusual size. And, according to Krause, there are between 2000 and 3000 per square inch. The total number in the body is estimated at from 2,000,000 to 3,000,000, and their aggregate length uncoiled and placed end to end, as about eight miles; while the total surface of the ducts is estimated at 11,000 square feet. These figures serve to show the great importance of hygiene directed toward the maintaining of their normal functions and the tremendous effect of bad hygiene in causing disease.

The sweat gland consists of a long tubule, coiled at the deeper end. The globular coil (glomerulus) lies in the subcutaneous fat, or in the fat columns of the deeper part of the corium. Next to the epithelium in the coiled part of the tubule, are found smooth muscle fibers, disposed longitudinally, or spirally. These muscle fibers are doubtless concerned, along with the erectores pilorum, in the checking of perspiration which results from cold applications. Each tube is about four or five millimeters long. Three-fourths of this makes up the coil.[1] The sweat pore—that part of the duct lying in the epidermis—is a wall-less channel, spiral or straight in course. The outer end is funnel-shaped. The pore is in free communication with the juice spaces of the epithelium, as was mentioned in considering the lymphatics of the skin. It will be seen from

1 Bohm, Davidoff, and Huber—Histology, p. 397.

this fact that the drying of the skin is not alone a drying of the surface, but also a drying of the fluid found between the deeper cells of the epidermis. A capillary network of blood-vessels surrounds the coiled part of the gland. Nerves from the sympathetic neurons end in the secreting cells.



Figs. 13 and 14. Diagrams showing similarity in structure of the tubules and glomeruli of the kidney to the coil glands of the skin and their vascular network. As the uriniferous tubules are many times the length of the coil glands, no comparison of the size is indicated by the drawings. Fig. 13. U. T.—uriniferous tubule, C. B.—capsule of Bowman, G.—glomerulus. Fig. 14. Sudoriparous gland: E.—epithelium of skin, P. D.—perspiratory duct, C. G.—coiled portion of gland, V. N.—vascular network.

The secretion of the sweat glands varies with the character and amount of food and drink, the state of health, temperature and humidity of the air, etc. About 98 per cent. is water,[2] the remainder being chiefly salines, pigment, and a small amount of fat. In twenty-four hours, one and one-half or two pints of water are excreted. This is approximately double the amount

2 Hyde and Montgomery—Diseases of the Skin, p. 46.

exhaled by the lungs. Contrary to the general notion, the skin does not excrete large quantities of deleterious substances. *In health* the poisons excreted by the skin are very small in amount.

Vicarious Functions of the Skin. There is a great similarity in the structure of the tubules and glomeruli of the kidney to the coil glands of the skin and their vascular tufts (*Figs. 13 and 14.*). This very similarity in structure suggests a similarity in function. The perspiration and urine are both excretions and, to a great extent, may replace each other. In disease this fact becomes very evident. When the kidneys become incompetent to excrete certain wastes, these are often found in the sweat and, *vice versa*, when perspiration is interfered with, more work is thrown on the kidneys. In warm weather excessive perspiration occurs, while the urine is scanty. In cold weather the perspiration decreases and the urine increases in amount.

Urea, normal in the urine to the extent of about 2 per cent, is found in normal perspiration to the extent of 0.1 to 0.2 per cent. Schottein, in certain cases of the uremia of cholera, saw the whole body covered with a thin white crystalline layer of urea.[3] In cases of pyemia, where the staphylococcus albus was present in the blood, the sweat induced by packs has shown abundance of the staphylococcus. The same is true of many other diseases in which there are germs in the blood (bacteriemia), the kidneys also excreting the germs. Bouchard[4] has called particular attention to the cutaneous eruptions which accompany auto-intoxication, especially with a dilated stomach, or after eating mussels, shell-fish, etc., as being due to ptomaines eliminated through the skin. In some forms of auto-intoxication various poisons excreted by the skin may be appreciated by their odors. The peculiar odors about prisons and asylums are doubtless more or less due to the volatile poisons of faulty nutrition which the skin exhales. In cases of jaundice bile pigments are found in the sweat so that sheets and bedding are stained by it. Sugar may be found in the sweat of diabetics and in the sweat of cases of forced glycosuria.

Dr. Herbert U. Williams of Buffalo has shown[5] that in

3 Baruch—Principles and Practice of Hydrotherapy, p. 26.
4 Auto-Intoxication in Disease, pp. 20, 162.
5 Journal of American Medical Association, April 17, 1909, p. 1276.

chronic nephritis the sweat glands are extensively altered in structure. He examined skin from various parts in seventy cases of chronic nephritis and found a variety of conditions including desquamation of the epithelium, cystic dilatation of the tubules, atrophy of the tubules, and cast-like material in the tubules. In fourteen cases arteriosclerosis of the arteries of the skin was present. In some cases hypertrophy of the epithelium was observed, even to the formation of two or three layers of cells. Dr. Williams states that these studies were undertaken because, from the earliest ages, faith has been placed in the efficacy of active skin excretion in cases of nephritis.

SUMMARY OF PERSPIRATORY INFUENCES

Factors which govern perspiration:—

1. Degree of internal or external heat.
2. Amount of water in the body.
3. Amount of blood in the skin.
4. Specific stimulation of secretory (sweat) nerves, as by electricity, shock (as cold sweat of fright, etc.), and drugs.

Conditions that give rise to increase of perspiration:—

1. Applications of heat, as hot air, hot water, steam, light.
2. Water drinking, especially of hot water.
3. Exercise.
4. Mechanical irritation, as friction or percussion.
5. Diaphoretic drugs.

Conditions that decrease perspiration:—

1. Chilling or cold applications.
2. Excretion of large amounts of water by the kidneys or bowels.
3. Certain drugs, as atropine.
4. Local applications of astringents, or cooling preparations, as alcohol, vinegar, talcum powder, etc.

The facts listed in the above outline are perhaps too evident as matters of every-day experience to need comment. In praetice we usually combine two or more of these measures in order to secure quicker and better results. For example, the drinking of cold water before and during the electric light bath

greatly enhances its results. The drinking of hot l... conjunction with hot packs, vapor or Russian baths, ... gives quicker results. Heat applied to the skin, not ... creases the blood about the coil glands, but also st... directly, the secreting cells. Cold, applied to the skin ... a decrease in the amount of the blood in the skin and ... the available fluid which the sweat glands utilize for ...

It has been shown that drugs having a specific acti... the sweat glands, cause alterations in the structure of th... ing cells, thus proving detrimental to their healthy act...

THE SEBACEOUS GLANDS

The sebaceous glands are sacciform in shape, found ... nection with the hairs of the skin and pouring their ... into the follicles of the hair and lanugo. The oil or s... produced by fatty degeneration of the gland cells them... more cells being produced next the basement membrane ... their place. It is designed to oil the hair and skin. The ... are situated next the hair follicle, between it and the ... muscle. Heat softens the oil in the glands, and thereby ... about its extrusion. Oil is a non-conductor of heat. Co... the skin with oil hinders both the elimination of heat wh... surrounding atmosphere is cold, and the absorption o... where the atmosphere is heated.

ABSORPTION BY THE SKIN

We are not greatly concerned in hydrotherapy with the ... sorptive powers of the skin. Oily substances are most re... absorbed, watery solutions not at all. Absorption of oily ... stances, alcoholic or ethereal solutions is greater after a wa... bath and cleansing of the skin, since the sweat pores are th... open and the increased circulation favors absorption.

Guy Hinsdale[6] gives an excellent summary of the subject o... cutaneous absorption from which we quote the following:—

"James Currie, who wrote one of the first and best books o... hydrotherapy, states that there is no increase of weight in th... bath, and while the skin remains sound and entire no absorp... tion of solid, liquid, or aeriform elastic fluid takes place on the ...

6 Hydrotherapy, p. 21.

surface. In the instances that are supposed to favor the contrary opinion, it will be found that the article is forced through the epidermis by mechanical pressure, or that the epidermis has been previously destroyed by injury or disease.''

Röhrig in experimenting with a bath to which potassium iodide had been added, found that full immersion in this for three-quarters of an hour gave rise to no iodine in the urine. Negative results have also been obtained by a number of other observers using various soluble substances. Substances causing injury to the skin may be absorbed, also ethereal solutions of certain alkaloids, but R. Winternitz found no evidence of the entrance of these substances from watery solutions.

One must, therefore, conclude that the mineral constituents of water—other than strong salines and gaseous constituents—have no effect whatever upon the human system when applied to the unbroken skin. Hinsdale makes a very apt statement of the case, "We are thus forced to the conclusion previously enunciated,—that the mineral waters, the analysis of which are quoted with such particular exactitude unto the third or fourth decimal place of grains per gallon, are neither more or less efficacious on that account.' '

CUTANEOUS RESPIRATION

To a limited extent, the skin acts as a respiratory organ when the temperature is above 85° F. About 0.5 per cent of the total gaseous exchange of the body occurs in this manner. The amount of CO_2 exhaled at 91.4° F. may be doubled at 93° F., increasing in about the same ratio as the watery excretion. Hot moist applications to the skin increase the elimination of CO_2, since diffusion of gases is hastened by the moistening of the surface and the larger amount of blood brought to the skin. It is said that, in diseases of the heart and lungs, where there is diminished excretion of CO_2 in the expired air, cutaneous exhalation is increased. In asthmatic dyspnœa when the skin becomes flushed and perspiration free, the dyspnœa is somewhat relieved. General perspiration produced by hot applications also relieves dyspnœa. In either case, however, the result is probably due more to the increased rate of the circulation of

blood through the lungs reflexly produced by the application, thus increasing the amount of oxygen there absorbed, than to increase of cutaneous respiration.

THE SKIN A HEAT REGULATOR

This will be considered again under the subject of heat regulation. The skin itself takes part in heat loss only, although through nerve connection, it is one of the most important means in controlling heat production. "The loss of heat by the skin amounts to about 77 per cent of the total heat loss."[7] It is, therefore, the most important factor in the elimination of heat. The regulation of heat loss by the skin is accomplished by variations in the amount of heat radiation and evaporation of sweat.

It will be seen that heat applied to the skin increases heat loss in two ways: first, by dilating the surface vessels and quickening cutaneous circulation, thus increasing heat radiation and convection; second, by inducing free perspiration and the consequent loss of heat by evaporation. Conversely, cold applied to the skin decreases heat loss by driving the blood inward and checking perspiration.

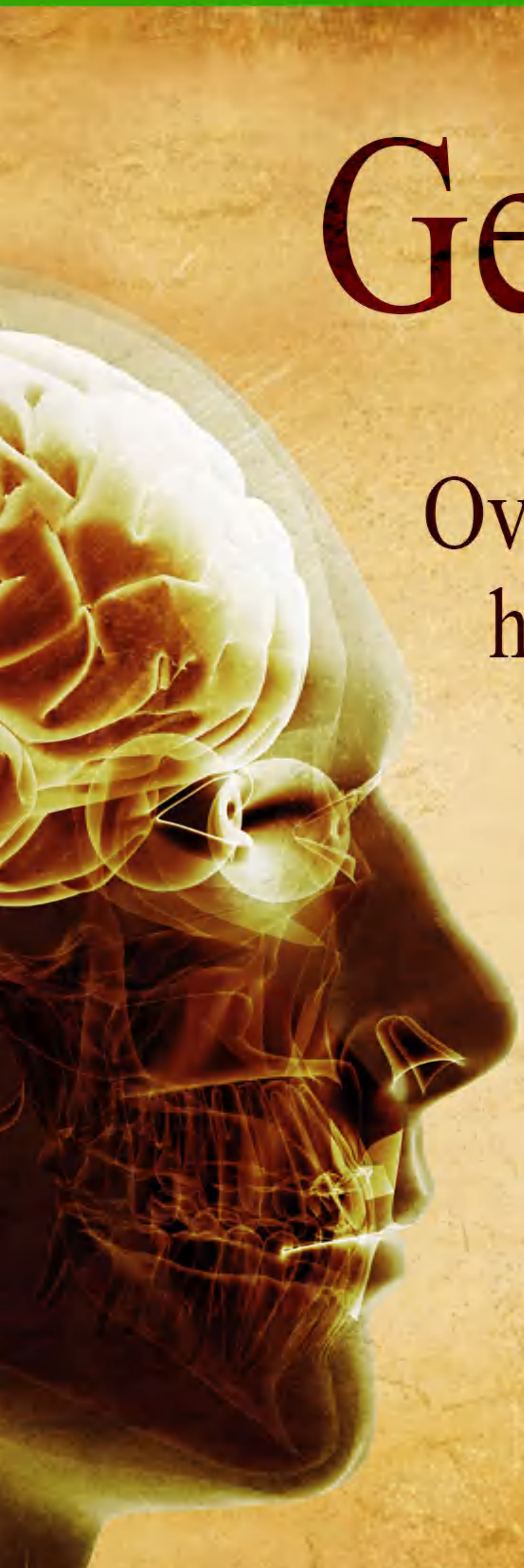
It is chiefly through the temperature nerves of the skin that this organ influences heat production. So profound is this influence that extensive burns, covering more than two-thirds of the body, are fatal through destruction of the sensory nerve terminals. Not only is heat elimination interfered with, but metabolism becomes excessive and heat production is immensely increased. Internal congestion and inflammations result, with a fatal termination.

After a drunken debauch the unfortunate victim is in great danger from exposure to cold, because the sensibility of the nerves is temporarily destroyed, so that the heat-regulating centers are not apprised of the danger. The boy who died from gilding of the skin to represent an angel is an example of the disturbance of the heat mechanism due to interference with the regulatory functions of the skin. After varnishing of the skin the temperature at first rises and then falls accompanied by symptoms of poisoning due to defective oxidation.

---

7 Starling—Human Physiology, p. 505.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

CHAPTER VI

THE CIRCULATION—REFLEX EFFE

DURING health, there are vasomotor influences co
playing upon the arteries in all parts of the body.
influences hold the vessels in "tone," *i. e.*, control the
oscillations in calibre, so that blood pressure is ma
These influences seem to emanate from a vasomotor
which is located in the medulla oblongata in the floo
fourth ventricle. "Irritation of this center causes con
of all the arteries and, in consequence, increase in
blood pressure." "Paralysis of the center causes rel
and dilatation of all the arteries, with enormous reduc
blood pressure. Under normal conditions the vasomotor
is in a state of moderate tonic excitation."[1] While this
exercises a controlling influence over all, it is not the
vasomotor center. "Centers for the vascular nerves,
vasomotor and vasodilator, are distributed throughout
entire spinal axis." (*Plate II.*) "They can be excited ref
although they are subordinated to the dominating center
the medulla oblongata."[2] "It is obvious that such a mec
ism as that described . . . is susceptible of reflex stimulat
through sensory nerves, and according to our general kno
edge we should suppose that a tonic center of this kind
have its tonicity increased (excitation) or deereased (inhi
tion)."[3] It is to the reflex stimulation of these centers th
we now wish to turn our attention, for through this channel
hydrotherapy produces some of its most important effects.

1 Landois—Physiology, 1905, p. 762.

2 Landois—Physiology, p. 735, see also Howell—Physiology, p. 564, and Foster—Physiology, 1898, p. 285.

3 Howell—Physiology, p. 560.

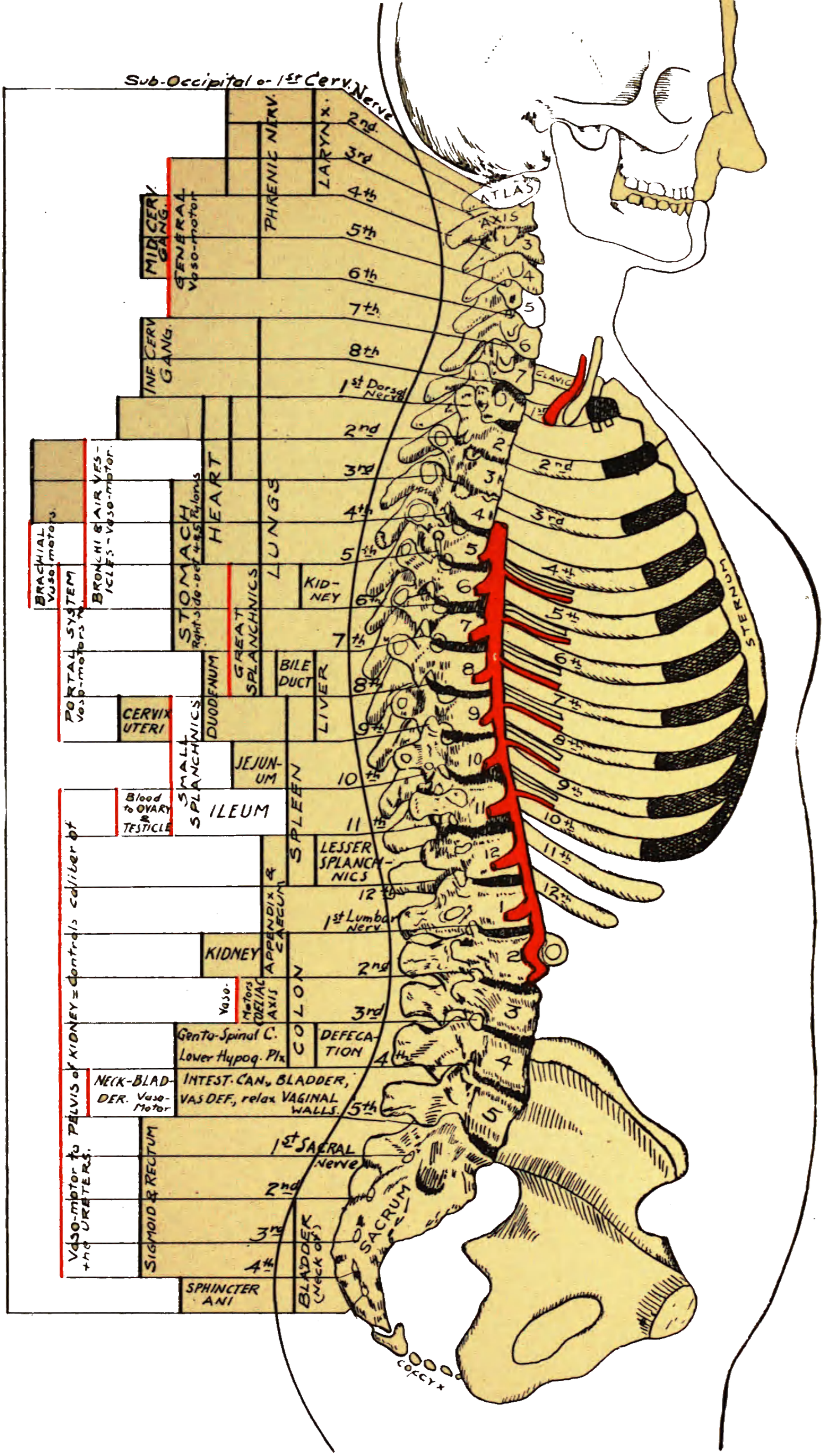


PLATE II. Visceral sympathetic nerves. Diagram showing the areas of exit from the spine of the sympathetic nerves controlling the various organs of the body. The red lines in the table indicate vasomotor areas. Stimulation of the centers from which these sympathetic nerves originate affect the organs supplied by them. (Pilgrim.)

Maximilian Schüller,[4] in experimenting on trephined rabbits, observed that severing single nerve trunks on one side of the animal produced a distinct (though transient) dilatation of the pial vessels on the corresponding side, thus proving that the blood-vessels of the piamater are held in steady tone by continuous excitation from the cutaneous sensory nerves. This result was observed only on the side of the severed nerve so that it could not have been due to shock or pain.

"Naumann has demonstrated clearly that the effects of external irritants upon the circulation within the body are really reflex. He separated the head of a frog from the body, leaving them connected by the medulla oblongata only. He next severed one leg, after preventing loss of blood by tying the vessels, so as to leave it connected with the body by the sciatic nerve. Now he applied thermal, chemical, and electric stimuli to the foot of the partially severed leg, while he observed, under the microscope, the mesentery of the frog. Shortly after gentle irritation of the peripheral endings of the sciatic nerve in the foot, the circulation in the vascular network of the lungs and mesentery was accelerated, and resumed the former condition slowly after the withdrawal of the irritant. A more severe irritation produced retardation of the flow, and even stasis occurred, as if the heart had become temporarily paralyzed. A strong irritant produced dilatation; a feeble one, constriction of the vessels. The effect of these peripheral irritations on the heart was also noted. A strong irritation of the skin weakened its circulation; a feeble irritant strengthened it. As there was no possible vascular or nerve channel from the part irritated to the part thus visibly affected, the conclusion is inevitable that the effect is entirely reflex. Hot water acted precisely as other irritants."[5] These experiments also prove that there are two reflex means by which the circulation may be influenced, *viz.*, reflex stimulation of the vasomotors, producing changes in vascular calibre, and reflex stimulation of the heart muscle itself. Another point, brought out by the experiments of Röhrig, is that when intense cutaneous irritants pro-

4 Deutches Archiv für klinische Medicin, No. 4, 1874.

5 Baruch—Principles and Practice of Hydrotherapy, p. 37.

duce considerable slowing of the heart beat, they also increase its force. This is the effect of a prolonged cold application, whether general, as with the Brand bath, or local, as with the ice bag to the precordia.

REFLEX AREAS

The fact of reflex stimulation being established, we may next consider the location (topography) of the various reflex areas. While the brain, heart, and other viscera may be reflexly influenced by stimuli applied to many different cutaneous areas, some even very remote from these organs, the maximum effects are produced by stimulation of certain very definite and well recognized areas. In general, it may be said that the skin over an organ is reflexly related with that organ. In most cases, it is not difficult to trace the nerve connection.

"In general, the skin overlying an organ is reflexly associated with it, which is the reason why applications of electricity over an organ usually influence it, and not altogether because the current is passed through the organ. When these areas are studied comparatively, it is noted that they are practically the same as those regions pointed out as showing reflex pain, which would suggest a nervous path from the organ to the skin and from the skin to the organ, the terminations of which are in the same visceral and cutaneous fields."[6] So definite and circumscribed are some of these areas that B. G. A. Moynihan has frequently observed, in cases of duodenal ulcer, a small hypersensitive spot in the skin covering the abdomen, directly over the ulcerated area. It is no larger than a six-pence and he attaches much value to this phenomenon in differentiating ulcer.[7]

It must not, however, be supposed that the reflex path from the viscera to the skin over which pain is referred is the same path as that utilized in therapeutics for reflex effects upon the internal organs. Nor are the skin areas to which pain is referred *always* the same areas that should be utilized to

---

6 S. D. Ludlum—The Relationship between the Spinal Cord, the Sympathetic System and Therapeutic Measures—Journal of American Medical Association, May 2, 1908, pp. 1401—1405.

7 W. D. Haines—The Differential Diagnosis of Duodenal Ulcer and Gall Stones—Surgery, Gynecology, and Obstetrics, March, 1908, p. 279.

influence reflexly the organ in which the cause of pain is located. For example, in the case of liver and gall-bladder disease, there is frequently a pain in the region of the right shoulder or shoulder blade, but it is not to this region that applications are made to relieve distress due to hepatic or biliary affections.

The various cutaneous areas to which the pain or tenderness, due to visceral disease, is referred, are spoken of as the *dermatomes of Head*. They are in some cases of considerable service in diagnosis and are sometimes serviceable as a guide in the placing of therapeutic applications. They can not, however, be implicitly relied upon for either purpose. Relative to this unreliability Abrams[8] says, "The elicitation of the dermatomes of Head is a tedious method of examination and not always accompanied by satisfactory results for the reason that a great amount of experience is necessary. Alsberg in the examination of two hundred women (with gynecological affections) found cutaneous areas of hyperalgesia in only seventeen, ten of whom were hysterical. Therefore, he could attribute no diagnostic import to the zones in question beyond commenting on the fact that hysterical stigmata must be excluded before the zones of hyperalgesia could be regarded as trustworthy." Diagnosis and therapeutics based on para-spinal tenderness must, therefore, be of a highly imaginative character and especially so when approached from the standpoint of a prejudgment as to the causes of disease and consequently its treatment.

The law that the skin over an organ is reflexly related with that organ may be regarded as an *amplification* of Hilton's law: *The principal nerve to a joint not only supplies the articular surfaces but also some of the main muscles that move that joint and the skin over these muscles.*[9] In the case of the viscera, however, the deeper part of the reflex arc consists of a sympathetic neuron.

THE REFLEX ARC

The reflex arc consists of several parts (*Frontisplate and Fig. 15.*). In general, the following is the path taken by a stimulus arising in the skin from a thermic application and traced as a

8 Spondylotherapy, p. 71.
9 Treves—Applied Anatomy, 1901, p. 209.

reflex stimulus to the organ underlying the skin surface treated. From the skin it is conveyed by a sensory (temperature) nerve along a nerve trunk to the posterior root of the spinal nerve; entering the posterior root ganglion, where the fiber is seen to be the distal axon of a T-cell, it passes on through the central axon of the T-cell into the posterior side of the spinal cord. On entering the cord, the fiber immediately divides into an ascending and descending branch, both located in the posterior white columns and which give off collaterals to the gray matter.[10] The ones we are concerned with end in tufts about the cells of the column of Clark. According to Starling,[11] the vasomotor center in the medulla corresponds in position to the column of Clark which is doubtless that which represents the vasomotor center throughout the rest of the cord. From these cells, axons pass either into Gower's tract and end in the cerebellum,[12] or pass out with the anterior root, and through the white ramus to the ganglion of the lateral sympathetic chain.[13] Passing directly through this or up or down through an adjacent ganglion, they end in a peripheral ganglion from which the viscus is supplied.

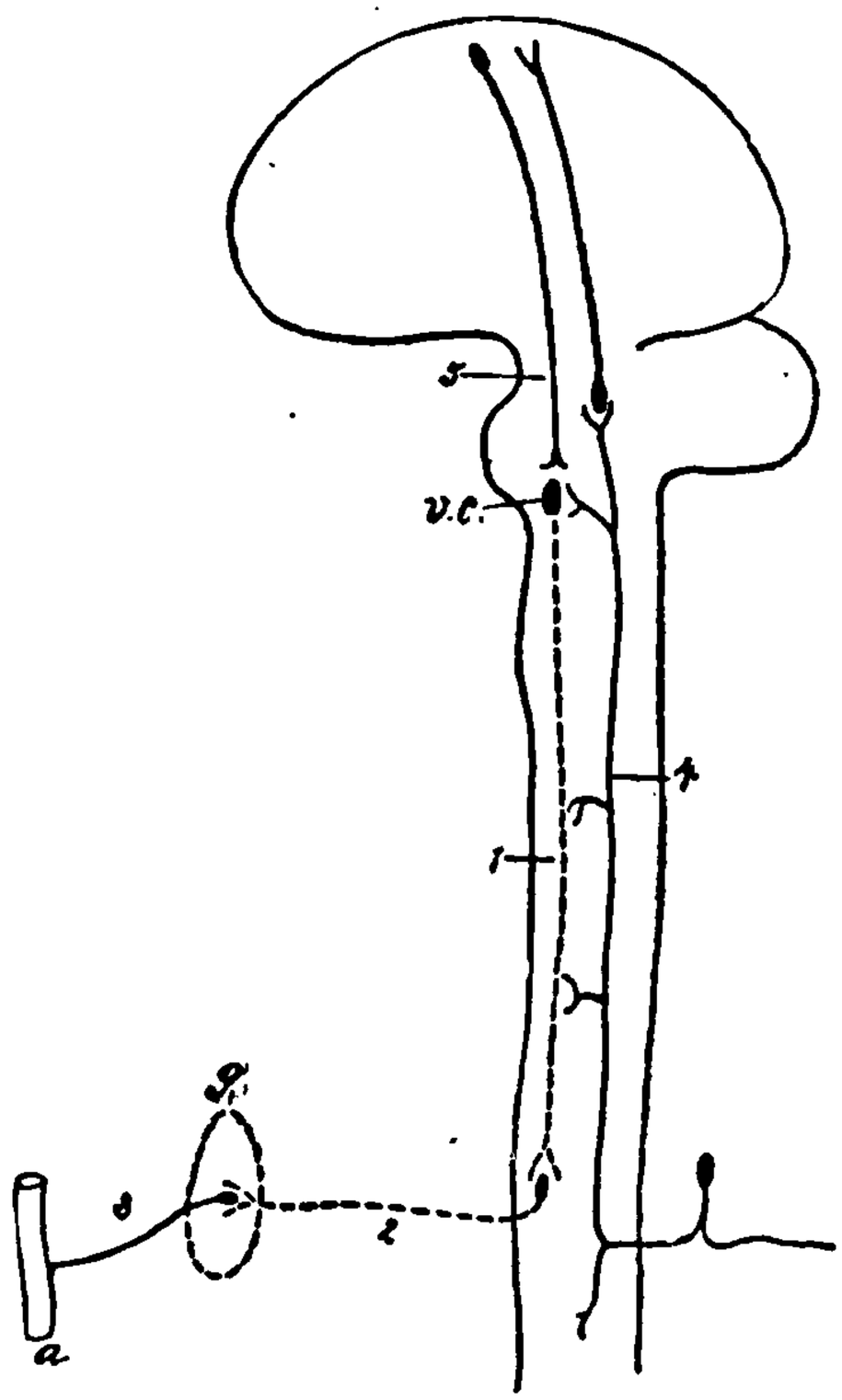


Fig. 15. Diagram to show path of vasoconstrictor fibers from vasoconstrictor center to the blood-vessels and the path for reflex stimulation. v. c.—the vasoconstrictor center, 1.—the central neuron of the vasoconstrictor path, 2.—the spinal neuron (preganglionic), 3.—the sympathetic neuron (ganglionic), a.—the arteriole, 4.—the sensory fibers of the posterior root connecting by collaterals with the vasoconstrictor center and subcenters, 5.—fiber from cortical cell acting upon the vasoconstrictor center. (Howell.)

"The fibers of the white ramus which pass through the ganglion and go to the periphery are known as the *splanchnic efferent*

10 Whitaker—Anatomy of the Brain and Spinal Cord, p. 38.
11 Physiology, p. 259.
12 Ludlum—Journal of American Medical Association, May 2, 1908, p. 1403.
13 Whitaker—Ibid, p. 39.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

tion, is carried to the spinal cord by the nerve fibers of the thoracic nerves which end in the same segments in which the accelerator fibers of the heart arise. (*Frontisplate.*) The stimulus produced by the afferent impulse (sensation) upon the cells in the column of Clark is conveyed out by the axons of these cells through the anterior roots and of the white rami reaches the sympathetic ganglia in which they pass to the inferior cervical ganglion, and thence by the inferior (sympathetic) cardiac nerve, to the deep cardiac plexus and the heart muscle. The accelerator mechanism is depressed, the heart beats slower and with greater force, the proportionately greater action of the inhibitory nerves.

An ice bag over the heart produces its action by depressing the accelerator (sympathetic) nerves and not by stimulating the vagus, as has been claimed by some; which latter, it will be seen, would be impossible, since the prolonged cold of the ice bag exerts a depressing and not a stimulating effect, which it must be the case were slowing produced through the vagus.

The Stomach. The skin over the pit of the stomach is supplied by the seventh and eighth intercostal nerves.[17] The greater splanchnic nerve is formed by branches from the thoracic ganglia between the fifth or sixth and the ninth or tenth. It terminates in the semilunar ganglion of the solar plexus.[18] From the solar plexus, (cœliac part) fibers accompany the blood vessels to the stomach.

"The nerves supplying the abdominal muscles and the skin are derived from the lower intercostal nerves and are intimately connected with the sympathetic nerves supplying the abdominal viscera through the lower thoracic ganglia from which the splanchnic nerves are derived."[19]

These reflex arcs may be traced out in the case of other organs and areas. While an application to the skin over an organ gives a maximum effect, applications to even very distant areas may be quite effective. For example, hot applications to the feet do not, under ordinary conditions, influence reflexly the circulation of the brain. But under conditions of vasomotor

17 Gray's Anatomy, 1905, p. 997.
18 Ibid, p. 1079.
19 Ibid, p. 997.

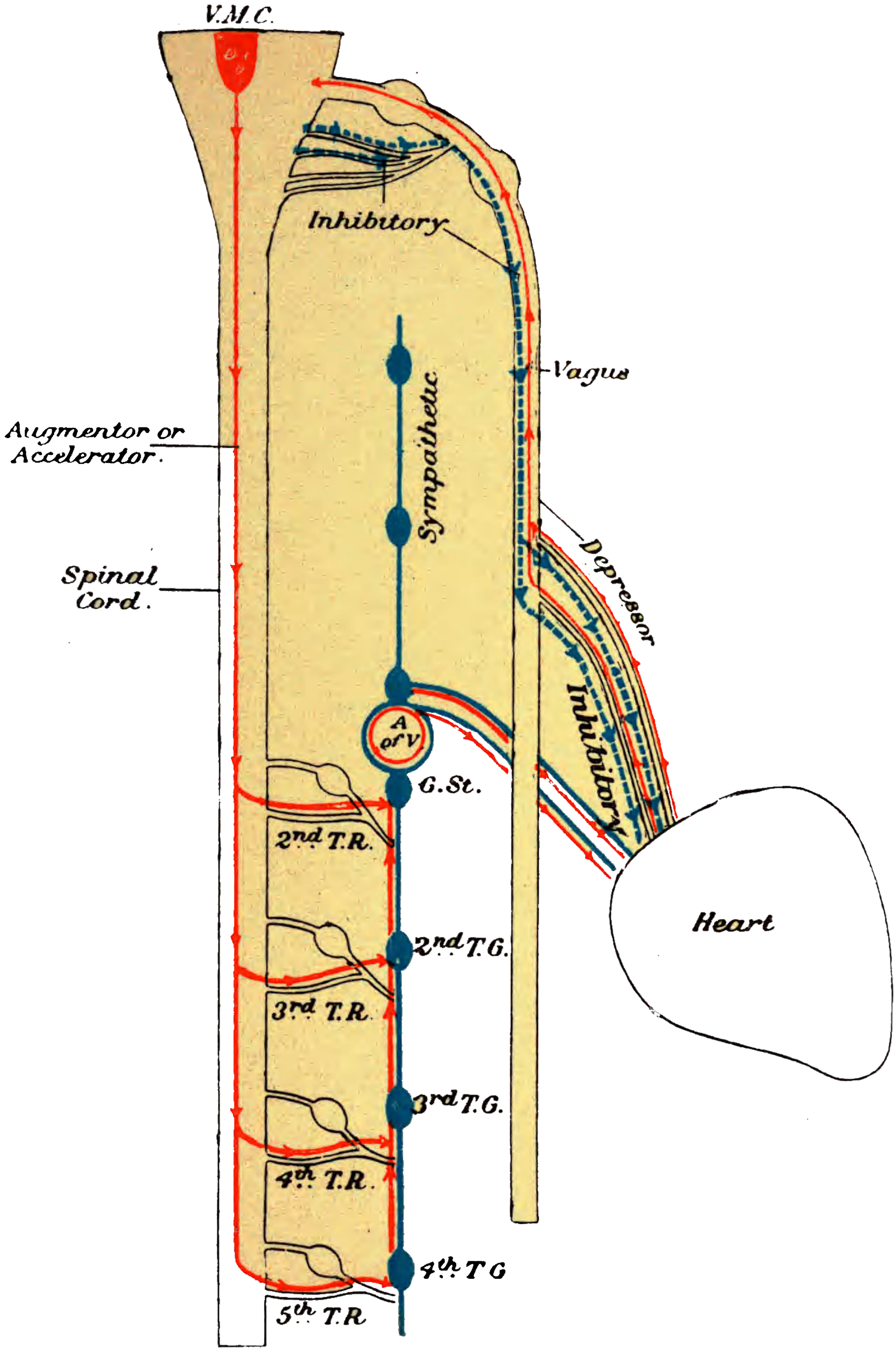


PLATE III The innervation of the heart. (Powell.)

instability, such as that following a sunstroke, a hot foot bath may cause congestion of the brain (personal observation).

SPECIAL REFLEX AREAS

The following are the principal reflex areas employed in hydrotherapy (*Fig. 16.*):—

1. The skin areas of the face, scalp, and back of the neck are reflexly related with the brain.

2. The skin of the neck is reflexly related with the pharynx and larynx.

3. The back of the neck is reflexly related with the mucous membrane of the nose.

4. The skin of the chest (front, back, and sides), dorsal region, and shoulders has reflex relations with the lungs.

5. The precordia is in very perfect reflex relation with the heart through its accelerator nerves.

6. The hands are related with the brain and nasal mucous membrane.

7. The skin over the lower right chest, with the liver.

8. The skin over the lower left chest, with the spleen.

9. The skin over the lower third of the sternum, with the kidneys (Kellogg.).

10. The mid-dorsal spine (from fifth to seventh vertebræ) is related with the stomach.

11. Lower dorsal and lumbar spine, with the kidneys and intestines.

12. The lower lumbar and sacral spine, with the pelvic organs —uterus, ovaries, bladder, and rectum.

13. The epigastrium, with the stomach.

14. The skin of the entire abdomen, especially that of the umbilical region, is reflexly related with the intestines. The fact that the pain of colic, appendicitis, etc., is referred to the region of the umbilicus is an evidence of a similar nervous connection.

15. The lower abdomen, including the groin and also the upper inner surfaces of the thighs are reflexly related with the pelvic organs.

16. The skin of the feet and legs is reflexly related with the

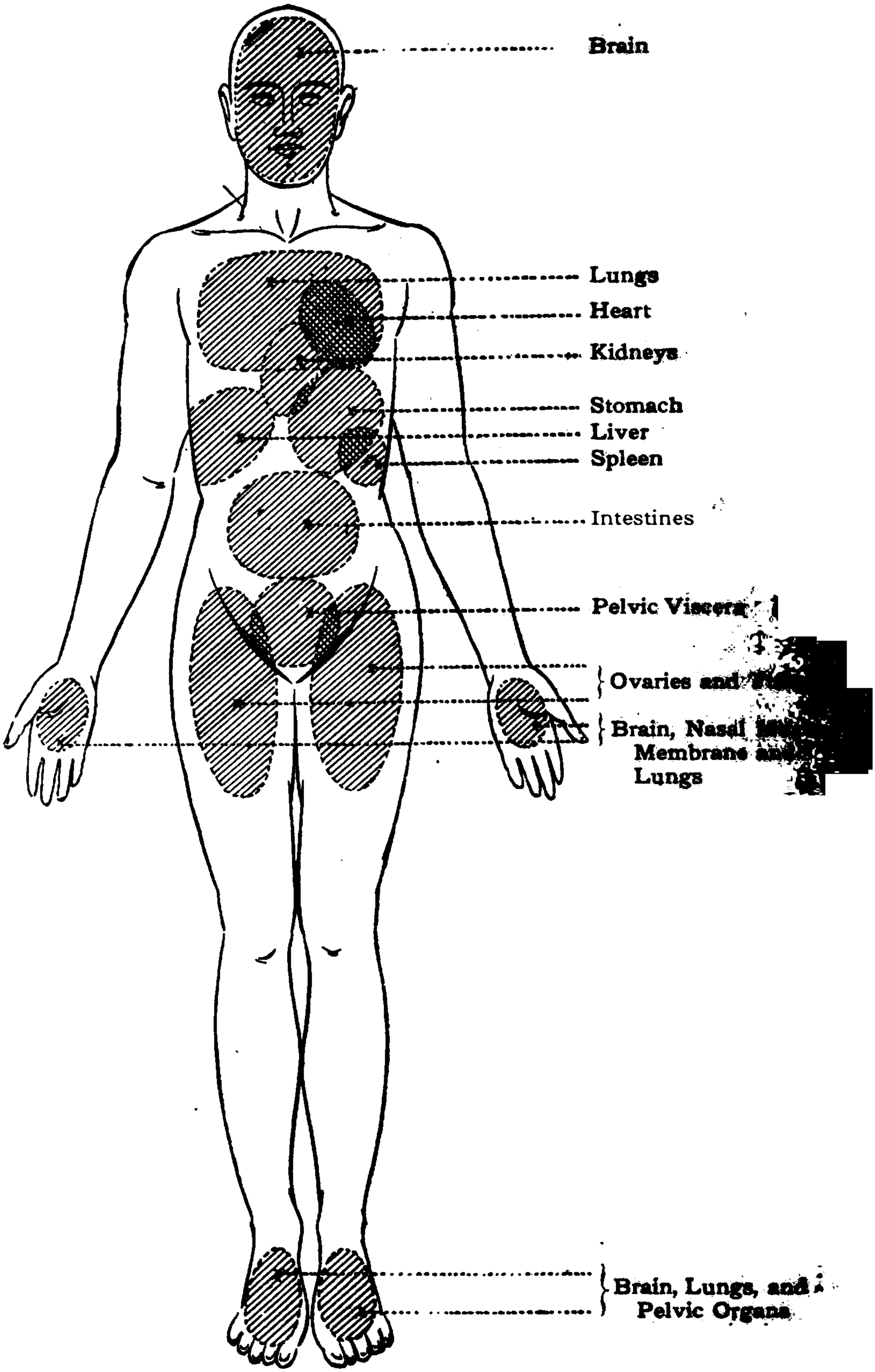


Fig. 16. Anterior reflex areas. (Kellogg.)

brain, lungs, and pelvic organs. This is not as powerful a reflex area as some others.

More practically stated, the circulation, secretory, and muscular activities of the viscera may be influenced *reflexly* by applications as follows:—

1. The brain, by applications to the *head*, *face*, *back of neck*, hands, and feet.

2. The nasal mucous membrane, by applications to the *face*, hands, and *cervical* and *upper dorsal spine*.

3. The lungs, by applications to the *chest*, *shoulders*, and dorsal spine.

4. The heart, by applications to the *precordia* and upper dorsal spine.

5. The stomach, by applications to the *epigastrium* and mid-dorsal spine.

6. The liver, by applications to the lower right chest and the abdomen.

7. The spleen, by applications to the lower left chest and the abdomen.

8. The kidneys, by applications to the lower third of the sternum, lower dorsal and lumbar spine.

9. The intestine, by applications to the *abdomen*, and lower dorsal and lumbar spine.

10. The bladder, by applications to the *lower abdomen*, *inner surfaces of thighs*, and the feet.

11. The uterus, by applications to the lumbar and *sacral* regions, *lower abdomen*, *inner surfaces of thighs*, *breasts*, feet, and cervix.

In the large majority of cases, the ventral areas give stronger reflex effects than the dorsal areas. This is doubtless for the reason that, with a ventral area, the effect is concentrated upon a single organ, while in the case of a dorsal area, limited to the region of the spine itself, the effect would be spread out over several organs, or possibly, the viscera of both the chest and abdomen. "If an ice bag is placed in contact with the whole length of the spine, the same effect on the heart and lungs is produced as that which is desired on the intestines, and the whole process is negatived, whereas, if limited anteriorally to

the sixth segment, the effect is localized on the ... viscera.'' [20]

Definition of Reflex. A reflex effect is then an indirect ... produced through nerve connection. An application ... part of the body which influences, through nerve con... another part of the body is said to exert a reflex ... Abrams [21] gives the following definition: "A reflex ... involuntary production of activity in a part brought ... conduction of a stimulus along an afferent (sensory) ... the motor cells in the cord or medulla. This stimulus ... verted into an impulse by the motor cells, which im... then conducted to a part by means of an efferent (motor) ...

CLASSES OF REFLEX EFFECTS

Having established the fact of reflex action and tr... some of the reflex arcs, let us now consider the nature ... various reflex effects. We have already noted that th... three kinds of fibers which make up the splanchnic ... *viz.*, the *secretory*, *viscero-motor*, and *vasomotor*. These ... the chief functions of the various viscera and by these ... bolism itself and all other functions are controlled. ... applying heat or cold or other stimuli to the segment ... skin whose endings are in a segment in which arise vi... motor, vasomotor, or other activities, we can reflexly affect ... organ supplied by these tracts. That this can be done ... been shown by the researches of Brown-Sequard and oth... . . . chiefly through the vasomotors. The change may ... observed by heat and cold, impact of water, hand pre... (steady or alternated), electricity, mechanical stimulation ... other means, yet the underlying principle remains the sa... The application of these physical forms of therapy must ... made more and more accurately to get the best effect.'' [22]

There are two general classes of effects produced by th... applications. They may be designated as *pressor and depres...* as *stimulant and calmative*, or *excitant and sedative*. Becau...

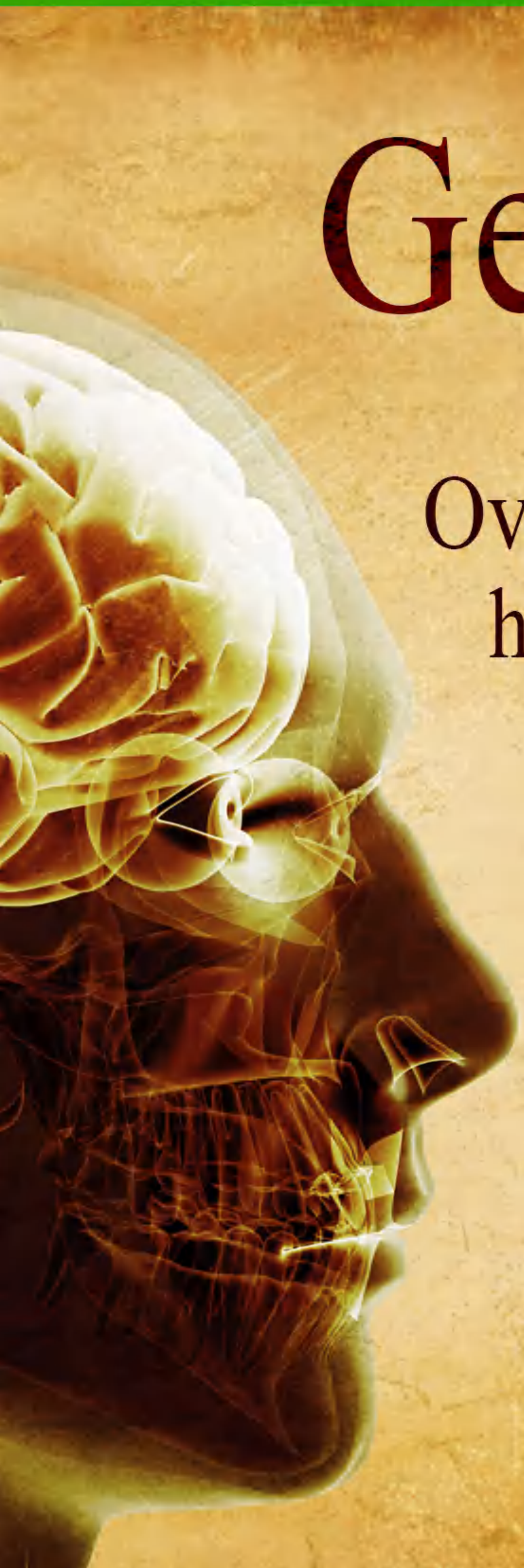
---

20 S. D. Ludlum—Journal American Medical Association, May 2, 1908.

21 Spondylotherapy, p 26.

22 S. D. Ludlum—Ibid, pp. 1403, 1405.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

the blood going to the brain and head generally. Such an application is called a *proximal application*, since it is located between the heart and the part supplied.

2. Prolonged immersion of the hands in cold water causes contraction of the vessels of the brain and nasal mucous membrane.

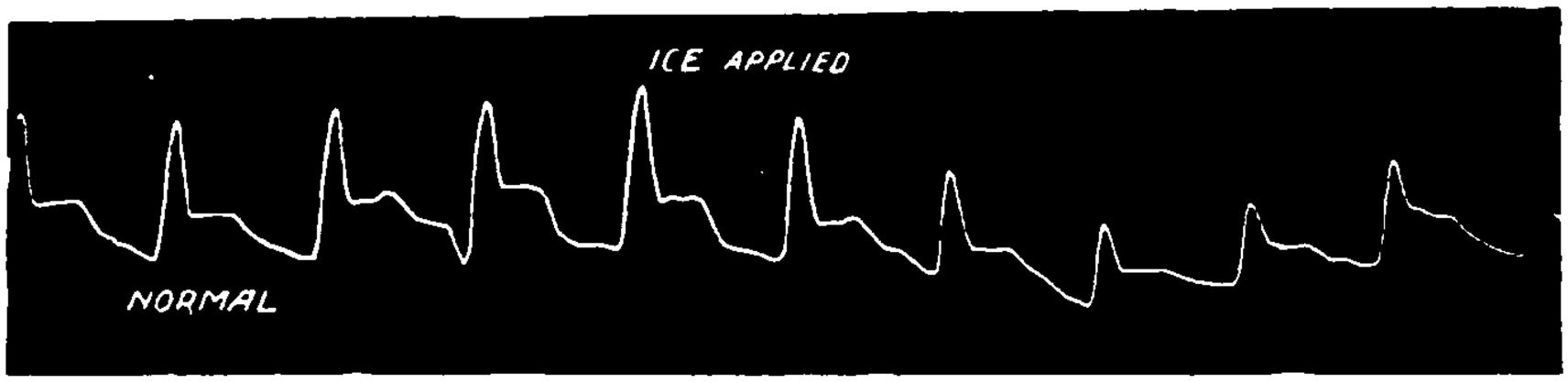


Fig. 17. Sphygmographic tracing of radial pulse showing contraction of the vessels of the forearm resulting from application of ice to bend of elbow. (Kellogg.)

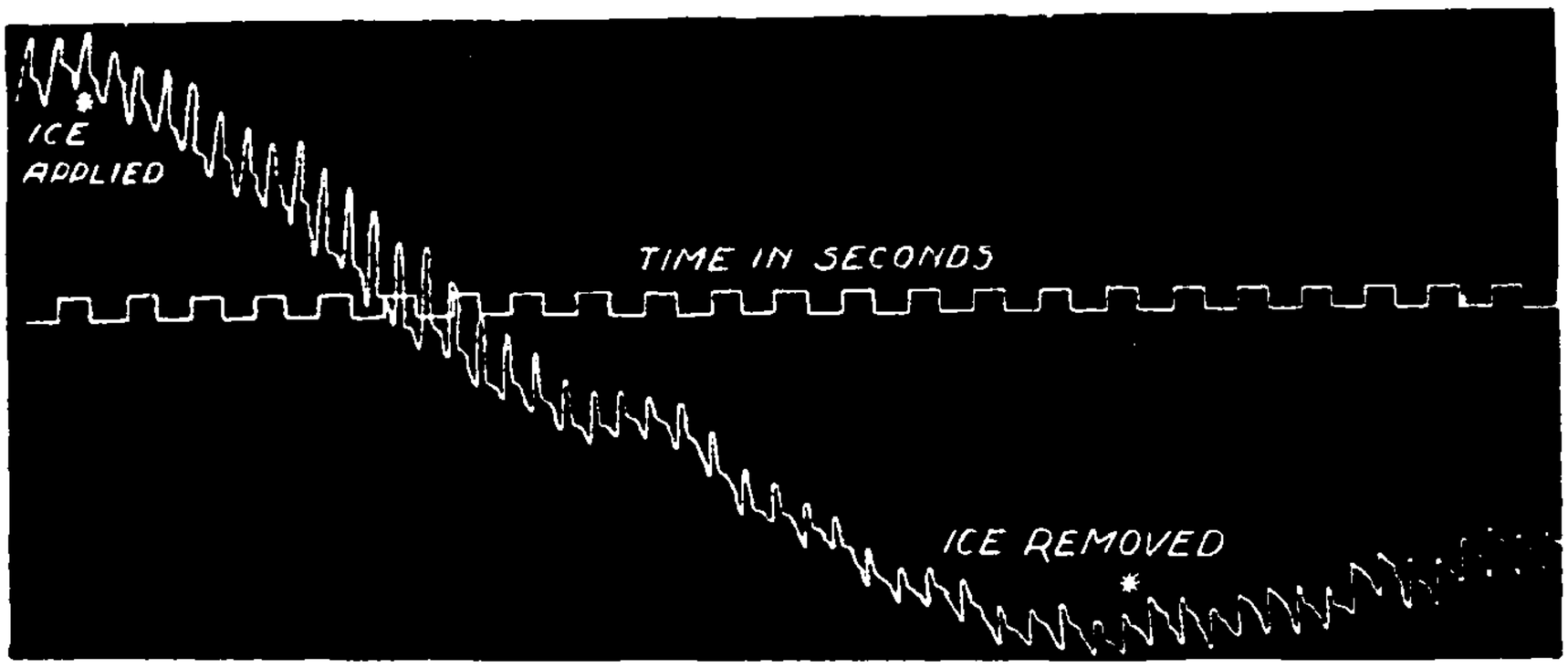


Fig. 18. Plethysmograph tracing showing diminution in the volume of the forearm resulting from application of ice to elbow. (Kellogg.)

3. Prolonged cold to the cervical and upper dorsal region causes contraction of the vessels of the nasal mucous membrane and lungs.

4. An ice bag applied to the precordia slows the heart rate, increases its force, and raises arterial blood pressure.

5. An ice bag applied over the thyroid gland (in parenchymatous goitre) decreases its vascularity and lessens its glandular activity.

6. Long cold applications to the chest, at the back, front, or sides, contract the blood-vessels of the lungs, (*Figs. 19 and 20.*) slow respiration, and increase its depth.

7. An ice bag to the epigastrium or mid-dorsal region causes contraction of the vessels of the stomach and lessens gastric secretion, while the application continues.[23]

8. A long cold application to the pelvis, groin, or inner surface of the thighs contracts the blood-vessels of the pelvic organs.

9. A long cold sitz bath causes firm contraction of the uterine muscle, thereby reducing subinvolution.

10. A much prolonged, very cold application to the sacrum, such as a large ice bag, dilates the blood-vessels of the uterus, thus increasing menstrual flow and inhibiting pain. This

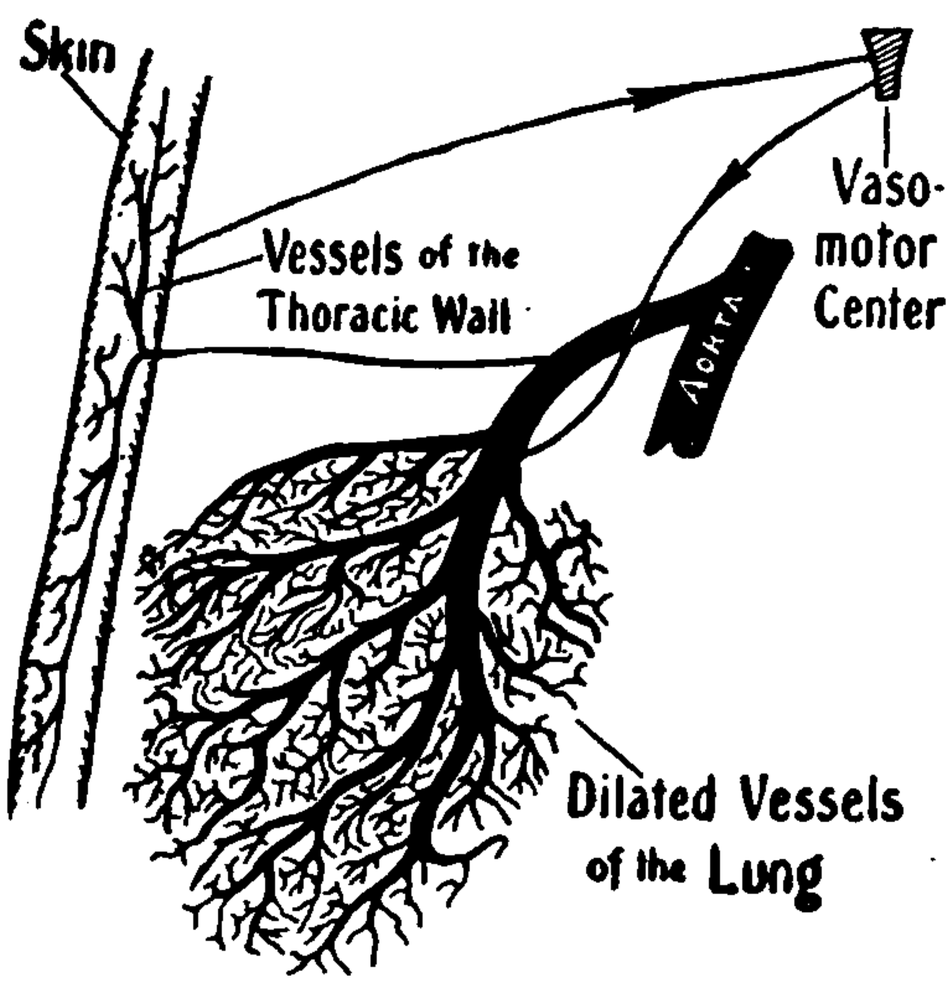


Fig. 19 Diagram showing congestion of the lungs.

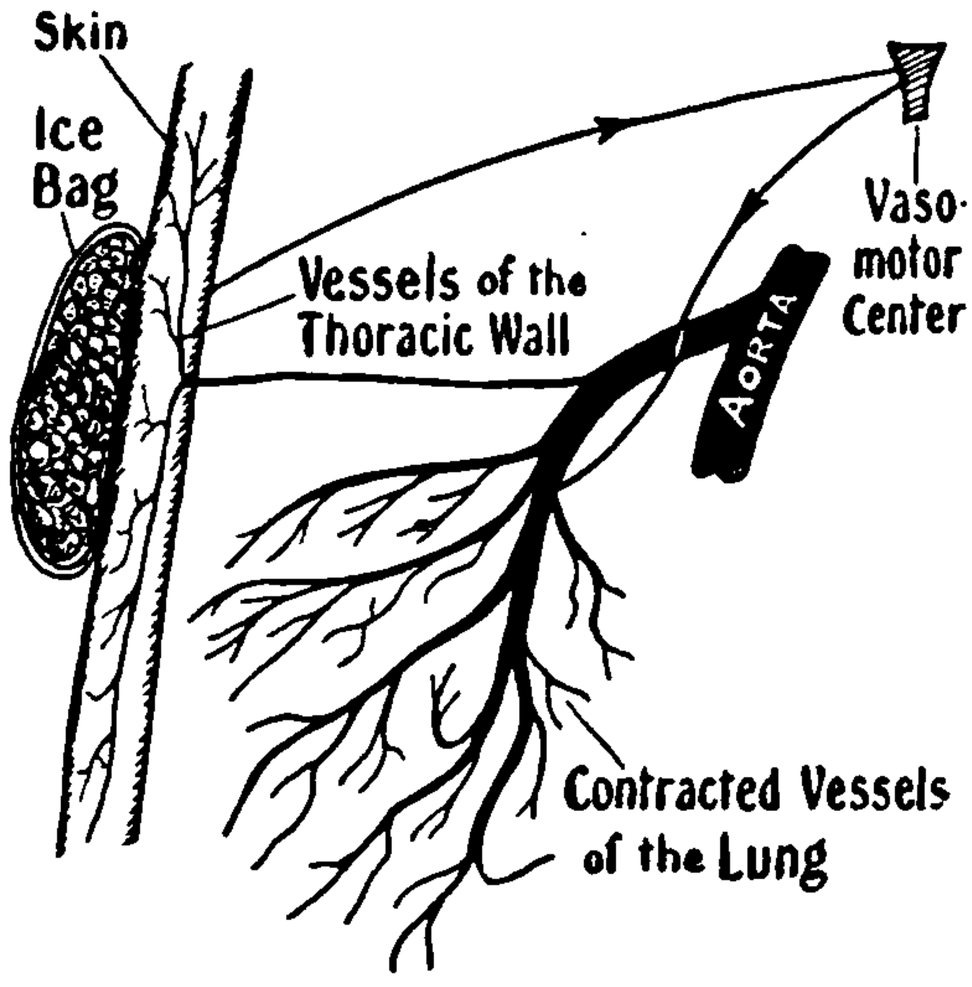


Fig. 20. Diagram showing reflex action of an ice bag in decreasing congestion of the lungs.

paralyzes the reflex. The posterior reflex area being in less perfect relation with the uterus than the anterior area, makes this possible.

11. Long cold applications to the face, forehead, scalp, and back of the neck cause contraction of the blood-vessels of the brain.

12. An ice bag to the lower third of the sternum or over the lower dorsal and upper lumbar regions causes contraction of the blood-vessels of the kidney.

13. Ice bags applied to the sides of the neck just below the jaw contract the blood-vessels of the pharynx.

---

23 See experiments by Kasanski in chapter on peptogenic effects.

Special Reflex Effects of Short Cold. *Short cold applications to a reflex area produce tonic and stimulating effects in the deep part by virtue of the reaction which soon follows. The same is true of alternating applications of heat and cold.*

1. Short cold applications to the face and head stimulate mental activity.

2. A short cold application to the chest, as a cold rub, friction, or cold douche, at first increases the respiration rate. Soon it results in deeper respiration with a somewhat slowed rate.

3. A cold douche to the precordia or slapping the chest with a cold towel increases both the heart rate and force. After the cessation of the application the rate decreases, while the force remains increased.

4. A short very cold percussion douche to a reflex area causes active dilatation of the blood-vessels in the related viscera,—as a short cold douche to the sacrum or feet causes dilatation of the vessels of the uterus.

5. Short or moderately prolonged cold applications to the breasts cause vigorous contractions of the uterus—of use in inertia uteri.

6. Short very cold applications to abdomen, hands, or feet cause contraction of the muscles of the bladder, bowels, and uterus.

7. A short cold douche or ice bag intermittently to the lower third of the sternum causes increased renal secretion.

8. A very short cold douche to the liver causes active dilatation of its vessels and increases its glandular activity.

9. The reaction from a moderately prolonged cold application to the epigastrium causes increased gastric secretion.[23]

Reflex Effects of Hot Applications.

1. A very much prolonged hot application to a reflex area produces passive dilatation of the blood-vessels of the related organ.

2. Long hot applications to the precordia and to many other parts increase the heart rate, decrease its force, and lower blood pressure.

3. Hot moist applications to the chest facilitate respiration and expectoration.

4. Long, moderately hot applications over the stomach after meals increase gastric secretion and hasten digestion. The same, if given before a meal, decrease gastric secretion because of the atonic reaction which ensues.

5. Prolonged hot applications to the abdomen lessen peristalsis, and in case of intestinal colic, relieve pain due to muscular spasm.

6. Prolonged hot applications to the pelvis, as a fomentation, hot pack, or sitz bath, relax the muscles of the bladder, rectum, and uterus and dilate their blood-vessels, thus relieving tenesmus in these organs and increasing the menstrual flow.

7. A large, hot application to the trunk, as a hot pack, in biliary or renal colic, relaxes the muscles of the bile ducts, gall bladder, or ureters and aids in relieving the pain due to spasm of these muscles.

CHAPTER VII

THE CIRCULATION—HYDROSTATIC EFFECTS

NOT all of the circulatory effects occurring in organs and parts distant from an application can be explained by reflex action. In fact, many of the effects produced by hydriatic applications are quite contrary to what we might expect, were the results due alone to reflex stimulation. When Schüller, in the course of his experiments upon trephined rabbits, placed a sponge dipped in cold water (52° F.) upon the trunk of a peripheral nerve, he observed narrowing of the pial vessels. This was the same result as that obtained by pieces of ice applied to the dura. In both, there was vasoconstriction of the vessels of the pia; and we have seen that, by reflex stimulation, the same effects are observed internally as occur externally in the skin area treated. But when he applied to the belly or back of the rabbit a wet compress of the same temperature, it always produced a prolonged and decided dilatation of the pial vessels, just opposite to the effect obtained in the first experiment quoted, and which we know was due to reflex stimulation. Again, he found that the application of warm water to the nerve trunk produced dilatation of the vessels, while warm water applied to the general skin surface by immersion, produced a narrowing of the pial vessels. Since these effects are directly opposite, both can not be explained by reflex action. Moreover, Schüller observed that *immersion* in warm water produced a more decided narrowing of the vessels than a warm *compress;* and *immersion* in cold water, a more decided dilatation of the vessels than a cold *compress*. *These effects were in exact proportion to the extent of surface immersed.* When the ears of the animal were kept out of cold water, they likewise filled with

blood in common with the pial vessels, but when they were also dipped into the water, the vessels of the pia filled still more.

The explanation of these contrary effects is quite obvious and will occur to anyone acquainted with the principles of hydrostatics. When the warm compress was applied to the animal, the cutaneous vessels dilated, thus increasing the flow of blood to and amount of blood in the skin area treated. This left less blood to flow to the brain and, in consequence, the blood-vessels of the pia were less completely filled. When a greater surface was treated, as by immersion in warm water, a greater number of blood-vessels were dilated and much less blood left to flow to the head, resulting in an increased narrowing of the pial vessels.

Considering the experiment with the cold compress and bath, we have the same underlying principles. The cold compress produced blanching of the skin and a decreased amount of blood in the periphery, with a resulting increase in the filling of the blood-vessels of the brain because of retrostasis.

Schüller observed that rectal injections of cold water always produced some dilatation of the vessels of the pia. These effects have been confirmed by the experiments of Vinaj, Naumann, Winternitz, and others.

That these results are hydrostatic or mechanical, and not reflex, is also confirmed by the changes in blood pressure observed at the same time. In dilatation of the blood-vessels due to *vasomotor* action, there is a *fall* of blood pressure. Quite the opposite occurred when the pial vessels dilated because of a *cold compress* or *cold immersion*, *i. e.*, a decided *rise* in arterial pressure. This we know is associated with vasoconstriction and can not, therefore, be due to paralysis of the vasomotors. But when we consider that the cold application produced blanching of the skin and vasoconstriction over quite a large area and consequently an increase in blood pressure, the whole process is quite apparent. The retrostasis and increase of blood pressure causes the cerebral vessels, which are not under the influence of the cold, to fill in order to accommodate the blood.

The opposite group of conditions prevailed with the hot application, *viz.*, narrowing of the pial vessels with a fall in

blood pressure. The same principles apply here as above, opposite conditions resulting from opposite causes. The hot bath produced afflux of blood to the skin through vasodilatation, with a consequent decrease in blood pressure, the cerebral vessels narrowed because of a relative anemia. If the narrowing of the pial vessels had been due to reflex action, there should have been a rise instead of a fall in blood pressure.

Schüller observed that prolonging the warm application produced an increasing constriction of the cerebral vessels. This may be explained by the fact that a passive and extreme dilatation of the cutaneous vessels occurs where the heat is maintained for a long time. This is the effect of a long hot pack which, in practice, we utilize where decided derivation is desired.

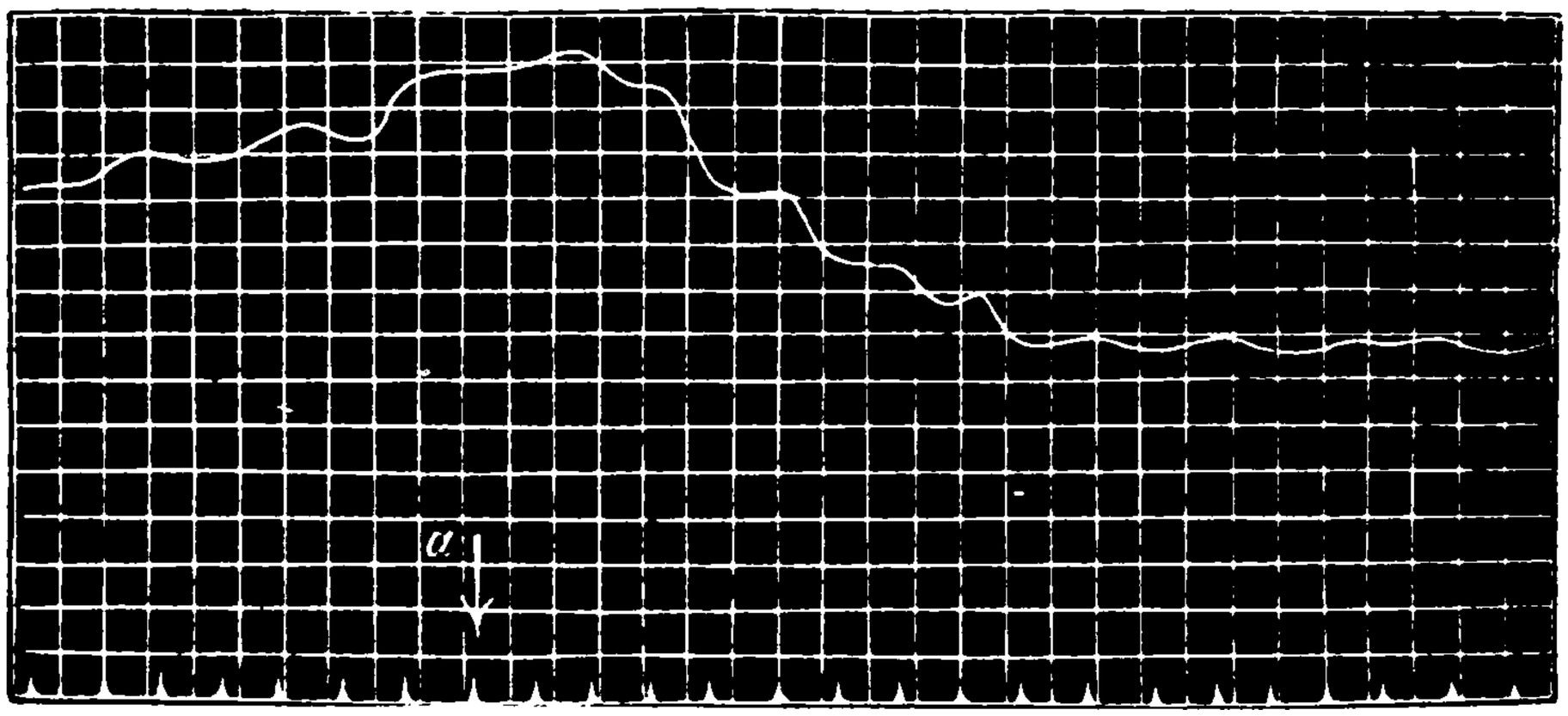


Fig. 21. Volume curve of right arm during a sitz bath at 110° F., showing derivative effect. (Winternitz.)

The hydrostatic effects of both *derivation* and *retrostasis* have been demonstrated by Winternitz[1] by clinical experiments. By means of the plethysmograph he determined the volume curve of the forearm during a hot sitz bath and also during a cold sitz bath. The hydrostatic results are graphically shown in *Figs. 21 and 22*. The cold sitz bath caused an increase in the volume of the forearm, due to *retrostasis*, consequent on contraction of the vessels under the influence of the cold water. In the case of the hot sitz bath the blood-vessels under the influence

1 Winternitz—Physiologische Grundlagen der Hydro- und Thermotherapie, pp. 43, 44.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

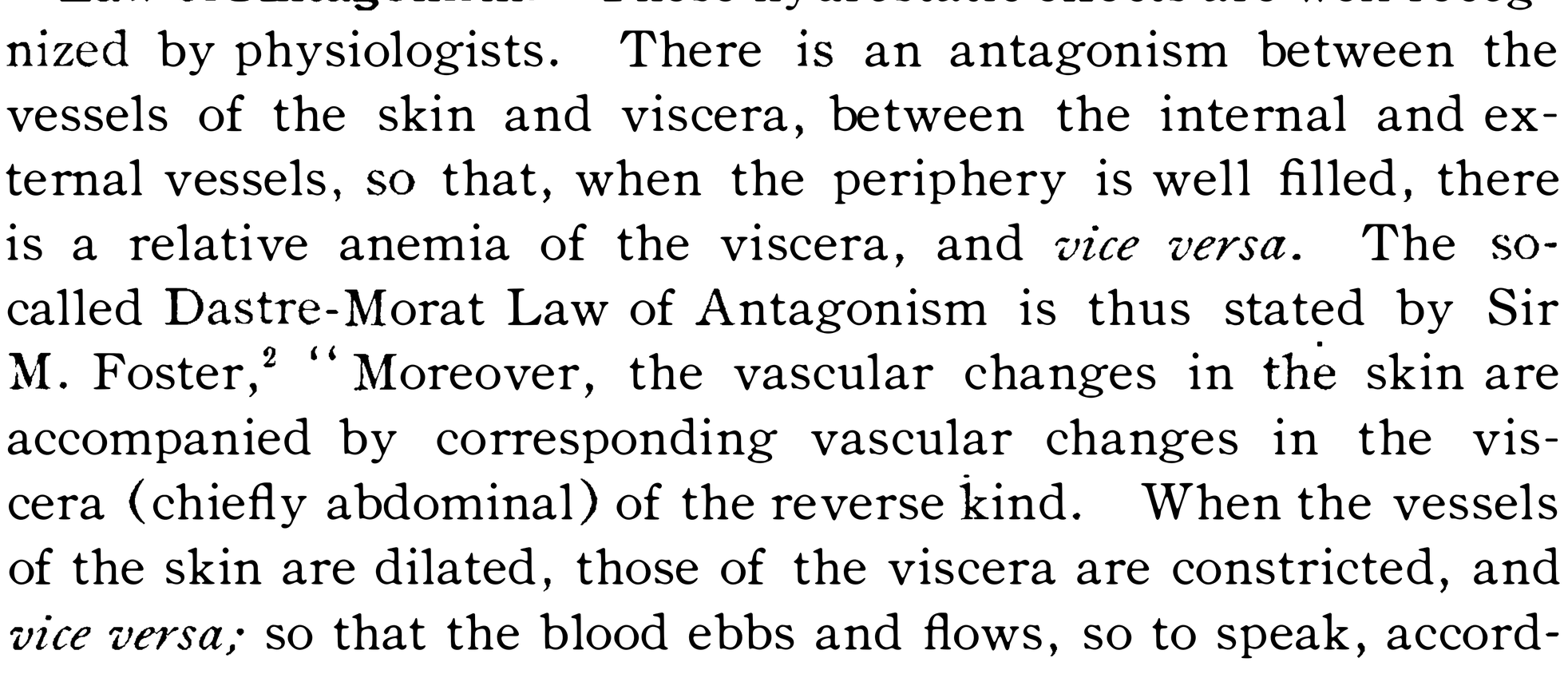
To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

The accompanying chart summarizes the hydrostatic effects of heat and cold.



Law of Antagonism. These hydrostatic effects are well recognized by physiologists. There is an antagonism between the vessels of the skin and viscera, between the internal and external vessels, so that, when the periphery is well filled, there is a relative anemia of the viscera, and *vice versa*. The so-called Dastre-Morat Law of Antagonism is thus stated by Sir M. Foster,[2] "Moreover, the vascular changes in the skin are accompanied by corresponding vascular changes in the viscera (chiefly abdominal) of the reverse kind. When the vessels of the skin are dilated, those of the viscera are constricted, and *vice versa;* so that the blood ebbs and flows, so to speak, according to circumstances, from skin to viscera and from viscera to skin."

These mechanical effects are necessarily produced solely by vascular connection and not by nerve connection. A reflex effect is an indirect or distant effect produced through nerve connection. A hydrostatic effect is a distant effect produced through vascular connection. The extent of this effect depends upon nothing so much as upon the extent of the surface involved, as was shown by the experiments with the compresses and baths. This action is not confined to the blood vascular system, but applies to the lymphatic system as well. A warm application which causes vasodilatation will, of necessity, draw blood from all other parts of the body; and conversly, a cold application, causing vasoconstriction, will, in the nature of the case, drive the blood elsewhere, principally to the

2 Physiology, p. 287.

interior. In either case the blood is driven into or drawn from the deeper parts. In the normal body these hydrostatic effects are more or less evenly distributed over the entire vascular system, so that the effect in any one part is not so marked. For example, a hot bath or pack in health draws the blood more or less equally from all the viscera; but in case of congestion of some particular organ, that organ will be affected more than others by either derivation or retrostasis. A common example is found in the increase of pulmonary congestion, produced by cold drafts on the shoulders. In a healthy person this might not result seriously, but in one susceptible to colds or with an already existing congestion, it may cause an extreme congestion in a very short time. In the same condition a hot pack will draw proportionately more blood from the lungs than from other parts. Again, a large fomentation to the loins or a hot pack would, under normal conditions, withdraw from the kidneys only a small amount of blood; but when these organs are congested there is a marked depleting effect manifest. *The patient is bled into his own limbs and skin.*

Not only may areas quite distant from a part be utilized for depleting that part, but in many cases skin areas nearby may be used to advantage. That this is not a new principle in therapeutics will be seen by referring to "leech" bleeding. It is directed that the leech be applied to the skin over the inflamed part. It sucks blood from the superficial branches of the same vessels that supply the deeper inflamed part. If, by hot applications, the arteries of the superficial set of branches be widened out, there will be less blood to flow into the deeper branches. Thus will a fomentation draw blood from a part nearby that receives its blood from the same large artery. Where there are large thick muscles under the skin area treated the total vascular capacity of both, when filled to the limit, may produce a very decided derivation.

AREAS FOR DERIVATION

The various viscera are mechanically related to superficial and other areas as follows. In most cases these areas are utilized for depleting (derivative) effect, but the opposite condition (retrostasis) may obtain where these areas are chilled.

1. The Brain. Blood may be withdrawn from the hot applications to the feet, legs, or entire lower limb the spine or entire surface of the trunk. It is not pr utilize the emissary veins of the cranial circulation for pose, since the reflex effect in dilating the cerebr would be greater than the depleting effect. In cases sunstroke the vasomotors are so unbalanced that e foot bath may reflexly produce cerebral congestion ra depletion, and must, therefore, be avoided.

2. Spinal Cord. Congestion here, if not too extre be relieved by large fomentations to the spine (entire the back). This diverts the blood from the spinal art the posterior divisions of the intercostal and lumbar also by hot applications to the feet, legs, or the skin o the trunk. In cases of acute cerebro-spinal menin best to utilize the more distant areas.

3. Eye. Applications may be made to the forehead of the face, thus dilating some of the terminal br branches of the carotids, and depleting the deeper brai

4. Middle Ear and Mastoid. By applications to the side of the head, also by very hot applications to t abdomen, and spine.

5. Pharynx and Larynx. By applications to the neck depleting the deeper organs and congesting the surface v

6. Lungs. The feet and lower limbs, skin surface o trunk and hips, also the hands, arms, and shoulders. W the congestion is limited to a small area, as in circumsc pleurisy, a fomentation may be used directly over that This dilates the posterior, lateral, and anterior cuta branches of the intercostal arteries, thereby withdrawing b from the inflamed pleura.

7. Kidneys. The circulation in these organs is decreased b hot applications to the back, thus dilating the posterior branc of the lumbar and lower intercostal arteries, and leaving l blood to pass from the aorta to the renal arteries. In extre congestion of the kidneys it is necessary to utilize much lar areas, as the entire surface of the trunk, hips, and legs, or of these areas alone.

8. Stomach. By large applications centering at the epigastrium, but extending over the lower chest and sides of the abdomen and well down over the umbilical region, also to the entire trunk.

9. Liver. By applications over the liver also to the lower dorsal spine of the right ride, extending forward and covering the epigastric and umbilical regions. The skin area of the lower limbs and hips is as important, if not more so, than the nearer areas.

10. Spleen. Similar to the liver, on the opposite side, also lower limbs.

11. Pelvic Organs—bladder, uterus, ovaries, tubes, rectum, and prostate. To deplete these organs two principal areas are utilized,—first, the entire skin surface of the hips, pelvis, etc., as in a hot sitz bath or hot hip pack; second, the lower limbs, as in a hot leg bath or hot leg pack. Both areas may be utilized by the use of the hot hip and leg pack or hot half bath.

The student who is familiar with the anatomy of the circulatory system will be able to figure out the vascular connections between the organs mentioned above and areas named with each. In nearly every case it is quite obvious. These areas are of importance, not alone in ordinary congestion, but of almost inestimable service in actual inflammation of these parts, as shown later. (See treatment of inflammations.)

CHAPTER VIII

THE CIRCULATION—BALANCE BETWEEN REFLEX AND HYDROSTATIC EFFECTS

BY reference to the observations recorded under reflex and hydrostatic effects, it will be seen that thermic applications to the surface exert two classes of effects—a reflex and a hydrostatic effect—which are directly opposite and, therefore, conflicting. Probably an application produces more or less of both, though one or the other usually predominates. Since they are opposite, one will neutralize or overshadow the other. Kellogg[1] makes the following statement: "Doubtless both of these effects are always produced. When the application is general the mechanical effect is dominant; when the area involved is limited, the reflex effect is prominent. In general applications, the primary reflex effect is quickly effaced by the succeeding mechanical effect, due (in case of cold) to the inrush of blood from the periphery. This diversion of blood from the surface vessels to the interior of the body is termed retrostasis. Marked retrostasis is produced only when the cold application is made simultaneously to a very large cutaneous area." These are essentially the views of Schüller, who considered that, at the beginning of the application, the pial vessels were affected reflexly, which effect is soon overbalanced by the thermic effect upon the vessels of the skin.

"If the surface area to which the application is made is small, the reflex effect may be confined to the internal area in sympathetic relation therewith, and will be greater and more prolonged for the reason that the reflex influence is concentrated upon a circumscribed area; while the mechanical effect is distributed over the rest of the body, so that it does not overshadow and

1 Hydrotherapy, p. 103.

wipe out the reflex effect on the smaller area involved." Baruch's comment[2] upon this subject is as follows: "Baths and other procedures without mechanical excitation, when applied to large portions of the body, doubtless have a hydrostatic effect; while *douches*, which impinge on limited portions, and are combined with mechanical effects (*irritation*), act chiefly by reflex influence."

Is it possible to determine which result will be greater in a given case, or which will be practically the only effect from a certain application? In reply to this very natural question, we may state that there are definite laws governing these opposing actions. By them one may so time and regulate applications as to secure a desired and definite result.

LAWS OF BALANCE

The following are the laws; other things being equal, the results stated obtain:—

1. Size of Area. (a) When an application covers a small area the effect is chiefly reflex, and is concentrated upon the internal part in reflex relation with the surface treated.

(b) When applications are made to a large area the hydrostatic effect predominates, and the larger the area treated the greater the hydrostatic effect.

2. Location of Area. (a) The chief effect of an application to certain areas (example, the head or the precordia) is a reflex effect.

(b) The principal result of an application to certain other areas (example, the feet and legs) is hydrostatic.

Duration and Intensity of Application. The duration and intensity of the effect, either reflex or hydrostatic, depend upon the duration and intensity of the application. The intensity of an application is gauged by the degree of heat or cold and by the form and pressure of douches, or the degree and amount of friction.

Examples: The prolonged application of an ice bag (small application of intense cold) to the precordia (special area) produces a (reflex effect) prolonged slowing of the rate of the heart beat, and a decided increase in its force for the same length of

2 Principles and Practice of Hydrotherapy, p. 48.

time. There is no tendency to produce retrostasis of blood or engorgement of the heart (hydrostatic effect).

A hot trunk pack (large area) withdraws blood from the viscera (hydrostatic effect) rather than producing dilatation and engorgement of their vessels (reflex effect).

A hot and cold douche to the chest (small intense application) stimulates the heart and respiration (reflex effect) rather than having any decided hydrostatic effect upon the blood current of these organs. Applications to the head (special area), whether hot or cold, have a reflex effect almost entirely.

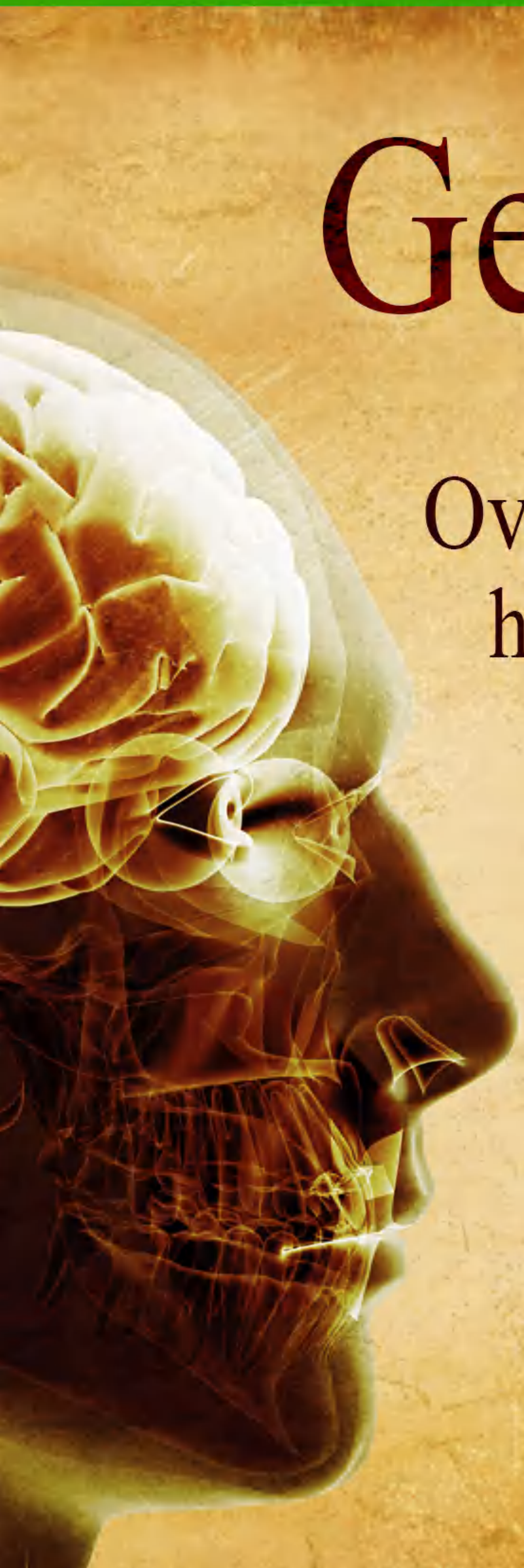
Many other examples might be given, but the principles involved in the above are the same as those which govern other applications. It will be seen that, although reflex and hydrostatic effects directly oppose each other, the *reflex overshadows* and obliterates the hydrostatic when *certain areas* are involved, and especially when *these areas are small*. The *hydrostatic effect wipes out* the reflex effect when the application is to certain other areas, and especially when those areas are *very large*.

We have so far discussed these two classes of effects as to their opposing results. Reflex and mechanical effects may be made to assist each other in securing depletion when diverse applications are made to different areas simultaneously. This will be discussed under the head of derivation.[3]

Double Effects. In the case of hot applications applied over congested organs, certain phases of both the reflex and the hydrostatic effect may prevail. This is expecially noticeable with large fomentations or hot packs over the liver or kidneys. These reflexly relax (and dilate) the blood-vessels of the internal organ while hydrostatically they draw blood from the organ thus leaving the vessels of that organ relaxed but only partially filled with blood, *i. e.*, partly collapsed. This double effect from a single application is of great importance in acute congestions of the kidneys and liver as in eclampsia where vascular tension is high but the organ functionally inactive. The tension being relieved by relaxation of the muscular coat (reflexly) and the congestion depleted (hydrostatically), the blood again circulates more rapidly and functional activity begins almost at once.

3 See chapter on inflammation and antiphlogistic effects.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

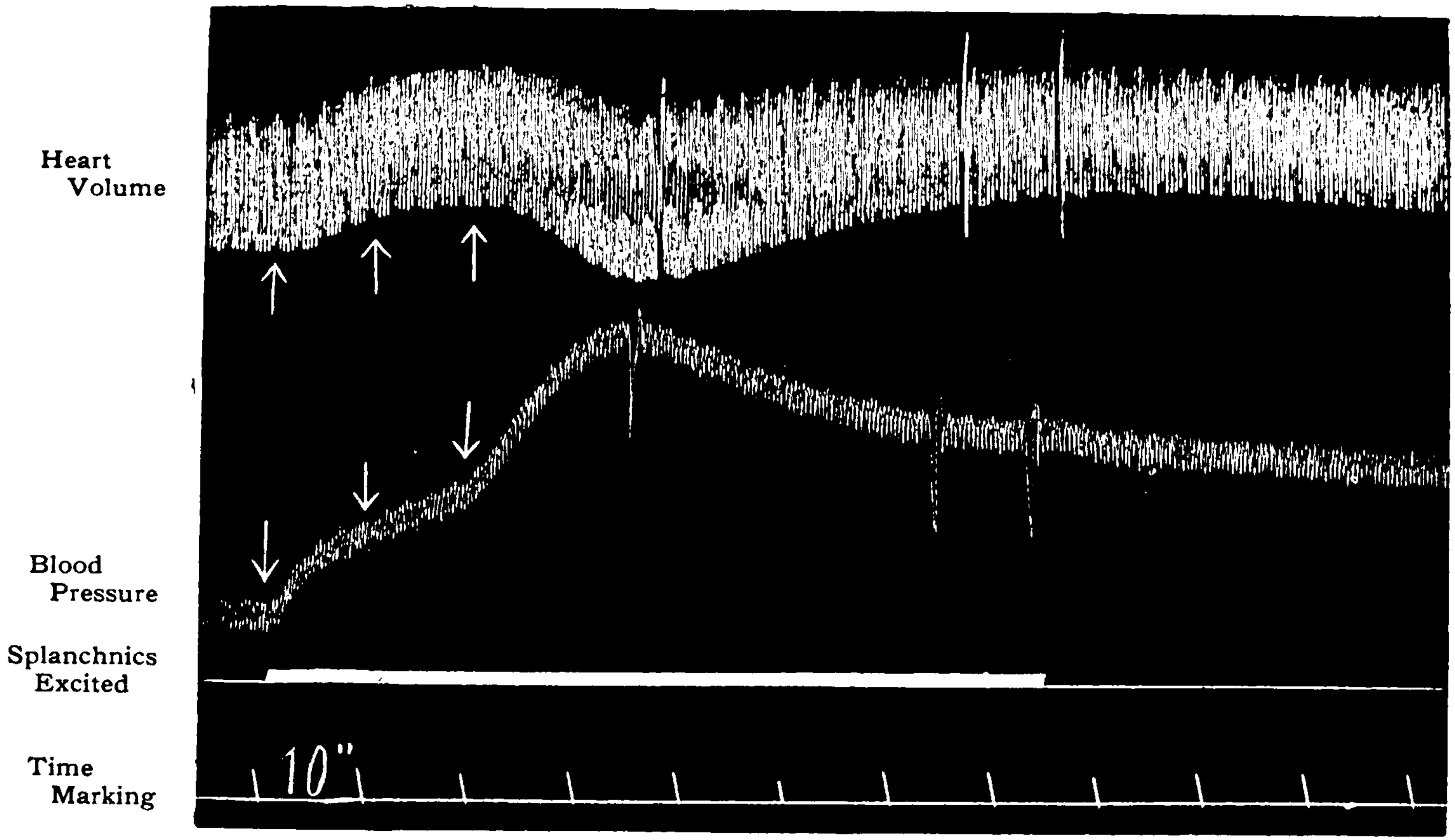


Fig. 23. Curve showing the effect of a sudden rise in the arterial resistance on the output and volume of the ventricles. Systole causes a downward movement of the lever. The lower border of the white tracing represents the systolic volume; the upper border, the diastolic volume. (Starling.)

so raise blood pressure. After a brief rise, hot applications to the precordia decrease blood pressure. Short cold applications to the precordia increase the heart rate, while long cold applications decrease the heart rate. In the normal person both results are associated with a rise in blood pressure. Rapidly alternating hot and cold applications to the precordia have much the same effect as short cold applications, except that the stimulation, being greater, causes a greater rise in blood pressure. This rise is less permanent than that accompanying prolonged cold applications to the precordia. These points have been thoroughly discussed elsewhere.

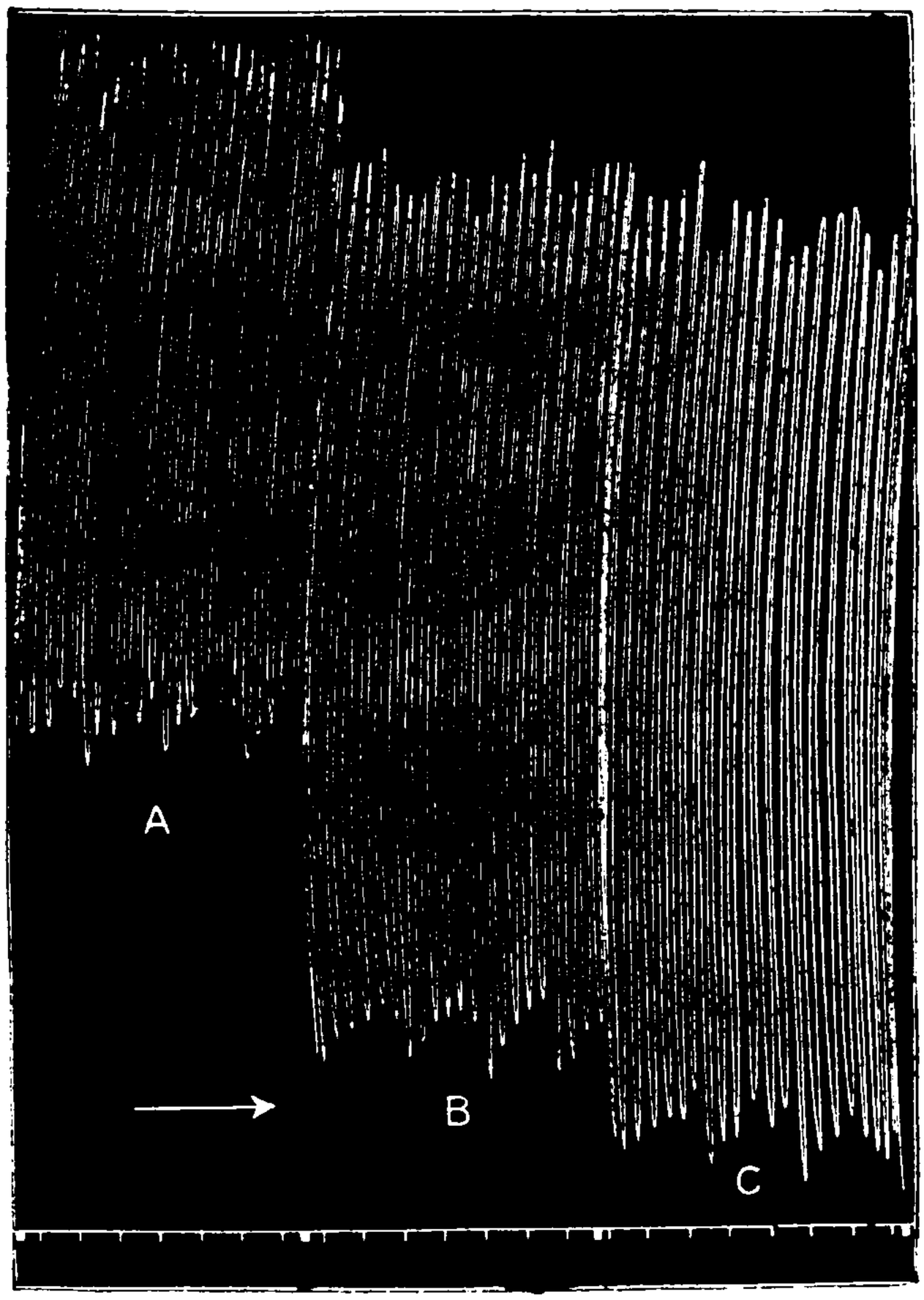


Fig. 24. Cardiometer tracing from a dog's heart showing effect of increasing the volume of circulating fluid on the total output and volume of the heart. Between the parts A and B 30 c. c. of warm physiologic salt solution were injected intravenously, and between B and C 20 c. c. more. Both the systolic and diastolic volume are increased, i. e., the heart is more distended during diastole, and does not contract to its normal size in systole. The result is a very largely increased output. (Roy.)

2. The Amount of the Circulating Fluid. An increase in the quantity of blood in the vascular system, other things being equal, increases blood pressure. In order to intelligently apply those therapeutic measures which are designed to maintain blood pressure through changes in the amount of the circulat-

ing fluids, it is necessary to obtain an understanding of the laws governing the intake and output of body fluids and the absorption of extra-vascular tissue fluids. Modern knowledge of the fluids of the body has been summarized by Starling.[1] From this source we have drawn much of the following information.

The absorptive membranes of the body possess a differing or irreciprocal permeability to fluids, *i. e.*, fluids containing certain saline substances are readily and rapidly absorbed while fluids containing other salts are either not absorbed or only after long contact.

"If the solutions contain sulphates or tartrates, *i. e.*, salts whose anions the gut wall is relatively impermeable, the course of events is very much the same as that which would occur if these solutions were separated from blood plasma by a semi-permeable wall of parchment paper. If they are hypertonic they are reduced in amount by the attraction of water from the circulating blood until their molecular concentration is equal to that of the blood plasma."[2] By long contact they are finally absorbed. How different is the fate of solutions of substances such as sodium chloride. These are rapidly absorbed even when they are slightly hypertonic. If the solutions are strong, *i. e.*, above three per cent NaCl, they at first increase in bulk by the transfusion of water into them. From the moment of their introduction, however, salt is passing from them into the blood circulating through the intestinal wall, and as soon as their osmotic pressure is reduced to a point a little above that of the blood plasma, both water and salt begin to be absorbed."[3]

This selective action is found to depend upon the vitality of the cells composing the membrane, since it ceases when the cells have been damaged by certain chemicals. The fate of fluid introduced into the gut then seems to depend entirely upon its concentration. The epithelial cells composing the mucous membrane of the intestine possess the power of pumping water and salts from one side of the cell to the other. "This con-

1 Herter Lectures, New York, 1908.

2 Starling—The Fluids of the Body, p. 53.

3 Ibid, p. 53.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

introduced by hypodermoclysis, Starling concludes that this occurs mostly by the blood rather than the lymphatics, as has long been supposed. Indigo, carmine, or methylene blue injected into the pleural or peritoneal cavities, may appear in the urine within six minutes after the moment of injection at a time when the lymph in the thoracic duct is free from color. Strychnine or other drug injected under the skin of a limb exerts its poisonous effects on the nervous system long before the drug itself appears in the lymph flowing from the limb. It has been shown that blood returning from an edematous limb is more dilute than blood returning from a normal limb. The experiment conducted by Starling[6] is as follows: By means of cannulas inserted into the femoral artery and vein, defibrinated blood of the same osmotic pressure as normal blood serum, was caused to pass through the arteries, capillaries, and veins of the normal leg of a dog. The same was done with the opposite leg made edematous by the injection of a one per cent solution of NaCl. Blood which had been led through the normal leg twelve to twenty-five times was unaltered or suffered trifling change, while that led the same number of times through the edematous leg had in all cases absorbed fluid. "From these experiments we may affirm with certainity that isotonic salt solutions can be taken up directly by the blood circulating in the blood-vessels."[7] Hypodermoclysis is the most rapid method (aside from direct vein injection) of introducing fluid into the circulation. Increase in the amount of fluid in the vascular system results in heightened venous pressure, which, in turn, produces an increase in diastolic filling, systolic output and arterial pressure, and greatly hastens the velocity of the circulation. (*Fig. 24.*) "Blood with its lower viscosity passes readily through the dilated arterioles and capillaries, so that the velocity of the blood-flow may be easily increased from six to ten times."[8] Injecting salt solution equivalent to 50 per cent of the total blood has been found to augment the velocity of the blood six to eight times the normal rate.[9]

---

6 Starling—The Fluids of the Body, p. 95.
7 Ibid, p. 97.
8 Ibid, p. 138.
9 Starling—Physiology, p. 284.

The rise in blood pressure occasioned by the absorption of fluid introduced by either hypodermoclysis or proctoclysis is of special advantage in various conditions where the blood pressure has fallen very low, such as in collapse (after hemorrhage), in peritonitis, etc. The Murphy method of proctoclysis is especially recommended in the treatment of peritonitis after the institution of surgical drainage. It is designed to flush the drained surfaces, and so aid in getting rid of septic material and infection. We believe its beneficial action is, however, due as much to the maintenance of blood pressure, as to the flushing of the absorbents and drained surfaces.

Given in the order in which they most rapidly increase the volume of the blood, the methods of introducing fluid into the circulatory system may be listed as follows:—

(a) Hypodermoclysis.
(b) Proctoclysis.
(c) Water-drinking.

3. Vascular Calibre and Action. We have seen that a hot application dilates the blood-vessels, producing an afflux of blood to the skin and superficial parts, increasing with the prolongation of the application. It has also been shown that the reaction to a cold application produces an afflux of blood to the skin. In both cases there is a hyperemia established, but the two are of an entirely different nature. With the hot application there is a fall of blood pressure because of a loss of tone in the vessels (passive dilatation) and a preponderance of venous blood in the part; while the dilatation which comes with the reaction to a cold application is accompanied by an increase in blood pressure, the tone of the vessels is preserved, and there is a preponderance of arterial blood in the part. These conditions are respectively known as *venous or passive hyperemia* and *arterial or active hyperemia*. It is important to distinguish the physiologic difference between the hyperemia of cold and that of hot applications. At first both produce an arterial hyperemia. In the case of the hot application the end result is a slowing of the circulation, a stasis of blood, which necessarily results in an increase of the venous over the arterial blood in the part. With the cold application, after the

initial vasoconstriction and anemia have given way, the return to a normal condition (reaction) is accompanied by an increase of from three to five times in the rapidity of the circulation.[10] The blood flows rapidly through the part and consequently, arterial blood predominates. The remote result is the same; there is no after-tendency to stasis. This is no small factor in nutrition and healing. In fact, it is upon the blood that they depend; they are carried on and hastened in proportion to the amount of arterial blood, *i. e.*, nutrition and oxygen, supplied to the tissues.

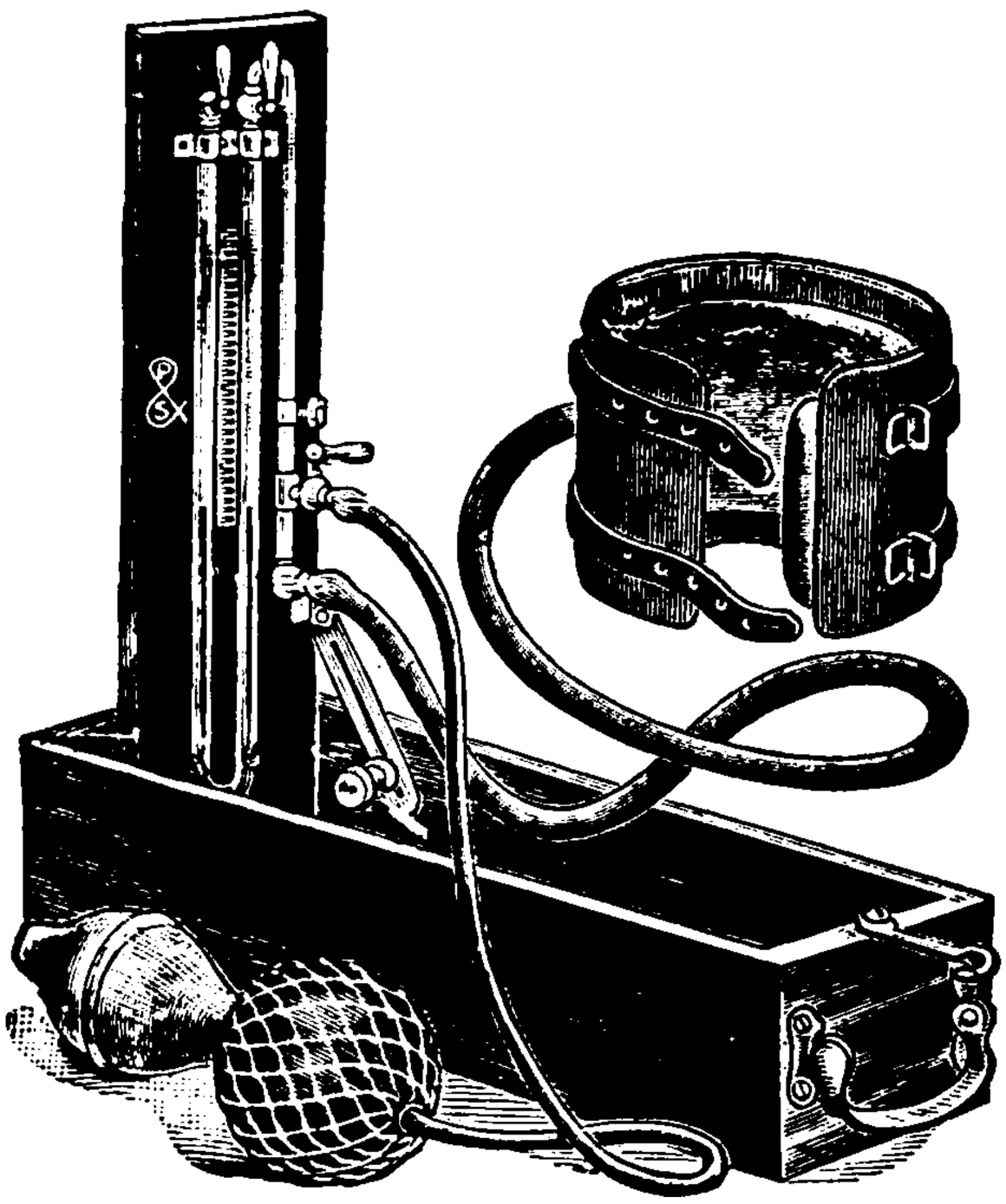
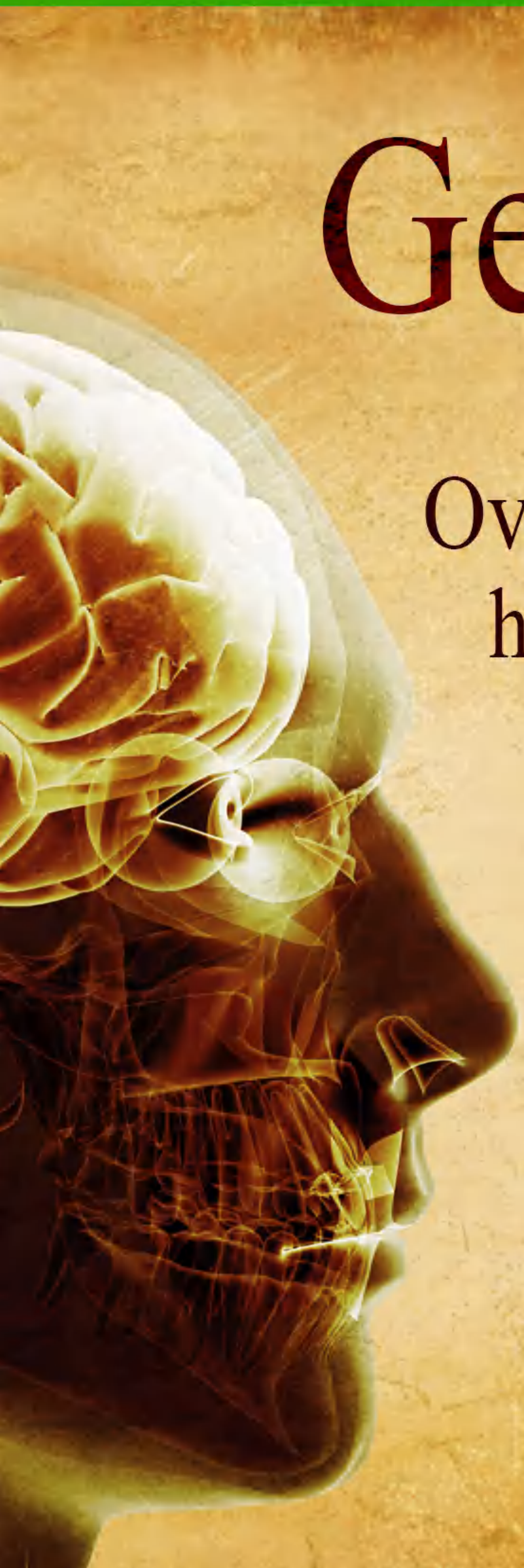


Fig. 25. Faught s sphygmomanometer.

Bier, in his work on the treatment of disease by hyperemia, claims for the tissues a selective action, *i. e.*, that they have the power to select arterial in preference to venous blood. It would appear irrational to suppose anything else. The essential feature is not in the *selective* action, but in the supplying of sufficient arterial blood, so that the tissues may *manifest* their selective action. The cold has also a direct action on the hemoglobin in producing a higher degree of oxygenation, *i. e.*, a

10 Baruch—Principles and Practice of Hydrotherapy, p. 55.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

ing the effects of thermic applications upon blood pressure.[12] The pressure was tested by means of the Riva-Rocci sphygmomanometer (*Fig. 26.*). Briefly stated his conclusions are as follows (*Plate IV.*):—

1. Effects of Cold. Baths and thermic applications, not accompanied by mechanical irritation, if given *below the temperature of the skin*, produce increased blood pressure with slowed pulse rate.

2. Effects of Heat. Thermic applications *above the skin temperature*, after a brief rise, produce a fall in blood pressure which later rises. Hot baths above 104° F. persistently increase blood pressure and the pulse rate.

3. Effects of Neutral Temperatures. Neutral baths equalize or regulate blood pressure.

4. Effects of Mechanical Stimuli. With douches and other procedures, where the mechanical irritation is the predominant factor, there is a rise of blood pressure less enduring than with cold applications. "Every hot or cold douche calls forth an increase of blood pressure, paradoxical as it may seem." [13]

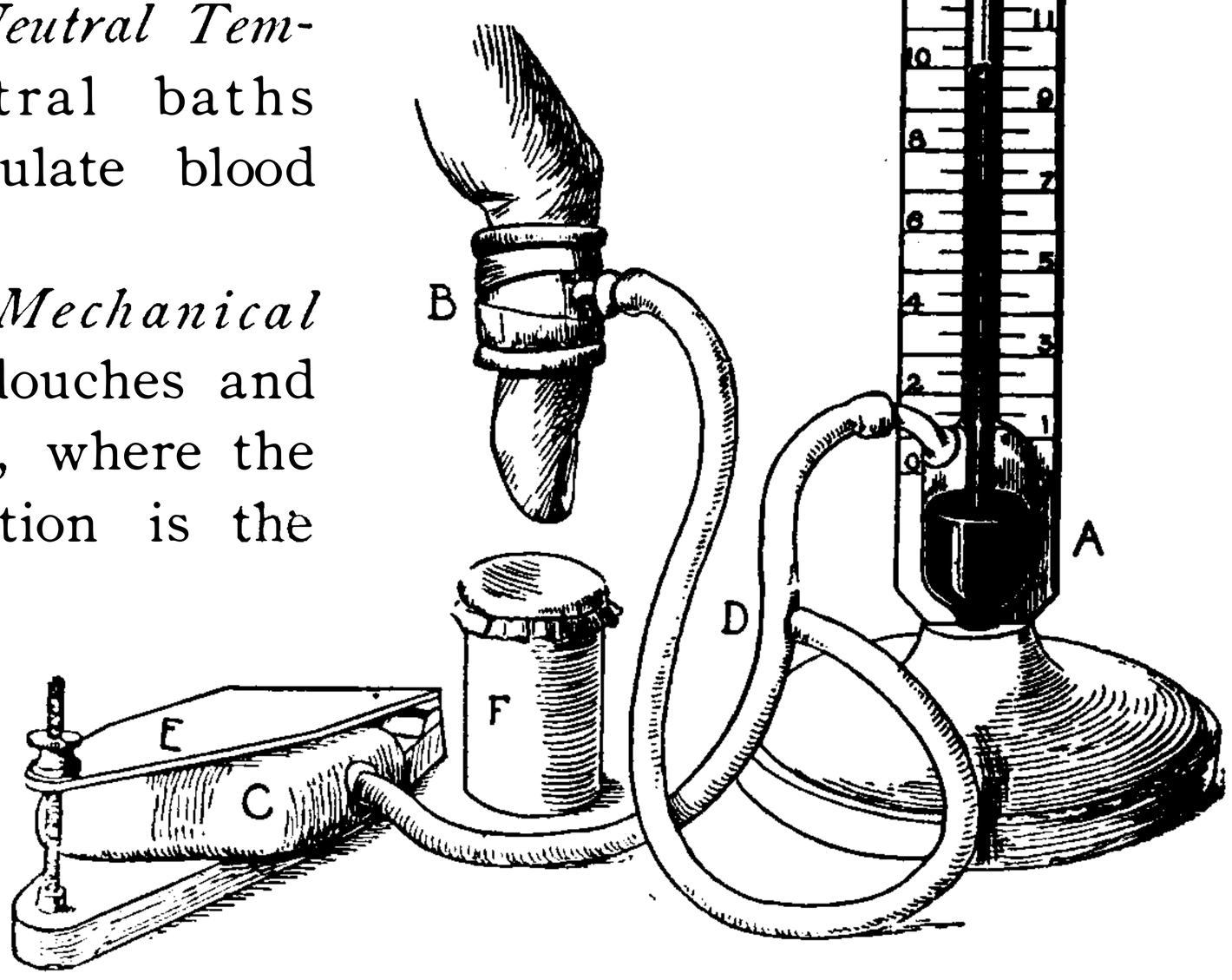


Fig. 27. Gärtner's Tonometer.

The experiments of Schüller, already quoted, sustain these observations. Many other experiments along this line might be quoted. Kellogg [14] records an experiment in which the drinking of a large quantity of cold fluid (50° F.) raised the

12 Müller—Deutsch. Arch. für klin. Med., 1902, Vol. 74.
13 Hinsdale—Hydrotherapy, p. 48.
14 Rational Hydrotherapy, p. 1115.

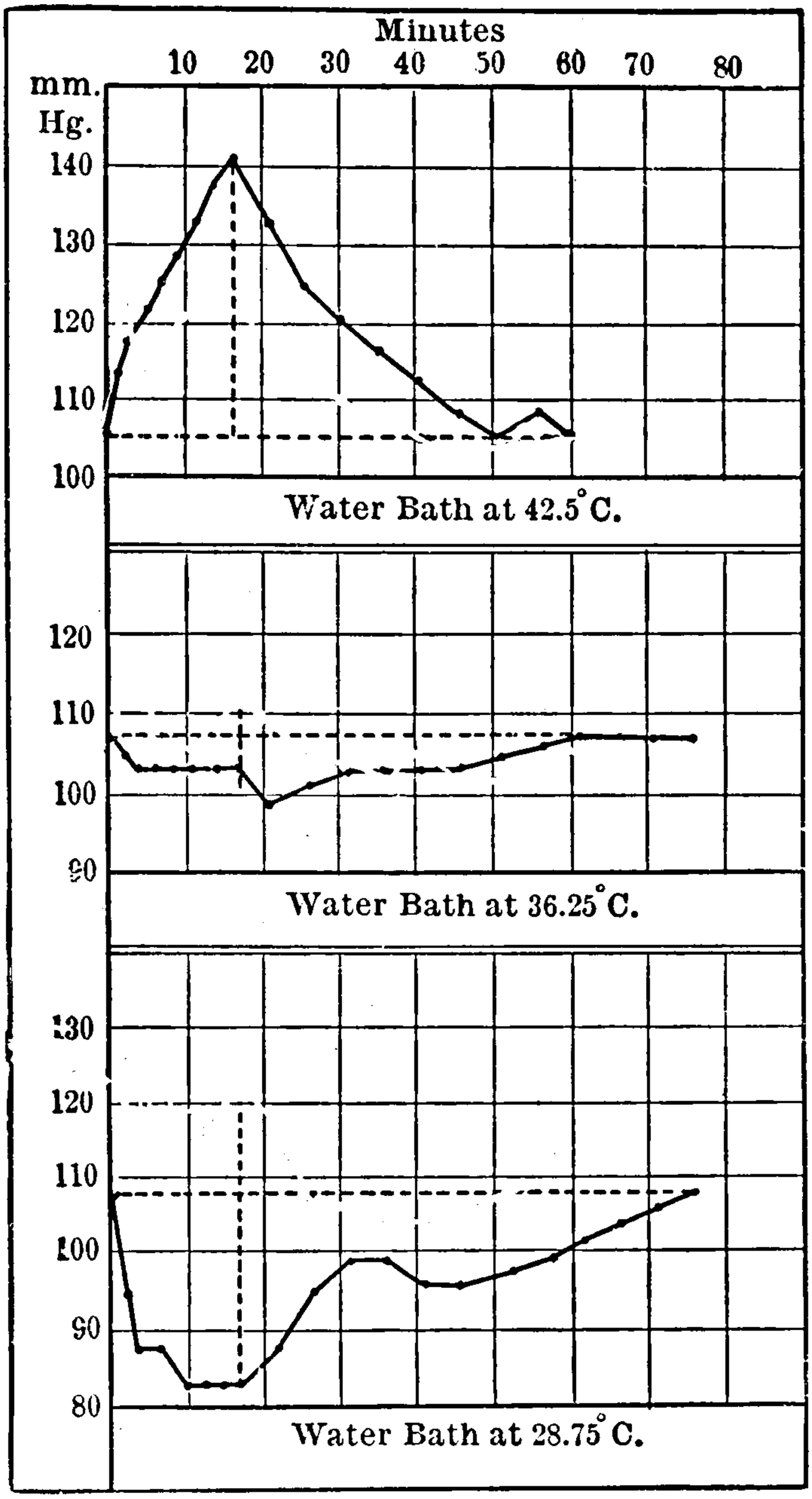


PLATE IV. Chart showing influence of baths of different temperatures on blood pressure and pulse rate in a healthy man of twenty-six; red lines—blood pressure, black lines—pulse rate. (Riva-Rocci's sphygm.) (Müller.)

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

CHAPTER X

THE CIRCULATION—CHANGES IN THE COMPOSITION OF THE BLOOD

CORPUSCULAR ELEMENTS

SUCH a large volume of experimental work has been reported along this line that we can not do more than tabulate the principal results observed. The investigations of Professor Winternitz, and those of Strasser, undertaken at his request and reported in 1893, are considered the basis of our knowledge of these changes. The results obtained by all observers are so uniform as to leave no doubt of their reliability. After all sorts of cold procedures, involving the general skin surface and associated with mechanical procedures, after hot baths or douches when followed by cold applications, the blood counts reveal an increase in both the red cells and white cells, and a marked change in their ratio. In Winternitz' experiments the greatest increase in red cells amounted to 1,860,000 per cubic millimeter; in white cells, from 200 to 300 per cent; and in hemoglobin, 14 per cent.

On the first and third bath days of Strasser's experiments, referred to in *Chapter XI*, blood counts were taken after the cold douche and after the graduated half bath. The counts were as follows:—

Effects of Cold Douche	Before	After
Red cells - -	4,570,000	5,200,000
White cells - -	4,600	6,400
Hemoglobin (*Fleischl*)	85%	95%

Effects of Graduated Half Bath	Before	After
Red cells - -	4,880,000	5,420,000
White cells - -	5,400	8,400
Hemoglobin - -	85%	95%

The results in detail of some of the experiments performed by Winternitz are given in the accompanying chart (*Fig. 28.*) and table.[1]

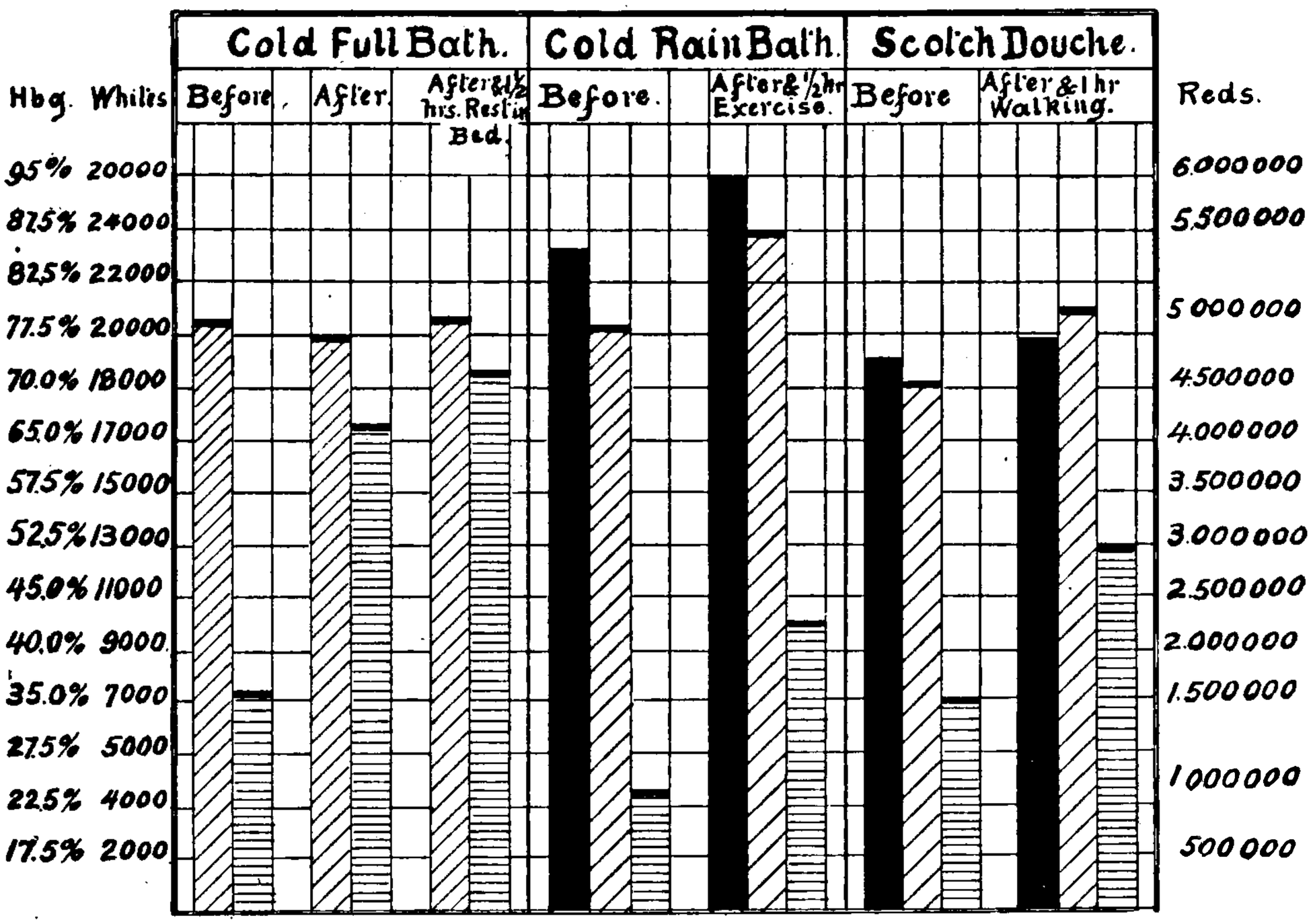


Fig. 28. Chart showing the effects of hydriatic procedures on the blood count and hemoglobin. Upright blocks with diagonal lines—red count, blocks with horizontal cross lines—white count, blocks in black—hemoglobin per cent. (Winternitz.)

Cold Full Bath	Red Cells	White Cells	Hgb
Before - - - -	5,380,000	8,400	70%
Immediately after -	5,222,000	16,700	
After plus 1-2-hr. rest in bed	5,422,000	21,640	
Cold Rain Bath			
Before - - - -	4,820,000	4,500	87%
After plus 1-2-hr. exercise	5,510,000	10,600	95%
Scotch Douche			
Before - - - -	4,460,000	7,400	74%
After plus 1-hr. exercise	5,000,000	11,600	77%

1 B. Buxbaum—Lehrbuch der Hydrotherapie, II Auflage, p. 35.

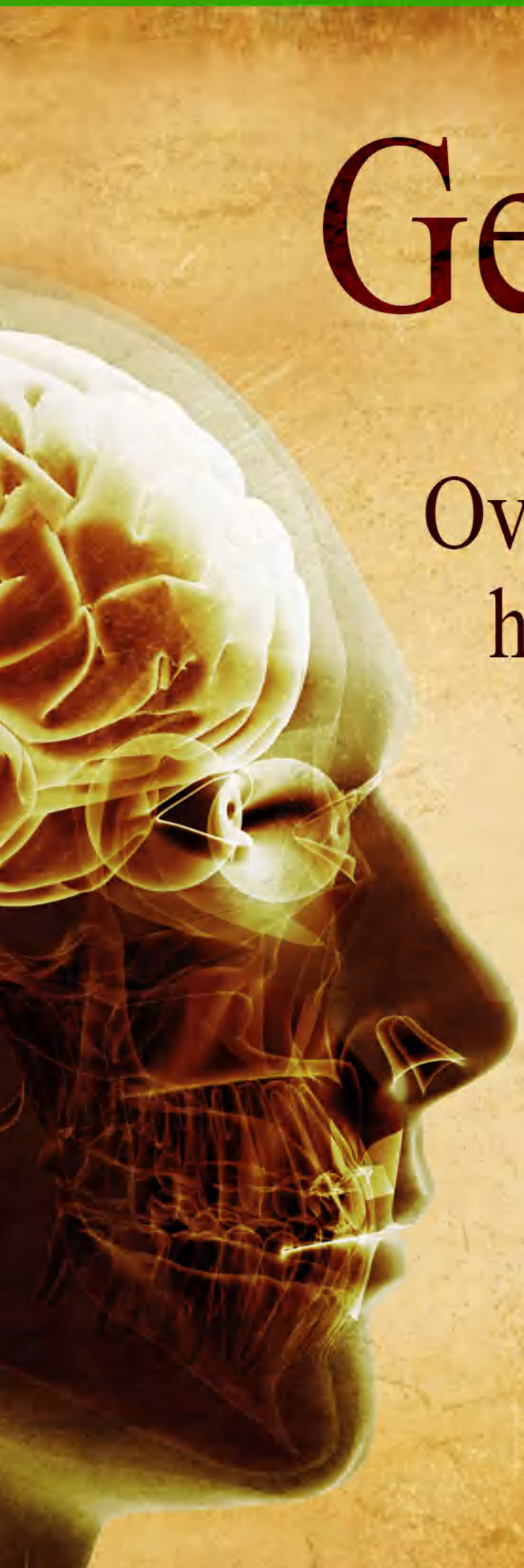
These changes were maintained for from one-half hour or one hour up to two hours or longer after applications, gradually returning to normal. The increase in the white cells was maintained longer than the increase in reds. These observations have been confirmed by Thayer, Baruch, and Kellogg, in this country.

Where do these cells come from? Repeated cold applications stimulate hematogenesis, as they stimulate all other functions, as is shown by the fact that in cases of anemia this increase in cells continues longer and longer after each succeeding application until finally a normal count is reached and maintained. But, of course, so great an increase as 30 or 35 per cent in the total number of reds and 200 per cent in the total number of whites could not result from a single application. This increase in the corpuscular elements in the peripheral circulation must be at the expense of the number elsewhere. Winternitz claims that this increase of cells in the peripheral circulation is due to the driving of large numbers of cells from the viscera, where stasis has taken place. Breitenstein [2] has confirmed this view by experiments upon rabbits. These animals were overheated in a hot box, before and after which the red cells in the peripheral circulation (ear) and viscera (liver) were estimated. Before the heating process, the cells in the ear and liver were equal in number. After it, there was an enormous increase in the red blood cells in the liver. Tschlenoff observed a decrease of 50 per cent in the white cells in rabbits subjected to a temperature of 42° C. for five or six hours. These experiments also confirm the observation of Winternitz and others, that general hot applications, much prolonged, decrease the blood count and the hemoglobin per cent, the white cells suffering a greater diminution than the reds.

Not the least interesting of the observations made by Winternitz is that relating to the local increase in the blood count taken from circumscribed areas treated by cold or hot and cold douches, partial baths, etc., while counts taken from a distant part showed a decrease in both the red and white cells. Prolonged local applications of heat not followed by cold, while

2 Archiv. für Exper. Path. und Pharm., Bd. 32, 1896.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

rhythmical contraction and relaxation of the organ, occurring in cats and dogs at intervals of about one minute.

"Roy supposes that these contractions are effected through the intrinsic musculature of the organ,—that is, the plain muscle tissue present in the capsule and trabeculæ,—and he believes that the contractions serve to keep up a circulation through the spleen and to make its vascular supply more or less independent of variations in general arterial pressure. The fact that there is a special local arrangement for maintaining its circulation, makes the spleen unique among the organs of the body, but no light is thrown upon the nature of the function fulfilled. The spleen is supplied richly with motor nerve fibers

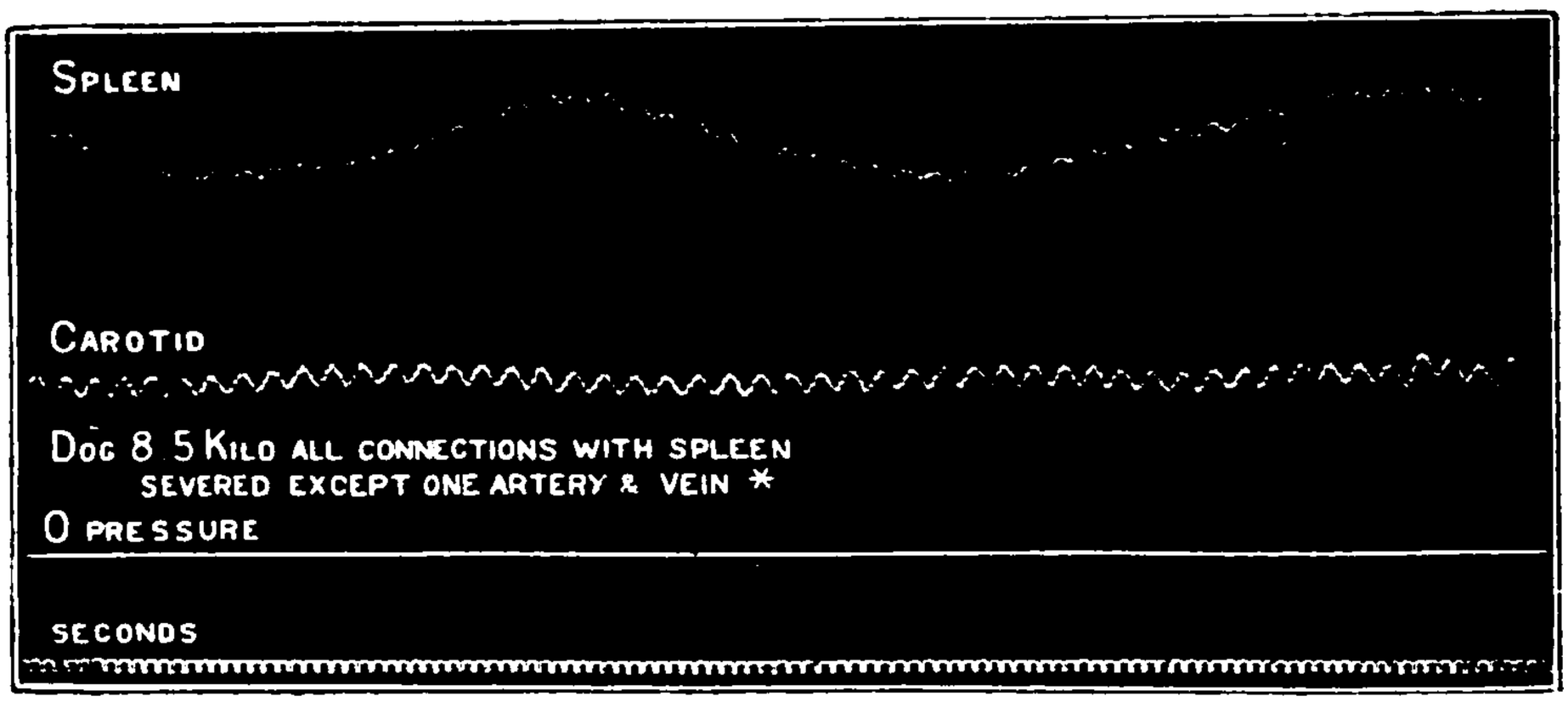


Fig. 29. Plethysmographic tracing of spleen (upper curve) from dog showing the spontaneous rhythmical contractions of this organ. (Schäfer after Starling.)

which, when stimulated either directly or *reflexly*, cause the organ to diminish in volume. According to Schäfer these fibers are contained in the splanchnic nerves, which carry also inhibitory fibers whose stimulation causes a dilatation of the spleen."[5]

The blood of the splenic veins contains a much greater number of white cells than the arterial blood supplied to the organ. Miescher[6] experimenting with Rhine salmon found four times as many leucocytes in the splenic blood as in the cardiac blood. This increase in the cellular elements increases the viscosity,

5 Howell—Physiology, 1909, p. 800.

6 Bunge—Physiologic and Pathologic Chemistry, Second English Edition, p. 229.

and consequently tends to diminish the rate of blood flow. The gathering up of these cells, together with the closeness of the splenic meshwork in which the blood circulates, makes necessary some mechanism for additional propulsive force.

"It is evident that the blood must meet with considerable resistance in passing through the close meshwork of the splenic pulp. To ensure a constant circulation through the gland, we find that the muscular tissue of the capsule and trabeculæ has the property of rhythmic contraction. If the spleen be inclosed in a plethysmograph, or splenic oncometer, and its volume be recorded by connecting this with the oncograph, it will be seen that it is subject to a series of large, slow variations, each contraction and expansion lasting about a minute, and recurring with great regularity (*Fig. 29.*). Superposed on these large waves are seen the smaller undulations due to the respiratory variations of the blood pressure, and on these again the little excursions corresponding to each heart beat. The contractile power of the spleen is under the control of the nervous system, and a rapid contraction may be induced by stimulation of the splanchnic nerves."[7]

The use of cold applications, especially when accompanied by mechanical stimulation, such as the cold mitten friction to the abdomen and the cold splenic douche, have a decidely stimulant effect upon the movements of the spleen. The same is true of the revulsive compress and the alternate hot and cold douche to the splenic region and abdomen. Such stimulation increases the extent and force and greatly enhances the efficiency of the splenic contractions, thereby proving a powerful means of accomplishing the even distribution of the blood cells, especially the leucocytes.

VISCOSITY

Grawitz and also Burton-Opitz[8] have shown that cold applications increase the viscosity and specific gravity of the blood, while warm applications decrease both. This thinning of the blood continued even after prolonged heating with free perspi-

7 Starling—Elements of Human Physiology, 1907, p. 514.
8 Journal of Experimental Medicine, January, 1906.

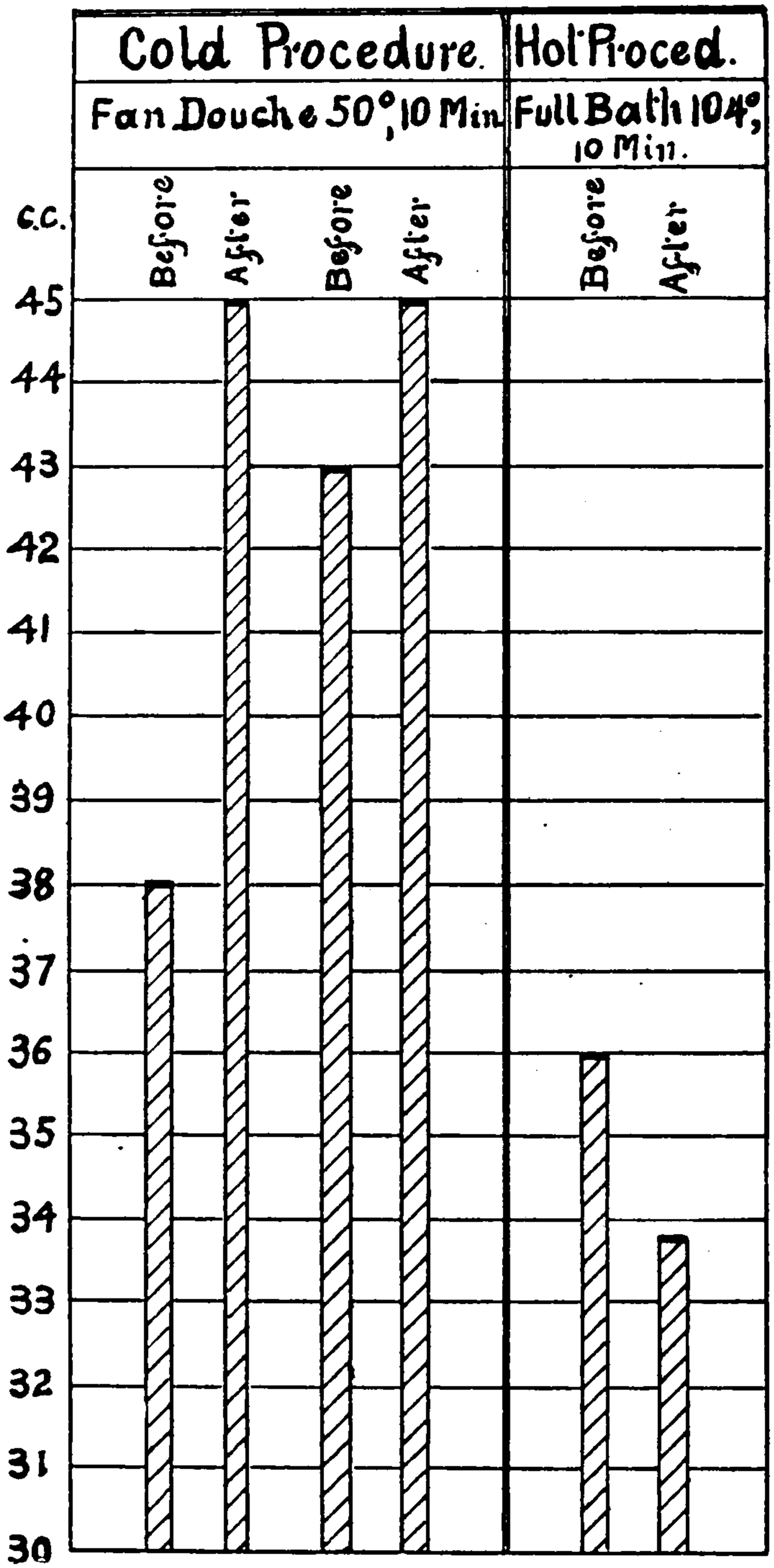


Fig. 30. Chart showing changes in the alkalinity of the blood under thermic procedures. Figures at left refer to alkalinity of 100 c. c. of blood serum in terms of c. c. of decinormal NaOH. (Strasser and Kuthy.)

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

ration. This result Burton-Opitz attributed to the blood becoming relatively richer in serum at the expense of the tissues. These facts have been confirmed by Löwy and agree with the deductions of Winternitz and Knöpfelmacher.

In general, it may be said that conditions that produce vasoconstriction, increase the number of corpuscles in the vessels constricted, together with an increase in the specific gravity and viscosity of the blood. Conversely, conditions that relax the blood-vessels, decrease the corpuscular elements in the dilated vessels, together with a thinning of the blood.

REACTION

Strasser and Kuthy[9] performed experiments to determine the effect of hydriatic procedures upon the chemical reaction of the blood and urine. They found that procedures raising the body temperature, *i. e.*, much prolonged heating measures, result in lessening the degree of alkalescence of the blood: also that cold stimulating procedures increase the alkalescence .(*Fig. 30.*). Strasser concludes that the result in the case of cold baths is due to an increase of oxidation over disintegration, *i. e.*, to completer burning of acid organic substances, and hence to their disappearance. This is precisely what happens to the organic acids and acid organic salts of fruits and green vegetables. The organic radicle undergoing oxidation, largely into CO_2 and H_2O, leaves in the blood and body fluids the alkaline base of the salt and, therefore, raises the alkalinity of these fluids. While heating procedures increase oxidation, they bring about a greater disintegration of tissue, *i. e.*, partial combustion and so result in an acidification, which acid products remain to be excreted as such in the urine.

That Strasser's deductions are correct is shown by the changes in the acidity of the urine accompanying these changes in the alkalinity of the blood. (*Fig. 31.*) In the case of cold procedures there occurs a decrease in the acidity of the urine parallel with the decrease in the acid of the blood (increase of alkalescence), thus proving that the acidifying substances have, to that extent, wholly disappeared. Conversely, in the heating

9 Deutsche Medizinal-Zeitung, June 15, 1896, quoted from B. Buxbaum—Lehrbuch der Hydrotherapie, II Auflage, pp. 38, 39.

procedures an increase of acid in the blood (decrease of alkalescence) is accompanied by a like increase in the acidity of the urine, showing an actual increase in acidifying substances unoxidized, and hence coming to excretion as such.

PRACTICAL APPLICATION

Some of the most beneficial results of hydriatic measures are due to the facts recorded above. In the majority of diseases, there is a reduction in the alkalinity of the blood. This is particularly true of fevers and infectious diseases. An agent which will tend to restore the blood to its normal alkalinity will hasten all the processes of repair and raise vital resistance by supplying a more normal medium for the phagocytes.

The role of the leucocyte (phagocytosis) in combating infection is now an established fact. The admirable researches of Metchnikoff along this line leave no doubt that the white cell itself is the prime factor (and that not excepting opsonin) in phagocytosis, the production and maintenance of immunity and the body's general resistance to bacterial invasion. He has shown [10] what signal disaster to the production, and even the continuance of immunity, results from the administration of alcohol, quinine, opium, and other medicinal substances; this disaster being manifest by a diminution in the number and especially in the activity of the white blood cells. He further recommends the discarding of medicinal substances and the use of hygienic measures in the prophylaxis and treatment of infectious diseases. We have every reason to believe that cold hydriatic applications not only increase the number of leucocytes in the peripheral circulation, but also energize their action—amœboid movements, phagocytosis, and the production of antibodies. This we might safely infer from the results obtained by cold applications in increasing muscular capacity, glandular activity, etc. All protoplasm, whether of muscle cells, glandular epithelium, or leucocyte, responds alike to the tonic influence of short vigorous cold applications. The writer has repeatedly seen infections of the hand and arm clear up in four to six days, or even less time, when treated by alternating

10 The New Hygiene.

extreme hot and cold immersion, while other cases not so treated have required a month to accomplish the same results.

Since the blood and tissue cells are the source of opsonin, agglutinins, lysins, and other antibodies concerned in immunity, it is but reasonable to expect an increase in these as a result of the cellular stimulation produced by cold or alternate hot and cold applications. This has been partially demonstrated by Graziani,[11] who found that of rabbits injected with the filtrates of typhoid cultures, and kept at different temperatures (plus 38, 37, 2, and minus 4° C.), those kept at low temperatures developed more agglutinin than those kept at higher temperatures. He also experimented with rabbits kept at 32° C., bathing half of the number morning and evening, in water at 20° C. for thirty minutes. The animals treated by bathing produced more agglutinin than the others.

These facts demonstrate the truth of the Scripture statement that *the blood is the life*. The statement has not only its spiritual application, but is also founded upon demonstrated physical facts.

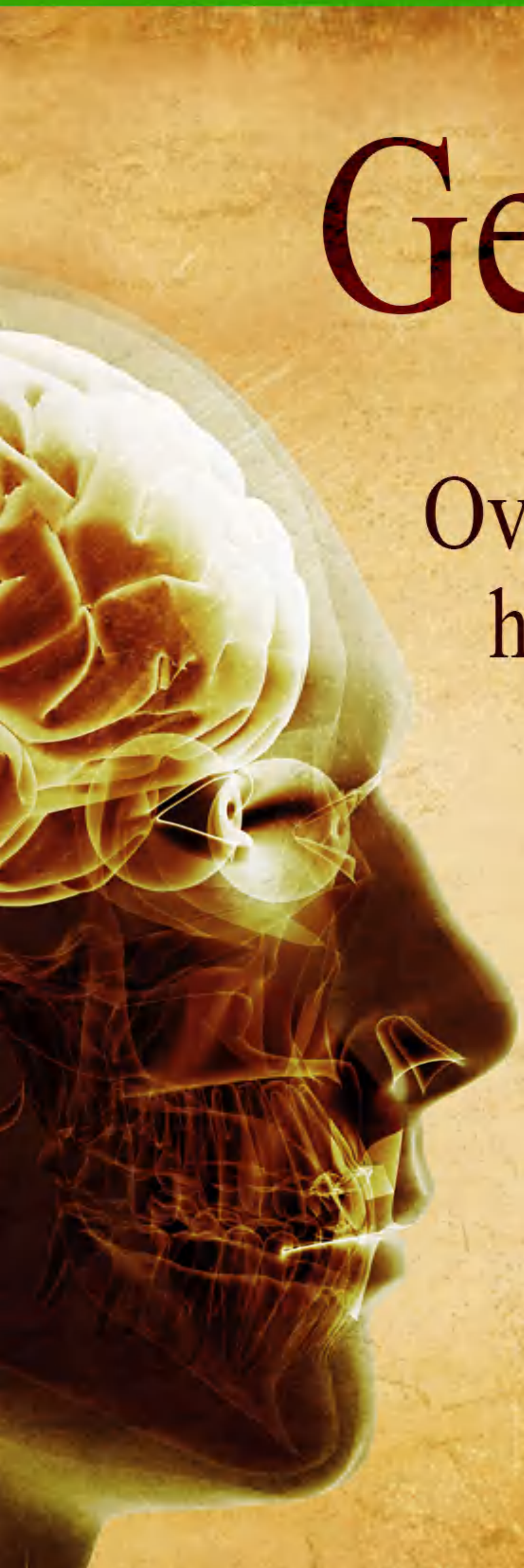
"Notwithstanding the many antiseptics, germicides, etc., that have been vaunted for the treatment of infectious diseases, the white blood cell itself is the most efficient germicide known, and will always retain its high place in the defence of the body against bacterial invasion; furthermore, the agent which assists the body by augmenting its natural powers of defence will never occupy a place secondary to purely artificial and chemical means of destroying the invaders." [12]

---

11 Centralblatt für Bakteriologie, 1907, I, XLII, 633.

12 Abbott—Elements of Hydrotherapy for Nurses, p. 54.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

perceptible contraction in order to effect metabolic changes. Through the innervation of the muscles, oxidation is controlled and may be greatly increased by hot or cold applications, without visible contractions. This conclusion was arrived at by Röhrig and Zuntz who further confirmed their opinion by experiments upon animals "in which the innervation of the muscles was held in obeyance by arrow poison. In such animals tissue change was not only not increased by cold, but was even reduced one-half."[2] Other stimuli than cold also affect tissue changes. The *relative* value of various cutaneous stimuli, varying degrees of heat, and the quantitative response of metaholism is best studied with carbonaceous metabolism (*q. v.*).

EFFECTS OF COLD

Strasser conducted two series of experiments at different times. In the *first* series two young men were selected as subjects. The daily ration, urine, and feces were carefully measured, and from chemical analyses and estimations from these, the results were obtained. The procedures were such as would ordinarily be administered to patients. In the *second* series a single individual was chosen. In this series the intake contained 122 gm. of proteid (19.0 gm. nitrogen) besides carbohydrate and fat. The output in feces and urine was measured for five days in order to establish the normal quantities of the various constituents for the individual under experiment. "The bath period lasted three days. On each day the man received in the morning at 8 o'clock a friction at 14° R. (63.5° F.). Forenoons at 11:30 a general cold rain bath with moving fan douche, and afternoons a half bath at 22° cooled to 18° R. (81.5° to 72.5° F.) of four minutes duration. Moderate exercise followed each procedure, as much as seemed necessary for warming, *i. e.*, the attainment of a good reaction."

The results of the *first* work as tabulated by Strasser are as follows —:

1. Increase of nitrogen metabolism, *i. e.*, increase of the nitrogen excretion in the urine; a simultaneous decrease in fecal nitrogen.

---

2 Baruch—Hydrotherapy, p. 80.

2. Absolute and relative increase in the excretion of urea.

3. High absolute increase in the excretion of uric acid, with relative proportion almost unchanged.

4. High absolute and relative increase in phosphorus excretion.

5. Small relative fluctuations in ammonia excretion.

6. Decrease in the sum of the extractives to a minimum.

The results in the second series of experiments entirely confirmed the findings in the first, and are of the same general character.[3]

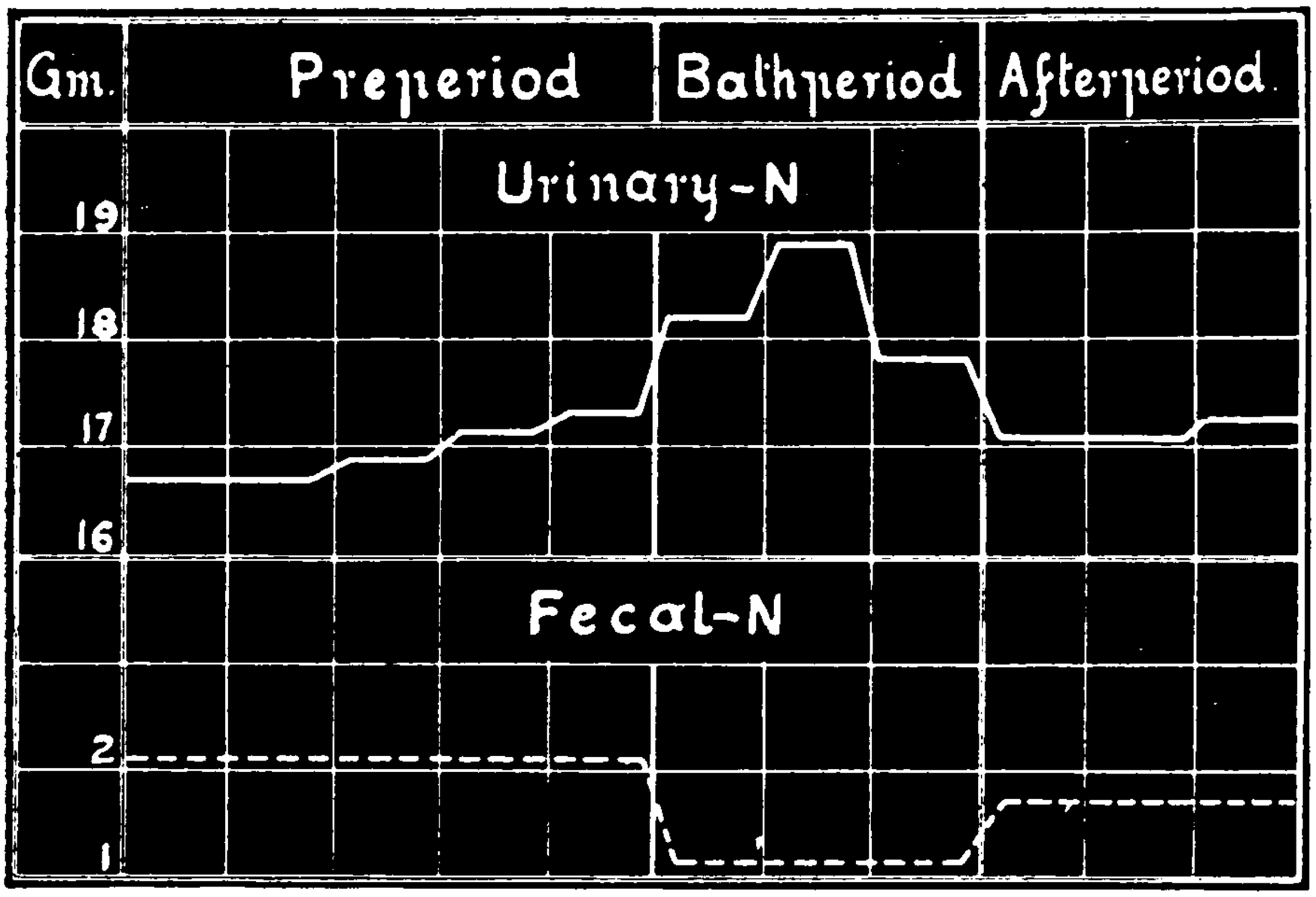


Fig. 32. Showing the effect of cold treatment on fecal and urinary nitrogen—reveals a heightened assimilation of proteid. (Strasser.)

Nitrogen Economy. The excretion of nitrogen (*Fig. 32.*) on the first bath day was increased 8.3 per cent over the average of the preperiod; a maximum increase of 11.4 per cent was reached on the second day, and on the last 6.0 per cent, thus averaging 8.6 per cent. The increase continued throughout the after-period. In the two first cases the average increase was respectively 10 and 16.4 per cent. The fecal nitrogen shows a corresponding decrease. The subject of the experiment remained practically in nitrogen balance throughout the experi-

3. Unless otherwise stated the charts and estimations refer to the second series of experiments.

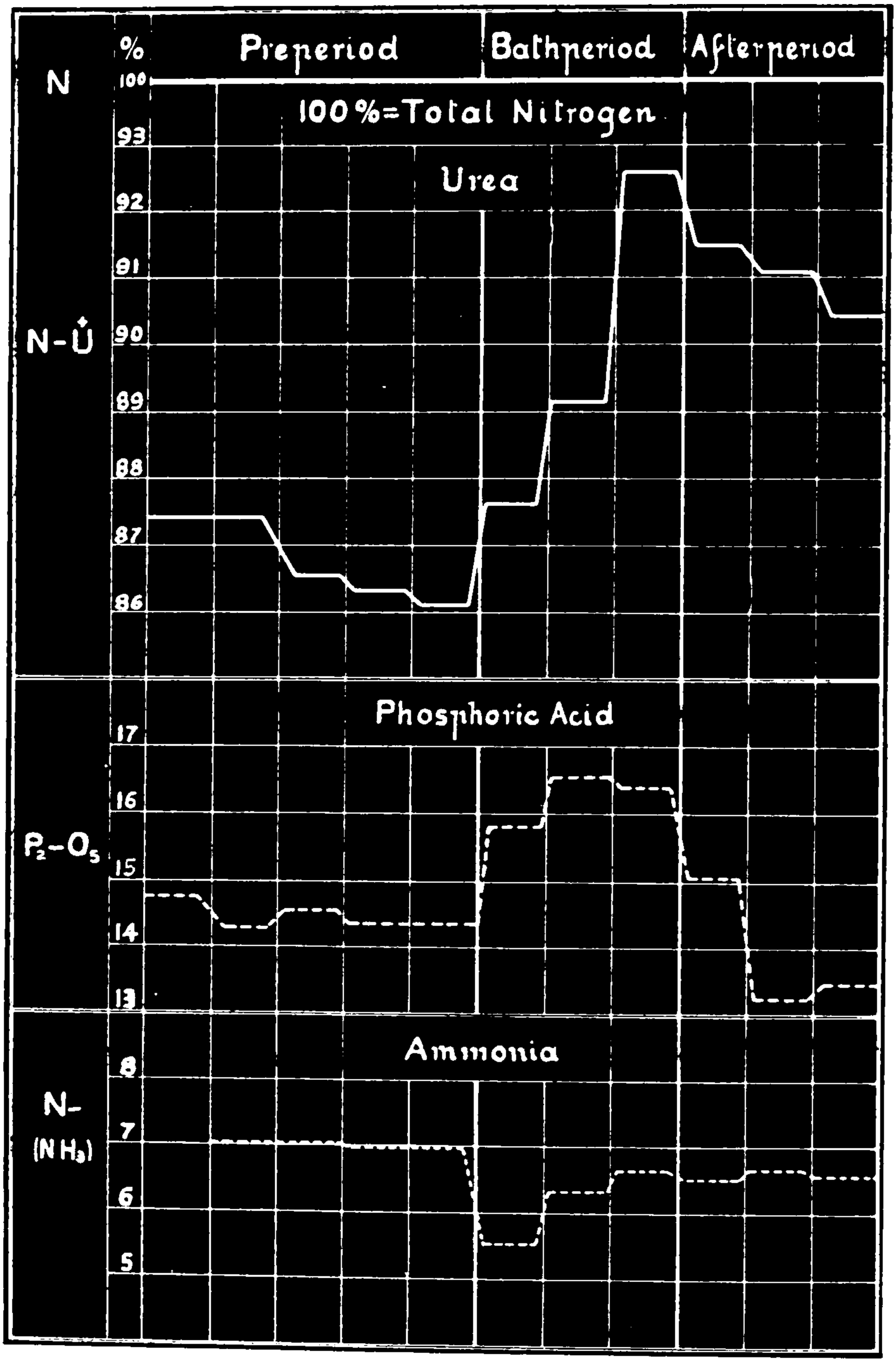


Fig. 33. Showing relative increase of urea and the phosphates and relative decrease of ammonia. (Strasser.)

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

less alkali (ammonia) for their neutralization and so lessen the relative amount of the latter formed.[4]

Uric Acid and Purin Bases. The accepted theories of nuclein metabolism are perhaps too well known to need explanation here. An increase in purin excretion may arise from either endogenous or exogenous purins. That the increased excretion of uric acid is due to heightened activity and breaking up of the leucocytes and, therefore, bears a definite relation to the leucocytosis which always accompanies the reaction to cold procedures, can be correct in part only. The excreted purins must of necessity come from all the nuclear nitrogen of the body as well as from the leucocytes. The more complete oxidation of exogenous purins and the hastening of their excretion may also account for the increase in uric acid.

The results obtained by different experimenters all agree as to the absolute increase in uric acid excretion under the influence of thermic procedures. It runs parallel with the excretion of urea. In Strasser's experiments there was an immediate increase of uric acid on the first bath day, which reached a maximum of 25 per cent on the third bath day and an average of 22 per cent during the entire bath period. The increase, though somewhat less in per cent, continued throughout the entire after-period at an average height of 12.7 per cent above the level of the preperiod. The results in the two cases of his first series entirely coincided with this. In these cases the increase in the total purin averaged 10.4 per cent during the bath period and even a higher stage was reached and maintained during the entire three-day after-period.

Relative to the total nitrogen, there was also a slight increase. Of 100 parts of total nitrogen the nitrogen of the uric acid constituted 1.52 per cent in the preperiod, 1.71 per cent in the bath period and 1.68 per cent in the after-period.

---

4 It would seem, however, that the small relative increase of ammonia is due to the relatively more complete conversion of ammonium carbonate into urea, its end product. As a product of proteid metabolism it is subject to increased oxidation in common with other nitrogen derivatives, a larger relative increase is prevented by the increased vigor of hepatic activity tending to push the change beyond ammonium carbonate to the formation of urea.

Inorganic acids require alkali for their neutralization as well as organic acids and the former are not only not decreased in amount, but are actually increased. For further discussion of the requirement of organic acids for ammonia and fixed alkali see Graham Lusk—Metabolism in Diabetes—Journal American Medical Association, December 17, 1910.

Of particular interest in connection with nuclein metabolism is the behavior of the purin bases. As the uric acid excretion increases in amount the purin bases progressively decrease, until on the third bath day the entire purin excretion consists of uric acid, the bases having wholly disappeared. At the close of the treatment the purin bases again rise, to reach on the third day

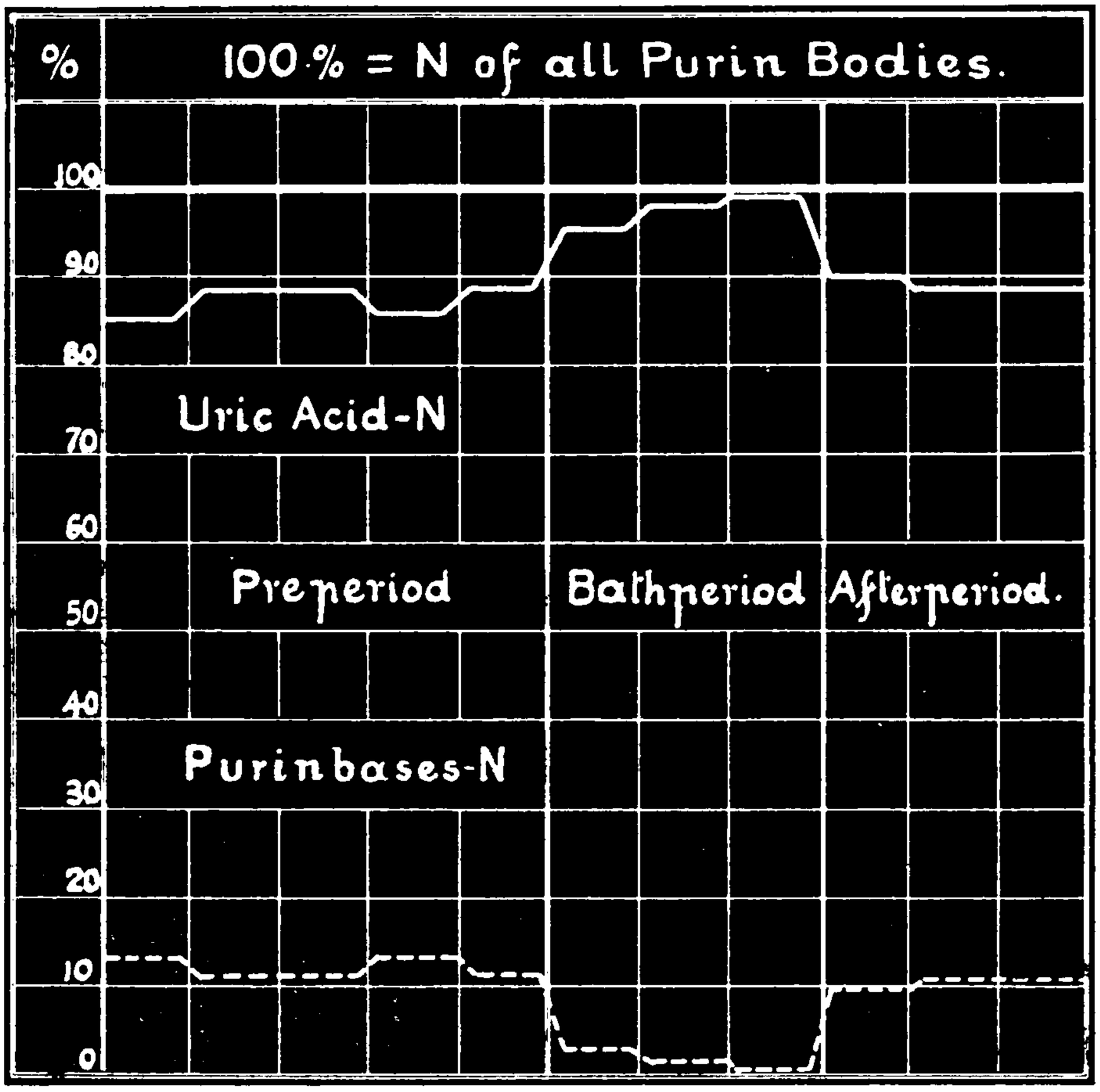


Fig. 34. Showing effect of cold treatment on the oxidation of purins. (Strasser.)

of the after-period, the height of the preperiod. This change in the proportion of the two constituents of purin excretion is graphically shown in *Fig. 34*. Letting 100 per cent represent the total purin nitrogen, 85.5 per cent appears as uric acid and 14.5 per cent as purin bases. On the bath days the per cent of uric acid rises to 96, then to 98 and finally to 100 per cent. The nitrogen content of the bases sinks to 4, then to 2 and finally to 0 per cent.

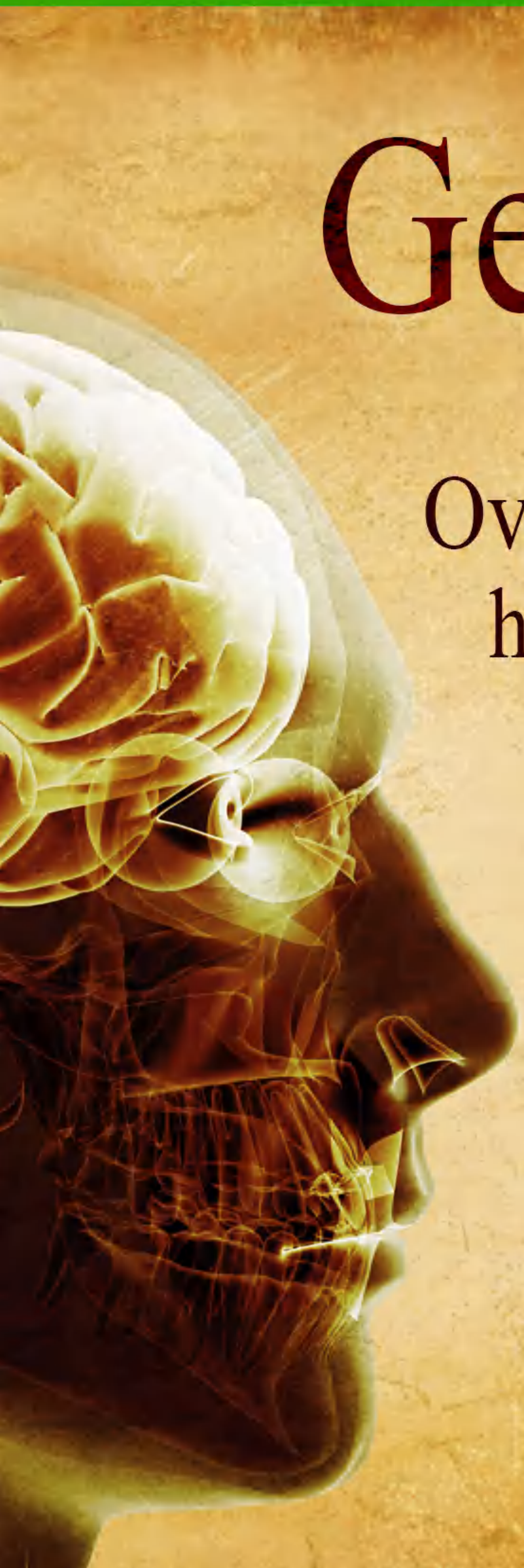
With the composition of uric acid and the bases in mind, the explanation of the above changes is not difficult. Uric acid is trioxypurin, while the bases all contain less oxygen, being mostly mono- or dioxypurin, with amine or hydrocarbon side groups. Uric acid is, therefore, the most highly oxidized of the purin bodies. It is plain to be seen that the stimulus of the hydriatic procedures has resulted in oxidation of the bases to uric acid, a distinct cumulative effect being manifest by the progressive completeness of this oxidation, until on the third bath day no bases are left, all purin nitrogen appearing as uric acid.

This result is of no little importance in the treatment of the gouty diatheses. With a kidney permeable to uric acid as it is in uncomplicated gout, the purins may be made to come to both complete oxidation and complete excretion. The increase in the alkalescence of the blood and body tissues also resulting from cold applications greatly favors these changes.

The condition in uratic diathesis in reality consists of an accumulation of all the purin bodies (uric acid plus bases). Because of this Kolisch proposed the term "purin diathesis" instead of uric acid diathesis. The excretion of the bases exercises a deleterious effect upon the kidneys, and the altered kidney is in turn less capable of excreting basic purin. This *vicious circle* would be done away with, were the bases excreted in a more completely oxidized state, *i. e.*, as uric acid. As remarked by Strasser, tonic hydrotherapy breaks through this vicious circle and completely changes the aspect of purin auto-intoxication. The excretion of a waste, not as such, but in an altered and less toxic state may be considered "the removal of poison par excellence."

Extractives. A summary of the relation of the nitrogenous extractives to the total nitrogen shows that they constitute respectively 3.86 per cent in the preperiod, 2.17 per cent in the bath period and 0.56 per cent in the after-period. As already mentioned, on the third bath day they disappear entirely and urea, uric acid, and ammonia claim the whole nitrogen for themselves.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

phorus comes from lecithin as well as certain proteids. In the first experiments the relative increase lasted throughout the whole of the after-period. It is significant that only the more labile phosphates take part in the increase. This increase in urinary phosphorus is wholly in the alkaline phosphates, the earthy phosphates remain unchanged (*Fig. 35.*).

Sulphates and Chlorides. The sulphur of the urine also comes from proteid substances and the urinary sulphates are, therefore, another end product of proteid metabolism and should increase with the nitrogen. The average increase was 10.4 per cent during the bath period, which height was maintained during nearly the whole of the after-period. The increase in the sulphates was almost entirely in the mineral sulphates, the ethereal sulphates suffering but a trifling change. This might be expected since more complete digestion and assimilation of proteid, together with completer oxidation, would tend to decrease putrefactive changes and so lessen the relative amount of ethereal sulphate. Hawk observed decreased intestinal putrefaction as a result of copious water-drinking. This result was measured by the indican output. It seemed to be due to more complete intestinal absorption.

The increase in the excretion of sodium chloride was chiefly on the first bath day (15 per cent) and did not outlast the bath period. The excretion of sodium chloride in œdema is a matter of no little importance. In this condition hydriatic applications produce an increase in chloride excretion in two ways; first, by increasing the absorption of interstitial fluid, and second, by stimulating kidney activity.

EFFECTS OF HEAT

The reported researches regarding the effects of heat upon metabolism are somewhat conflicting in their results. This is doubtless due to differences in the mode of application, the intensity, duration, and frequency of repetition of the treatment as well as in the reactive response of the organism. Formanek observed that a single hot bath scarcely changed the nitrogen, but after two or more such baths on successive days there occurred a decided increase of nitrogen elimination. It would

seem that a single hot bath, if not too prolonged, should decrease the elimination of nitrogen for the time-being, as a result of the atonic reaction and the lessened amount of water excreted by the kidney.

In general this agrees with the results obtained by two different observers,[5] one working with the Turkish bath and one with the Russian bath.

Effects of Turkish Bath at 122° F. for 50 Minutes

	Day before Bath	Day of Bath
Amount of urine 24 hours	1,567. c. c.	950. c. c.
Specific gravity	1,018.8	1,027.
Urea	45.47 gm.	39.9 gm.
Uric acid	0.683 gm.	0.860 gm.

Effects of Russian Bath at 113° F. for 25 Minutes

	Day before Bath	Day of Bath
Amount of urine 24 hours	1,683. c. c.	900. c. c.
Specific gravity	1,021.	1,027.
Urea	52.68 gm.	38.7 gm.
Uric acid	0.858 gm.	0.980 gm.

Bastels, Naunyn, and Schleich found an increase of urea and total nitrogen excretion which later showed diminution. It is altogether possible that these opposite results may also be accounted for by the differences in the amount of water ingested by the subjects during the respective experiments. Loss of water through sweating decreases the tissue fluids and therefore the urinary solvent, if this loss is not replaced by water-drinking. It has been shown by Hawk[6] that copious water-drinking increases the excretion of nitrogen in the form of urea, due to the washing out from the tissues of preformed urea. He also observed a greater phosphorus excretion. The maximum increase occurred regularly on the second day of the experiment.

The secondary diminution in the nitrogen excretion observed by Schleich would tend to show that the metabolized nitrogen in the case of hot baths comes more from the *tissue albumen* than from any increase in the intestinal absorption of proteids.

5 Hinsdale—Hydrotherapy, pp. 22, 23.

6 University of Pennsylvania Medical Bulletin, 1905.

In case prolonged hot applications increase the efficiency of absorption, there should be a gradual return of the curve of increased excretion to the normal. Instead of this, lessened excretion occurs in an effort to restore the nitrogen balance. This also agrees with clinical experience. A course of hot baths unaccompanied by the tonic of cold applications results in loss of weight. It is true this is largely a loss of fat, but the tissue proteids are also concerned in the increased oxidation.

All observers seem to agree that the excretion of uric acid is increased by hot baths. This being true, both hot and cold baths should be useful in gout.

EFFECTS ON LOW PROTEID DIET

Strasser's experiments were all conducted upon individuals subsisting upon a high proteid diet—122 grams of proteid. In May of 1912 Prof. E. H. Risley[7] conducted, at the request of the writer, a series of experiments to determine the effects of stimulating hydriatic procedures upon the nitrogen metabolism of healthy individuals subsisting upon a low proteid diet (Chittenden standard).

Six medical students were chosen. The diet contained daily 61 grams of proteid and, including carbohydrate and fat, possessed a total calorific value of 2,525 calories. As all were accustomed to a non-flesh dietary, this was no great change from their usual fare. The excretions for the first day of the standard diet were discarded. For the nine days following, estimations were made of the quantity, specific gravity, acidity, urea, ammonia, creatinin, uric acid, total purin, and total nitrogen of the urine; also the total nitrogen of the feces.

The preperiod, the treatment period, and the after-period each lasted three days. During the treatment period, three treatments daily were administered to each man. These were as follows: At 6:30 A. M. was given a cold shower or spray, or a hot and cold shower, with temperatures according to the ability of the individual to react. The forenoon treatment at 10 A. M. consisted of an alternate hot and cold leg bath, with

7 E. H. Risley, M. D., formerly professor of chemistry in the College of Medical Evangelists. Doctor Risley's long experience in studies in diet and metabolism assures the accuracy of the results.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

changes without encroaching at all upon the more stabile or necessary nitrogen required by normal body functions. It is, therefore, to be confidently expected that hydrotherapeutic measures should have their greatest effects, both qualitatively and quantitatively, in disorders of proteid metabolism and in individuals who have for years been accustomed to a high proteid diet, *i. e.*, an excessive ingestion of nitrogen.

This view of the matter is entirely consistent with the fact that the nitrogen of the food does not serve primarily as fuel for the supply of energy, but is utilized in tissue building and in tissue repair. Neither changes in season nor in the amount of muscular work produce appreciable changes in the metabolism of *tissue* nitrogen. On the other hand changes in season and the amount of muscular work performed produce large changes in the amount of non-nitrogenous food required. Likewise thermic and mechanical stimulation produce most conspicuous changes in carbonaceous metabolism. It is to these changes we shall now turn our attention.

CHAPTER XII

RESPIRATION, RESPIRATORY CHANGES AND CARBONACEOUS METABOLISM

IN THE previous chapter, we have considered tissue change solely from the standpoint of proteid metabolism and chiefly as regards the nitrogenous moiety. There remains of course a certain amount of carbohydrate when urea is spilt off from the proteid molecule, also the carbohydrate taken as such and the fat, all of which contain no nitrogen. Their metabolism is so intimately associated with respiratory interchanges that we shall consider them together; the respiratory excretion being quite as much a guide to these changes as is renal excretion to nitrogenous changes.

RESPIRATORY EFFECTS

We have noted that all sorts of stimuli applied to the skin produce more or less pronounced vasomotor and cardiac changes, through reflex action. The respiration is more readily affected by cutaneous stimuli than is any other function. One of the most efficient means of resuscitating the new born infant is the use of heat and cold. The same method, *i. e.*, the alternate application of heat and cold to the chest, is scarcely less effective in the adult. The sudden application of either extreme heat or cold, especially if accompanied by percussion, produces an initial deep respiration, which is almost as suddenly interrupted, this being followed by other spasmodic efforts, so that the respiration assumes a staccato type. With prolonged applications of either heat or cold, the respiration soon becomes regular, the rate and depth depending upon the temperature of the application.

Kellogg records the following experiments[1] as illustrative of the effect of thermic stimuli upon the volume of tidal air. To a subject whose tidal air measured 28 cubic inches, a wet sheet rub at 40° F. was administered. Immediately after the treatment, the tidal air measured 35 cubic inches, an increase of nearly 26 per cent.

To another subject, with an initial tidal air volume of 33 cubic inches, a cold mitten friction was administered at 45° F. Immediately after, the tidal air measured 51 cubic inches, an increase of 55 per cent.

In a third subject the amount of tidal air before the treatment was 27 cubic inches. A wet sheet pack wrung from water at 45° F. was applied and continued for one hour. After the initial warming, the pack was kept at the neutral stage. Two minutes after the sheet was applied, the volume of the tidal air was 36 cubic inches, an increase of 33 1-3 per cent. In 15 minutes it was 33 cubic inches. The volume gradually decreased until at the end of the hour it was 28 cubic inches. During the entire period, there was an average increase of 18 1-2 per cent.

In a fourth subject a heating compress wrung from ice water was applied to the chest only. The tidal air immediately rose from 507 c. c. to 751 c. c., an increase of 48 per cent. At the end of 20 minutes the tidal air measured 604 c. c., 20 per cent more than at the beginning. The average increase was 170 c. c., or 33 per cent.

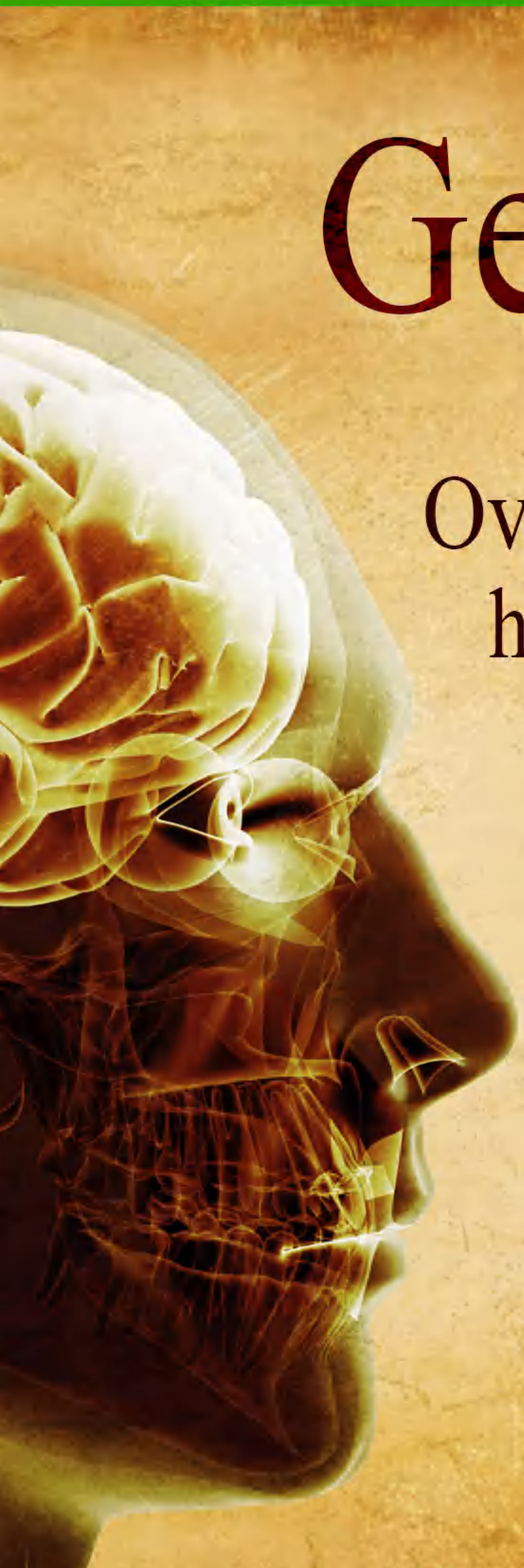
Another subject, whose tidal air was 43 cubic inches, was immersed in a hot bath at 108° F. After 12 minutes the tidal air had decreased to 27 cubic inches, or a decrease of 37.2 per cent. Ten minutes after the bath, it had risen to 33 cubic inches; 30 minutes after, to 37 cubic inches. The loss in the volume of respired air amounted to 37 1-2 per cent.

Brief, sudden applications of cold produce spasmodic respiration. The reaction to cold applications is accompanied by a slowed rate and greater depth of respiration, as shown by the above experiments. The rate is slowed and the amplitude of movement increased in proportion to the completeness of reaction.

---

1 Rational Hydrotherapy, pp. 1122, 1133.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Rubner[2] (1903) has given us some observations which are of a very practical nature, since the results obtained were after hot and cold applications given as they are ordinarily applied in practice. The following table shows the effect of short baths upon the consumption of oxygen and the elimination of carbon dioxide:—

Bath at	Volume of Air	CO_2	O_2	Resp. Quot.[3]
61° F.	plus 22.9%	plus 64.8%	plus 46.8%	0.86 : 1.00
86° F.	" 7.3	" 31.0	" 16.2	0.95 : 0.93
91° F.	" 1.8	minus 1.8	" 6.2	0.87 : 0.90
104° F.	" 16.1	" 3.9	" 3.2	0.86 : 0.90
111° F.	" 18.8	plus 32.1	" 17.3	0.86 : 1.00

H. Winternitz (1899) in seven experiments upon the same individual, observed that hot baths continued 30 minutes produce during that time an average increase in the consumption of oxygen amounting to 78 per cent and in CO_2 elimination of 91 per cent. Observations made on an average nearly an hour after the bath, still revealed an increase of 22 per cent in the oxygen consumed and 16 per cent in CO_2 exhaled. Rubner has shown that metabolism is at a minimum under temperatures from 91.4° to 95° F. (33° to 35° C.). A fall of every 1° C. in the surrounding temperature increases metabolism by 2 or 3 per cent.

From the above observations we may deduce the law that applications below the skin temperature increase respiratory changes in proportion to the degree of cold. Neutral temperatures exert but little influence. Temperatures above that of the skin surface again increase the respiratory function in proportion to the degree of heat.

Rubner[4] found in his experiments that a douche produced more than double the change produced by a bath at the same temperature, each continued for the same length of time, *viz.*, 3 1-2 to 5 minutes. The accompanying table shows the increase in per cent.

---

2 Archiv für Hygiene, 1903, Bd. 46.

3 The normal respiratory quotient is 0.9 and is found by dividing the amount of oxygen inhaled by the amount of carbon dioxide exhaled.

4 Archiv für Hygiene, 1903, Bd. 46, p. 390.

	Douche at 61° F.	Bath at 61° F.
Volume of air	plus 54.5%	plus 22.9%
CO_2 exhaled	" 149.4	" 64.8
O consumed	" 110.1	" 46.8

These observations prove the immense advantage of mechanical stimuli combined with thermic and also of exercise following hydriatic treatment, especially when taken in the open air. A swimming bath or cold rubbing bath produces more decided tissue change than quiet immersion for the same reason. The same is true of massage following baths of whatever temperature. At Aix-les-Bains a specialty is made of what is called the massage douche. This consists of deep-kneading of the muscles given while one or more streams of water are pouring over the parts treated. The Turkish shampoo following a Turkish or Russian bath also combines many of the procedures of massage, and is very popular with the obese. All such combinations of extreme thermic with vigorous mechanical stimulation are of great advantage in the treatment of obesity since the resultant oxidation of carbon compounds is more than double that produced by thermic stimulation alone. The lung gymnastics produced by hydriatic applications are by no means the least important factor in the results produced by hydrotherapy.

CHAPTER XIII

MUSCULAR CAPACITY

THE restorative effect of warm baths in relieving the sense of fatigue, and the tonic effect of the cold douche or spray in overcoming the effects of fatigue, are familiar to all who are acquainted with the practical application of hydriatic procedures. These effects are extensively used by athletes in overcoming the exhaustion of severe or prolonged exertion. And medically considered, they are by no means the least important of the results obtained by hydriatic applications.

In 1892 and 1893 Vinaj and Maggiori[1] reported a series of experiments undertaken to show the effect of hydriatic measures upon the capacity of the muscles for work and their resistance to fatigue. These investigations were made with Mosso's ergograph (*Fig. 36.*). This instrument is so constructed as to hold the hand and forearm stationary in the body of the apparatus, while one finger is left free for flexion and extension. The forefinger, or middle finger, is usually employed so that, by means of a cord over a pulley, it raises and lowers a weight. This is kept up until the muscles are fatigued and unable to contract longer. A writing point makes a graphic record on the drum of an upright or horizontal kymograph. Their experiments were done with a weight of three or four kilograms, raised every two seconds.

In one experiment (*Fig. 37A.*) the middle finger of the right hand was, under normal conditions, able to execute fifty contractions, representing a work of 5.139 kilogrammeters. After a cold bath at 50° F. for fifteen seconds the same group of muscles executed, before fatigued, seventy-four contractions representing a work of 9.126 kilogrammeters (*Fig. 37B.*).

1 Blätter für klinische Hydrotherapie.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

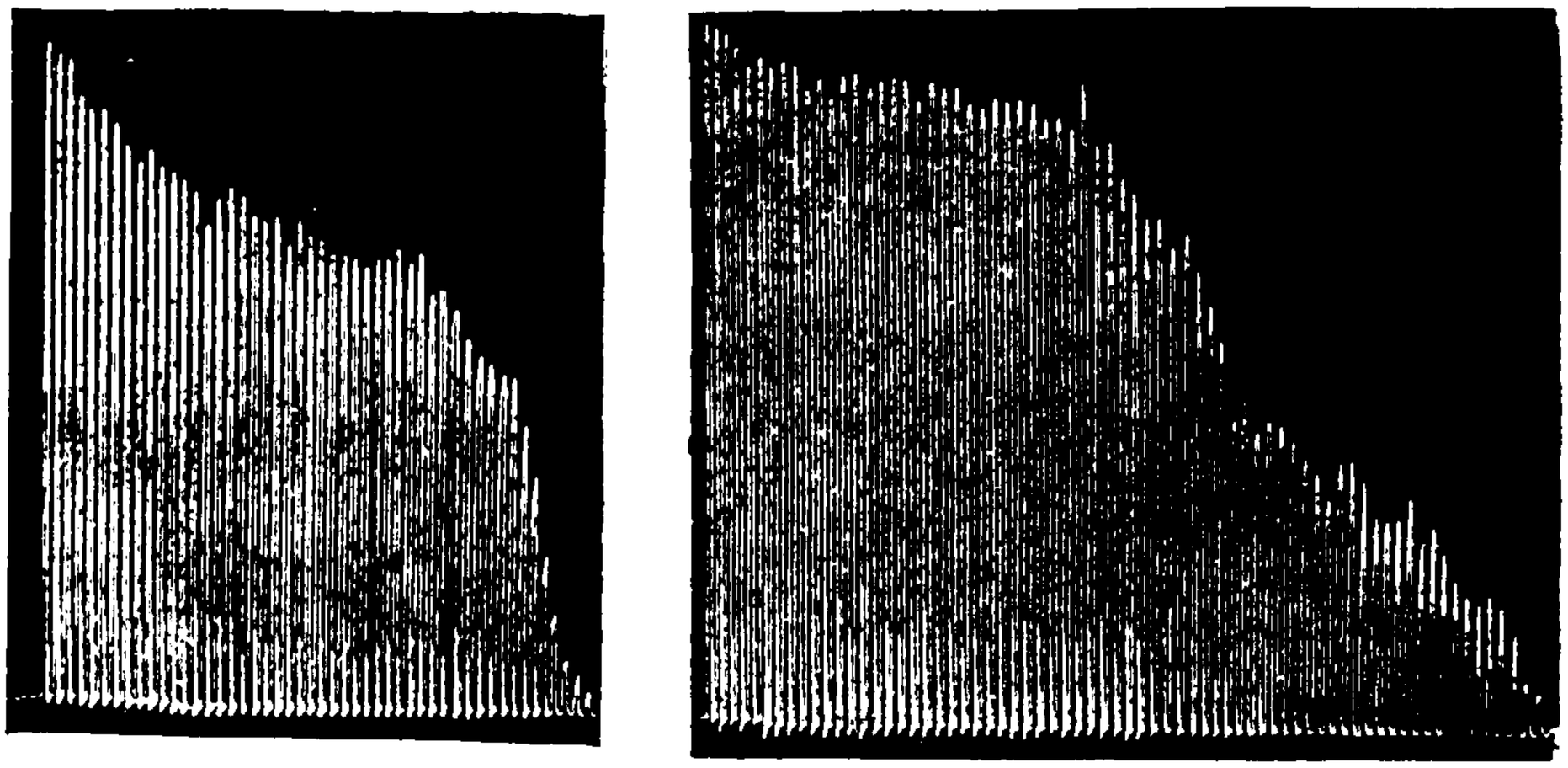
Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

With hot baths the opposite effects prevail. There is a decided lessening of the muscular capacity, amounting in one of Kellogg's experiments to a decrease of 44 per cent. His experiments cover a wide range and are very instructive. He used both Mosso's ergograph and the dynomometer; the latter a machine of his own design. The following table is compiled from his experiments with Mosso's ergograph:—[2]

Subject			Hot Treatment			Cold Treatment		
AGE	WEIGHT	INITIAL STRENGTH	DEGREE	TIME	RESULT	DEGREE	TIME	RESULT
21	140	4.994	Spr. 113°	15 Min.	4.432	Spr. 60°	10 Min.	6.094
26	150	5.395				D. 60°	1 Min.	6.925
Not stated		1.312	D. 115°	5 Min.	0 927	D. 55°	15 Sec.	1.527
26	151	8 282				D. 60°	3 Min.	11.966
26	151	6.371	Gen. D. 112°	15 Min.	4.155	Gen. D. 56°	15 Sec.	8.448
26	151	8.033	B. 104°	20 Min.	4.459			
26	151	5.817				Gen. D. 55°	15 Sec.	8.642
26	151	5.817	Neutral bath		5.789			
21	140	5.761				Shal. B. 65°	2 Min.	7.589
21	140	4.791				W. S. P. 60°	20 Min.	5.456



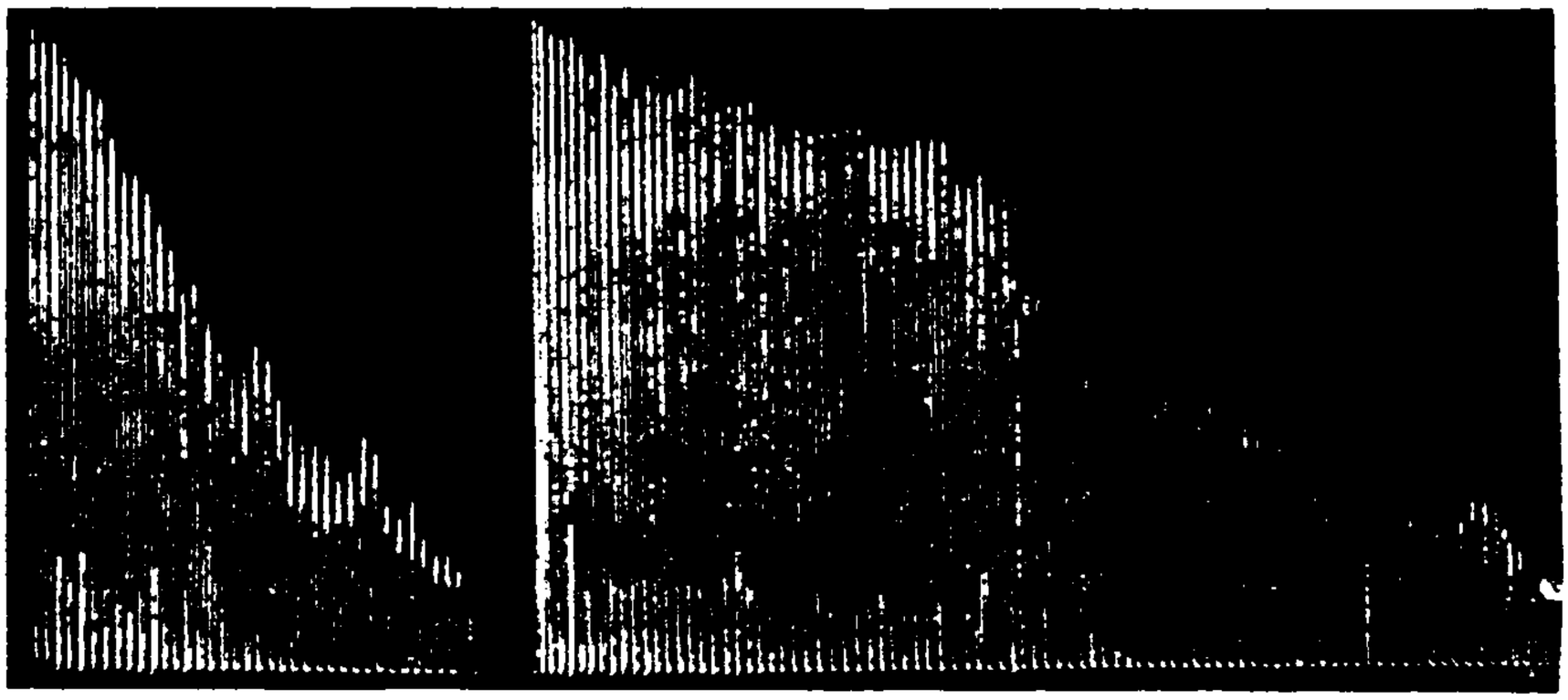
A B

Fig. 37. Fatigue curve of right hand. A—normal. B—after bath at 50° F. for fifteen seconds.

Considering both the dynomometer and ergograph experiments, there was, after cold procedures, an average gain in muscular capacity of about thirty per cent, and after hot applications, an average loss of thirty per cent in the work aecomplished. Cold, therefore, increases the muscular working capacity; while warmth, not combined with mechanical effects, diminishes muscular power. *After fatigue* a simple warm bath may slightly increase muscular power, although this effect is

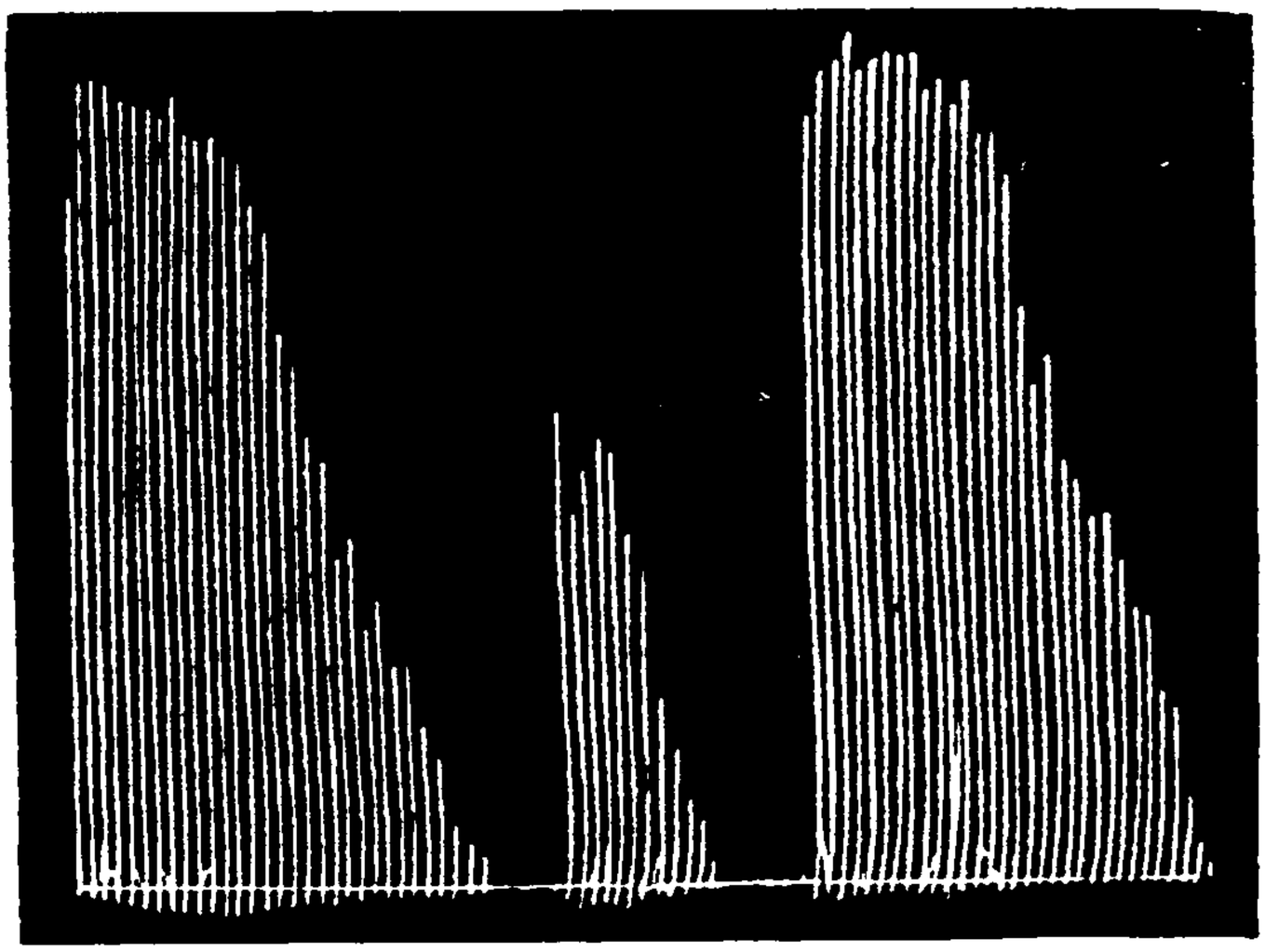
2 Recorded in Rational Hydrotherapy.

not decided (*Fig. 41A.*). Warm procedures when combined with friction or percussion, as in douches, produce an increase in muscular power (*Fig. 41C.*), but to a less extent than cold. In practice alternate hot and cold douches, when so given that



A B

Fig. 38. Fatigue curve. A—before, B—after graduated bath, 96° to 68° F.

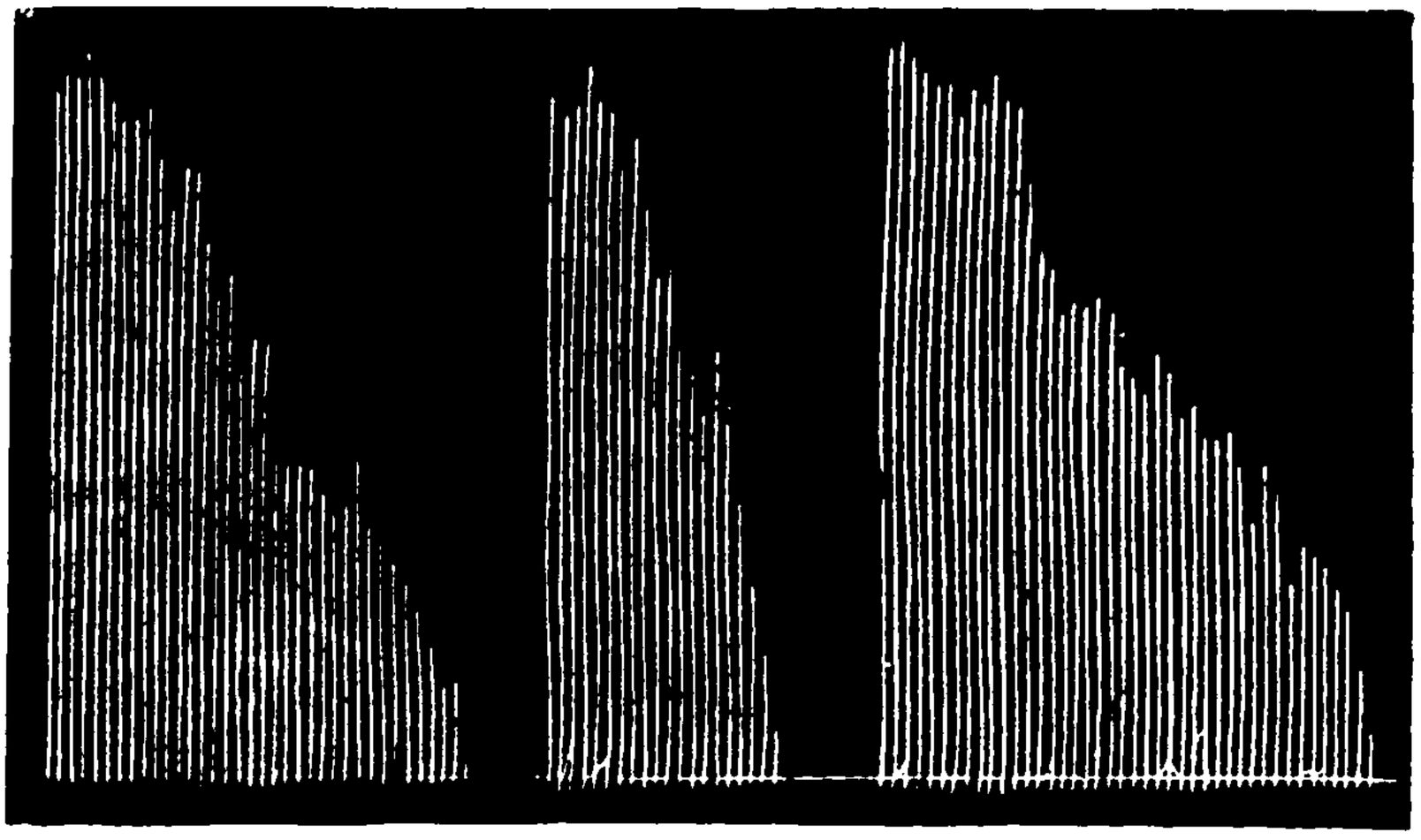


A B C

Fig. 39. Effect of work and graduated bath upon fatigue curve. A—normal, B—after active work, C—after work followed by bath.

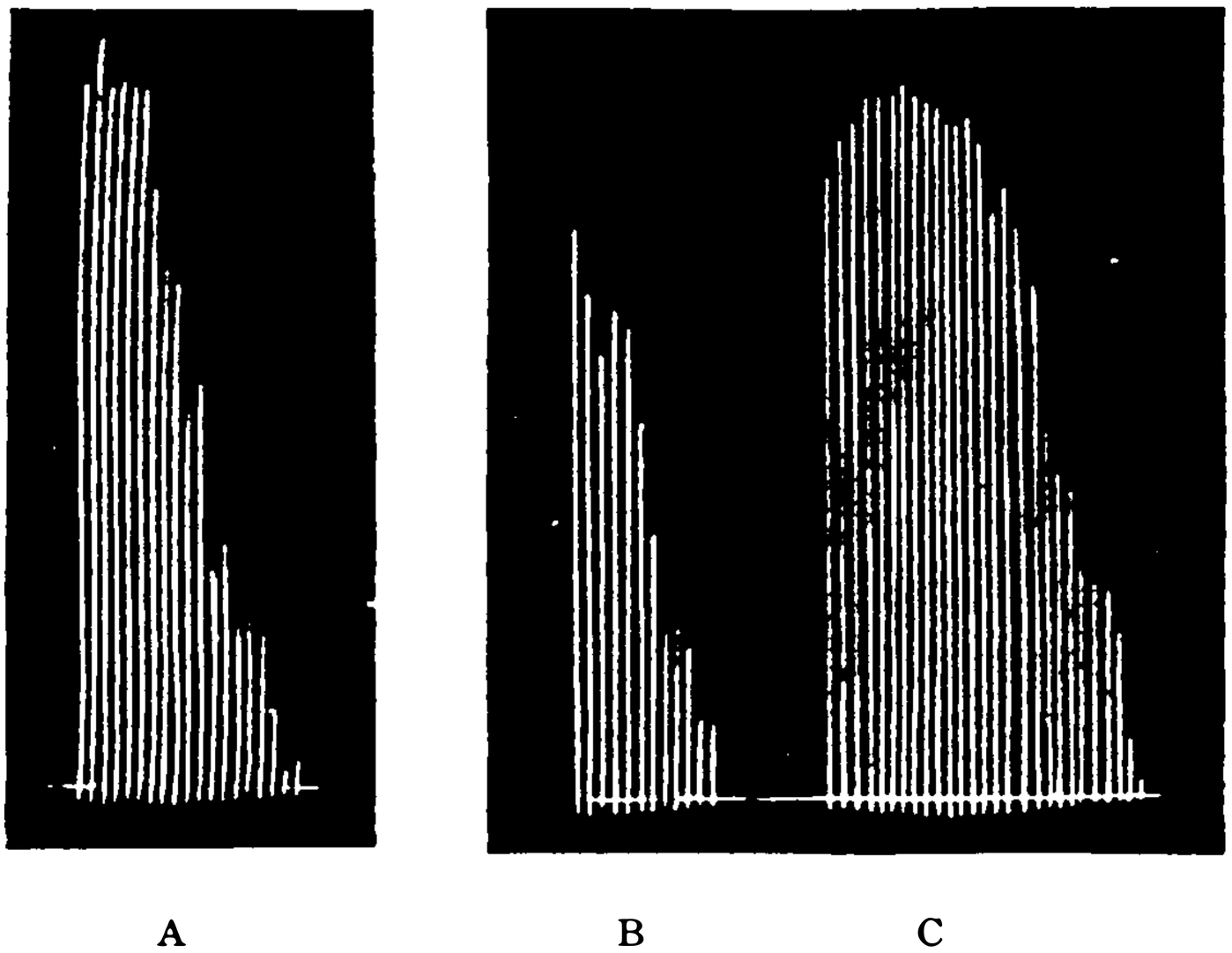
the hot is short and used only to prepare the body for cold, produce the greatest increase in the working power. Mechanical effects alone, such as massage, also raise the working capacity of the muscles but to a less extent than cold procedures.

To what are these tonic and restorative effects due? This question may be somewhat difficult to answer; but it would



A B C

Fig. 40. Effect of labor and cold wet sheet rub upon fatigue curve. A—normal, B—after labor, C—after labor followed by wet sheet rub.

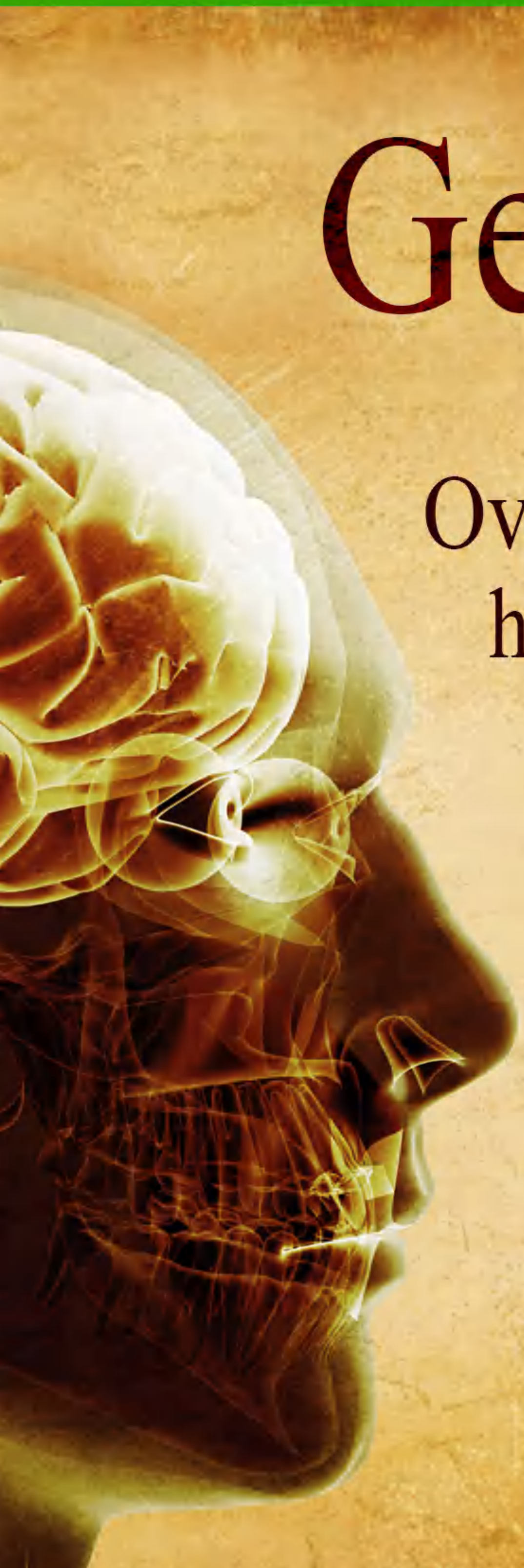


A B C

Fig. 41. Effect of simple warm bath and of warm douche on fatigued muscles. A—muscular fatigue followed by warm bath, B—after fatigue only, C—after fatigue followed by warm douche.

seem that the restoration of the muscle to its normal working power is due to more than one change. Among these changes may be mentioned the restoration of *tone* to the nerve and its

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

particularly of the metabolism of nuclear proteid seem to exercise the same effect. Since the amount of these from the organism itself is small and fairly constant the effects are most apparent in the case of ingestion of much purin with the food (exogenous purin). The premature appearance of fatigue in meat eaters and users of coffee and tea is scarcely to be accounted for on any other basis.

It is a well known fact that the fatigue curves of vegetarians reveal a high degree of ability to sustain continuous and prolonged effort; while on the contrary the fatigue curves of meat eaters show a great susceptibility to fatigue, and hence its early onset in endurance tests. Buttner's recent compilation of

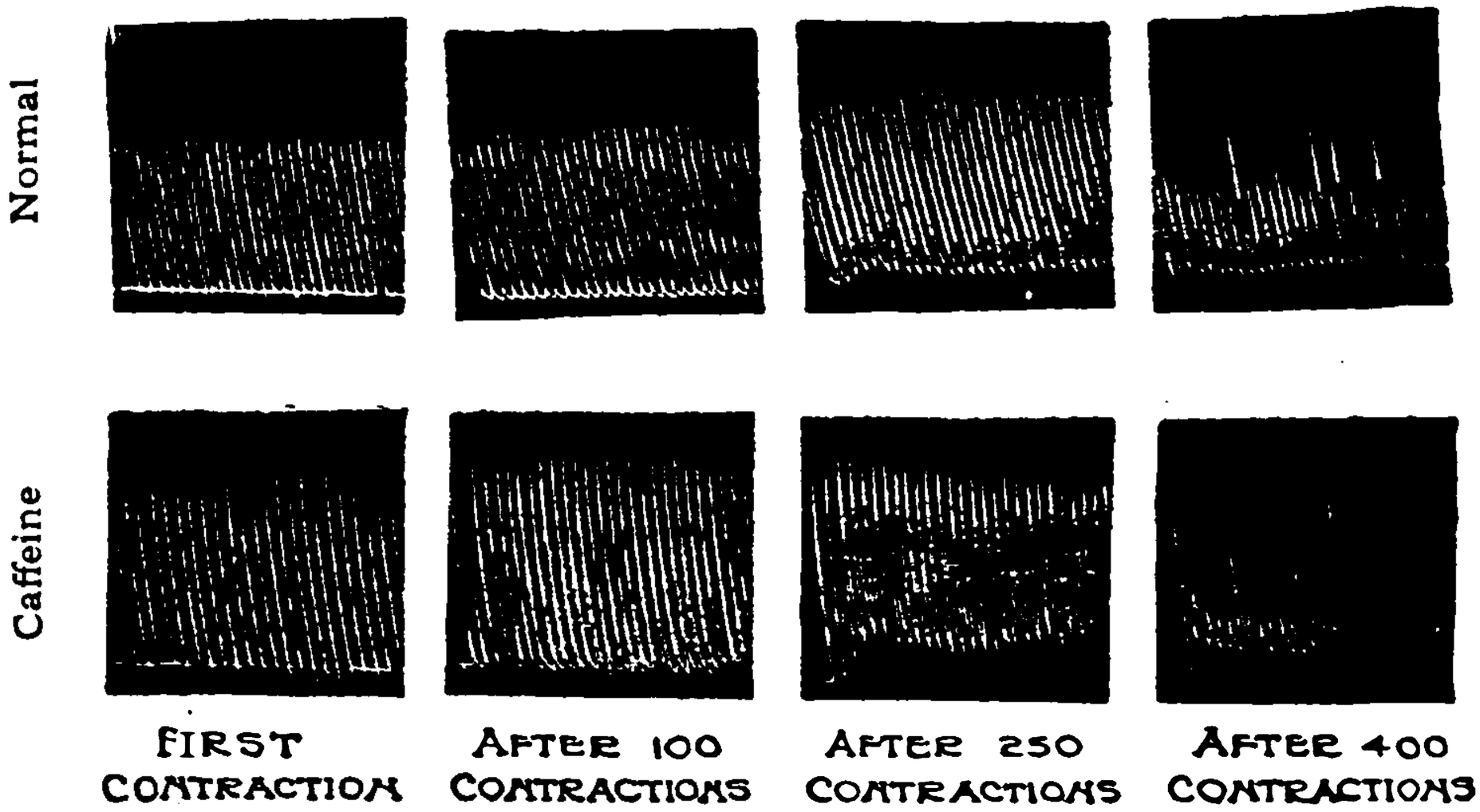


Fig. 42. The effects of caffeine on voluntary muscle. The two tracings are from the two gastrocnemii of a frog. The muscle which recorded the upper one was kept in a physiologic salt solution, the lower one in a dilute solution of caffeine. (Wood.)

experimental work in this line in his treatise on "A Fleshless Diet" leaves no question as to the finality of these conclusions. The data there given are most interesting and important and should claim the attention of all who undertake to advise or prescribe in matters dietetic.

That the early onset of fatigue in meat eaters and coffee users is due largely or wholly to purin substances is very well shown by the experiments of H. C. Wood, Jr.[4] He experimented with the voluntary muscle of a frog, using a solution of

4 Pharmacology and Therapeutics, p. 36.

caffeine (trimethyl xanthin) which is one of the basic purins. The result was at first an increased height of the muscular contraction and hence an increase of the work performed. Later, fatigue set in earlier and the contractions showed a much diminished amplitude and greater irregularity than in the normal (*Fig. 42.*). These observations agree with the effects observed in meat-eating athletes who excel vegetarians in a "spurt", *i. e.*, a short contest, but who invariably fall out before the finish or come in behind in cases of prolonged effort.

THERAPEUTIC APPLICATION

The therapeutic points of practical importance which one may gain from the facts brought out by the above experiments are these: Hot applications are useful in decreasing the tonicity of hypertonic muscles, lessening their irritability and relieving either clonic or tetanic spasm. These effects bring about relaxation and rest. The nervous system is quieted and the nervous manifestations of extreme fatigue disappear so that ideal conditions for sleep are produced. These sedative effects are discussed further in the part on therapeutics. The heat leaves no bad after-effects. There is no feeling of drowsiness or languor the following forenoon as is so common after sleep induced by trionol, veronal, etc. Unlike morphia or the bromides, heat does not cover up or mask important symptoms. It does not poison or anesthetize the nerve centers or endings.

In cold applications properly graduated to suit the needs of various conditions we possess the most useful muscular stimulant and tonic known to medical science. The stimulating effects of strychnine are not comparable with it. The stimulation produced by strychnine is not constant or uniform. Its toxic action becomes manifest in even small doses. Its frequent repetition soon wears out the response, and depression results. When frequently repeated the stimulating stage is of very transient duration and later is absent altogether. It produces a feeling of exhaustion and irritability, rather than exhilaration. "On the whole, *strychnine must be looked upon only as a temporary remedy*. It must be remembered that it does not in any way permanently improve the condition of the central

nervous system, nor does it increase any of the [illegible] except reflex irritability. It is doubtful whether the [illegible] maintenance of this artificially raised irritability is [illegible] benefit.''[5]

In the case of caffeine the stimulating effects are [illegible] different from those of cold and are in no way comparable [illegible] them. Caffeine deadens the sense of fatigue and by an [illegible] action heightens the tonicity of voluntary muscle so that [illegible] response to stimulation is, for a time, greater than normal [illegible] it responds to a feebler stimulus. Thus more work is [illegible] formed on the mere stimulation of a cup of coffee, often [illegible] the body is already fatigued and should rest. Thus [illegible] gives a false sense of energy and as a result the [illegible] neglects to take the proper amount of food which only [illegible] ultimate source of muscular energy. Hence the system, [illegible] hausting its supply, draws on its future resources and [illegible] the constitution is undermined.

5 Sollmann—Pharmacology, p. 175.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

REGULATION OF HEAT PRODUCTION

"It has already been mentioned that, if a frog or other cold-blooded animal be exposed to a higher temperature, its internal temperature will also rise. If, at the same time, we measure the respiratory interchanges of the frog, we find that at the higher temperature more carbon dioxide is evolved and more oxygen taken up, showing that in this case a rise of temperature in the surrounding medium causes a rise in the temperature of the frog, and at the same time, increases the activity of its metabolic changes. Cooling has the reverse effect. If a frog be cooled to 0° C., the chemical changes in its tissues are so reduced that in may be kept alive for some days in an atmosphere devoid of oxygen. The case is quite otherwise with warm-blooded animals. Exposure of one of them to a cold medium raises the amount of carbon dioxide given off and oxygen taken in, while the temperature of the animal remains unaltered. This power of the animal to *react* to changes in the temperature of the surrounding medium is dependent on the integrity of the nervous system and its connection with the muscles. If a dog or rabbit be poisoned with curare (which paralyzes the muscle end-plates), or if its spinal cord be divided just below the medulla, its temperature sinks continuously. It is then found that the animal reacts to changes in the temperature of the surrounding medium precisely like a cold-blooded animal—rise of the external temperature causing rise of the internal temperature and increased elimination of CO_2, while a fall of the external temperature has the reverse effect."[1]

It has been shown that metabolism and heat production are proportional to the skin area of the animal under observation. The temperature nerves of the skin constitute the mechanism by which thermic impressions are received. Quantitative results as regards heat production are, therefore, dependent upon the area stimulated. An animal whether of little or much weight, produces heat not according to its weight but according to the extent of the skin surface exposed to the surrounding medium.

---

1 Starling—Physiology, 1907, pp. 500—503.

REGULATION OF HEAT LOSS

From the standpoint of hydrotherapy, however, of more importance than the regulation of temperature by the production, is regulation by heat loss. Heat is lost from the body in three ways. Only the last two of these are of any practical importance and the third is of the greatest utility, for it is largely through this avenue that febrile temperatures are controlled. The three ways are as follows:—

1. By the Urine and Feces. About 3 per cent of the total heat lost from the body leaves it with the excretions.

2. By the Expired Air. "The inspired air is taken in at the temperature of the surrounding atmosphere, and contains only a small amount of aqueous vapor. The expired air has a temperature of about 1° lower than the body temperature, and is saturated with water vapor. Heat is, therefore, lost in respiration in two ways: first, in warming the inspired air; second, in the evaporation of large quantities of water. These two sources of loss constitute about 20 per cent of the total heat loss."

3. By the Skin. "Here again the loss of heat is affected in two ways: first, by radiation and convection. By these means, an interchange of heat takes place between the surface of the body and surrounding objects, tending to cool the body under ordinary circumstances when the external temperature is below 98.4° F., or 37° C., or to warm the body when the external temperature is higher than this, as during the hot season in the tropics or in a Turkish bath. The amount of interchange of heat between two bodies is directly proportionate to the difference of temperature between them. Thus, the warmer the surface of the body in comparison with that of surrounding objects, the greater will be the amount of heat interchange which in this case implies a loss of heat to the body. Since very little heat is generated in the skin itself, its temperature is intimately dependent on the amount of blood flowing through it, and this in its turn on the condition of the blood-vessels of the skin. When these are dilated, there is a constant supply of warm blood from the deeper parts of the body to the skin, which

therefore, is kept warm and feels warm, both subjectively and objectively. Hence dilatation of the blood-vessels of the skin under normal circumstances brings about increased loss of heat. If, on the other hand, the vessels are constricted, the small amount of blood supplied to the skin rapidly becomes cooled and the skin is also cool, and the loss of heat small.

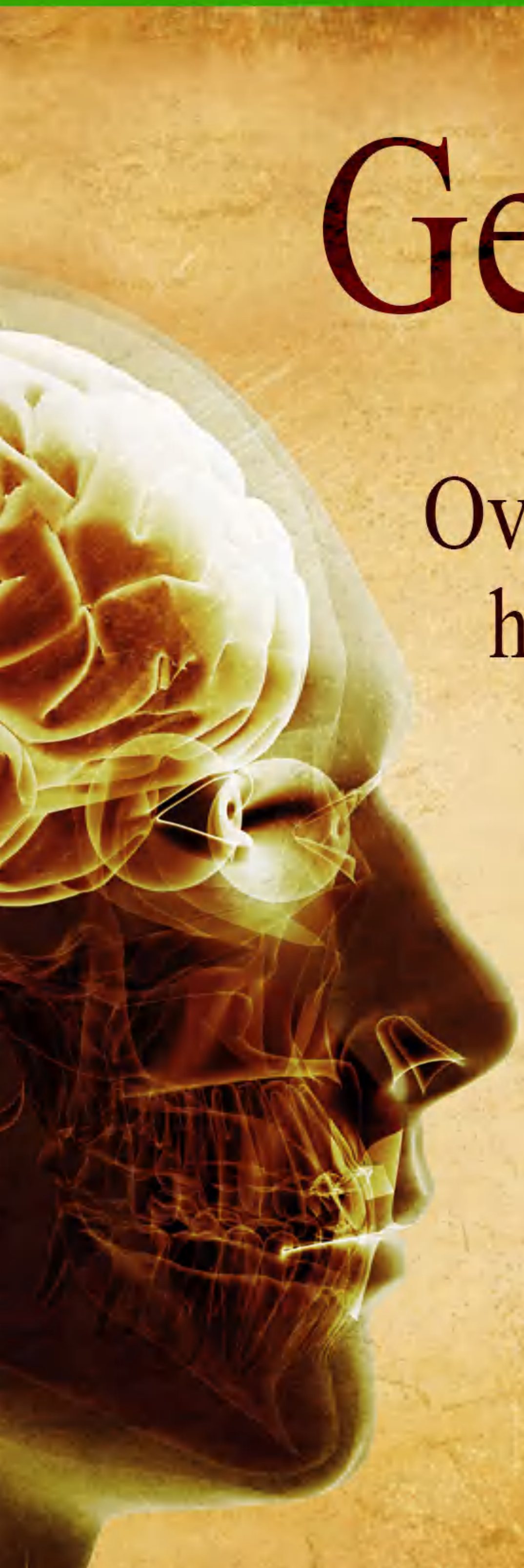
"Second, by the evaporation of the sweat. In the conversion of water into watery vapor, a large amount of heat becomes latent. This principle is made use of in making ice, or in cooling a bottle of water by surrounding it with damp cloths which are exposed to a draught of air to facilitate evaporation. If the secretion of sweat is small, it evaporates as it is secreted and the skin remains dry. This is spoken of as insensible perspiration. If the secretion be very copious, it may be formed faster than it can evaporate, and appears on the skin as drops of sensible perspiration. The formation of sensible perspiration depends then on two factors—the amount of sweat secreted and the rapidity of evaporation, which latter again is dependent on the amount of saturation of the surrounding atmosphere with watery vapor.

"The loss of heat by the skin amounts to about 77 per cent of the total heat loss, and is, therefore, the most important of all the channels for the discharge of heat. The regulation of the total heat loss is also effected chiefly by changes in the loss through the skin. The nervous channels by which this is carried out are the vasomotor and the sweat nerves. If the external temperature be below that of the body, the loss by radiation and convection may be sufficient to get rid of the excess of heat produced. If, however, the external temperature be higher than that of the body, radiation and convection will serve only to warm the body still further, and the sole loss of heat that can be affected is by the evaporation of sweat, which is accordingly, under such circumstances, secreted in large quantities (*Fig. 43.*).

"Often, especially after severe muscular exercise, radiation and convection are not sufficient to carry off the excess of heat produced, and hence there is a copious secretion of sweat as well, even though the external temperature may be cool."[2]

2 Starling—Physiology, pp. 504—506.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

"We may at present adopt the conservative view that heat production and heat dissipation in the body are controlled not by a special heat-regulating apparatus, composed of heat centers and heat nerves, but by the coordinated activity of a number of different centers in addition to the voluntary means already specified. The unconscious regulation of the body temperature is effected chiefly through the following:—"[4]

Heat Dissipation.

1. The sweat centers and sweat nerves.
2. The vasoconstrictor centers and their nerve fibers to the skin.
3. The respiratory center.

Heat Production.

1. The motor nerve centers and the motor nerve fibers to the skeletal muscles.
2. The quantity and character of the food.
3. Secretory and other glandular nerves.

The principal parts of this heat-regulating mechanism and their relation to each other are well shown in the accompanying diagram (*Fig. 44.*).

EXPERIMENTS IN HEAT PRODUCTION AND ELIMINATION

In the clinical study of the heat mechanism it is necessary to understand something of the means employed in such study. To ascertain the heat output of any organism some form of calorimeter is used. The most accurate calorimeters are those that utilize water for the absorption of the heat communicated from the body. From the total volume of the water and the change in its temperature it is an easy matter to figure the number of calories absorbed by it, and consequently the amount of heat given off from the body under experiment in a given length of time. This of course is the quantity of heat eliminated. If the temperature of the organism remains constant during the experiment, then its heat production is equal to its heat elimination. If the temperature rises or falls, the increase or decrease of heat production above or below the heat elimination can be estimated from the weight of the body and change in the temperature.

4 Modified from Howell—Physiology, 1908, p. 866.

The construction of the calorimeter for animal experiments can be readily grasped from a study of *Fig. 45*. For rough clinical work a bath tub of water may be utilized. The temperature of the water serves to make the thermic application with which it is desired to experiment and its volume, together with the changes in its temperature serve as the basis for figuring the heat elimination in calories. It has the disadvantage of being unsuitable for estimating the after results of thermic

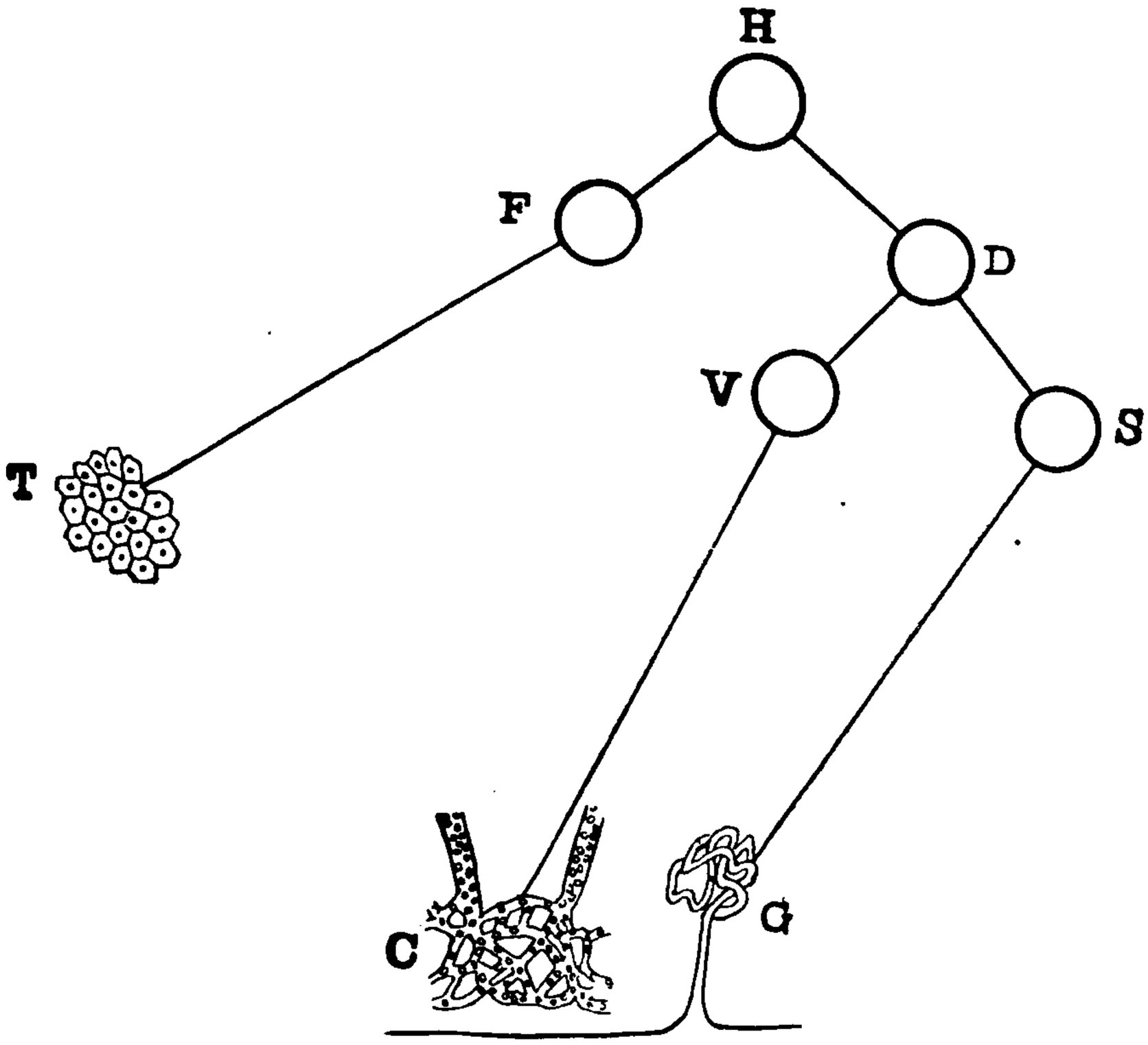


Fig. 44. Diagram showing heat-regulating mechanism. H—heat-regulating center, F—center for heat formation, D—center for heat dissipation, V—vasomotor center, T—thermogenic tissues, S—center for sweat glands, C—capillary blood-vessels of skin, G—sweat gland. (Wood.)

applications. For after results relative values may be obtained by the d'Arsonval calorimeter. This instrument is a large upright cylinder of heavy pasteboard or other good non-conductor. The upper end is closed except for an opening in which is fitted an anemometer and the lower end also except for small openings to admit air. The subject of the experiment stands in this cylinder, the heat of the body causing a movement of

air which is registered by the anemometer. The results are of course only relative but are of value in determining an increase or decrease of heat elimination.

For our purpose no time need be spent on experimental proof of the effects of muscular, glandular, and other vital activities on heat production and elimination. We wish, however, to quote more or less at length the experimental basis of

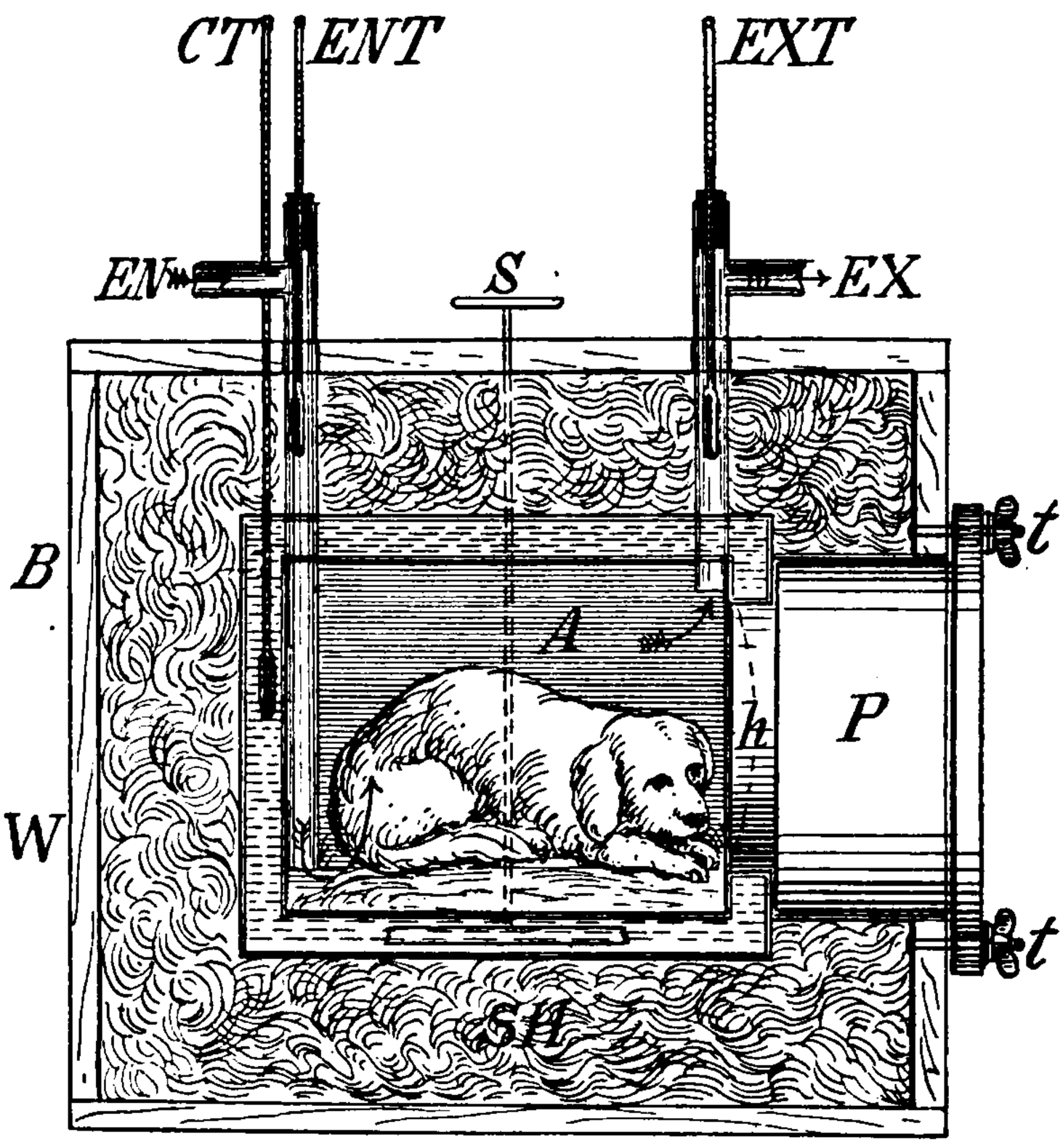


Fig. 45. Reichert's water calorimeter.

the physiologic effects of hydriatic applications upon heat production and heat loss. Kellogg's experiments[5] along this line are very practical since the tests were made after applications of the intensity and duration actually employed in practice.

W. was given a cold percussion douche for thirty seconds. The change in rectal temperature immediately after revealed an increase of nearly ninety heat units and this in spite of the increased heat elimination resulting from the reaction. Another

5 Rational Hydrotherapy.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

It has already been mentioned that for every [illegible] the surrounding temperature there is an increase [illegible] ism amounting to 2 or 3 per cent. Rubner, [illegible] with a bath of one hour's duration, obtained the [illegible] results in the case of a man weighing sixty kilog[illegible] whom there was a normal heat production of 91 c[illegible] hour.

Effects of Bathing on Heat Production

Temperature of Bath	Increased Heat Production	Increase of Metabolism in Grams of Fat	Total [illegible] and [illegible]
95° F.	7 calories	0.7 grams	0.7
86° F.	77 "	7.0 "	9.0
77° F.	167 "	18.0 "	22.0
68° F.	297 "	31.0 "	37.0
59° F.	407 "	43.0 "	52.0

In regard to the heat loss it is estimated that in a [illegible] 86° F. the heat loss is doubled; in a bath at 77° F. it [illegible] and at 68° F. it reaches five times the normal. It is [illegible] to note that more than half, and sometimes as much [illegible] thirds of the total heat loss in a cold bath occurs during [illegible] the first third of the treatment. In a cold bath at [illegible] fifteen minutes duration and with a total heat loss of [illegible] ories, 43 calories of this heat loss occurred during the [illegible] minutes. In another case with a cold bath at 63° F. [illegible] and one-half minutes duration and a total heat loss of [illegible] ories, nearly 44 calories of this were lost during the [illegible] minute. Because of these facts short cold baths are, [illegible] tionately to their duration, more effective in heat elimination than long cold baths.

The reason for the greater heat loss early in the course of a cold bath is doubtless due to the fact that the body is unprepared to resist the abstraction of heat, consequently the greater heat loss. But very soon the heat-regulating centers set in motion vascular and other changes which are intended to economize the body heat as far as possible, *i. e.*, resist heat loss as well as provide for increased heat production. The body learns to resist the abstraction of heat brought about by contact with cold water by making more unfavorable the conditions for heat elimination.

The activity of the surface circulation being the essential factor in the loss of heat during a cold bath, it follows, therefore, that whatever increases the amount of blood in the skin and the rapidity of the circulation in the skin will markedly increase heat loss during a cold bath. This is one of the chief reasons for the use of short hot applications preparatory to the use of the cold bath.

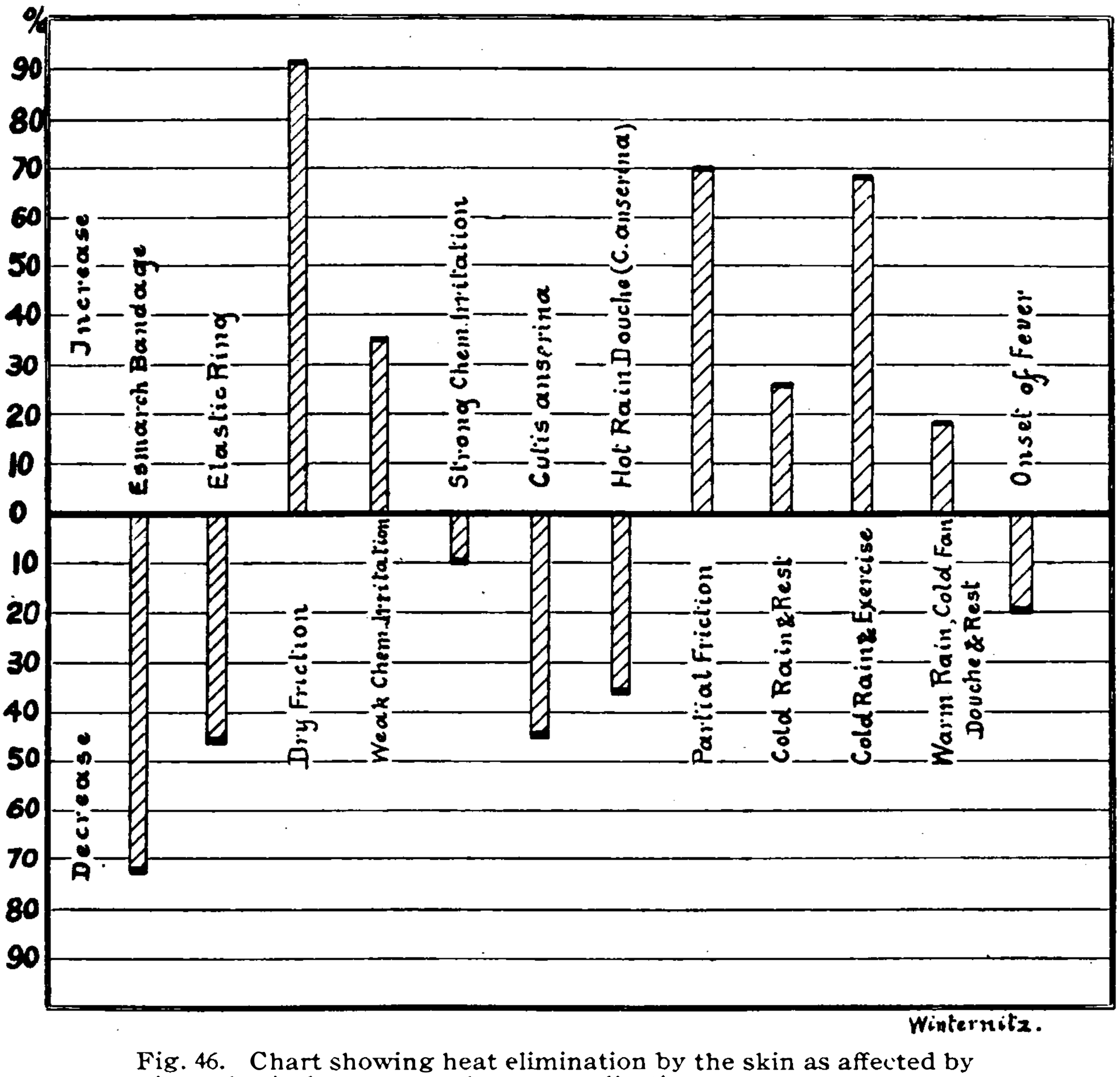


Fig. 46. Chart showing heat elimination by the skin as affected by various physical measures, thermic applications, etc.

The following are some of the results claimed by Otto Pospischl as a result of his work as assistant to Professor Winternitz. (*Fig. 46.*)[5]

1. Displacing the blood and arresting the circulation in a part of the body lessens heat loss as much as 70.6 per cent.

5 Buxbaum—Lehrbuch der Hydrotherapie, II Auflage, p. 48.

2. Hindering the circulation through the produc
sive hyperemia lessens heat loss as much as 46.2 pe
3. Mechanical irritation may occasion an increase o
up to 95 per cent.
4. Weak chemical irritation produces an increase o
to 40 per cent, strong irritation on the other hand a d
to 8 per cent.
5. Thermic influences which cause goose flesh d
loss as much as 44.5 per cent.
6. A hot rain bath may through the production of s
cause a lessening of heat loss up to 38.7 per cent.
7. Partial cold wet friction may raise the heat loss
as 80 per cent.
8. Cold rain baths and rest following produce after
tory decrease of heat loss an increase up to 23 per cent
9. Cold rain baths with exercise following raise he
much as 66.6 per cent.
10. Warm rain baths with cold fan douche and rest
raise the heat loss up to 16 per cent.
11. In two illnesses with increasing fever the heat
decreased as much as 25.4 per cent.

SUMMARY

Heat Production (Thermogenesis)

The following are some of the conditions and measu
increase heat production:—

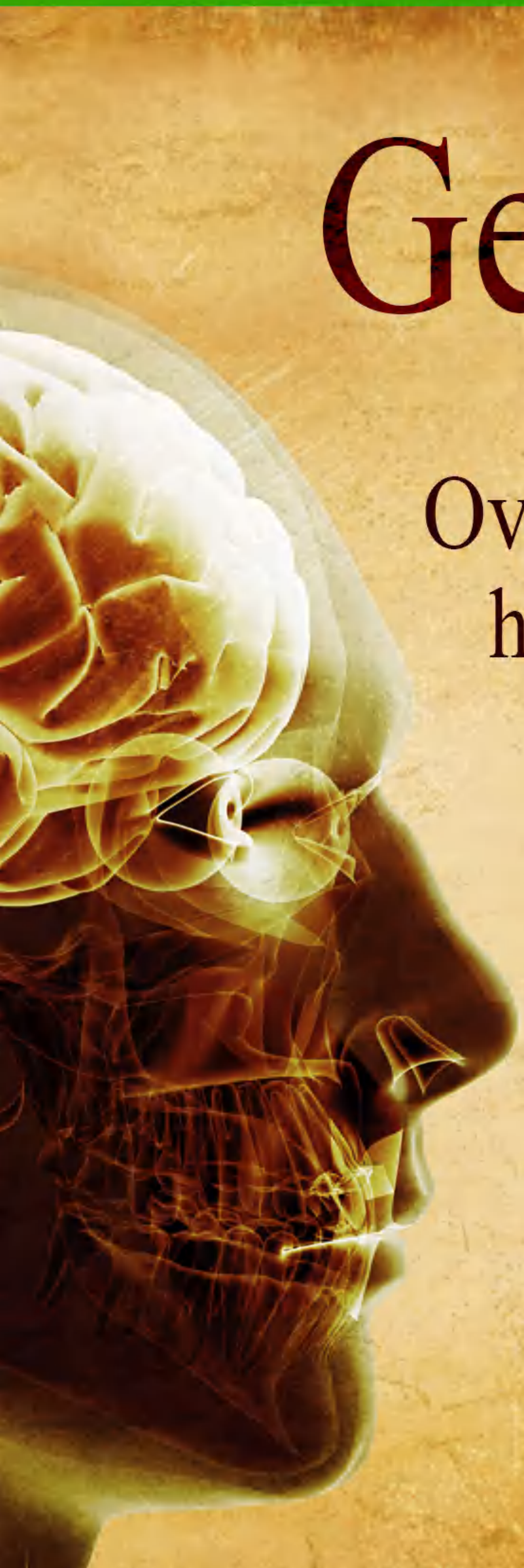
Vital activities such as,—

1. Glandular activity.
2. Muscular activity.
3. Digestive activity.
4. Mental activity.

External conditions,—

5. Reaction to cold applications (either long or short).
6. Friction.
7. Low atmospheric temperatures.
8. High atmospheric temperatures.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

3. Decrease in volume of tidal air, slow or shallow respiration.

4. Very high atmospheric temperatures.

5. Oiling of the skin.

There are two local applications of cold whose chief effect upon the body temperature is not by the abstraction of heat. These are the ice cap applied to the head and the ice bag applied over the heart. Their action is reflex. The former influences heat production through its reflex effect upon the thermogenic centers of the brain. The latter reflexly slows the heart beat and thereby the general circulation, which also decreases heat production. Of course, as previously stated, these effects are very slight in health but of inestimable value in febrile diseases.

Heat Regulation (Thermotaxis)

The normal temperature of the body is maintained by the nicety of the balance between heat production and heat elimination. Increased heat production does not necessarily cause rise of body temperature, since under normal conditions the heat is dissipated as rapidly as produced. The natural compensations that tend to increase heat production usually stimulate the elimination of heat as well, and so a balance is maintained. For example, the body is exposed to a draft of cold air. The skin assumes a goose flesh appearance by contraction of the involuntary muscles; it is pale and contains less blood. While the cold air abstracts or conducts heat from the body, this lessened circulation in the skin decreases the amount of heat lost from the surface. The perspiratory glands are less active, and the consequent lessened evaporation of water from the skin also decreases the amount of heat eliminated. At the same time the sensation of cold influences the thermogenic centers, and they cause the tissues to produce more heat. Even the shivering which follows the exposure to cold, being muscular action, is one method of producing heat.

Thus the temperature of the body is maintained at a constant point rather than lowered by the cold atmosphere. The converse is true of a short moderately warm bath. This would

communicate heat to the body, and so tend to raise the temperature; but the body reacts in such a way as to preserve the balance. The skin is relaxed, the blood-vessels dilated and the perspiration increased, so that more heat is lost by dissipation from the surface. At the same time this relaxing effect causes loss of tone in the tissues generally, and so less heat is produced. These results are due to the control exercised by the heat-regulating centers before mentioned.

It must not be supposed, however, that heat always decreases heat production. Very high temperatures markedly increase heat production, so much so that fatal poisoning may occur in such conditions as heatstroke. Serious cases never wholly recover from the effects of the high external temperature and the internal heat produced by it. They are ever after extremely susceptible to even the moderate heat of tropical climates or direct sunlight.

While an agent may increase both heat production and elimination at the same time, one is usually increased to a greater extent than the other. For example, a cold mitten friction at first abstracts heat from the body, but the reaction causes increased heat production, as shown by the "warming effect." The increased circulation of the skin, which is part of the reaction, causes more heat to be lost. The total effect, however, is an increase of heat in the body, because heat production is stimulated more than heat elimination.

As we have seen, thermic applications produce decided changes in heat production and elimination. However, these changes do not, in health, produce wide alterations in the body temperature. On the contrary, the same influences applied in febrile conditions produce decided alterations.

From the preceding experiments it will be seen that water at the varying temperatures and in the different ways in which it may be applied to the body, is capable of any and all possible variations and degrees of effect upon the heat mechanism. No possible alteration of heat production or elimination can be conceived of that water is not capable of producing. It is this versatility of application and effect that makes hot and cold water of so much service in fever and disturbances of the heat mechanism.

On the contrary, drug action is particularly monoto
ideal combinations impossible to make. If they seem
a rational manner upon one part of the mechanism, it
found that they have an adverse action upon anoth
And usually this adverse action more than outweighs
which may be accomplished. There are no drugs w
crease heat production by stimulating oxidation which
all safe to use. Those drugs such as acetanilid and
which decrease heat production, do so by a toxic act
the thermogenic centers and tissues, so that there is an
of the toxic products of metabolism rather than a decrea
the other hand the drugs, such as alcohol and aconite
bring about greater heat elimination by dilating the
vessels, accomplish this by paralyzing the vasomotors,
which is not only undesirable in fevers but often positive
gerons, as will be shown under the subject of fever and
pyretic effects.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

as the removal of a malignant neoplasm, or some ope... may de done to overbalance or palliate the results of the... case, as in the case of Talma's operation for hepatic cir... or Edobohl's operation for renal insufficiency. Purely ... tional diseases are, however, nearly always best treate... physiologic means.

In the course of many diseases a point is reached b... which a return to the normal is impossible without the ... vention of some radical procedure. This is especially the... in inflammations. In certain grades, stages, and type... inflammation it is entirely possible, by *natural means*, to a... affect the return to normal structure without the interve... of radical measures. This is true of such an inflammatio... dry or serous pleurisy, pneumonia, or a simple surface i... tion, but where these inflammations have gone on to ... formation of a suppurative focus or an abscess, physi... means alone are unable to accomplish the full return to ... normal condition. True, in time, the abscess might wor... way to the surface, and so evacuate, but in most cases it ... long, tedious process and the patient is very much reduce... vitality by such delay, which delay may prove fatal from ... absorption of toxic products. It is necessary, by some radi... means, to accomplish the speedy evacuation of the pus and f... drainage of the abscess cavity. The old dictum, *ubi pus, ... evacua*, is just as true now as when it was first enunciate... Translated into terms of activity, it means, where there is pus ... provide an outlet. It is necessary that evacuation be provide... for. This, nature itself seeks to accomplish; but unaided, its ... attempts are accompanied by great destruction of tissue and ... much delay. By vigorous treatment, systematically applied, ... it is often possible to obviate the necessity for radical interference. But when the stage of suppuration has been reached or is imminent, surgical intervention is just as much an assistant to nature as physiologic means and therefore just as rational.

The same principles apply to the use of vaccines and antitoxines. If the body has sufficient reserve power and the in... fection does not progress too rapidly, the system may provide adequate means of cure. Yet the course of certain infections ...

teaches us that such circumstances can not always be relied upon. Where available and of demonstrated value, no one would think of omiting the use of serum therapy. When it is used, physical means should not be left out simply because other procedures are more essential in a given case. All measures of value should be used in order to still further assist the body in combating the infection.

We may then, in general, say that where physiologic means are unable to aid the organism in reestablishing the normal structure and function, radical interference is necessary. This division line can best be determined by careful consideration of the usual trend of the particular disease in question. Experience has shown that a certain type of inflammation in one organ or location may early tend to a serious issue, such as abscess or gangrene, while in another organ or location, there is less immediate danger, the inflammation tending to become chronic. For example, we may cite the case of appendicitis on the one hand and of salpingitis on the other. In both cases, physiologic means *may* accomplish a return to the normal, but in the case of appendicitis, this return is not to be relied upon for permanent cure. The tendency is to recurrence and even, in a single attack, to perforation and peritonitis; while with the pelvic inflammation, physiologic means produce a safe issue which can better be relied upon for permanency; *i. e.*, if taken early, there is little, or at least less, tendency to rupture and abscess formation. Even in the case of formation of pus in the tube, it is best to delay surgical interference until the acute inflammation has subsided and, if possible, the temperature has returned to normal. At best, it is dangerous and conducive to spread of infection if salpingectomy be done during the continuance of the acute inflammation.

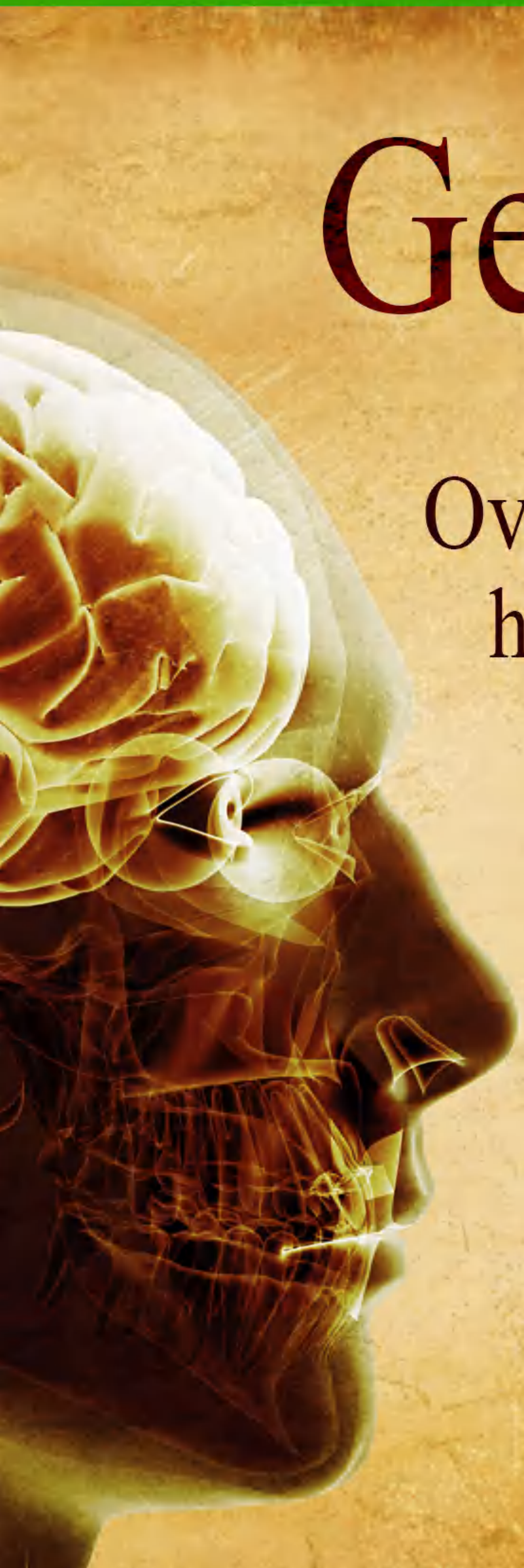
It is quite otherwise with appendicitis. Not only does operation in the acute stage give good results, but because of the inability to determine the immediate issue, it is imperative to interfere as soon as possible. True, a patient may go through a number of acute attacks, all of which subside without serious complications, but this can not be relied upon to continue. In each succeeding attack there is greater liability to perforation.

Considering all, we may, then, draw the conclu
rational therapy is based upon three things,—experi
perience and judgment,—the latter for the purpose of
ing to the individual case the general laws and
relative to that condition. It requires an extreme ni
perfect balance of judgment to determine whether a
border line case should be treated by physiologic
therapy. This faculty has been termed "surgical jud
But its application requires more than a knowledge of
technique. The surgeon who is pre-eminently a physic
whose armementarium is well stocked with physiologic
will meet with the best success. Let not the surgeon
enthusiastic about operative treatment nor the physi
confident of natural means as to procrastinate when
surgical interference offers the best hope of speedy
manent recovery.

In some organic diseases the principle involved in phy
therapy is that of calling into requisition certain
functions, of stimulating structures which may reli
diseased tissue or organ of part of its work. This is
the case in valvular heart lesions and in the various for
Bright's disease. In valvular heart disease the blood-v
may be made to assume much of the circulatory functio
so relieve the central heart to that extent. To a limited de
the sweat glands may in Bright's disease be made to sup
ment the work of the kidneys.

We have already learned that the basic principle of phy
logic therapy lies in bringing into requisition the natural for
of the organism, of toning up and stimulating its natural pow
of defense, making the body itself take part in its own healing.
To do this most effectively the physician must become thor
oughly conversant with normal and abnormal physiology and
spend his best efforts in studying the methods naturally pur
sued by the organism in defending itself against a given cause
or pathogenic agent. These natural methods of defense we
shall endeavor to point out in connection with the treatment of
the various diseases which are amenable to physiologic therapy.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

CHAPTER XVI

FEVER AND ANTIPYRETIC EFFECTS

CAUSES AND SYMPTOMS OF FEVER

FEVER is a disturbance of the heat mechanism in which there is a more or less prolonged rise of temperature above the normal. The principal cause is the circulation of toxic substances in the blood. It is the result of a protective effort, an attempt on the part of the body to cope with these poisons; but the organism may be overwhelmed by the poisons, be unable to oxidize them with sufficient rapidity to protect the body. Or, because of the nature of these poisons, the heat regulating centers and the vasomotor centers are disturbed and the balance unsettled. If heat elimination were to keep pace with the heat production, even though the latter were greatly increased, there could be no rise of temperature. Many poisons cause a sensation of chilliness and thus decrease the heat elimination and fever results. While the body attempts to protect itself its efforts are not always well directed or governed.

The poisons producing pyrexia are of various origin. They may be formed in the body or introduced from without. In the former case the toxemia may be due to the accumulation of normal body poisons, *i. e.*, those which are normally produced in health by ordinary metabolism, but are usually eliminated as fast as formed. These poisons are called *leucomaines*. They do not produce the higher types of fever, nor fever of long duration. The poisons due to anger, worry, and other nervous disturbances are classed under this head, although they are not normal to the body.

Prominent among the leucomaines, as a cause of fever, are the purin bases. Apropos of this subject we quote the following from Lusk:—[1]

1 Science of Nutrition, 1906, p. 267.

"However, there is a very noteworthy record made by A. R. Mandel that the rise of temperature in aseptic or surgical fevers is accompanied by a large increase in the purin bases in the urine of patients fed with milk. The temperature rises and falls with the quantity of purin bases eliminated. The uric acid elimination is reduced.

"That the purin bases can be the cause of the rise of temperature is indicated by the experiments of Burian and Schur who found that when nucleoproteid was administered intravenously to a dog a rise of temperature followed. Mandel showed that a subcutaneous injection of 40 milligrams of xanthin caused a marked rise in the temperature of a monkey, and that the administration of a strong decoction of 60 grams of coffee (containing trimethyl-xanthin) to a man unused to coffee-drinking, was followed by a febrile temperature."

Toxines may be produced by saprophytic bacteria (those of decomposition), growing in the body or in the alimentary tract. These conditions are known as *sapremia* and *auto-intoxication*. Foods decomposed by bacterial action may serve as the source of poison, as in the eating of decomposed meat, cheese, etc. Such products of bacterial decomposition are known as *ptomaines*. *Bacterial toxines* produced by pathogenic bacteria, growing within the body itself, are the most usual causes of fever and those with which we are most concerned in the treatment of this condition.

Ultimate Causes of Pyrexia. The following outline is modified and abridged from Sollmann.[2]

Fever may be due to,—

1. Exposure to excessive external heat as in sunstroke. Also internal heat (over-oxidation) as in excessive muscular exercise.

2. Certain drugs, such as the convulsants, cocaine and strychnine, by the production of convulsions or spasm of the muscles.

3. Toxic proteins.
   (a) Bacterial toxines of infectious diseases.
   (b) Ptomaines.
   (c) Auto-intoxication (intestinal, biliary, urinary, etc.).

2 Text Book of Pharmacology, 1901, p. 394.

(d) Absorption of unconverted digestive products, as albumoses and peptones in a diet too rich in proteid; or due to digestive disorders.

Manifestations of Fever. In addition to the causes of fever, it is necessary to consider the symptoms, since these are an indication of the real condition of the patient and may be of such a magnitude as, in turn, to become a cause of additional trouble; in which case, special treatment must be directed toward their relief or palliation.

The toxines, or the high temperature, cause the following symptoms, recognized as characteristic of fevers:—

1. Nervous disturbances, such as malaise, headache, backache, insomnia, delirium, etc.
2. Hot dry skin, or cold clammy skin.
3. Increased pulse rate and blood tension.
4. Increased rate of respiration.
5. Excessive thirst.
6. Loss of appetite, foul breath, coated tongue.
7. Constipation.
8. Urine scanty, highly colored, high specific gravity, increase of urea.

PRINCIPLES OF TREATMENT

Since oxidation is one of the means of getting rid of toxines, this burning is to be encouraged rather than hindered. The fever should be controlled, not combated. The system is to be aided in its attempt to oxidize and eliminate the poisons. This is where failure in the protective mechanism is especially manifest in febrile diseases. While the decomposition and destruction of body tissue is much increased in fever, true oxidative changes are nearly always decreased. For this reason the system is compelled to cope not only with the toxines of direct bacterial origin but also with those of decomposition and incomplete metabolism.

The idea that the reduction of temperature is the sole object in the treatment of fevers has become so firmly fixed in the minds of physicians and laymen that it is hard to eradicate. It was this idea that led to the use of the medicinal antipyretics,

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

in dealing with bacteria. A few like hexamethylenamin are valuable aids, but of limited range. The chemical destruction of bacteria within the human organism is a disappointment and, as remarked by one, "we aim at the germs and hit the patient." The organism is hindered more than it is helped. Concerning methods of treating infections W. J. Mayo[3] has the following to say: "Experience soon taught us, however, that in combating infectious disease, it is even more important that we familiarize ourselves with those conditions of the body by which nature combats disease." Upon the physicians knowledge of these natural methods depends to a large extent his ability to employ physiologic therapy in a rational way.

The body itself must be aroused to combat the infection. This is most effectually accomplished by those means which increase the vital resistance of the body, conserving its power, and especially by those means which increase the number and efficiency of the phagocytes. It has already been shown how this may be accomplished. It will also be noted that cold applications as suited to the varying needs of different diseases, compass all of these results. We have seen that cold produces a leucocytosis, restores the diminished alkalinity of the blood, produces an active arterial hyperemia, increases and sustains blood pressure, so that life giving, energizing blood circulates more rapidly where previously there was stasis, venous hyperemia, leucopenia, lowered alkalinity, and a blood laden with leucomaines, toxines, and acid poisons. The elimination of toxic products of bacterial life is hastened and their oxidation increased by cold. The phagocytes and body tissues are so energized that the histogenous production of antitoxines, bacteriolysins, opsonin, etc., is increased. While all these changes are being brought about, the lessened toxicity of the body fluids relieves the nervous system and it is quieted and invigorated by the tonic influence of the cold. Restlessness, insomnia, or delirium gives way to clear coordinated action or undisturbed sleep. The hot dry skin, or the cold clammy skin, is replaced by the warm moist surface. This remarkable group of changes, all of which are beneficial and derived from a single

3 Mayo Clinic, 1910, p. 118.

agent—cold water—it is impossible to bring about by any other known therapeutic agent or combination of agents. It is simply unique in the realm of therapy.

Toxic Vasomotor Paralysis. Further in regard to the connection of the circulatory system with the general manifestations of fever and especially with regard to the circulatory complications which contribute so largely to the mortality, experimental pathology has laid a very firm foundation for the use of hydrotherapy in fevers of infectious origin. The researches of Romberg and Pässler are considered the basis of our knowledge of the state of the heart and blood-vessels in these diseases. The reports of their work[4] have shown conclusively that circulatory failure is not primarily due to the heart itself, but to paralysis of the blood-vessels, brought about by damage to the vasomotor centers. In this connection we can not do better than quote from the brief resume of these researches given by Janeway and from remarks made by Forchheimer.[5]

"They studied the fatal collapse which occurred in rabbits after infection with the pneumococcus, the bacillus pyocyaneus, and the diphtheria bacillus; the first producing a true septicæmia, the latter a local lesion with general toxæmia. All of the 250 animals used were autopsied, and the heart and other important organs examined microscopically. Their method consisted in observing the mean carotid pressure at different stages of the disease, and the effect upon it of (1) abdominal massage, which increased the work of the heart by supplying it with more blood; (2) compression of the aorta above the diaphragm, which makes the work of the heart maximal; (3) irritation of the nasal mucous membrane with a Faradic current, which causes extreme reflex vasoconstriction; and (4) short asphyxia (thirty seconds), which acts similarly only on both medullary and spinal vasomotor centers; while sensory stimulation affects only the center in the medulla. They reasoned that, should there be no rise in pressure from sensory

---

4 Romberg and Pässler—Deutsch. Archiv. für klin. Med., 1895, LXIV, pp. 652—763; also Pässler—München. Med. Wochenschrift, 1901, XLVIII, No. 8.

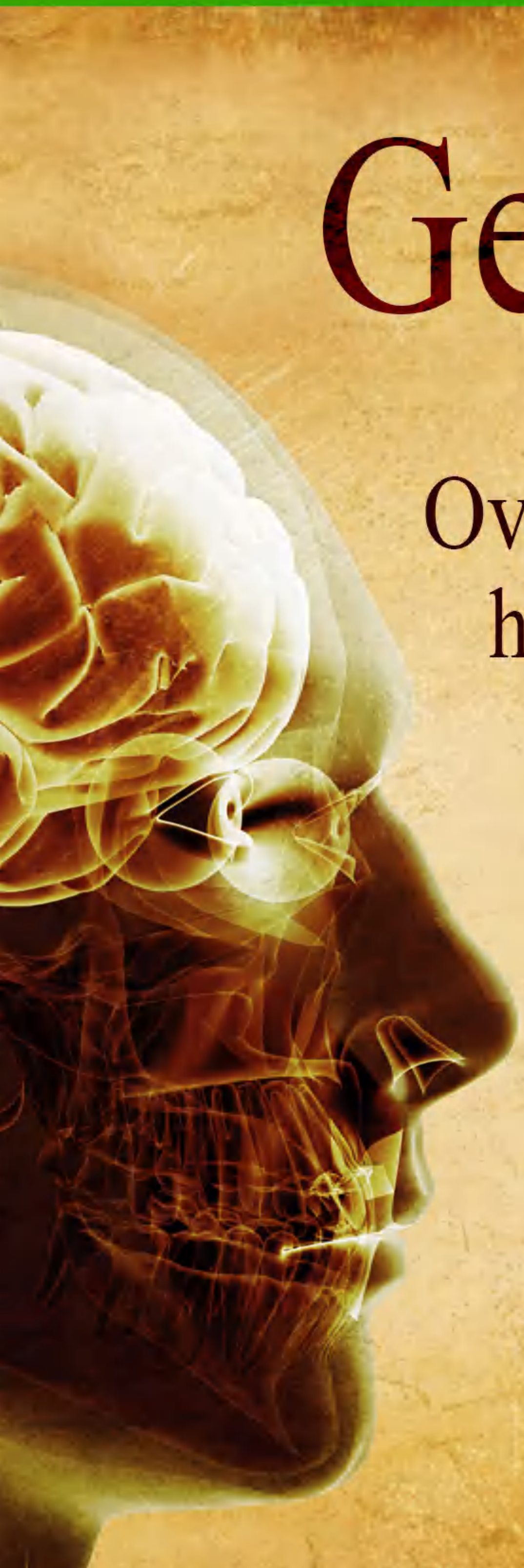
5 The Clinical Study of Blood Pressure, pp. 155, 156; and Cardiac and Vascular Complications in Pneumonia—Journal of American Medical Association, Oct. 30, 1909, p. 1450.

irritation or suffocation, while abdominal massage and ligature of the aorta still called forth a well marked one, then the heart must be functionally capable and the vasomotor mechanism paralyzed. To determine whether the central or peripheral vasomotor mechanism was at fault, they used injections of barium chloride, which cause constriction of the arteries by purely local action upon them.

"Their experiments showed that the blood pressure and the response to all the procedures remained perfectly normal throughout the early stage of the disease, being unaffected by the fever. The greatest elevation of pressure was obtained on stimulating the mucous membrane of the nose. When the animals showed signs of impending collapse in their behavior, the blood pressure, though still normal, began to sink, while the heart beat more forcibly. Hand in hand with this went a great reduction in the rise of pressure from sensory irritation, a moderate decrease in the asphyxial elevation, but as high a pressure as before after abdominal massage. In many cases the pressure did not fall until the reflex rise had been almost abolished, evidently being maintained by increased cardiac energy, in spite of the vascular dilatation. Finally in complete collapse, which developed very rapidly, the aortic pressure fell to the lowest level, as after destruction of the spinal cord; no reflex rise could be obtained, but abdominal massage gave an immediate elevation. It was evident, therefore, *that the circulatory disturbance at the height of the infection depended absolutely upon a paralysis of the vessels, not upon any damage to the force of the heart.*

"As regards their reaction to compression of the thoracic aorta, the diphtheria animals showed a divergence from the pneumococcus ones; the latter evincing practically normal cardiac reserve force, while the former showed a distinct falling off. Anatomically, also, the diphtheria hearts had suffered damage, parenchymatous degeneration being well marked, as in clinical diphtheria. The pneumococcus animals had scarcely any change in their cardiac muscle. Thus evidence of weakness in the heart muscle in diphtheria was of minor importance, the real cause of death in all cases being the complete loss of

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

THE EFFECTS OF MEDICINAL ANTIPYRE

1. Drugs having a Collapse Action, such as Aconite and Veratrum Viride. These lessen the force of the heart beat and dilate the blood-vessels, so lowering the blood pressure. Heat production is decreased, because of this latter action. Vasodilatation increases the loss of heat from the skin. This is not a tonic but an antitonic dilatation and so, in no way restores the lost tone to the circulatory system. Both these drugs decrease fever at the expense of the heart's action and so prove dangerous in asthenic conditions or where there is cardiac weakness, dilatation, or incompetency already existing.

2. Alcohol. The only beneficial (?) action of alcohol, which is relied upon in fever and as given in so-called therapeutic doses, is upon the smaller blood-vessels, in which it causes atonic or paretic dilatation and consequent loss of heat from the skin. At the same time, it dilates the visceral capillaries which are already congested in febrile conditions. Their paretic dilatation renders the viscera much more liable to suffer from stasis when the body is exposed to cold. Alcohol decreases metabolic processes and oxidation.[6] The tissues are less active so that toxines, instead of being more rapidly oxidized and eliminated, tend to accumulate in the system. Alcohol lessens the phagocytic activity,—the natural defence against infection and discharges immunity. Delearde has shown that the absorption of alcohol is a grave obstacle to immunization against hydrophobia. Abbot, in experimenting on animals, proved that those subjected to the influence of alcohol were more susceptible to the harmful effects of streptococci, bacillus coli and other bacteria. Both Delearde and Laitinen found it impossible to vaccinate against anthrax, animals that had been given alcohol on several successive days.

3. The Coal Tar Products, as Acetanilid, Phenacetin, and Antipyrin. These decrease heat production by the direct toxic action of their aromatic radicles on the heat centers in the

6 "Alcohol in excessive doses and prolonged anæsthesia both paralyze the heat-regulating mechanism. A man who is 'dead drunk' resembles a cold blooded animal. Exposure to cold produces not an increase but a decrease in combustion, and his temperature steadily falls. It is not surprising, therefore, that death from exposure chiefly occurs in the case of intoxicated persons." (Hutchison—Applied Physiology, 1908, p. 47)

brain and on the processes of oxidation and proteid metabolism.[7] This is shown by the decrease in tissue destruction, lessening of urea, etc. This effect is most marked in fever, where the rational procedure is to increase the burning up of poisons, (purins, toxalbumens, bacterial toxines, etc.) in order to get rid of them. Neither do these drugs increase the elimination of poisons. They are very powerful cardiac depressants and possess a decided collapse action. This is most marked with acetanilid. They cause breaking up of the red cells with the formation of methemoglobin, thus in a second way, preventing oxidation by limiting the oxygen-carrying capacity of the blood. The movements of the whites are arrested. Phagocytosis is prevented. This is another example of drugs that render the body less able to resist infection.

4. Quinine. This drug lowers temperature by decreasing heat production. Its action is said to be chiefly peripheral upon the thermogenic tissues, in decreasing nitrogenous metabolism. This decrease may reach as high as 39 per cent with large doses.[8] The drug probably owes its toxicity to its aromatic nucleus, the same as the coal tar products. It not only hinders the destruction of nitrogenous toxines, but is a powerful poison to the phagocytes, arresting their movements immediately on contact with them. This result obtains when only 0.5 to 1 part in 1000 of solution is used. A somewhat larger dose causes their destruction (Binz; Sollmann). According to recent experiments by Manwaring and Ruh, larger amounts than 0.008 per cent of quinine cause complete suppression of phagocytosis. Since 1-13 of the body weight is blood, an individual weighing 130 pounds possesses 10 pounds of blood, totalling 70,000 grains. If, at any one time, there should be in the blood of a person of this weight, ten grains of quinine, there would then be acting upon the phagocytes an amount nearly double the minimum toxic dose. Quinine frequently causes hemoglobinuria. Metchnikoff[9] makes the following statement: "It is not only opium and alcohol which

---

7 White and Wilcox—Materia Medica and Therapeutics, 1900, p. 300, also Sollmann—Text Book of Pharmacology, 1901, p. 355.

8 Sollmann—Ibid, p. 346. See also Adami—Inflammation, 1907, p. 152.

9 New Hygiene, p. 28.

hinder the phagocytic action. A number of other substances regularly employed in medicine, cause the same results. Even quinine, the . . . effect of which in malarial fevers is indisputable, is a poison for the white blood cells. One should, therefore, as a general rule, avoid as far as possible the use of all sorts of medicaments, and limit one's self to the hygienic measures which may check the outbreak of infectious disease. This postulate further strengthens the thesis that the future of medicine rests far more in hygiene than therapeutics."

5. Diaphoretics, as Pilocarpin and Dover's Powder. These lower febrile temperature by producing sweating. This in itself, is not irrational. In the case of the former, it has recently been shown that this is at the expense of the heart's action. The latter drug contains opium which has the same action on the phagocytes as alcohol, quinine, and coal tar products.

6. Refrigerants, such as the Alkaline Citrates, Organic Acids, and Acid Organic Salts. The alkalescence of the blood is diminished in auto-intoxication and infectious diseases. Bouchard failed to neutralize the excess of acid in the blood by the administration of inorganic alkalies. The citrates, tartrates, etc., do, however, favor kidney activity (diuresis) and sweating (diaphoresis), and so aid in the elimination of toxines. Experience demonstrates that the natural fruit juices, containing these acids and their salts, give better results in these respects than artificial preparations and do possess a true refrigerant action.

No great discernment is necessary to decide that antipyretic drugs are harmful in fever. The majority of fevers are due to infections, *i. e.*, are bacterial toxemias. These drugs in no way remove the cause, nor do they assist the body to overcome the infection. On the contrary, they destroy or cripple the agents of natural defense—the leucocytes, rendering them an easy prey to bacteria.

ANTIPYRETIC EFFECTS OF THERMIC APPLICATIONS

Let us now turn our attention to the differences in the effects of the various thermic applications used in the treatment of fevers. The following classification will be found helpful:—

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

friction itself serve to give a sensation of warmth to [illegible] and so prevent chilling and the resulting retrostasis [illegible]

Indications. These effects are indicated in long [illegible] asthenic fevers, such as typhoid, typhus and in hyper[illegible] The treatment must be frequently repeated over a con[illegible] length of time, since it can not be hoped that the source [illegible] emia will be eradicated by a few applications.

Short Cold applications are almost always accompan[illegible] mechanical stimuli. The cold mitten friction is the [illegible] ample of this class.

1. Heat production is increased by reason of the [illegible] the thermic and mechanical stimuli on the heat centers.

2. The contact with the cold water is of too brief du[illegible] abstract much heat from the body. The cooling is no[illegible] fest except on the skin. Later, heat elimination is in[illegible] because of the vascular reaction in the skin.

Indications. Short sthenic fevers, as grippe, colds, [illegible] where the skin is cold and clammy, for the purpose of wa[illegible] the skin and raising the blood pressure. This som[illegible] occurs in typhoid.

Long Hot. Any of the sweating treatments used in [illegible] serve to illustrate the effects of this class of measures.

1. Heat production is increased during the treatme[illegible] least to some extent. The atonic reaction which follows [illegible] result in decrease of heat production.

2. Heat is communicated to the body. This is the c[illegible] cause of the initial rise of temperature before perspir[illegible] becomes well established and general. Later, heat elimin[illegible] is enormously increased because of the increased circulation [illegible] the skin and especially by the evaporation of the perspir[illegible] This latter is the essential effect of sweating treatments.

Indications. Sweating treatments are indicated in the f[illegible] stage of nearly all fevers, *i. e.*, at the onset. It is at this ti[illegible] that the initial chill occurs. They are useful at this stag[illegible] such fevers as measles, influenza, scarlet fever, etc.

Short Hot. Fomentations, short hot packs, hot sponge[illegible] and the hot evaporating wet sheet pack are examples of th[illegible]

class of antipyretics. Their special advantage is the preparing of the skin to properly react to succeeding cold treatment. The skin is warmed and heat elimination is increased through the warming effect. Some heat is communicated to the body. Heat production is little, if at all influenced. Wherever there is chilliness, cyanosis, or goose flesh in febrile disease, some form of hot application must be used before resorting to cold, since in the absence of the former, the cold may have a decidedly adverse effect.

In addition to the effects noted in the general classes of treatments discussed above, it should be understood that by proper variations in the manner of giving hydriatic treatment, it is possible to produce any desired effect upon the heat mechanism

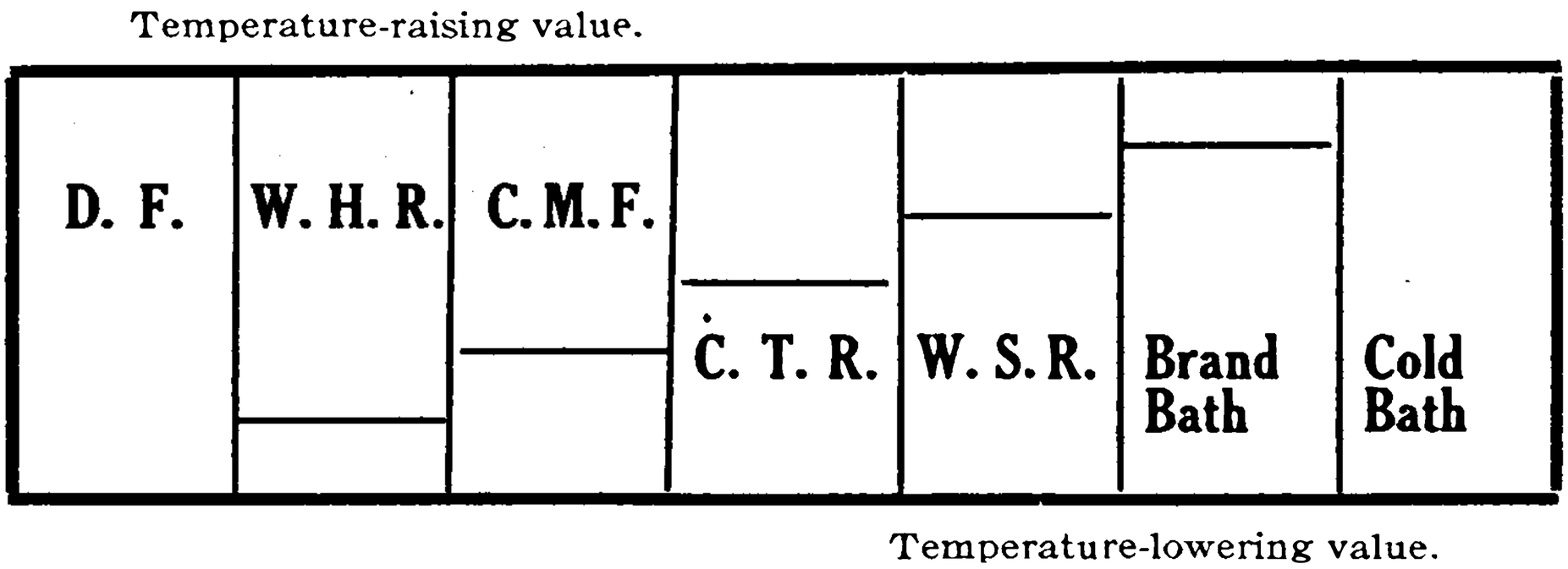


Fig. 47. Diagram showing quantitative relation between the temperature-raising and the temperature-lowering capacity of different treatments.

and upon febrile temperature. In the case of cold treatments these variations are produced by changes in the degree of friction used and in the quantity of cold water brought in contact with the skin surface. The more the friction and the less the contact with cold water, the greater the temperature-raising capacity. The larger the amount of cold water brought in contact with the body, provided reaction be maintained, the greater the temperature-lowering capacity. This relation is graphically shown in *Fig. 47*. The proportion of each block below the cross line indicates the relative value of the treatment in lowering temperature as compared with its temperature-raising value indicated by the proportion of the block above the line.

THE HEAT MECHANISM IN FEVER

The mechanism of the production of fever is a la
and one somewhat outside of the scope of this wor
are, however, a few points that should be noted in or
an understanding of the prineiples involved in the
of fever, *i. e.*, in order to treat such conditions intell

Graham Lusk[10] gives the following discussion:—

"A high fever may be accompanied by an increased
ism of only 15 per cent. The cause of the fever must
be due to diminution in the ability to discharge the
duced. In further support of this, Senator has shown
fever following pus injections in a dog begins with a
of heat within the body. Nebelthau found that when
discharge of a normal rabbit was called 100, during
twelve hours of infection in which the temperature
38.6°—40.1°, the discharge of heat was but 96.3. A
the heat production to have been the same in these two
(as was actually the case in the rabbits of May), then
retained would account for the pathological increase in
ture. At a later stage the discharge of heat rose to
its production at the higher temperature."

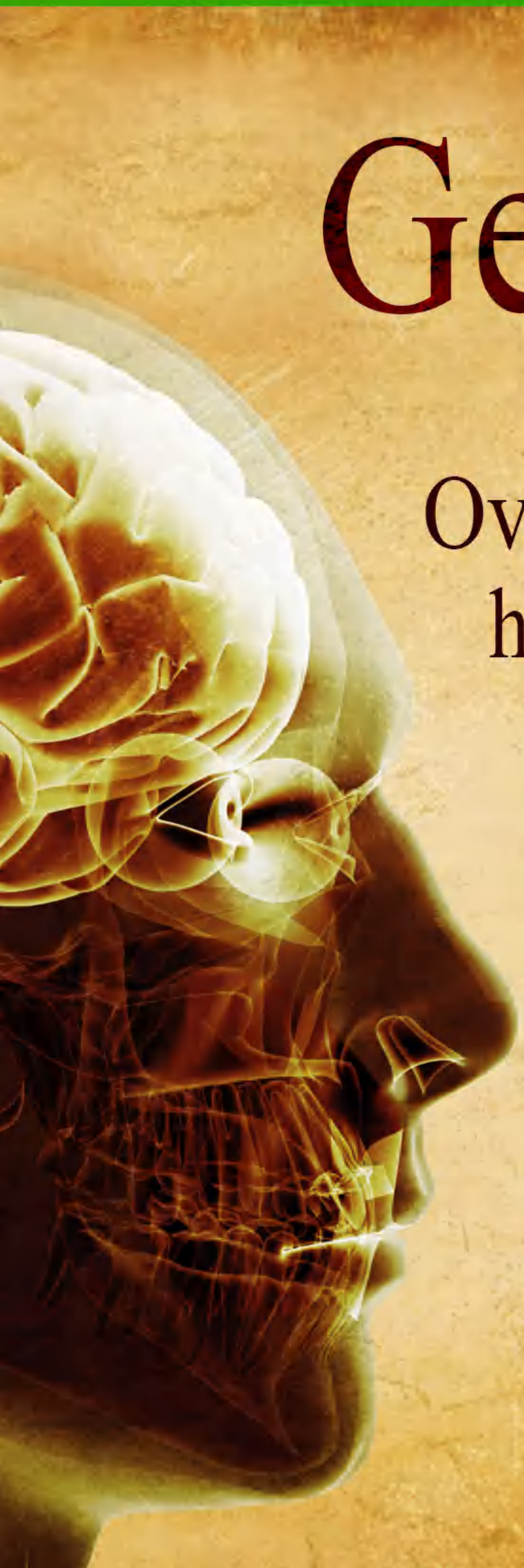
In the state of lessened heat elimination manifest
beginning of most fevers lies the reason for the *initial*
hot applications so frequently advised in the subsequent
of this work.

"Nebelthau has shown a fall in temperature and heat
duction in a rabbit whose cord was divided between the
and seventh cervical vertebræ, and has also demonstrated
under these circumstances infection with erysipelas of the
had no influence on temperature or heat production. The
ference is that the febrile toxines act through the higher
motor centers, whose regulatory control is lost in the
experiment.

"A kindred interpretation may be placed on the experim
of Mendelsen, who was unable to produce fever through
injections when the dog was under the influence of chloral
morphine, although such treatment in a normal animal ca

10 Science of Nutrition, p. 255.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Clinical Antipyresis. These variations are, perhaps, [illegible] of theoretical interest. However, there is a practical [illegible] tion to be made of the signs and symptoms which in[illegible] *decided over-production of heat or a marked decrease in heat* [illegible] *ation*. The former contra-indicates vigorous tonic [illegible] such as the cold mitten friction, which are not accompa[illegible] heat abstraction, *i. e.*, more or less prolonged contact wi[illegible] water. The latter are of especial importance in revealing [illegible] dition which absolutely contra-indicates the use of k[illegible] applications, and in many cases even the short cold fric[illegible] less preceded by hot applications. In cases of pyre[illegible] following signs indicate a great increase in heat produc[illegible]

1. Full pulse and flushed face.
2. A hot dry skin.

A consideration of these will at once reveal the fact [illegible] cold mitten friction would be inappropriate, since it [illegible] tendency to lower blood pressure, also because the tr[illegible] stimulates heat production; but the contact with cold wat[illegible] too brief duration to abstract much heat from the body. [illegible] would a hot application or a sweating treatment best [illegible] condition. It is necessary to abstract heat from the bod[illegible] some more or less prolonged cold application.

On the other hand, the following symptoms show a de[illegible] decrease in heat elimination:—

1. Cold skin, whether dry, or moist and clammy.
2. Cyanosis.
3. Goose flesh appearance.
4. Chilly sensations.
5. Shivering.

Again, consideration of these conditions reveals the fact th[illegible] cold applications, unless accompanied by vigorous friction, [illegible] not even then in some cases, will greatly increase the anem[illegible] of the skin and the internal congestion which exists because o[illegible] the chilling. In these cases hot applications or sweating treat[illegible] ments must be used until the cyanosis is overcome and [illegible] the blood brought back to the surface, thus relieving the [illegible] internal congestion and, at the same time, imparting a sensa[illegible] tion of warmth to the body and consequently checking the [illegible]

shivering. This is also indicated in the first stage of many fevers where the chill has actually begun or where chilly sensations indicate its approach. In this case the hot sweating treatment should not be repeated, at least not frequently, as it is too weakening. Its frequent repetition does not increase the vital resistance, but rather decreases it. It decreases phagocytosis and the production of antibodies. Malaria is an exception to the general rule of the use of hot treatment at the onset. Here it is a detriment rather than a benefit. On the other hand, in acute nephritis much sweating treatment should be used all through the course of the disease..

In general then, it may be said that long cold applications should be used where great increase of heat production is the chief cause of fever; and hot applications where the decided decrease of heat elimination is a prime factor in the fever.

Table of Therapeutic Classification

	Group A	Group B
Symptoms	Full pulse, flushed face, hot dry skin	Cold skin, wet or dry, cyanosis, goose flesh, shivering
Chief condition present	Great increase in heat production	A decided decrease in heat elimination
Indications	Abstract heat by long contact with cold	Warm the skin, combat internal congestion
Treatment	Long cold applications	Hot applications until blood is brought back to skin

The following lists of hot and of cold treatments are those that are most useful in fevers. When properly selected and suited to the individual case, the cold treatments meet the first indication and the hot treatments the second indication.

Cold applications useful in febrile conditions:—

1. Brand bath.
2. Graduated bath with friction.
3. Tepid or cool bath.
4. Evaporating wet sheet pack.
5. Cold towel rub.

6. Ice rub.
7. Cold sponging.
8. Cold affusions.
9. Cold to head and neck.
10. Ice bag or cold compress to heart.
11. Cold compress to abdomen.
12. Cold water coils to head and abdomen.
13. Cold rectal irrigation or enema.
14. Cold water drinking.
15. Fresh cold air in the sick room.

Hot applications which may be used to reduce [redacted] the cold applications:—

1. Hot blanket pack.
2. Hot bath (very short).
3. Hot evaporating sheet.
4. Hot sponging.
5. Fomentations to spine.
6. Fomentations to abdomen.
7. Hot water drinking.
8. Cold mitten friction (reaction simulates [redacted] hot application).

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

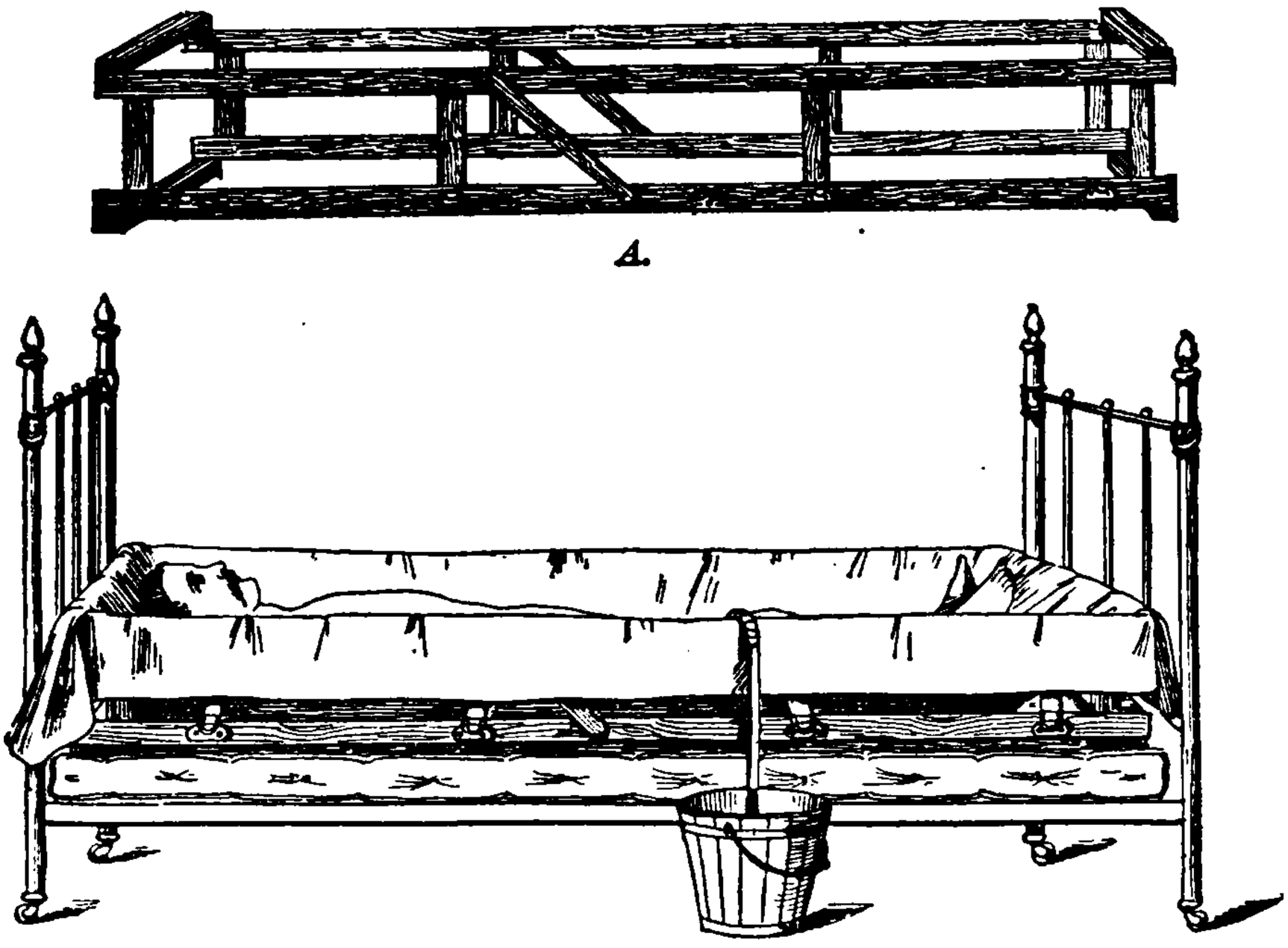
act directly upon the bacteria; second, the decrease of the emia by increasing the oxidation of the bacterial toxins hastening their elimination in an incompletely oxidized The body poisons, the leucomaines, are taken care of same way and by the same means. These are the two p objects to be attained in the treatment. The reduction perature is only incidental to these and serves as a guide to the completeness of these results. However use of medicinal antipyretics, the degree of the fever in runs parallel with the accomplishment of these essential With both quinine and the coal tar products, phagocy interfered with, if not wholly abolished and the toxe increased because of a decrease in the oxidation and elim of the poisons. Under the use of hydrotherapy, ration ployed, typhoid fever presents an entirely different clini ture from that which we have been taught to regard as teristic of this disease. The cold bath meets practicall the conditions and symptoms which require special at The heart and circulation are sustained and invigora nervous system is aroused, and the nervous symptoms, regarded as an invariable accompaniment, either do not a or are mitigated in severity. The emunctories are susta that elimination is greatly increased.

Treatment

Since the cold friction bath is the best means of trea typhoid, our consideration of this disease will largely be a cussion of the methods, rationale, and results of this measu The original cold friction bath, as devised by Brand, cons in the full immersion of the body in water at a temperature not less than 65° F. nor more than 70° F. As advised Brand, it continues fifteen minutes, during which time the entir skin surface immersed in the water, with the exception of th abdomen, is rubbed vigorously by the attendants. The obje of the friction is the production of reaction so that the sensation of chilliness is abolished, and the circulation of the skin main tained, thus favoring the cooling of the blood. If at any time the patient becomes cyanotic, or real chilling occurs, as indi

cated by continued shivering and chattering of the teeth, he must at once be removed from the bath. The Brand bath is to be repeated whenever the temperature of the patient exceeds 102.5° or 103° F. In practice it has been found that this means every three or four hours.

As to the appliances necessary, it has been found that some form of portable bath is most convenient. Of these, there are two forms worthy of description,—the bath tub on wheels and the bed tub. The former (*Plate V.*) is of ordinary bath tub



A.

B.

Fig. 48. Burr portable bath. A—frame, B—complete.

construction and sufficient in length to allow the full extension of the patient while immersed in the water, and of such depth that the patient is covered with water up to the chin. This tub can be wheeled to the side of the bed, being placed a sufficient distance from the side of the bed to allow of two attendants reversing the patient in carrying him from the bed to the bath, or it may be placed close to the bed and the patient lowered directly into the tub by hand or by means of a special raising and lowering device (*Plate VI.*).

The Burr portable bath (*Fig. 48.*) is probably the best type of the bed bath. It consists of two parts—a large rubber sheet

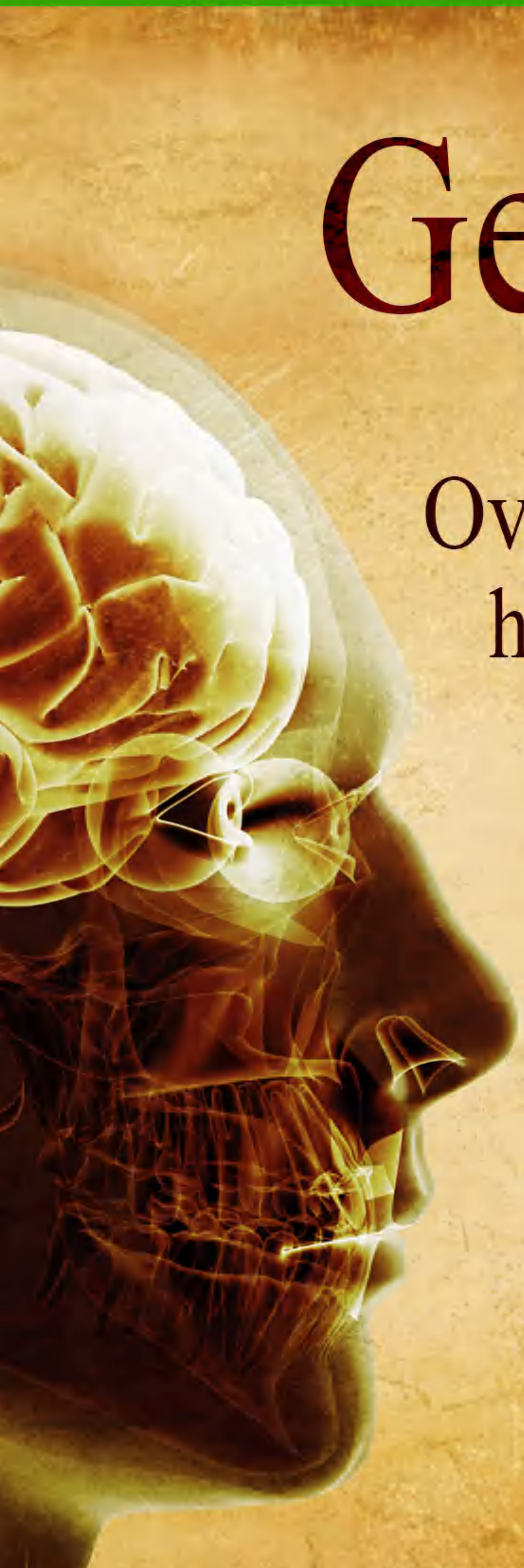
with rings near the margin for fastening to the frame, and a light wooden crib capable of being folded into a bundle. The rubber sheet is first slipped under the pillow, brought up over the pillow, being tucked along the sides of body. The frame is then unfolded, placed down over patient so as to rest on the mattress, surrounding the pillow, and rubber sheet. The edges of the sheet are drawn up over the top rail and fastened to the lower rings. When complete it is capable of holding about gallons of water. It may be filled by either a pail attached to a faucet and emptied by a siphon. The ment demands less moving of the patient than any of bath.

There has recently been devised another type of bath the Coile bed bath (*Plate VII.*). This is a collapsible rubber sheeting, the walls of which consist of four posed pneumatic rings. When deflated this can be placed the patient in the same manner as the rubber sheeting Burr bed tub. It is then inflated by means of a large pump, and is ready to receive the water. It is emptied sleeve outlet as shown in the illustration.

Before being immersed in the cold water, the head of the patient are bathed in ice water. If the tub is used necessary to provide an invalid ring for the head and a cushion or water pillow should support the nates. The patient's skin is warm on entering the bath and the friction vigorous and kept up during the entire period of immersion there is little danger of chilling or collapse. If at any this should occur, the patient must be immediately removed placed in a dry blanket, the surface being vigorously rubbed until the skin is warm and reaction fully established. A plaint of chilliness on the part of the patient may not be indication for removal from the bath. The appearance of flesh, however, necessitates removal. The patient should be allowed to remain in the bath until the appearance of osis or any other decided symptom of untoward effects.

While the Brand bath seems to give the best results in young vigorous persons, where treatment can be begun dur-

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

the first week, yet this method is not applicable to those cases which apply for treatment during the second or third week, since they have already become so weakened that there is not sufficient vitality to fully react to so vigorous a means. The Brand bath is also contraindicated in cases of much reduced vitality from any other cause, and in the very young and in the aged. In regard to the use of measures other than the strict Brand bath Buxbaum[1] inclines to the view that the essential feature is the obtaining of the reaction by suiting the treatment to the needs of the individual case. He says, "With reference to the special measures to be employed, the desired result can no doubt be attained with the most varied hydriatic procedures, provided the thermic and mechanical stimulations are graduated in accordance with the indications of the individual case. Hence there can be no invariable and exclusive routine."

With many patients it is better to employ a bath at a higher temperature, *the graduated bath* of Ziemssen or the wet sheet pack, cold sponging, compresses, etc. A graduated bath begins at a temperature of 98°, *i. e.*, 3°—5° lower than the body temperature or even 90° or 95° F. and continues for half an hour or longer, during which time the temperature is gradually lowered by the addition of cold water, friction being employed as soon as the patient complains of any chilliness. The temperature may be decreased to between 70° and 80° F., according to the condition of the patient. This bath is just as effective as the Brand bath in the reduction of the fever; in fact, it is a mistake to suppose that the colder the bath, the greater is the reduction in temperature. This is not the case. A higher temperature for a longer time may reduce the fever just as effectively as a lower temperature for a shorter time. There is, however, this very essential difference, that the stimulating of the body functions is greater in proportion to the degree of cold. With the graduated bath, as efficient and thorough stimulation is not obtained as with the Brand bath. But on the other hand, because of this extreme stimulation, thermogenesis is markedly increased and, following the Brand bath, the temperature rapidly regains its former height, so that

1 Cohen—System of Physiologic Therapeutics, Vol. IX, p. 134.

it is necessary to repeat the bath very frequently. graduated bath in which the temperature of the wat lowered below 85° F., and especially when it is contin thirty minutes to an hour, the temperature of the pati not so quickly regain its former height and the bath be repeated so frequently.

Of other methods the following are useful in specia or where the ideal treatment can not be carried out:—

1. The Wet Sheet Pack is perhaps less objectionable patient than a cold bath. Liebermeister claims that fo packs of ten minutes duration each are equivalent to bath of ten minutes; and Baruch, that six such packs are e lent to a Brand bath. The sheet should be wrung fro water or very cold water. It is applied in the usual m and after the initial warming, maintained at the evapo stage, being renewed by sprinkling of more cold water sheet. The rapidity of evaporation may be increased b ning.

2. The Cold Towel Rub given with a towel well filled very cold water is an excellent substitute for the wet pack. The use of the wet sheet pack necessitates more or moving of the patient, which is not the case with the towel rub. The wet towel may be applied several times to same part, and even ice water used.

3. The Ice Rub. H. A. Hare has employed the ice rub w good success. A flat piece of ice is wrapped in thin linen gauze, and by rapid movements different parts of the body gone over. He recommends this application to the back on avoiding the extremities. Others, however, utilize it as a gen eral measure in place of the cold bath.

4. Cold Sponging and Cold Affusions are of decided advant age in those cases where the bath or pack can not be used Cold affusions to the head are of great service in delirium and in fact, whenever nervous symptoms are unduly prominent.

5. The Cold Abdominal Compress is an efficient means and should be kept in place between other treatments. The best results from this are obtained when the Winternitz coil is placed over one layer of the compress. The steady flow of cold

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

disturb the patient. If kept up long at a time the wat
not be very cold but rather tepid or cool. It has also th
tage of stimulating diuresis and the consequent elim
toxines through the aborption of water from the bowe

These means effectually control the temperatu
general cutaneous stimulation the patient should be g
or two tub baths daily, preferably one in the forenoo
in the afternoon. This may be a modified cold rub
or a graduated bath. Where tubs are not available
towel rub, the ice rub, or the evaporating wet sheet
be used for the same purpose. In practice such a co
of methods appears to give the best possible results.

Hot Treatment. In those cases where chilliness
osis are produced by the cold bath and other cold ap
or in which this condition is more or less constant, it
sary to thoroughly warm the skin, bringing the blo
surface and effectually reducing the extreme internal co
before any cold application can be made with succe
these preliminary hot treatments one may use fomen
the hot pack, the hot evaporating sheet or hot spo
according to the circumstances and indications. They
aided by hot water-drinking. During the cold treatme
water bottles and spine bags should be used to keep the
warm and prevent chilling. The skin should be red and
and the patient feel warm before any cold treatments are
The cold mitten friction and the cold towel rub are va
adjuncts to the hot applications, since they increase the w
ing of the skin more than they cool the blood. Cold app
tions, such as ice bags and ice caps, should be applied to
head and over the carotids whenever any decidedly hot appl
tions are made. These help to prevent any rise of temperat
while the patient is being prepared by the hot treatment
order to react to the succeeding cold.

The Diagnostic Bath. Baruch and Kellogg claim for the co
bath a certain value as a diagnostic means when employed d
ing the first week of the fever. Baruch uses the followi
method: When the rectal temperature reaches 103° F. and
other symptoms indicate typhoid fever, the patient is tubbed in

PLATE VII. The Coile bed bath.

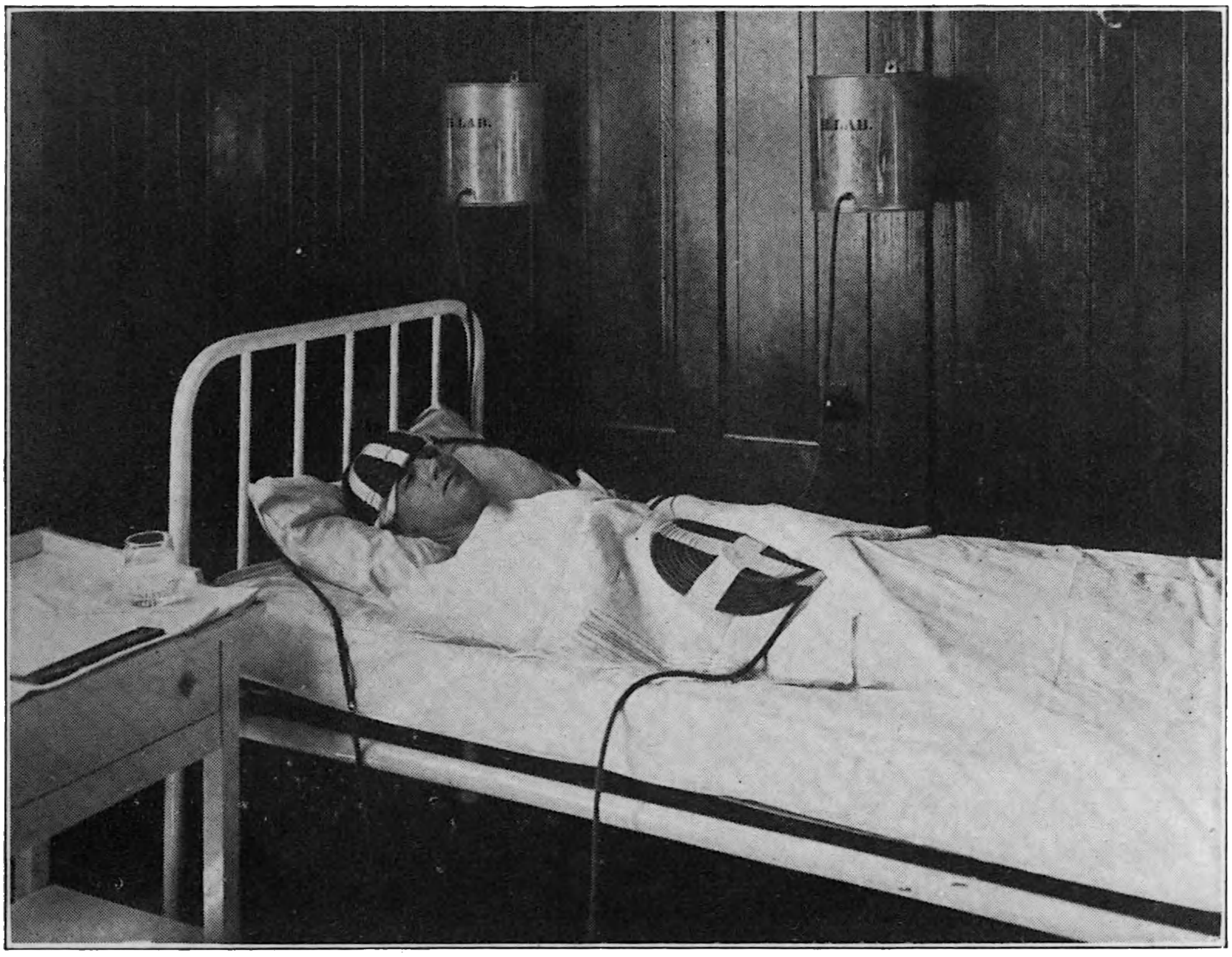
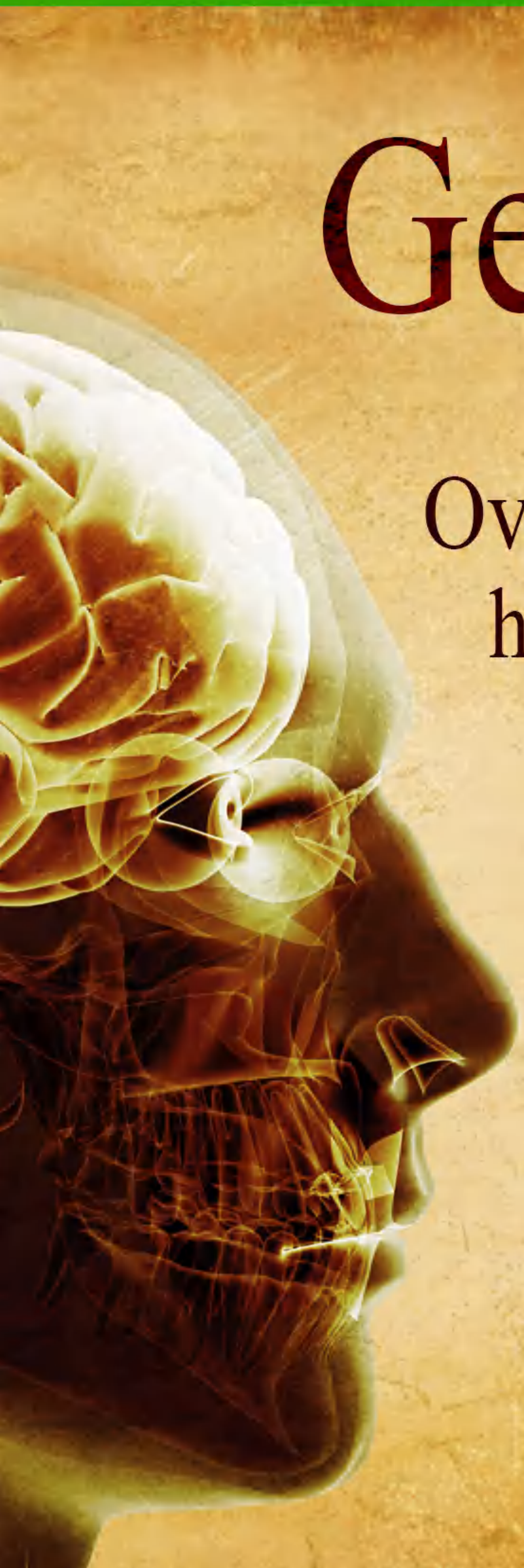


PLATE VIII. Author's method of continuous cooling in typhoid fever.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

2. The Circulatory System. Heart failure is that to wh[illegible] have been taught to ascribe all the failures in the circu[illegible] and it is toward the heart muscle that many medicinal a[illegible] designed to act upon the circulation, are directed. Th[illegible] has resulted in the deluging of the system with stryc[illegible] digitalis, and the like, and the already overworked hea[illegible] been compelled to do double service to no avail. That[illegible] idea is almost wholly erroneous has been quite fully dis[illegible] in the previous chapter.

Romberg and Pässler have shown that the chief dan[illegible] the circulation in infectious diseases comes through par[illegible] and derangement of the vasomotors, and is not due to[illegible] damage to the heart itself. Pässler further claims that[illegible] derangement is caused by loss of the control exercised by[illegible] vasomotor centers in the medulla and spinal cord, the periph[illegible] vasomotor nerves and the muscles remaining intact. R[illegible] effects are still possible. The heart is not at fault, but ther[illegible] an absence of the natural physiologic resistance normally m[illegible] tained by the proper tone of the blood-vessels, together [illegible] the loss of the rhythmic action of the peripheral heart. H[illegible] very aptly compares the heart and vasomotors of the circu[illegible] tory system respectively to a locomotive and the resistan[illegible] offered to its driving wheels. He says, "The locomotive [illegible] intended to meet and stand any resistance, and if the resistance [illegible] is removed by slippery rails, the wheels fly around ineffectually [illegible] racking the machinery and destroying its usefulness. From the above, some important diagnostic and therapeutic facts are learned: (1) that a rapid pulse may be due in no way to a dis-ordered heart, but to vasomotor relaxation; (2) that the proper way to treat this rapid pulse is to put sand on the track and increase the resistance, and not to make more steam—or give digitalis—which only cause the engine, or heart, to work away on slippery rails with more wear and tear, and make no progress." That this wear and tear may be considerable and result in a weaker and more rapid pulse, any one may observe who will, after 1-60 grain of strychnine has been administered to a typhoid patient every three hours for a week or more, discontinue the drug, recording the blood pressure before and after

discontinuance of the strychnine by means of some accurate blood pressure instrument. Indeed the change for the better is so marked that it can be very readily appreciated by the finger without other aid. In one case that came under the author's observation, this was so marked and appeared so promptly, that it was observed at once by both the day and the night nurses.

The cold friction bath meets the indication presented by the deranged vasomotors more fully than is possible with any other means. It stimulates the blood-vessels to normal, rhythmic action and relieves the heart of the excessive burden imposed upon it by their failure. In typhoid fever, the blood is very much reduced in quality. The red cells and hemoglobin are decreased, the latter to a greater extent than the former, especially during convalescence. There is a decided leucopenia, the white cells being decreased in number one-third, or even more than one-half. The blood is laden with acid poisons and is, therefore, reduced in alkalinity (Bireger). The amount of toxic extractives in the blood has been shown by Robin to be doubled or trebled in case of fevers. We have already quite extensively discussed the effect of the cold bath on the composition of the blood. Suffice it to say that observations made by Strasser, Breitenstein, Baruch and others prove conclusively that, in typhoid fever, every constituent of the blood is favorably influenced by the cold friction. The red cells in the peripheral circulation are greatly increased, the white cells increased as high as two or threefold, the alkalinity is restored and acid products decreased. Because of these, normal nutritive changes proceed more promptly.

3. The Kidneys. Elimination in febrile conditions is very defective. The quantity of urine is decreased and, while there may be an increase in the solid constituents, it is still quite insufficient to prevent the accumulation of toxic wastes in the blood and tissues. During convalescence, the solids of the urine increase from 10 to 20 per cent, or more, over the amount excreted during the febrile period. The poisonous wastes are more insoluble than those of little or no toxicity and so require a larger quantity of the solvent—water—for their efficient elimination.

The cold bath greatly increases diuresis. The q... solvent is increased, thus increasing the toxines el... But this alone, does not account for the great incre... toxicity of the urine under the bath treatment. ... poisons of the urine in typhoid fever are double the... amount, Roque and Weil found them increased five ti... the cold bath. Bouchard also found the toxic co-effici... urine greatly increased by the cold bath. Robin in... found the urea increased to 20 per cent. On the ... antipyretic drugs diminish the excretion of urea and ... The liver in those cases dying after treatment with ... is said to be heavier than the liver of those dying after ... bath treatment. These drugs produce granular and ... changes in the liver and kidneys.

The respiratory elimination of CO_2 and intake of ox... decreased in fevers, the amount of the decrease ... inverse proportion to the severity of the fever. This is ... course, to the lessened capacity of the body tissues to ... oxygen. Both oxygen absorption and carbon dioxide eli... tion are enhanced by the cold bath. Robin found the in... approximating 20 to 30 per cent above the usual amou... typhoid fever. That all these results are beneficial nee... argument. There is no organ, tissue, or function not f... ably influenced by the hydriatic treatment of typhoid fe... Because of the maintenance of the vital resistance and ... elimination of toxines during the febrile period, convalesc... is much shortened when cold baths have been used.

Contraindications and Treatment of Complications

Pneumonia. The cold bath is contraindicated in pneumo... of the lobar type. The case should be treated as far as possib... as simple pneumonia alone would be treated. Fomentatio... cold compresses, alternate hot and cold applications, the ice ... pack to the chest, and such means are applicable where the ... pneumonia arises as a complication and may be used in mode... the same manner as is ordinary pneumonia. Special attention ... must be given to the extremities. They should be kept warm ... and the circulation active. The cold mitten friction, wet towel ...

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

discontinued, the patient being treated by rest and [illegible] to control the shock, so that operation may be done as possible. If peritonitis supervenes, it becomes the objective point.

The reduction in mortality from typhoid since the introduction of the cold bath has not been due to reduction in mortality from hemorrhage and perforation. According to the mortality from these causes before and after the introduction of the Brand bath is practically the same.[3] The mortality from all other causes was much less, dropping from 10 per cent and, in spite of no change from the above conditions, there was a total decrease in mortality of 6 per cent.

Menstruation. The menses frequently cease during the febrile conditions, but cases in which it has continued have been successfully treated by cold baths; and under this treatment, cases of pregnancy, complicated by typhoid, have been carried to a successful issue.

Tympanites. The cold bath greatly relieves this condition. The continuous use of the ice water coil, interrupted once or two by fomentations, gives great relief. The ascending turpentine enema should not be omitted where more active means are needed. The plain cold enema or continuous irrigation are also very useful in tympanites.

Mortality and Statistics

Modern methods in the rational treatment of disease have accomplished few more striking changes than those accompanying the hydriatic treatment of typhoid fever. The reduction in mortality compares quite favorably with the lessened fatality of small pox since the introduction of vaccination, and that of diphtheria since the employment of antitoxine. The prophylactic use of antityphoid vaccination has proven an almost unfailing means of preventing large epidemics such as occur in army practice and even in hospitals. It is to be hoped that this will also show itself of material help in treatment in lessening the severity of the attack.

3 Brisbane Hospital, Queensland, 1882—1896.

Under the ordinary expectant plan with administration of medicinal antipyretics, statistics from Germany show, among 11,124 cases, a mortality of 21.7 per cent. In another collection of 27,051 cases, there was a mortality of 17.45 per cent. In still another collection of 80,140 cases, there was a mortality of 19.23 per cent.

In one divison of the German army, during seventeen years among 1970 cases, the mortality was 26.3 per cent. In the English army for six years, ending with 1877, there was a mortality from typhoid of 32 per cent. In recent years, Delafield shows a mortality of 26 per cent from the New York hospitals. And throughout American cities, the mortality from typhoid fever is claimed to be from 25 to 40 per cent. In the typhoid wards of the Johns Hopkins Hospital, during the first ten years, nine of which is since the introduction of hydrotherapy, Osler reports among 829 cases, a mortality of 7.5 per cent. During the first year of this time, the cases were treated by the ordinary expectant plan and, moreover, this series includes all cases admitted, those dying within one or two days and those diagnosed at autopsy. From the Brisbane Hospital, Hare reports a typhoid mortality of 14.8 per cent previous to the introduction of hydrotherapy and 7.5 per cent since its employment.

In 1887 Brand gathered statistics of 19,017 cases, showing under all forms of hydriatic treatment, a reduction in mortality from 21.8 per cent to 7.8 per cent. In another series of cases collected by Brand and enlarged by Baruch, in which the strict cold bath treatment was used, Baruch claims a reduction of mortality to 3.9 per cent.

In the divison of the German army above referred to, the mortality under the strict Brand system was reduced from 26.3 per cent to 4.3 per cent. Baruch further claims that among 1223 cases treated only by apostles of the Brand system, there was a reduction in mortality to 1 per cent (twelve cases) and that "*not one of these twelve deaths occurred in any case that came under treatment before the fifth day.*"

Contrary to what might be expected, the mortality is less in private practice than in hospitals. This is doubtless because the cases come under observation at once and can be treated

from the beginning. The same is true of army and pitals where all indispositions are at once investig medical officer.

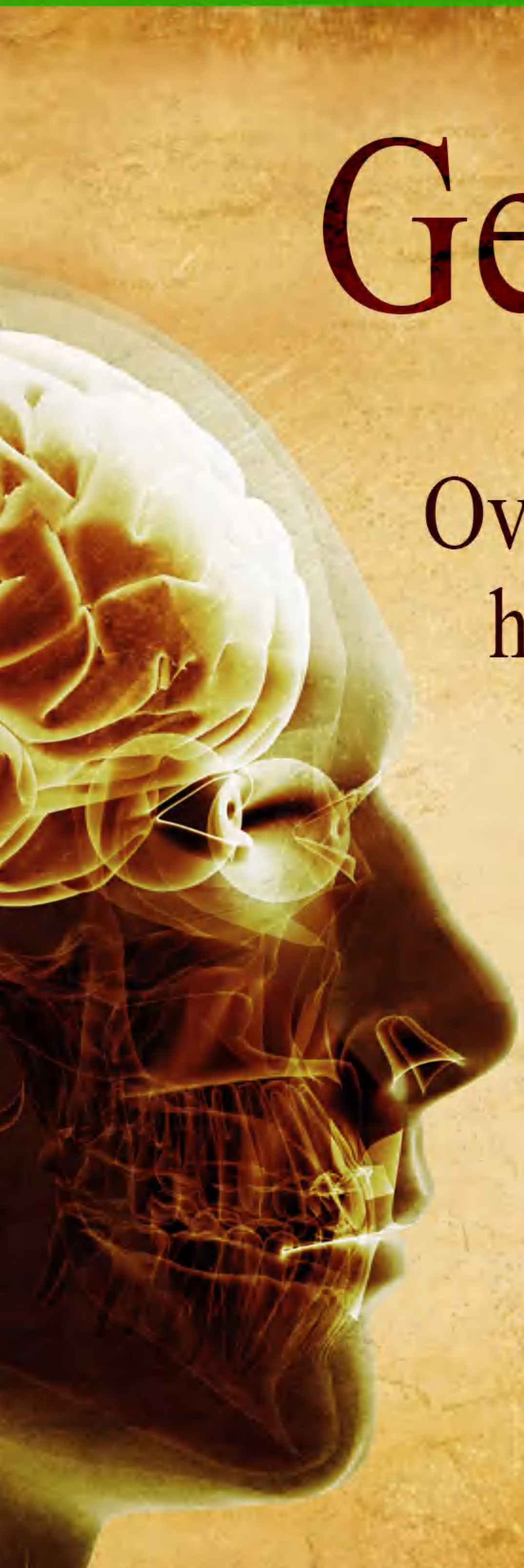
The statistics gathered by Baruch[4] relative to the from typhoid fever under the varying methods are th tensive on record. The reduction in mortality seems upon (1) the strict employment of hydrotherapy by bath method where cases come under observation befor day; (2) the discarding of all medicinal antipyretics, cious employment of various forms of hydrotherapy w can not be treated from the beginning; (4) private pr

MALARIA

Since this disease is of an "infectious" nature, bei the malarial plasmodium, treatment must be directe the destruction of the parasite. This may be accom either of two ways,—first, by the toxic action of quin second, by the phagocytic action of the white blood cel quinine does kill the parasite and thereby check the di one can dispute. But that it also fails of effecting a cure i the larger number of chronic cases and many of the cases, is also indisputable, being witnessed by the experi all practitioners whose practice brings them in contact wit disease. The last word concerning malaria has yet t spoken. It would seem that giving quinine in an acute which has not previously been taking a course of quinine, t adminstered that there is a maximum dose in the blood just vious to sporulation which produces the chill, stopping th no more being given until the proper time before the nex pected paroxysm, is productive of good results; however, it o fails in the estivo-autumnal type, since it is uncertain just w a paroxysm may be expected, sporulation being irregular so t the above program can not always be carried out successfu It has also been shown that quinine fails of its best result fails altogether where it has previously been administered some time as a prophylactic, or in the treatment of other attac

4 Baruch—Principles and Practice of Hydrotherapy, p. 202.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

was deemed necessary to get the men out of the tropics, as several cases of a pernicious type and two of blackwater fever had appeared. Accordingly the ship sailed for Boston July 16.

"Notwithstanding the prophylactic use of quinine, under military observation, for those who were not cinchonized, there were 215 acute malarial paroxysms among 298 men during the five days' trip from San Juan to Boston. About 100 men of the original 398 had been transferred to other ships and stations prior to the sailing of the Columbia for Boston. The character of the paroxysms was atypical—there was no frank chill. The men would feel fairly well until shortly before an attack, they would then complain of chilliness and weakness and either lie down or fall down in a heap on deck. Passed Assistant Surgeon Butler, U. S. N., states in a report, that when the men arrived at Boston so many were anemic and weak that they were unfit to return to the tropics. Doctor Butler also noted the fact that these cases did not seem to respond at all satisfactorily to quinine even when given hypodermatically. Before the cases became so numerous, blood examinations were made and the form of malaria was considered to be chiefly tertian. The clinical features, however, would indicate that there was estivo-autumnal infection in many of the cases.

"In considering the experience of these marines who were given prophylactic, I might even say curative, doses of quinine during a period just exceeding a month, and when this was discontinued during the days of July 7, 8, 9, and 10, showed an extensive malarial morbidity, the question naturally presents itself as to the explanation of this. Furthermore, we must note the fact that resumption of quinine prophylaxis at this time in those not cinchonized apparently had little effect in checking the outbreak, and that when quinine was adminstered in curative doses, at times hypodermatically, it did not seem to control infection as is usual. It is common experience that malaria responds readily and promptly to quinine properly administered. I can not but believe that malarial parasites may develop a reistance to quinine.

"Browning, reporting recent work in Ehrlich's laboratory, states that when mice infected with trypanosomes were not given

sufficent doses to destroy the flagellates, these protozoa developed a resistance to the therapeutic agent during the time their development was held in abeyance. A most startling discovery was, too, that these trypanosomes retained their chemo-resistance through numberless generations. After passage during a period of fourteen months through 144 mice, these last generations of trypanosomes still retained their immunity to the exciting drug. Browning experimented with atoxyl, parafuchsin, and trypan blue. Experiments with paramecium have also shown that these ciliates may develop marked resistance to agents primarily toxic to them."

While not commonly met with in subtropical countries, it is *possible* for the body to acquire immunity to malaria. This is manifest in numerous dark-skinned races. In regard to the action of quinine in preventing the acquisition of immunity, the following from H. T. Brooks[6] is particularly significant: "*For acquisition of this immunity, however, it is necessary that the natural course of the disease remain uninterrupted by administration of quinine, in order that the natural immunizing processes may completely take place in the blood.* R. Koch has demonstrated that in all localities where the adult natives are, so to speak, immune to malaria, the children invariably are attacked by the disease. They invariably pass through febrile attacks and always have malarial parasites in the blood, often abundantly. The natives know neither quinine nor any similarly acting drug for controlling the malady. They allow it to take its course, and numerous children die of the disease; those who survive, however, are immune for the rest of their lives, that is, in spite of the sting of infected anopheles, they no longer offer a good soil for the malarial plasmodia, and hence the latter are incapable of development in their blood."

The experiments of Bass and Johns[7] in the cultivation of malarial plasmodia *in vitro* have brought out some very interesting and important facts relative to the mechanism of protection in malarial infection. From the report of this work we quote the following:—

---

6 General and Special Pathology, 1912, p. 411.

7 The Cultivation of Malarial Plasmodia (plasmodium vivax and plasmodium falciparum) in Vitro, Journal of Experimental Medicine, Vol. XVI, No. 4, 1912.

"The parasites have been grown in the presence of red blood cells only. We have not seen any evidence that they can be grown independently of these cells. As already stated, they can not live for even a few minutes free in the serum. Serum inactivated of its complement is less destructive, but the plasmodia can not live in it for any considerable length of time. When cultures are prepared according to the technique described for the cultivation of one generation only, the leucocytes migrate more or less toward the surface and soon become actually concentrated in the layer in which the parasites grow. Leucocytes do not phagocytize parasites as long as they are inside of the red blood cells, but as soon as segmentation takes place and the capsule of the red cells ruptures, liberating merozoites, the latter are promptly engulfed. In fact, it is not uncommon to see a leucocyte that has phagocytized one or more full rosettes. This probably occurs after the parasite has digested the capsule or otherwise made a small opening through it, whereby it is converted into a foreign body which the leucocytes try to remove. Dead parasites in red blood cells are also phagocytized, providing the enveloping cell substance is sufficiently permeable. Parasites phagocytized are soon killed and finally digested. As a result of this phagocytosis, few if any parasites in such a culture escape to develop a second generation." "If more than one generation of plasmodia is to be cultivated, it is necessary to remove the leucocytes when the culture is made in order to avoid destruction of the parasites by them at the time of segmentation."

It is thus amply demonstrated that the phagocytes and the protective substances of the serum are highly destructive to the parasites. For the natural protection of the body against malarial parasites it is, therefore, necessary to increase the number and activity of the phagocytes and stimulate the production of chemical lysins.

It is a well known fact that while quinine kills the plasmodium, it also kills the white blood cell. In fact the two are quite similar bits of protoplasm manifesting quite similar activities. The white blood cells acquire little or no resistance to it. If they are not destroyed, they are for the time-being paralyzed

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

sweating is well established, little attention being given to the frequent and systematic use of cold frictions, affusions, douches, etc. The sweating combats nothing but the effects of the chill; it in no way removes the cause, augments the vital resistance, or restores the blood to that condition in which it is best able to combat infection. On the contrary, if at all prolonged, the resistance is lessened. Quinine, the malarial toxine, and long hot treatments, all lessen the number of leucocytes, driving them into the viscera where they stagnate.[9]

Nearly all who employ hydrotherapy in any regular manner have witnessed the beneficial results that may be obtained in the treatment of *chronic* malaria. The general plan to be followed is that of some systematic regime of tonic measures, carefully graduated and suited to the needs of the individual case. We have seen chronic cases in which 30 grains of quinine administered daily had failed to check the fever, brought to a successful issue by the regular use of the cold mitten friction and alternate hot and cold applications.

The plan followed by Fleury in the treatment of over 100 cases of malaria in the German colonies in Africa is worthy of imitation. One or two hours previous to the expected paroxysm, he administered douches at 55°—60° F. From his experience there, he concludes that in chronic cases of intermittent malarial fever with cachexia, anemia, relapses, etc., cold douches are *always* to be preferred to quinine, also that in acute intermittent fever it may be used *instead* of quinine. These conclusions were confirmed at the military hospital at Brussels by the investigations of a Royal Belgian Commission. Strasser, Fisher, Fodor, and others have reported cases successfully treated by cold applications. H. F. Rand, formerly professor of physiologic therapeutics in the University of Colorado, has successfully treated cases by the use of the cold mitten friction, cold towel rub, and the cold half bath with friction. He begins a number of hours before the chill is due. He reports a case of chronic malaria in which no chill appeared

---

9 "In the first attack absolute and relative leukopenia is observed which is due to the collection of the white cells in the liver and spleen, to the destruction of the phagocytes, and, in cachexia, to lesions of the blood-making organs."—Edward s Practice of Medicine, 1907, p. 118.

after the beginning of the treatment. At the end of a week the blood was free from plasmodia.

As in other fevers, the rationale of these measures is not difficult of explanation. It has been shown by Maragliano [10] that contraction of the surface vessels in malaria begins two hours before the temperature begins to rise and about three hours before the paroxysm (*Fig. 49.*). The skin vessels continue to

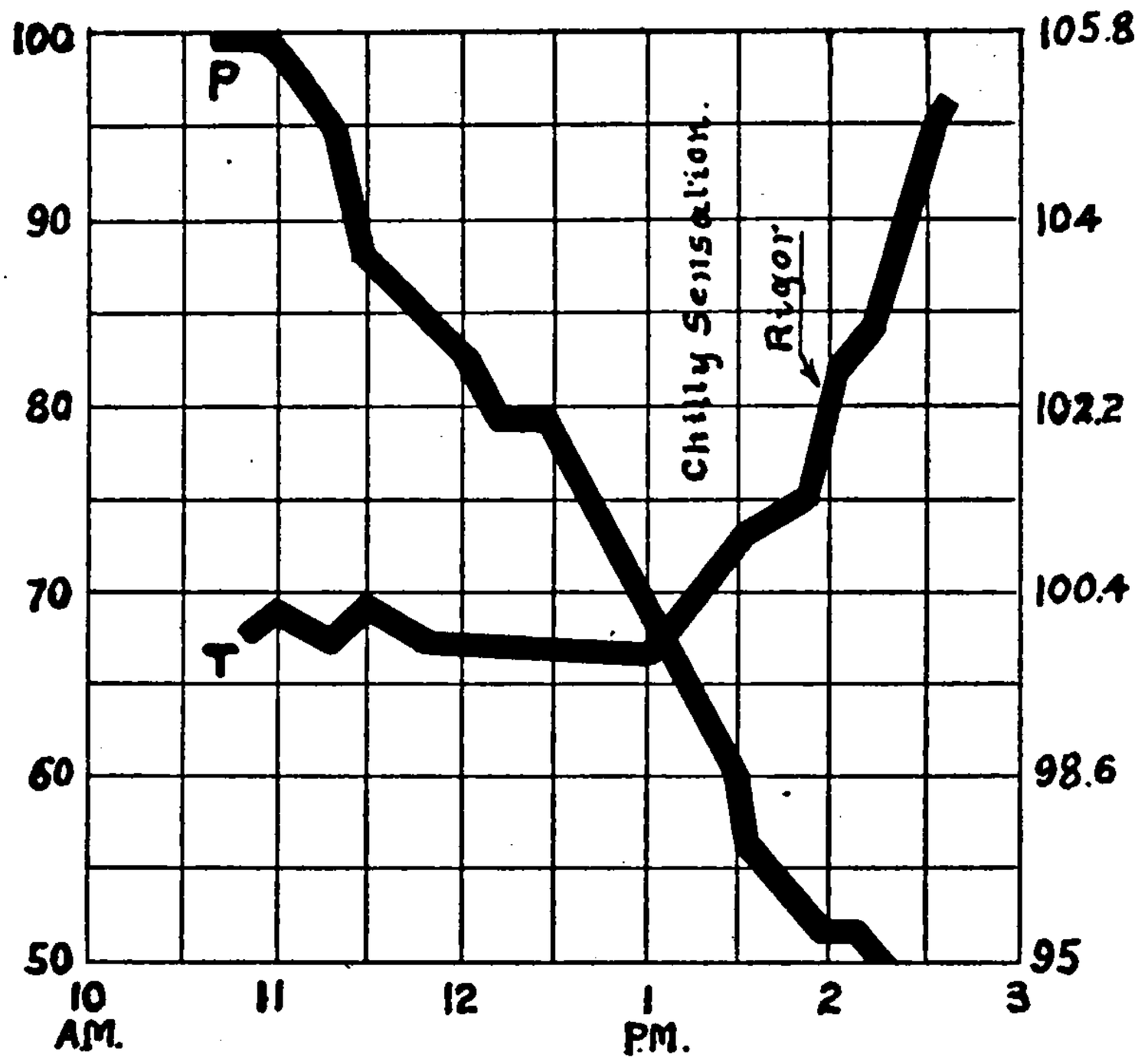


Fig. 49. Chart showing the causative relation of peripheral vasoconstriction to the fever and chill in quotidian malaria. P—state of peripheral blood-vessels as shown by the plethysmograph, T—temperature. (Maragliano.)

contract, and the fever reaches the highest point when the vessels are in a state of maximum constriction. During the sweating stage the vessels dilate, and when maximum dilatation is reached the temperature returns to normal. During the two hours referred to, the constriction of the skin vessels and anemia of the skin becomes well "fixed," so that a severe prolonged chill is provided for. At the same time there is an enormous retention of heat due to the failure in heat elimina-

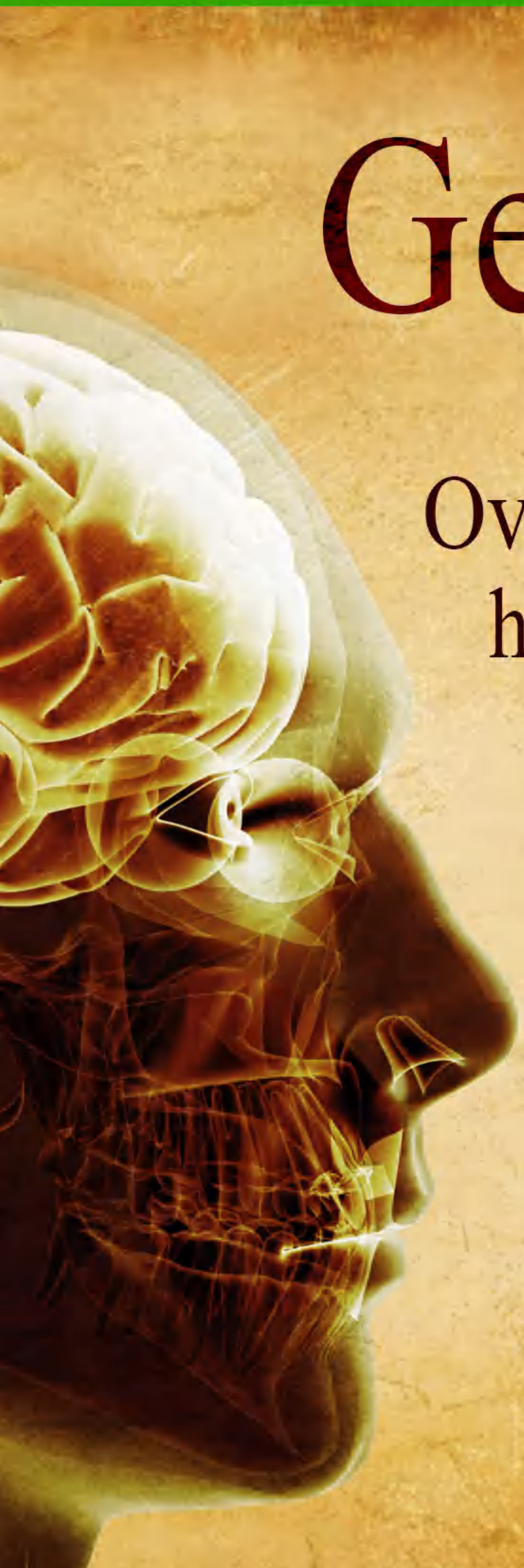
10 Plethysmograph experiment—quoted from Buxbaum—Lehrbuch der Hydrotherapie, 1903

tion. The internal congestion is intense. Under these circumstances the cold percussion or friction has a double effect. First, by the production of circulatory reaction the spasm of the peripheral vessels is relieved and the internal congestion gives way because of an equalization of the circulation. The chill is thus aborted. Second, the leucocytes are "mobilized" and phagocytosis encouraged. In malaria the leucocytes forsake the peripheral circulation and accumulate in the viscera, especially the spleen. Experiments with the oncometer show that cold applications cause contraction of this organ. This action, together with the stimulation of the vasomotors of the peripheral vessels, serves to distribute and energize this vast army of phagocytes. Besides the mobilization of the phagocytes, visceral globular stasis of the red cells is prevented. It is believed by Bass and Johns that for malarial parasites to pass from red cell to red cell, these must be in actual contact with each other in order that the parasite escape the destructive action of the serum in which they can not live for even a few minutes. Their conclusion is this: "From our observations of malarial plasmodia growing *in vitro*, we believe that *in vivo* they can pass from cell to cell only when a cell is in direct contact with another cell containing a segmenting parasite, and then only when the opening for the exit of merozoites occurs opposite the cell to be infected."

If this conclusion be true, such reinfection of red cells would be greatly favored by the globular stasis which occurs at the time of the chill. On the other hand, it would be very greatly hindered by an active visceral and peripheral circulation in which condition the majority of the young parasites would for a long time be exposed to the destructive action of the serum and would be readily phagocytized by the leucocytes.

Hot applications, beginning just before the onset of the chill, would serve to dilate the peripheral vessels and so counteract the vasoconstriction for the time-being. But such intense and prolonged heat has no tendency to combat the cause, *i. e.*, it does not produce mobilization of the leucocytes nor cause them to destroy the parasites. On the contrary it has the opposite

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

ment of a cold application, combined with powerful thermic stimulation. The form of the application is a matter of indifference. The most important requirement, however, is the production of a good reaction. When this fails to take place, success will be wanting. With the powerful stimulating procedure, which may be chosen according to personal preference, a fan douche to the region of the spleen may serviceably be conjoined. The principal objects of the therapeutist's attention are the proper selection of the *time*, and the production of a *good reaction*. The shorter the interval between the procedure and the anticipated chill, the more certain the result. With regard to the procedures to be employed, they consist in cold vigorous shower baths, a cold rub in course sheets in combination with sheet baths; cold sitz baths of ten minutes' duration; cold full baths; plunge baths and other suitable measures. The treatment should be continued until the constitution of the blood, the digestion, and circulation are restored to normal—briefly, until every sign of cachexia has disappeared.

"According to Strasser, the *effect* of hydriatic procedures is to be attributed to the fact that shortly before the attack the infected erythrocytes disintegrate under the influence of the powerful stimulation of cold, so that the plasmodia thus set free are destroyed by the phagocytes." [12]

MEASLES

Measles is an acute, contagious, febrile disease characterized by a blotchy exanthem and accompanied by coryza. It is usually uneventful in its course and not accompanied by any great mortality. However, the patient may be made much more comfortable during the febrile period, and the vital resistance so sustained that there is less tendency to bronchopneumonia. The eruption does not appear until the fourth day, so the treatment must be begun before a positive diagnosis can be made.

---

12 It is interesting to note that Bass and Johns voice a similar theory for the action of quinine, as shown by the following quotation: "It is suggested that quinine has no destructive effect upon malarial plasmodia, its effect being possibly to render the red blood cell protecting the parasite more permeable to the all sufficient destructive influence of the serum. If this is true, quinine would affect only the parasites in the circulation and not those lodged in capillaries, which would not be reached by it until they segment."

In this disease, as well as in scarlet fever, the first thing to be accomplished is the relieving of the internal congestion occasioned by the infective process. If the case is untreated, the visceral congestion is considerably lessened on the appearance of the eruption. The old idea that measles is much more serious if the eruption "strikes in," or does not appear frankly, is not wholly without foundation. At the time the eruption makes its appearance the skin becomes markedly congested and this serves to, at least partially, relieve the visceral congestion. A treatment which most efficiently relieves the internal congestion is also conducive to the speedy appearance of the rash. In our practice we have seen this best accomplished by means of some hot sweating treatment, either the hot pack or bath, accompanied by the drinking of some hot liquid. The head should be kept cold by compresses or ice bags. In some cases, where there is not much chilliness, sweating is very well accomplished by the use of the wet sheet pack, prolonged to the sweating stage. This draws the blood from the viscera and congests the skin. At the termination of such a treatment, the case, if one of measles, will show the characteristic dull red, blotchy eruption.

Baruch recommends some form of cold treatment for the same purpose and as an antipyretic throughout the febrile period. He prefers the graduated bath, or a warm bath in which the patient sits while cold water is poured over the chest and shoulders. The full expansion of the lungs occasioned by such treatment aids in the prevention of bronchopneumonia. Because of the irritability of the skin, it is not best to employ friction during the cold bath. Cold affusions to the head and back of the neck are useful in relieving stupor, delirium, and other cerebral symptoms. We have found the wet sheet pack, frequently renewed by sprinkling cold water over it, an excellent means of reducing the temperature and, at the same time, it provides against chilliness, since between each renewal of the pack, it warms up and reaction is completed. This may be repeated until the temperature has been reduced to 101° F., or even less. The evaporating stage of the pack should last for a greater length of time than the heating stage, so that the total effect will be that of heat abstraction.

Bronchopneumonia. Capillary bronchitis is the m
and fatal of the complications arising during th
measles. In this disease there is a special tendency to
tion of the mucous membranes of the respiratory t
denced by the coryza which invariably accompani
condition of the lungs may prove to be of a tubercu
this is not an infrequent sequel and one accompanied b
mortality. In the treatment of bronchopneumonia, c
ing measles, we employ the same methods used in
ment of this disease when occurring alone. The chil
be placed, at intervals of about three hours, in a bath
95°. When sufficiently warm, let the child sit upright
affusions be applied to the chest, shoulders, and ba
water for the affusion may be at a temperature of fro
75°. This vigorous means provokes an unusually dee
ation, which is followed for a considerable time, by sl
pirations of greater depth. It facilitates the expulsion o

Another treatment that has given excellent succes
cold compress applied to the chest. This should be
from very cold water, applied quickly over the entire
chest, allowed to remain for a very short time, and th
newed. This may be repeated from two to four times, th
compress used being allowed to remain for thirty to
minutes. The chest may be slapped in rapid succession
cold wet towels. This, of course, should not be done if
temperature is very high. In the latter case the evapor
wet sheet pack provides for the reduction of the fever
serves to stimulate respiration. Gaseous interchange and o
genation of the blood are greatly promoted, the circulation
increased, and the heart strengthened.

Among other measures that may be used to good advant
are cold sponging, hot sponging, and the cold towel rub.

SCARLET FEVER

Scarlatina is an acute, contagious fever characterized by
diffuse scarlet erythema and accompanied by sore throat or
tonsillitis. It has a higher mortality than measles and is acco

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

tendency to renal congestion and nephritis. This latter condition is the most important complication of scarlet fever.

Nephritis. Should this condition appear during the febrile period, it is not necessary to stop all cold treatments, but the temperature should be somewhat moderated and the time shortened. Short hot applications may be made so as to enhance the reactive ability, and these immediately followed by such measures as cold affusions, cold sponging, wet sheet pack, or the graduated bath. In the case of the graduated bath, the initial heating may be accomplished by beginning the bath at 95°—98°, raising the temperature a few degrees until the patient is well warmed, and then gradually cooling the bath to 80° or 85°. Chilliness should not result from any treatment, as this tends to increase the renal congestion.

If the wet sheet pack is used, the sheet may be wrung from hot water and then maintained at the evaporating stage and renewed by sprinkling cold water over the sheet. During all this time, the drinking of large quantities of water should be encouraged. If the nephritis should make its first appearance after, or at the close of, the febrile period, it is perhaps best to employ the means commonly used in treating nephritis, that is, diaphoretic measures. The hot bath with ice to the head and heart, the hot blanket pack, or partial hot applications, such as the hot foot bath accompanied by fomentations to the spine, chest, or abdomen, are all useful in producing sweating. The hot air bath may be administered in bed according to the plan mentioned under acute nephritis. If the hot blanket pack is used, it may be very conveniently followed by the wet sheet pack, wrung from water at 75° and continued to the sweating stage. Reaction should ensue promptly. The child may be left in this pack an hour or two, or until the sheet is nearly dry.

The cold towel rub and cold mitten friction may be used to promote circulatory reaction, providing desquamation has well begun. It is best not to employ the cold mitten friction, should the nephritis occur before the eruption subsides. Under these treatments, the albumen gradually lessens and casts disappear from the urine. Should there be edema about the feet and ankles, the alternate hot and cold foot or leg bath should be

used and followed by centripetal massage. To aid desquamation and prevent spreading of the contagion, the cold mitten friction or salt glow may be used to hasten the removal of the scales. Either treatment should be followed by an oil rub to prevent further rubbing off of the contagion-carrying epithelium.

Endocarditis. Should this complication arise, all cold tub baths should be discontinued, also cold affusions. The patient must be kept at absolute rest, with the ice bag to the heart intermittently. After the eruption has disappeared, there is no measure equal to the cold mitten friction in assisting the circulation and relieving the heart. For further treatment, see endocarditis in rheumatic fever.

LA GRIPPE—INFLUENZA

The clinical condition in influenza is quite different from that of typhoid fever. In this disease, the fever is of the short, high type, with rapid pulse and high blood pressure. These are the manifestations that are found in young adults. With older persons, the disease is quite likely to be accompanied by considerable asthenia, the digestive system and the nervous system bearing the brunt of the infective process. With younger persons the respiratory tract is more likely to be affected.

Since this is a short sthenic fever, the treatment employed will differ considerably from that used in typhoid fever. Aside from cold applications to the head, it is unnecessary to employ long cold treatments for the purpose of reducing the fever and all generalized cold applications are contraindicated. With an individual that has been previously strong and well and is in good flesh, it may be possible to treat the case from the start by vigorous cold applications with friction. This enhances the vital resistance, increases leucocytosis and so combats the infection in a very direct manner.

With cases as they usually present themselves, we have obtained the best results by the use of an initial sweating treatment such, for example, as the hot leg bath accompanied by fomentations to the spine or to the chest and throat, with cold

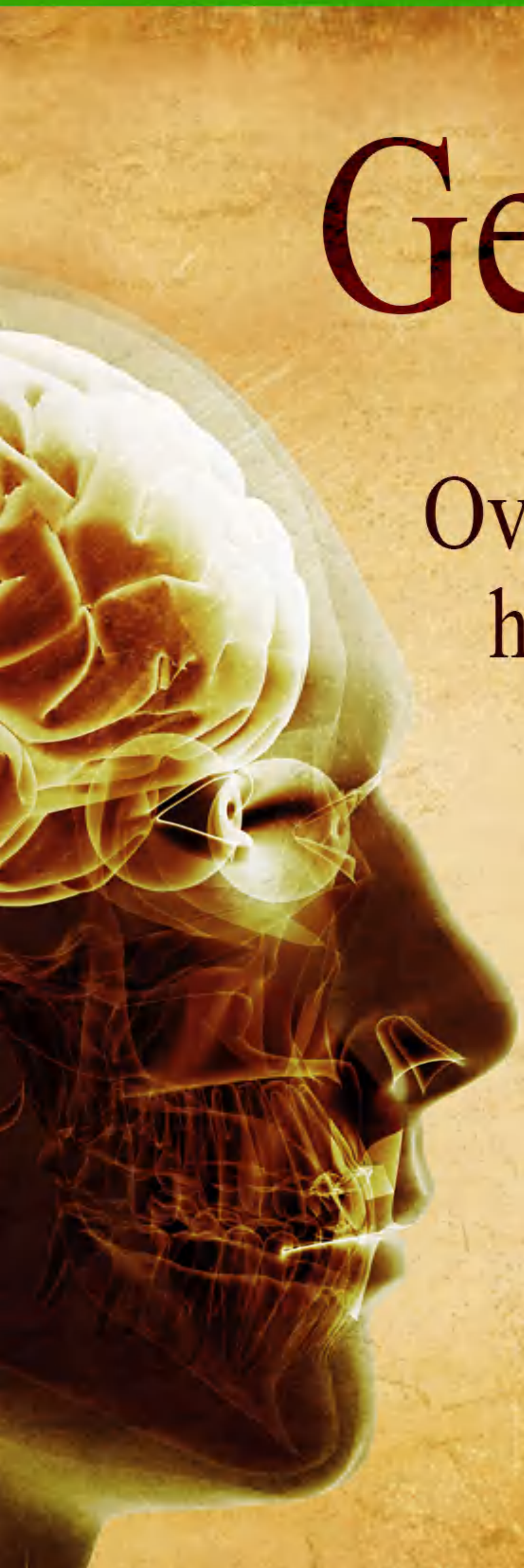
compresses to the head and neck. (*Plate IX.*) At the same time, the patient should drink several glasses of hot lemonade. Chilliness is soon overcome and the patient begins to perspire profusely. As soon as profuse perspiration is well established, the patient may be given a graduated shower beginning at about 110°, gradually increasing the temperature to the limit of toleration. While in the hot spray, the patient should wear a cold compress to the head. As soon as he is again well warmed, the temperature should very gradually be reduced to 90°. This abstracts much of the heat that has been communicated to the body by the sweating treatment. The patient should now be put to bed with hot-water bottles to the feet, and allowed to perspire gently for a number of hours.

Great care must be taken that the patient is not overheated by the sweating treatment, since fainting is quite likely to result unless the cold compresses to the head and neck are frequently renewed. In some cases it is necessary that the patient be in a recumbent position while taking the treatment and, for this reason, the horizontal electric light cabinet is very serviceable in securing free diaphoresis. The use of the upright cabinet at the onset of la grippe is almost certain to result in fainting.

In case this sweating treatment has been carried out in the evening, on the following morning the patient should be treated by preliminary hot applications for the purpose of relieving the aching of the back and limbs. This is best accomplished by the leg pack and large fomentations to the spine. They should not be continued long and should be followed immediately by a vigorous cold mitten friction. From this point on, it is best to treat the case as far as possible with tonic measures, such as the cold mitten friction, cold towel rub, or the hot and cold douche to the spine and legs, finishing with the alternating douche to the feet. The sweating treatment should not be repeated unless it seems quite necessary.

Any plan of treatment may fail of its best results in case the bowel is not thoroughly unloaded at the beginning. This may be best accomplished by thorough enemata. Special complications require attention outside of the general plan of treating

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

influenza. Bronchitis and cough, with pain in the chest, should be treated by large fomentations, followed by the heating chest pack. Pharyngitis or tonsillitis should be treated in the same manner, that is, with fomentations, and a cold heating compress applied between treatments. The nervous symptoms are best met by the ice cap, or cold compress to the head. The pain may be very materially relieved by the use of very hot fomentations. In all cases, however, the treatment should be concluded with a vigorous cold mitten friction. It is not designed that the cold frictions shall materially lower the temperature in and of themselves, that is, the fall in temperature does not result immediately after the application, but rather succeeds in a few hours. If the temperature is very high, it may be effectually combated by the use of the ice bag to the heart with ice applications to the head. Both should be continned with but little interruption.

The asthenic type of influenza, except in old people or chronic invalids, is not now as common as during the pandemic of 1889 and the years immediately following. In the event of severe asthenia the treatment is to be carried on along general lines with special reference to those measures which will sustain the heart and circulation. The treatment of respiratory or digestive complications demands special care and is to be carried on along lines laid down elsewhere.

CHAPTER XVIII

INFLAMMATION AND ANTIPHLOGISTIC EFFECTS

BEFORE considering the conditions present in inflammation and their treatment, it will be well to understand the principles involved in the production of certain circulatory effects which are much used in the treatment of inflammation. We shall, therefore, first turn our attention to the methods and principles concerned in the production of depletion and derivation.

Depletion is the reduction of congestion in a given part or organ.

Derivation is depletion secured by the withdrawing of blood from an organ or part of the body by increasing the amount of blood in some other part. Practically, it is the reduction of *congestion* (and inflammation) by drawing the blood from the part congested into some other part. There is produced *collateral hyperemia* with *local anemia*.

Fluxion consists in increasing the rapidity of the blood current in a particular part, and consequently, the total amount of blood passing through that part in a given time. It is the production of *arterial hyperemia*.

DEPLETION—DERIVATION

There are three practical methods of securing depletion: first, by the application of heat alone; second, by the application of cold alone; and third, by the application of both heat and cold applied simultaneously. The accompanying outline shows in a condensed form the principal points of each method.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

Methods of Securing Depletion

Application	Where Placed	Mode of Action	Examples of Use
Heat alone	Collateral—over part or at a distance	Derivation	Pleurisy Renal congestion
Cold alone	Proximal or directly over part	Direct or reflex	Acute rheumatism, infectious arthritis
Heat and cold simultaneously	Cold over part or proximal Heat collateral	Reflex Derivation	Acute appendicitis Acute salpingitis

Simultaneous Heat and Cold. Depletion is most effectually secured by the simultaneous application of both heat and cold in the following manner (*Plate X.*): A large very hot application is made to a distant part; in many cases, it extends up to and includes the congested part. At the same time an ice bag, ice pack, or ice compress is placed directly over the inflamed organ. In this way collateral hyperemia is secured and the local anemia reenforced by the direct or reflex vasoconstricting influence of the ice. The local anemia is made extreme by both a "push" and a "pull" effect on the circulation, the "pull" being secured by the *vis a fronte* of the hot application, and the "push" by the *vis a tergo* of the reflex contraction of the blood-vessels, due to the cold application over the part. The most effective derivation is secured by *direct* contact of the body with hot water. A hot leg bath is more effective than a hot leg pack, and a hot leg pack with the wet blanket applied directly to the skin is more effective than where a dry blanket intervenes. Neither the local hot air bath or the local electric light bath (or either as a general application) are as effective as a hot pack or a local hot bath. The reason for this difference is found in the fact that the blood-vessels dilate to a much greater extent under the action of hot water applied directly to the skin surface. The hot air bath and the electric light bath may produce more profuse perspiration, but the blood-

vessels do not dilate to the same degree possible un
action of hot water. However, in the case of a very
tub bath and a hot blanket pack, the surface derivat
extreme in the former case as to cause fainting when it
entered, with congestion of the brain later on becau
general rise in blood pressure. For this reason, the
bath for *extreme* derivation is not a practical applicat
in practice we use the hot blanket pack with the co
application of ice to the head and neck and also to t
if necessary.

The following are the principal derivative measures
in the acute stage of the diseases mentioned:—

1. APPENDICITIS. Hot hip and leg pack, with ice
the appendix.

2. PERITONITIS. Hot hip and leg pack, or leg
with ice compress or ice bags to the abdomen.

3. PUERPERAL INFECTION AND ACUTE SALPINGITIS.
hot blanket pack, or hip and leg pack, with ice to the

4. ACUTE CONGESTION OF THE LUNGS. Hot leg
and leg pack, or full blanket pack, with or without
compress over the lobe affected.

5. MENINGITIS. Hot leg pack, with ice cravat, ice
bag to the base of the brain and the upper spine.

6. MASTOIDITIS. Hot leg bath with ice cravat or
over carotid artery, ice cap, and fomentations to the

7. ALVEOLAR ABSCESS. Same as above, except
to the jaw.

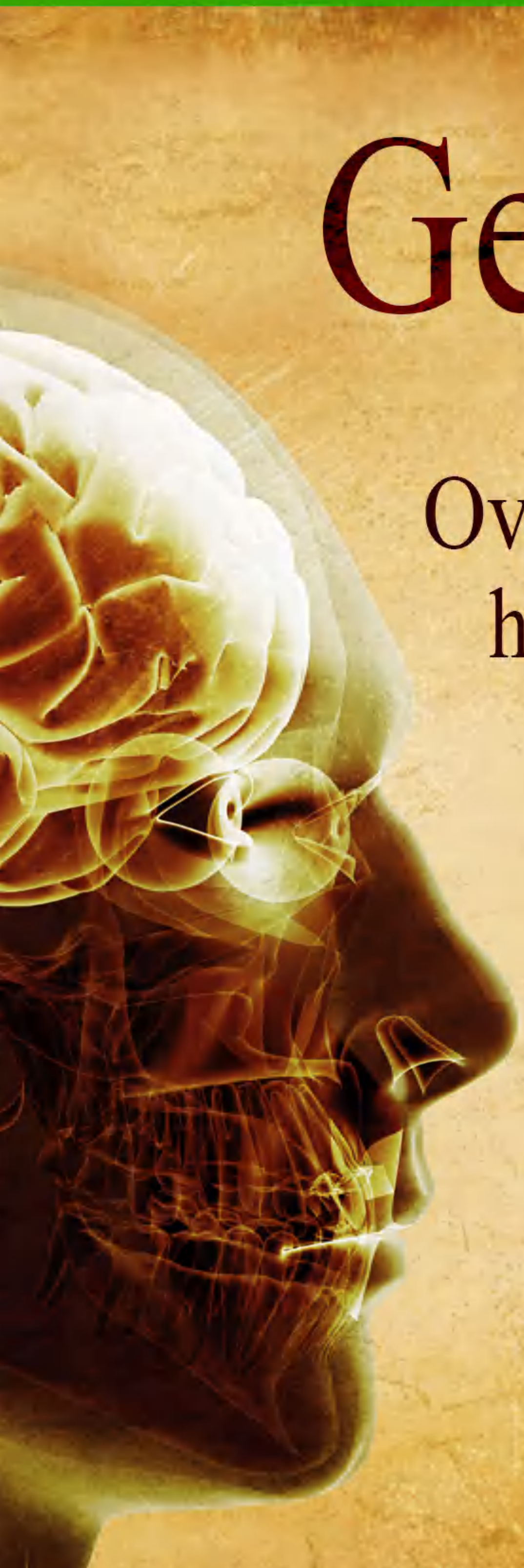
8. ACUTE OSTEOMYELITIS (of tibia). Fomentations
leg pack, with ice over the femoral artery.

9. CEREBRAL CONGESTION. Hot leg bath with
ice cap, or cold compress to the entire face and cranium.

10. RENAL CONGESTION. Fomentations to back; hot
pack or full blanket pack, with ice bag over lower
sternum.

Precautions: In order to maintain collateral hyperemia,
treatment must be concluded with such a vigorous tonic
ure as a cold mitten friction applied to the part previ
covered by the hot application. The hot application alone

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

ence, almost specific. In some cases of brain co... over the carotids and cold applications to the head a... all that is needed. In the early stage a boil may b... by applying an ice bag directly over the seat of the i...

FLUXION

When hot and cold applications are used to secure ... they are used *simultaneously* and to *different areas*. ... and cold are used *alternately* and to the *same area*, the ... *fluxion*. This may be either by direct effect in t... treated, or by reflex action in a related part. This ... intensified by friction or percussion.

All alternate hot and cold applications are tonic, both ... and generally. We may here, for the sake of clearn... brevity, confine ourselves to the consideration of t... desired to produce chiefly violent circulatory reaction in t... part or organ.

The following are the principal means used to ... fluxion:—

1. Alternate hot and cold, using fomentations and ... fomentations and cold compresses (revulsive compress).
2. Alternate hot and cold douches or sprays, as to ... legs, liver, etc.
3. Alternate hot and cold packs.
4. Alternate hot and cold, as to head or kidneys and ster...
5. Revulsive or alternate hot and cold sitz bath.
6. Alternate hot and cold foot or leg bath.
7. Alternate hot and cold immersion, as of hand and arm...
8. Alternate hot and cold vaginal douche, rectal irrigation, ...

In all the above measures, the condition produced is that ... active (arterial) hyperemia. The alternate dilatation and con... traction of the blood-vessels is stimulated. This condition ... known as *active dilatation*. These alternating changes of ves... constriction and vasodilatation are more rapid and extreme than ... the normal. They very markedly increase the number of white ... blood cells in a given part, and consequently the resulting ... phagocytosis. It is this which makes it especially valuable ... and almost indispensable in some acute congestions and inflam...

mations, such as an acute infection of a hand or a foot, where lymphangitis and lymphadenitis are likely to follow so quickly.

Perhaps the largest field for the use of fluxion (arterial hyperemia) is in chronic congestions, whether a sequel to chronic infections or non-inflammatory. In these cases the congestion is of a passive type, *i. e.*, venous stasis. The treatment is also indicated in local anemias.

Below are given some of the more important indications for the use of fluxion:—

1. Acute infections, as of hand, arm, or foot.
2. Convalescence from all local infections (stage of passive or venous congestion).
3. Chronic congestion of liver.
4. Chronic pelvic congestion, as of uterus or adnexa, whether simple or following infections.
5. Uterine subinvolution.
6. Amenorrhea.
7. Myelitis (chronic stage).
8. Locomotor ataxia and other paralyses of spinal origin (in chronic stage).
9. Alcoholic neuritis (after acute stage).
10. Muscular atrophies.
11. Tubercular arthritis and synovitis.
12. Chronic osteomyelitis.
13. Varicose ulcer.

Precautions: In acute infections, massage effects, such as friction or percussion, should be avoided. Dire effects in the quick spread of the bacteria to other parts, will result if these are used.

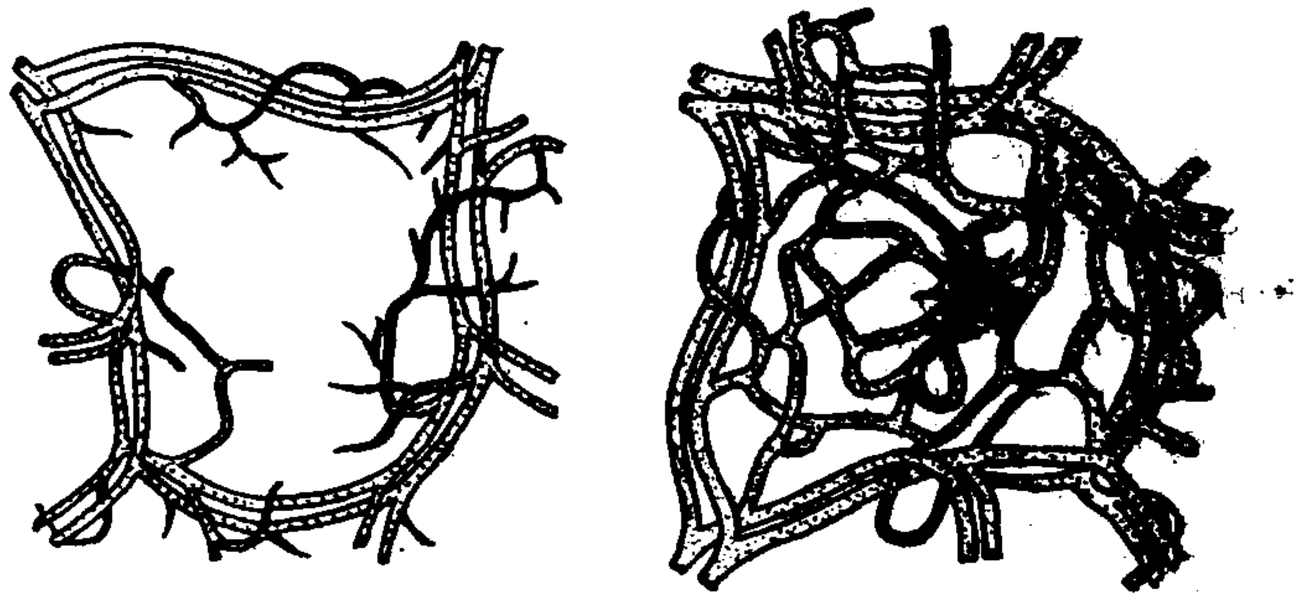
Revulsion. According to Dorland, this term is synonomous with derivation and depletion. Kellogg evidently uses it to designate the mode of giving a hot and cold application, the chief effect of which is fluxion, for example, a revulsive compress—a treatment consisting of a single prolonged hot application, followed by a single very brief application of cold.

Again it is used to designate derivation secured by collateral fluxion, as in the use of the hot and cold foot or leg bath, or a

hot and cold percussion douche to the feet and legs [illegible] cerebral congestion. When hot and cold are alternated [illegible] to one part of the body, thus producing fluxion in [illegible] will withdraw more or less blood from other related [illegible] parts. This diverse application of the term has led to [illegible] confusion. While the term can not be fully dispensed [illegible] the student should bear in mind that the effect is that [illegible] derivation or fluxion.

PATHOGENESIS OF INFLAMMATION

"Inflammation consists of the series of changes consti[illegible] the local manifestation of the attempt at repair of [illegible] referred injury to a part, or briefly, it is the local [illegible]



A B

Fig. 50. A—arterioles and capillaries, normal. B—the same after introduction of an irritant foreign body and the beginning of inflammation.

at repair of actual or referred injury. Inflammation [illegible] reaction of irritated and damaged tissues which still [illegible] vitality."[1]

The pathologic conditions in an inflammatory process may be partially understood by the five cardinal symptoms, *viz.*,—

1. Rubor—redness.
2. Tumor—swelling.
3. Calor—heat.
4. Dolor—pain.
5. Functio læsa—loss of function.

The primary cause of the inflammation, whatever it may be, is responsible for these conditions, which are largely circulatory disturbances. The condition in the *acute stage* is one of (1) arterial hyperemia (*Fig. 50.*) with (2) a serous exudate.

1 Adami—Inflammation, pp. 5, 227.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

In the Chronic Stage. (1) Stimulate and quicken the circulation by the production of arterial hyperemia, and (2) stimulate the process of phagocytosis, thus (3) promoting resolution and absorption of the exudate and thereby preventing its organization.

In the acute stage of an inflammation, *i. e.*, during the first few hours or first day or two, extreme cold should be used over the part continuously, or with only short intermissions, in order to lessen the congestion, relieve the pain, and, if possible, thereby abort the inflammation. In many cases it is necessary to reenforce the continuous cold by hot applications to collateral areas (derivation) in order to effectually reduce the congestion. The cold energizes the white blood cells, increasing their number and efficiency in the destruction of bacteria, and hastens their return to the blood stream.

After the acute stage has passed, *i. e.*, at the end of a few hours, or on the second day, the cold applications should be replaced by a heating compress; or, if cold compresses were used in the first stage, it is only necessary to leave them on, thus making a heating compress. These cold and heating compresses should be replaced at intervals of one to three hours, using short fomentations when the change is made.

As the inflammation progresses *toward* the chronic stage, more heat and less cold should be used. After the acuteness of the inflammation has entirely subsided, the most vigorous hot and cold applications should be used in order to lessen venous stasis and bring to the organ a greater supply of fresh blood (fluxion), for the time producing an arterial hyperemia. It is possible to use fluxion even immediately following the first few hours of some inflammations, provided they are not in a dangerous area, *i. e.*, where rupture would prove fatal or produce serious complications.

It has been shown that in some cases the maintenance of a high external temperature is conducive to a more rapid and benign course of the inflammation than where cold is used. These are doubtless cases of inadequate reaction as suggested by Adami,[4] better results being due to the increased amount of

4 Inflammation, pp. 199, 218.

blood brought to the part. In the majority of cases still greater benefit results from the use of alternate hot and cold applications, since these produce an arterial hyperemia which has no after-tendency to stasis.

The stage of the inflammation may best be judged by the color. A bright red color is evidence of an acute process, and a dull red, dusky, or bluish color, of a chronic process. Inflammations in certain localities should be treated by hot alone, until after the first stage is passed. This is true of pleurisy.

"For antiphlogistic purposes, it may be safely held that in the early stage of congestion, cold applications are useful so long as the circulation in the affected part is still open, which is indicated by the turgor. But when the parts assume a cyanotic hue, when leucocytes have begun to adhere in large numbers to the vessel wall and emigration has become active, applications of warmth further the latter and hasten suppuration when it is unavoidable. The cold compress diminishes congestion, retards leucocytosis and emigration of white cells, while the warm applications have the contrary effect, each being most useful in the respective stage of inflammation.

"The antiphlogistic effects of cold compresses are readily explained by the results of Genzmer's experiments upon local blood letting. He came to the conclusion that the favorable effect of bleeding upon the inflamed parts beneath was ascribable, not to their becoming more anemic, but to the fact that the blood stream became more rapid, and thus the corpuscles which had adhered to the vessel walls were loosened and driven into the general circulation. The fluxion, therefore, which the application of cold or warm compresses produces, in the parts below them, is the true cause of the changes in the latter when inflamed. Thus may the old theory of derivation be satisfactorily explained.

"This effect of cold applications may be called into action in some local inflammations in which the parts appear cyanotic and it is important to prevent impending suppuration. Here hot compresses or cataplasms are also useful to arouse the surface circulation; as they cool off, they widen the deeper vessels and thus reestablish the circulation which has become

stagnant. This being accomplished, cold compresses precede the hot, in order to limit leucocytosis and to remove stagnant corpuscles. It is evident that by the use of sound judgment, the proper temperature of the water may be nicely adjusted to each case.''[5]

It must not be supposed that circulatory changes are the only effects produced by the treatment outlined above. The regulation of the circulation by means of heat and cold stimulates the cells concerned in the healing process.

From the above, we may draw the following conclusions, in general, applicable to inflammations. During the acute stage, the treatment should be directed toward the reduction of the congestion, whether by collateral heat alone, or heat assisted by cold over the part, or by cold alone. The philosophy of the treatment is summed up in the word *depletion*, understood in its broadest and practical sense, *i. e.*, the lessening of congestion. In the chronic stage, all the physiological indications are met by the production of *fluxion*. The accompanying outline will serve to make clear these principles:

Acute Stage

Conditions	Indications for Treatment
1. Arterial hyperemia	Limit congestion
2. Increasing serous exudate	Cause absorption of exudate
3. Overplus of leucocytes	Energize leucocytes
4. Bright red color	
5. Pain severe and throbbing	Relieve pain

Treatment Produces ***Depletion*** **(Reduction of congestion.)**

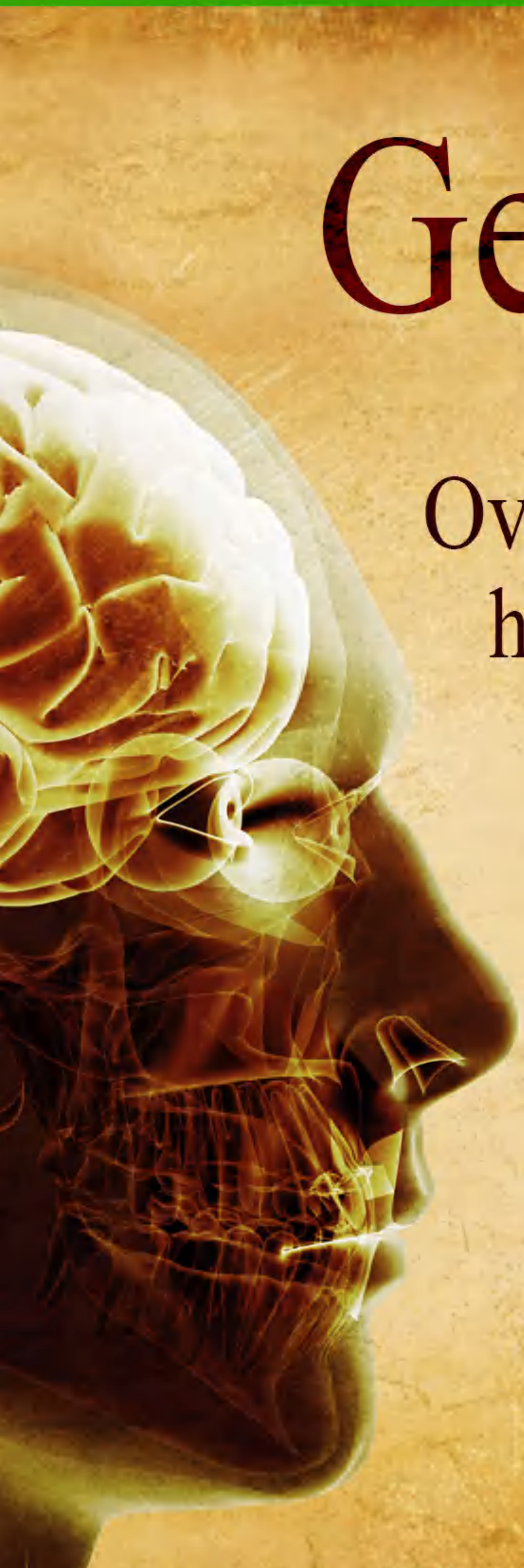
Chronic Stage

1. Passive hyperemia	Stimulate circulation
2. Organization of exudate	Promote resolution
3. Dearth of leucocytes	Stimulate leucocytosis
4. Dark red, dusky or bluish color	
5. Pain less severe and dull	

Fluxion **(Production of arterial hyperemia.)**

5 Baruch—Principles and Practice of Hydrotherapy, pp. 154, 155.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

most effectually, the ice bag must be placed over the trur the large artery supplying the inflamed part and not ovei part itself, while heat is applied directly to the inflamed Ice applied over an inflammation confined in bony walls ally increases the pain, while heat decreases it. Neither wi ice bag or cold compress relieve the pain of an *abscess* ev soft tissue, or only to a slight degree, lasting only whil treatment continues. This very fact is of diagnostic im ance. It is presumptive evidence that the inflammation gone on to suppuration and must be opened. It should be treated by hot applications to hasten the process and loc the abscess preparatory to drainage.

Not infrequently in the use of physiologic therapy the s tomatic response to a given measure is of material he diagnosis. This may be either in differential diagnosis, the case of the diagnostic bath in typhoid fever or in sug ing the location or stage of a pathologic process as in the just cited.

CHAPTER XIX

THE TREATMENT OF INFLAMMATIONS

INFLAMMATIONS OF THE EYE

Iritis, Keratitis, Conjunctivitis, Dachryocystitis, Ophthalmia

BECAUSE of the situation, it is necessary to use more cold than heat in treating these inflammations, since long hot applications to the head produce cerebral congestion. The cold application may be made by means of compresses of four to six thicknesses of gauze wrung out of ice water or kept on a block of ice. The compresses should be applied almost continuously, being renewed as frequently as warmed, which means every two or three minutes. A more convenient and satisfactory method of applying continuous cold, and one which saves much time, is the ice water coil. This is a coil about three inches in diameter (*Fig. 51.*). It is made of very small rubber tubing with a lumen of about 2 mm. Ice water should be kept in the irrigating can and pieces of ice in the receptacle for the outflow so that the irrigating can may be filled from the outflow as soon as empty. It may be necessary to use a hot gauze compress occasionally, often enough to renew the reactive ability and make the cold comfortable and acceptable to the patient. Brief applications of the fomentation may be used over the side of the face to secure derivation, or, with a small piece of ice wrapped in gauze applied over the eye itself, a larger fomentation may be applied so as to cover the eye, forehead, and cheek. In all cases, the hot applications should be of short duration. After the acuteness of the inflammation subsides, small gauze fomentations may be used alternately with the cold compress, the heat being used for a shorter time than the cold. It is usually necessary to renew the compresses about every two

minutes. The results are apparent in the relief of [illegible] tion, inflammation, and pain. In ecchymoses about the revulsive compress should be used.

In the inflammations mentioned above, the appropriate septic treatment, the use of silver salts, etc., should be

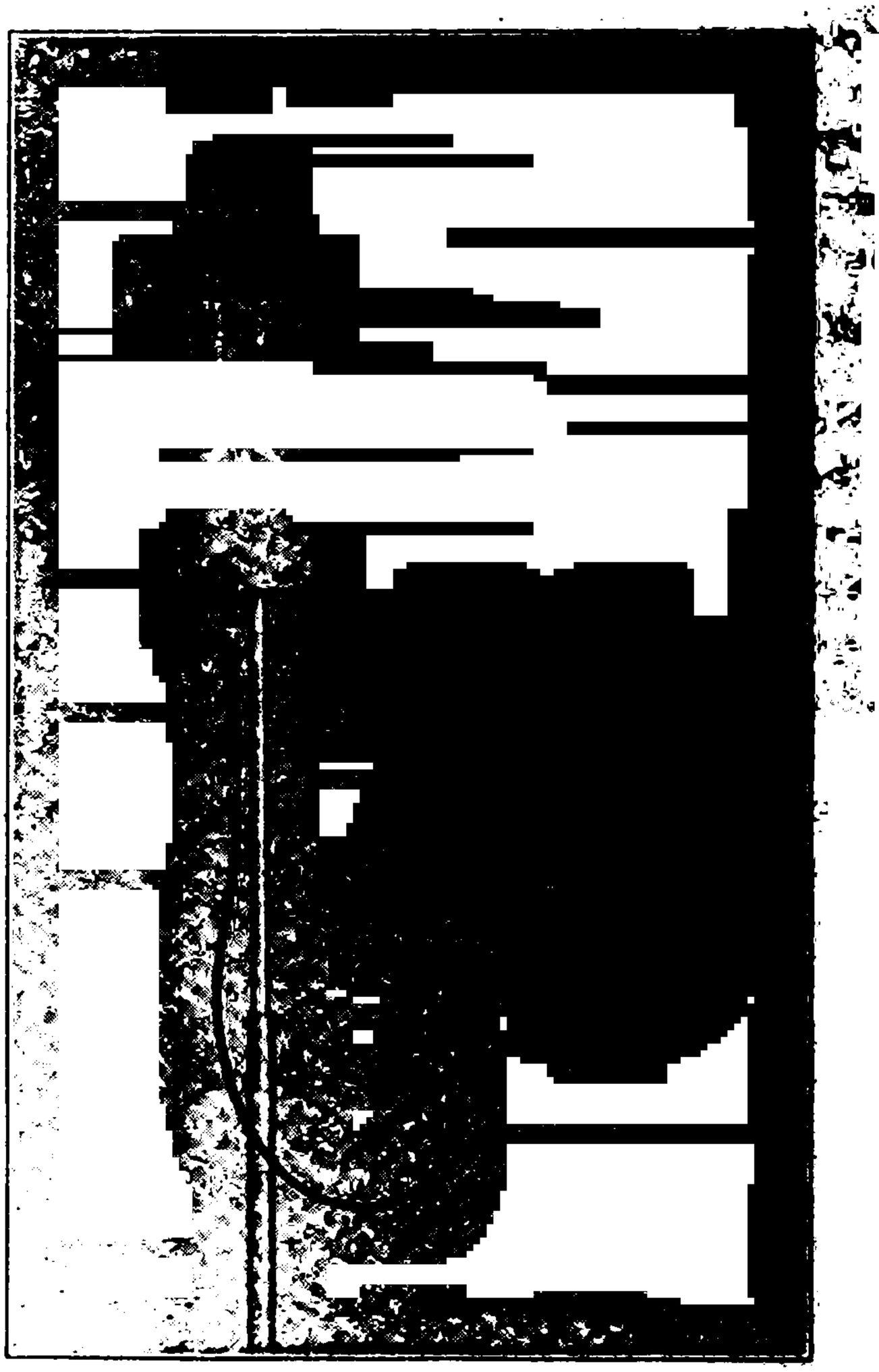


Fig. 51. Apparatus for treating inflammations of the eye.

just as carefully as otherwise, and in iritis dilatation of pupil should be secured by means of atropine. The ice coil should also be applied to the eye after operation for coma.

Glaucoma, Toxic Amblyopia

Localized disturbances in the eye dependent upon systemic diseases may be greatly benefited by hydrotherapeutic

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

the closure of the Eustachian tube. The pain of catarrhal otitis and aural neuralgias is best relieved by fomentations. After hot treatment, the patient should be unusually careful, since he is rendered more susceptible to colds. If it seems probable that rupture of the drum may be prevented, or while waiting to do paracentesis tympani, the following treatment may be used: Direct the patient to take a hot foot bath, or better, a leg bath, with fomentations over the ear and side of the face, cold compresses being used to the neck and opposite side of the head. In adults the ice cravat, or ice bag to the carotid of the same side may be used. This derivation will reduce the congestion and partially, or entirely, relieve the pain. It may also lessen the liability to rupture of the drum.

Otherwise, the condition should be treated according to plans outlined in any standard text on diseases of the ear. The use of hot air deserves mention as a most efficient means in both acute and chronic suppurative otitis media.

ACUTE MASTOIDITIS

Those cases which tend toward recovery, that is, where the inflammation does not go beyond turgescence and congestion of the lining membrane of the mastoid cells, may be aided to an uneventful recovery by the use of fomentations to the mastoid, dry heat, and derivation. In infants and younger children, the Leiter coil with ice water or the ice bag may be used over the mastoid. At this age mastoid periostitis is very common, which condition is always benefited by the cold coil. In older children and adults we have not been able to use cold over the mastoid because of the pain occasioned by it.

In many cases the pain may be relieved by strong derivative means, as a very hot leg bath and fomentations to the mastoid, with the ice cravat or an ice bag to the carotid of the same side. This should be continued from twenty or thirty minutes to an hour and finished with a vigorous cold mitten friction to the limbs and trunk. We have found this plan very successful in obviating the necessity for large doses of hypnotic drugs in those cases which refuse operation, or while preparations are being made for surgical interference.

ALVEOLAR ABSCESS

This condition should be treated on precisely the same principles as mastoiditis, always bearing in mind that the cure lies in securing drainage as promptly as possible.

SIMPLE PHARYNGITIS

The soreness of the throat is most effectually relieved by large fomentations to the throat, coming well up under the jaw and back to the ears. If there is much fever, a mild sweating treatment will be beneficial at the beginning. This may be accomplished by a hot foot bath with the fomentation to the throat, or an electric light bath. The treatment should be concluded with a cold mitten friction, and a heating compress applied to the throat to be left over night. The next day, use the hot foot bath and revulsive compress to the throat. Each hot treatment should be concluded with some tonic measure, such as the cold mitten friction, cold towel rub, graduated or hot and cold spray. It may be necessary to repeat the hot foot bath and revulsive compress two or three times a day, always leaving the heating compress in place between treatments and over night. This latter measure is more important than any other in the treatment of sore throat. The inhalation of steam and gargling of hot water will aid in relieving the pain. Ordinary antiseptic throat gargles in hot water should also be used.

ACUTE TONSILLITIS

The temperature is usually very high, but of a transient type. It is unnecessary to employ antipyretic measures. In fact, general applications of cold are quite likely to produce chilling. At the beginning of treatment, the patient should be given some sweating measure, such as a hot leg pack, full blanket pack, or hot leg bath with fomentations to the throat and ice compress or ice cap to the top and sides of the head. Because of the rapid pulse and extreme prostration, an ice bag should be applied to the heart. The patient may be taken out with a cold mitten friction, or, if able to stand, a graduated shower. A well covered heating compress should be applied to the neck. After the initial treatment, fomentations or the revulsive com-

press should be applied to the neck at frequent intervals, always following them by the heating compress. In perhaps the majority of cases and always in severe tonsillitis with high fever, it is better to apply ice bags over the tonsillar area at the sides of the neck. These will also cover the carotid arteries and may be kept on almost continuously. Throughout the disease, very vigorous tonic treatment may be employed. The cold mitten friction, or cold towel rub, wet sheet pack, etc., have been found useful in maintaining the vitality of the patient.

In case of quinsy, the paratonsillar abscess should be lanced at the proper time. Previous to this, fomentations frequently repeated will aid in hastening suppuration, localizing the abscess and making more apparent the pointing. Occasionally in those subject to attacks of quinsy, the early and continuous use of the ice bag may prevent abscess formation.

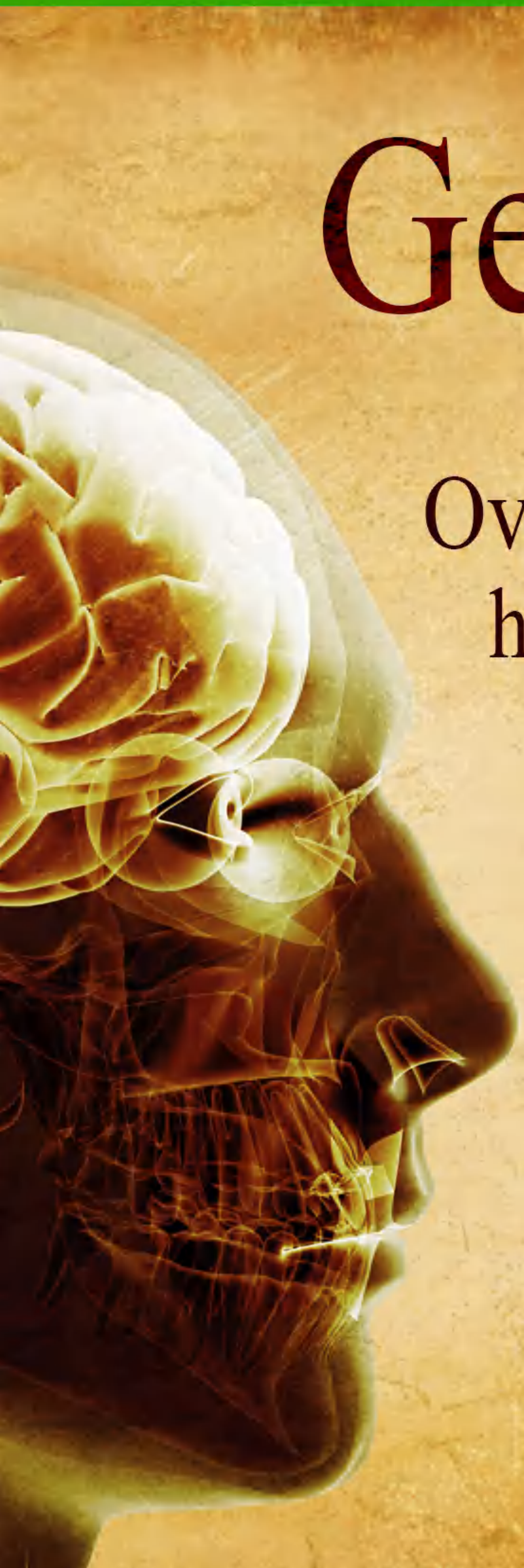
BOILS AND CARBUNCLES

In the beginning, while the boil is only a pimple, it may be aborted by the prolonged use of ice over it, with a fomentation covering it and a larger area, applied at the same time. The use of extreme hot and cold applications, alternately applied (fluxion), is also an advantage. When it is no longer possible to stop the progress of the boil, fomentations, poultices, heating compresses, etc., may be used to relieve the pain and hasten the localization of the pus. It should then be lanced. The absorption of the indurated residue about the boil may be hastened by hot and cold applications, such as fomentations and ice or the alternate hot and cold pour. Pressure about the boil, or friction to the skin should be avoided, as these measures tend to spreading of the bacteria and the infection of other areas.

ACUTE BLOOD POISONING

Septicemia of Hand, Foot, Etc. These infections are usually occasioned by scratches, cuts, bruises, thorns, etc. While the initial lesion may seem to be trivial, serious results follow very quickly. For this reason, blood poisoning should be treated most vigorously. The object to be accomplished is the increasing of phagocytosis and so increasing the circulation as to rapidly

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

and soft parts, with sinuses, sequestrum formation, successfully treated along the same lines. The Mosetig's bone-wax followed by the alternate hot and applied daily, gives good results.

POISON IVY AND OAK

These inflammations require some active antiment. In the earlier stages, continuous cold com the ice bag may be used with benefit. Later on, and cold compresses, pours, or sprays give the be This latter means has proven of inestimable valu standing, refractory cases.

PNEUMONIA

Pneumonia is an acute, self-limited infectious dis acterized by a general toxemia and, pathologically, by series of changes in the lungs. The first stage is intense pulmonary congestion. In the second stage exudation into the alveoli, so that the affected lobe consolidated, the condition being known as red hep The third stage—gray hepatization—is marked by the accompanying resolution. The clinical feature of th marks the transition from the second to the third stage beginning of resolution. Clinically, the following sym are prominent: pain in the chest, dyspnœa, with rapid tion, more or less cyanosis, and cough accompanied expectoration of "prune-juice" or "rusty" sputum. monia runs a short course and, if the resistance of the pa is sufficient, antitoxines are produced quite rapidly, so tha progress of the infection is arrested. It should be recog that pneumonia is a general infection, much like typhoid, therefore demands systemic treatment.

The greatest danger in pneumonia arises from two ca principally,— (1) deficient aeration of the blood and (2) fa of the circulation. The air hunger is manifest by the ra respiration, dyspnœa, and cyanosis. In all febrile conditi there is, on the part of the tissues, a lessened capacity for absorption of oxygen. In pneumonia, beside this, the lu

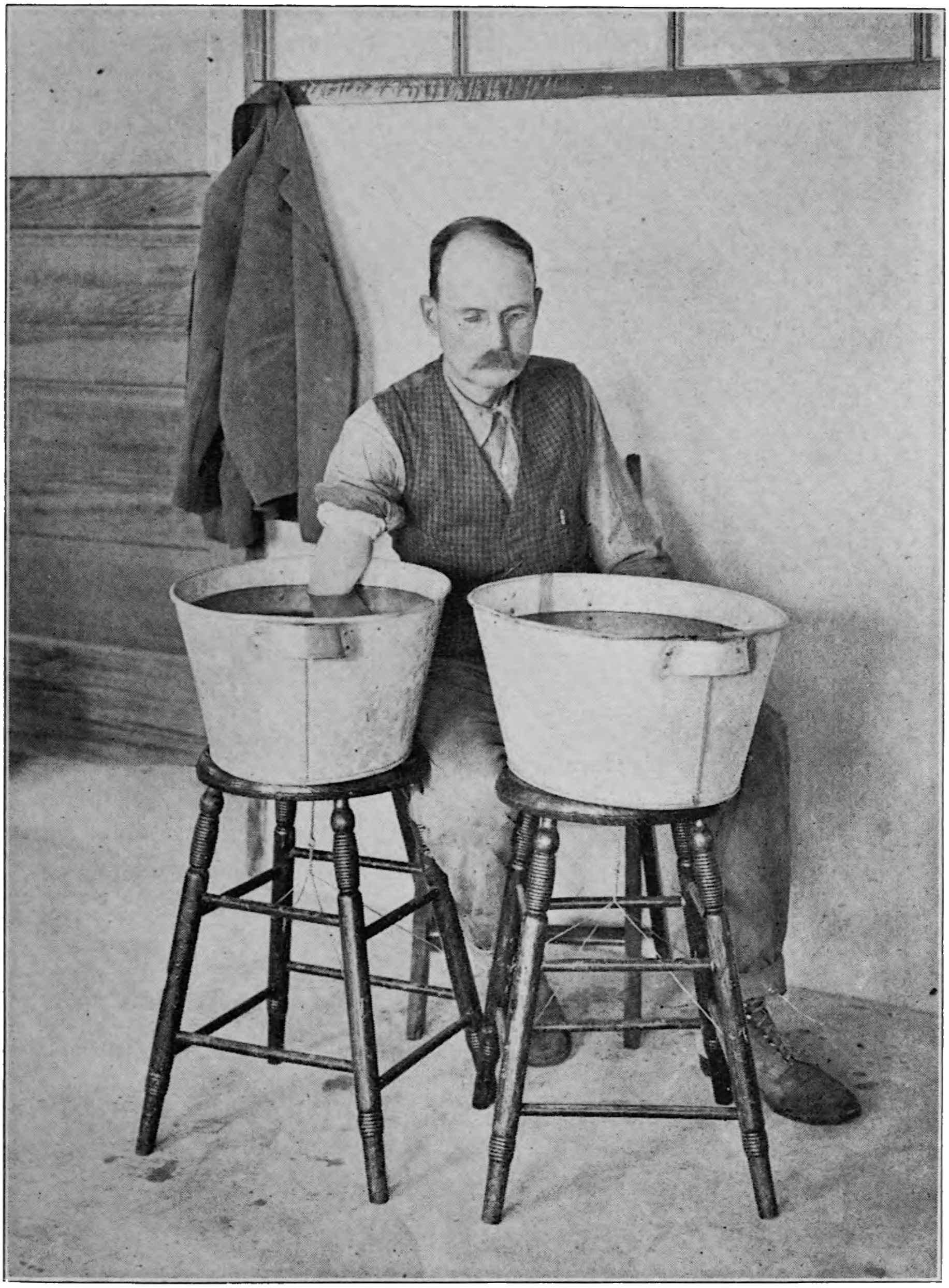


PLATE XI. Alternate hot and cold immersion for infection of the hand.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

more than a congestion, it is best to employ some dr
or sweating treatment in order to reduce as much as p
the pulmonary congestion. The collateral heat may be
a very hot leg bath, a hot hip and leg pack, or full
pack. The latter will be best if the patient is very
These measures should be reenforced by the drinking
hot liquid to produce perspiration and thus aid in reduc
internal congestion. In applying the cold to the chest, t
be borne in mind that the lobes affected are usually the
lobes and present the greater surface at the sides and
the chest. Over this area may be used a very large ic
ice pack. This should not be placed until the patient
warmed, since otherwise it may produce chilliness.
collateral heat and local cold should be continued until
derivation is secured. If this requires a very long ti
pack must be reenforced by hot water bottles, bricks, et
the cold over the affected lobe replaced for a short ti
very hot fomentation to renew the nerve sensibil
promote the vigor of the reflex effect from the cold. I
to use the ice bag over the heart if the pulse is very
Treatment may be concluded with a cold mitten friction
very short fomentation may be applied to the chest, fol
by a heating compress or a moist chest pack which shou
left in place until the next treatment.

The supplying of plenty of *fresh cold air* is of prime imp
ance. It has been stated that, during the late war, cases
pneumonia treated in tents in the most rigorous weather did
better than those treated in hospital buildings. The open
treatment as carried out in some hospitals has greatly reduc
the mortality. The laity fear the effects of cold air in th
disease, believing that the patient is likely to take cold and
the pneumonia be made worse. Persons with fever are m
likely to suffer from an "overdose" of cold air. For th
reason stated above, it is very necessary that the lungs
supplied with the greatest possible amount of pure fresh air.
Neither should the air be warmed. The depth of respiration
stimulated by the cold. All the cold treatments given in the
hydriatic management of pneumonia increase the depth of

respiration and so enable the body to make use of the oxygen supplied by the fresh air. This is true of the cold compress, the heating compress, the ice pack and cold rubs and frictions. If it is not possible, because of the season, to obtain very cold air, much might be saved in the mortality by providing means of refrigerating the air supplied to the patient. The air may be supplied through a hood fitted into the opening made by raising the lower sash of any ordinary window (*Fig. 52.*). The other end of the hood should fit down over the head of the

Fig. 52. The window tent for the fresh air treatment of fevers.

patient and can be tucked in about the pillow, coming no lower than just under the chin. This may be arranged with glass windows so as to obviate the necessity of removing the hood for observation of the patient, etc. Those who have lived in the Arctic regions, Labrador and other very cold climates, tell us that pneumonia and tuberculosis are rare diseases there and in some places almost unknown.

Relative to the beneficial effects of fresh air in febrile diseases, the following is related of Dr. Alonzo Clarke:—

It is interesting to read how he managed typhus fever in Bellevue Hospital. There were two hundred fifty cases con-

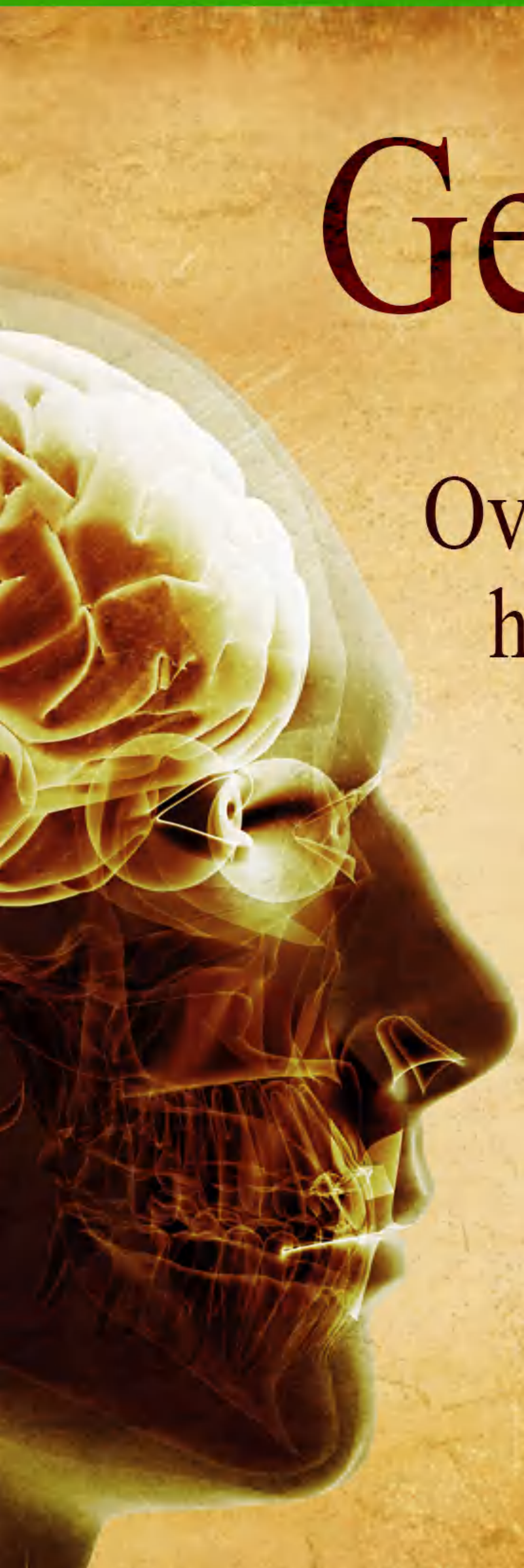
stantly under his care, and as many more under t... his colleagues. The mortality was great. Precaution... the draughts of air, for fear of pneumonia, were ... adopted. Doctor Clarke, not having this dread, or... there should be the freest ventilation, with scrupulous... ness. Although it was winter, the windows were ... stoves were placed before the open spaces to raise the ... ture of the incoming air, clothing was increased, ... were given in moderate quantities, and other medicin... dispensed with. Of the two hundred fifty cases ... occurred in the period of a fortnight. In two wee... convalescent. In other wards of the hospital wh... agement was unchanged, the mortality was undi...

Sir William Osler says,[1] "death is most freque... the action of the poisons on the vasomotor center... gressive lowering of the blood pressure." "An al... indication is *to support the circulation*. Hydrotherap... ing the patient out of doors are of great value for t...

The sustaining of the heart and circulation is b... plished by judicious hydrotherapy. Romberg and P... shown that the toxic albuminoid produced by the pneu... paralyzes the vasomotor center in the medulla, and ... regards this as the most common cause of death in pne... as far as the circulation is concerned. Vasomotor toni... essential in pneumonia as in other febrile diseases ... effect of hydrotherapy as a vasomotor stimulant is its m... important asset in this disease. Hand in hand with this ef... goes stimulation of respiration and of the heart itself. ... cold compress to the chest is applicable in all cases. An o... nary linen towel or hand towel may be used for this purp... two or three thicknesses of cloth usually being sufficient. ... should be wrung from ice water and applied to the front ... sides of the chest and covered with a flannel cloth. If desi... to greatly stimulate respiration and the heart action, it sho... be frequently renewed. In ordinary cases, it may be left ... fifteen, twenty, or thirty minutes at a time. While the pati... is sleeping, or when it is desired to give rest, the compr...

1 Principles and Practice of Medicine, Eighth Edition.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

skin is red and reaction complete. The part should then be very rapidly dried with a rough towel. Dry friction and percussion should follow in order to secure thorough reaction. There are two principles involved in this method,—first, the stimulation of the peripheral circulation so as to relieve the heart of its added burden; and second, because of the tonic dilatation of the surface vessels, there is produced a very decided and lasting derivation, so that the extreme engorgement of the heart and lungs is relieved.

A warm bath at 98° or 100° gradually cooled to 90° is highly recommended by some. The effect of this treatment may be very much increased by allowing the patient to remain just long enough to secure a thorough warming, cold applications to the head and heart being kept in place during this time. The patient then sits up while he receives to the chest, shoulders, and back two to four affusions of water at 90°. This stimulates respiration and increases the efficiency of expectoration. If such tub baths are to be used in pneumonia, it must be only in well selected cases and certainly only in mild cases without high fever or dyspnœa.

Some have very highly recommended the Brand bath in lobar pneumonia. We can see no advantage in this measure over the others mentioned and can readily understand that in many cases it might prove dangerous, as the heart and lungs are unable to withstand the retrostasis occasioned by the initial anemia of the skin, which follows contact with the cold water. In general, it may be said that full tub baths are *not* applicable in pneumonia.

Pain. The pain in pneumonia is due chiefly to the accompanying pleurisy. The inflammation is largely on the side of the visceral layer and so does not contraindicate the use of cold applications. Pain is perhaps best relieved by the use of fomentations. These should be large enough to cover an entire side of the chest and are more efficient when applied from spine to sternum with the patient lying on the opposite side. The chest pack or heating compress should follow the hot treatment.

Cough and Expectoration. All of the treatments recommended above are beneficial in aiding the expulsion of mucus. A severe

cough may be relieved by the use of fomentations and the heating compress. Inhalations of steam are also beneficial. The revulsive compress is perhaps the most efficient means in stimulating expectoration. A large fomentation is first applied; as soon as the heat begins to subside, it should be replaced by a towel wrung from ice water. This should be left on until it has become slightly heated, perhaps one to three minutes. The part should be dried and the second fomentation applied. Three or four changes are usually sufficient to accomplish the desired result. A revulsive compress also stimulates the heart and increases the depth of respiration and the consequent aeration of the blood.

The patient should drink large quantities of water by taking it frequently in small amounts. This increases diuresis and the elimination of toxines. Either hot or cold water may be used according to indications. The bowels should be kept open by salines and enemata as needed. A very light diet low in proteid also aids in limiting the toxemia.

Medicinal Treatment

Quinine. So much has recently been written concerning the use of large doses of quinine in the treatment of pneumonia that no discussion of this disease would be complete without reference to its effects.

"It has been suggested that its efficiency in fever is due to an antiseptic action on the blood. This is not the case, since bacteria are very resistant to it and would not be affected by it in the concentration in which it could exist in the blood."[2] It does certainly reduce the temperature as we have previously noted, but this is not of prime importance in pneumonia. Antipyresis is of secondary importance, nor do patients bear great abstraction of heat, as is the case in typhoid fever. The temperature is lowered at the expense of the heart's action and oxygen-carrying capacity of the red blood cells. Both of these, it is necessary to sustain and enhance in pneumonia. Quinine limits leucocytosis and checks phagocytosis. If 20 to 30 grains are given daily, the disease is likely to run an atypical course,

2 Sollmann—Text Book of Pharmacology, p. 350.

there being no frank crisis, which is replaced by delayed resolution, the fever declining by lysis.

Moist rales may be heard in the chest long after should be complete. One area will hardly more th before another area is involved, so that by delayed and reinvolvement of another area, the pathology sort of migratory type. Probably the reason for the the appearance of the crisis is due to the fact that t condition has been reduced to an asthenia, the syste sufficient vitality to produce a normal crisis. Anyo take the trouble to "read up" on the effects of q soon be convinced of its harmfulness in pneumonia. T sounded by Dr. W. C. Alvarez in a recent letter pu the Journal of the American Medical Association is timely.[3] In a personal communication recieved fro Alvarez, he states that among the many letters he after the publishing of this communication to the jo came from a fellow practitioner who was much i the quinine treatment, but had recently had, among series, seven bad cases of empyema. On the ordinary e plan, it should take two hundred to four hundred pneumonia to furnish seven of empyema. The whit cells were paralyzed by the quinine and so easily succ to the infection. Too much can not be said condem of the quinine treatment of pneumonia.

Strychnine. This drug has been very much vaunted specific in meeting cardiac incompetency in pneumonia. to the discredit of the profession generally, a plan freq followed is that of giving 1-60 grain of strychnine every t hours, this being kept up during the greater part of the il As some one has said, "continual doping with strychni the heart is like kicking a dying horse when he is down." we have already shown, the results hoped for from strych are best attained by proper hydriatic means.

Frank Billings[4] says, "Strychnine and other drugs that commonly used in failing left heart are absolutely valu

3 Journal of American Medical Association, June 13, 1908, p. 1996.
4 Ibid, October 30, 1909, p. 1453.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

the blood-vessels of the isolated heart, in the case of [illegible] that if the amount were sufficiently large to pro[illegible] noticeable effect, there was manifest temporary irregul[illegible] diminution of the strength of the contraction, or [illegible] arrythmia, and a considerable reduction in the volum[illegible] number of the pulsations. Alcohol also limits or a[illegible] phagocytic action.

John H. Musser[6] gives the following summary conce[illegible] treatment of pneumonia: "In the majority of the cases [illegible] to rely on fresh air, on judicious local treatment, o[illegible] therapeutics, on regulation of the proper amount of fo[illegible] and particularly on care that the patient is not ov[illegible] watch carefully for the phenomena so well pictured by [illegible] Forchheimer, guarding against the possibility of the v[illegible] syndrome by proper renal elimination. Attention to [illegible] elimination is of the greatest importance in the mana[illegible] of the cases of pneumonia, looking toward the preve[illegible] cardiac failure; in other words, looking toward the redu[illegible] serious toxic symptoms that arise and have expressio[illegible] particularly in the phenomena just pointed out. To kee[illegible] the amount of food is of the greatest importance in the t[illegible] ment of pneumonia patients. Watch carefully the state [illegible] intestinal tract. Tympany is a serious toxic sympt[illegible] pneumonia, and its increase with defective eliminatio[illegible] point that I depend on as suggestive of the occurrence of [illegible] motor failure. This can be prevented very largely. C[illegible] occurs with the pneumococcus infection, and this coli[illegible] undoubtedly the cause of the development of tympanites; [illegible] colitis plus the toxemia invites an intestinal paresis. He[illegible] to prevent this colitis which gives rise to the tympany, i[illegible] well to observe carefully the diet, regulating judiciously [illegible] amount and kind of food taken, and washing out the bo[illegible] with normal salt solution."

BRONCHOPNEUMONIA

Under two years of age, lobar pneumonia is seldom [illegible] seen. From this up to seven, either type may be found.

6 Journal of American Medical Association, October 30, 1909, 1453.

that age, lobar pneumonia is the prevailing form. In many ways, the treatment of bronchopneumonia is conducted on the same principles as that for the lobar type. The first two indications, *i. e.*, increase aeration of the blood and sustain the heart and circulation, are the most important. Bronchopneumonia is nothing more nor less than an extension downward of the inflammation of a bronchitis. It is a capillary bronchitis or lobular pneumonia. In order to accomplish the first result—the proper aeration of the blood—it is very necessary to increase the facility and the amount of expectoration, so that the lungs may be free for proper respiration. The child may be placed in a bath at 100° and, while sitting, receive to the chest and shoulders cold affusions at 75°—90°, depending upon the age and vitality: With infants, the wet sheet pack is perhaps the most efficient means. The pack may be wrung from tepid, cool or cold water and spread out on a blanket. The child is then placed on the wet sheet which is wrapped snugly about the body, the blanket being folded over all. The child should remain in the pack to the sweating stage. At first, there is gasping respiration and the child cries. This aids in the expulsion of mucus. As the pack heats up, the respiration becomes deeper, easier and the expectoration much less difficult. Fever may drop one or two degrees and the child pass into a quiet sleep. If this occurs, the child should be kept warm, being left in the pack until it awakes. It may then be taken out with a wet hand rub, or this may be done sooner if the child does not sleep. The moist chest pack and heating compress to the chest are also efficient means of sustaining the heart and increasing the depth of respiration. If there is much cyanosis, especially if accompanied by chilliness, it is best to place the child in a full warm bath; or, if the pack is used, it may be wrung from warm water or hot water. In case of the bath, after the skin has become well warmed, the child may receive an affusion to the chest or to the entire body just as it is taken from the bath. In case of the pack, after the child is well warmed, it may be taken out with a wet hand rub. Infants do not react well to either extreme heat or cold. Fortunately, however, they respond to milder temperatures in as decided a manner as adults do to greater extremes.

PLEURISY

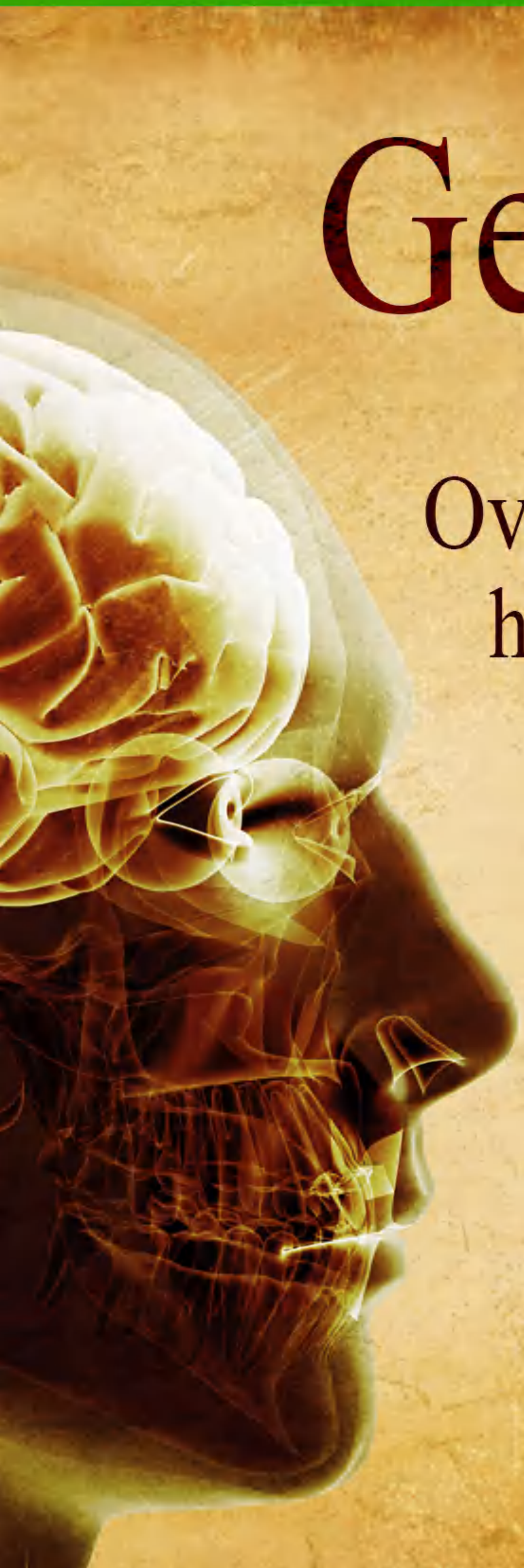
There are several forms of pleurisy. Only the treatment of the dry and serous forms will be considered, since empyema of the pleura is a surgical disease. In the pleurisy usually accompanying pneumonia, the inflammation is largely on the side of the visceral layer. In ordinary pleurisy, however, the inflammation involves chiefly the parietal layer of the pleura. The blood supply of the two layers is quite different. That of the visceral layer is of course from the same blood-vessels as the lung itself, while the parietal layer is supplied by the blood-vessels from the intercostal arteries and with nerves from the anterior divisions of the intercostals. It has been shown that the severe, acute pain in both peritonitis and pleurisy originate in the parietal layer of these membranes. With these facts in mind, it will be seen that the circulation and consequently the congestion of the visceral layer will be most readily influenced reflexly; while with the parietal layer, the circulation and congestion are influenced to a greater extent by hydrostatic means, since the blood-vessels are connected directly with those of the superficial structures.

For these reasons, while cold decreases reflexly the congestion in the lungs, by local retrostasis it increases the congestion of pleurisy. In acute pleurisy, cold applications greatly increase the pain and, if used persistently, may so prolong the inflammation that weeks or months are required for its entire relief.

On the first indications of pleurisy, the patient should be given a hot foot bath for the purpose of warming the feet and providing for thorough reaction to any other treatment that may be given. This also aids sweating which helps to relieve internal congestion. That which is of the most importance is the use of very hot fomentations applied over the affected area. These should be made of thick, heavy flannel, wrung from boiling water and wrapped in one thickness of dry flannel. No cold should be applied between fomentations. From three to five may be necessary in order to completely relieve the pain.

If one side only is affected, these fomentations should be applied *from spine to sternum* and not simply to the

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

the alternate hot and cold foot bath should replace the h
bath while the patient is convalescing. This helps to
the circulation and render exposure to cold much less
ous.

PERICARDITIS

The conditions in pericarditis, while very similar to
pleurisy, must be treated upon somewhat different pri
because of differing anatomical relations. While the hu
to a certain extent, be immobilized or restricted in am
of movement, this is impossible in the case of the heart.
that can be hoped in this line is to decrease the frequency
beat. This is admirably accomplished by the use of
bag over the heart and especially by the frequent use
cold mitten friction. The latter is perhaps the more fa
measure since by its stimulation of the peripheral ves
relieves the heart of its excessive burden. The circula
the parietal layer of the pericardium is more or less con
with the surface blood-vessels, so that inflammation may
duced in the same manner as with pleurisy. Since fomen
over the heart increase its rate and decrease its force th
reflex action, it is not possible to apply them as we
pleurisy. The best results may be obtainad by the use o
ice bag applied directly over the heart, while a very
fomentation is so arranged as to cover it and a much la
area around the heart. The heat produces derivation, w
the ice bag slows the heart rate. Three of these fomentati
may be given in succession and the treatment followed by
heating compress; or the ice bag may be left on between tre
ments, being removed frequently enough to preserve the re
excitability of the nerves. During the course of pericardi
the cold mitten friction should be used one to three times a d
depending upon the degree of the heart embarrassment.

In the later stages, the revulsive compress to the entire fron
of the chest should be used to promote absorption. Other
treatments that are of advantage are the hot and cold foot bath
after the first few days, also hot and cold to the spine and cold
towel rub. It is not necessary to do paracentesis unless, by
accumulation of fluid, the heart is seriously interfered with.

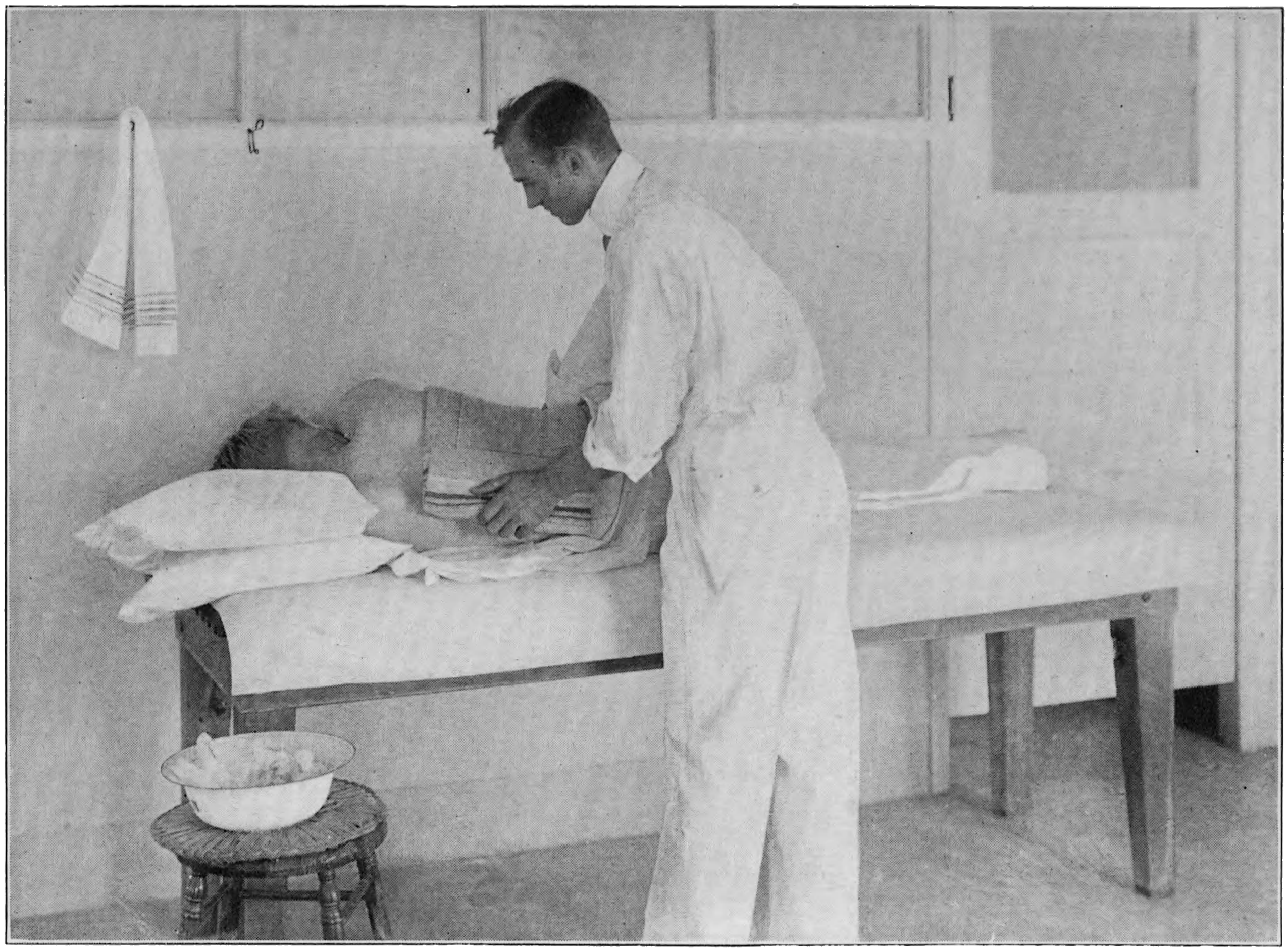


PLATE XII. The proper method of applying fomentations to the chest for pleurisy.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

oil of wintergreen in 20 minim doses every two to four hours also adds to the comfort of the patient and seems to shorten the course of the inflammation. We have never seen any harmful results from its use.

Hot applications frequently fail to produce the best results. Where continuous cold to the joints has been tried, it has been found to give better results than hot applications. The joint should be well covered with a thick flannel cloth, outside of which should be packed cracked ice or snow (*Plate XIII.*) or the joint may be surrounded with ice bags. This pack should be left in place until the part becomes almost numb, care being taken that actual freezing does not occur. At the same time, the warmth of the body should be sustained by hot water bottles, the foot bath, or fomentations to other parts. When the pack has been in place a sufficient length of time to do away with tenderness, it may be removed and the skin rubbed thoroughly with the dry hand or snow until it is red. If the inflammation is severe, the ice pack should then be replaced. The rubbing must be repeated at intervals to promote reaction and prevent freezing. If thought necessary, this opportunity may be taken to mobilize the joint. In the ordinary case the heating compress may be used between the ice packs, the latter being repeated from two to four times a day, each lasting for thirty minutes to one hour. Two or three joints may be treated in this manner at the same time. When these extreme cold applications are used, the inflammation seems to run a much shorter course. Where moderate movement of the patient is not objectionable, the use of alternate extreme hot and cold immersion of the hands and wrists or feet and ankles is one of the best measures for controlling the pain and inflammation in these joints. This is especially applicable when the inflammation has subsided somewhat.

The patients general vitality should be sustained by cold mitten frictions, hot and cold to the spine, and the heart steadied by the use of the ice bag and cold mitten friction. Fomentations to the chest may be used every four or five hours, or oftener if necessary, in order to renew the reflex activity where the ice bag is used for a considerable length of time.

Free water-drinking should be encouraged. An actual sweating treatment is beneficial and may be employed daily or two or three times a week. Both of these measures favor elimination of toxines. If this plan of treatment is thoroughly carried out, endocarditis is less likely to occur.

Endocarditis. Should the valvular endocardium become involved, it is necessary to keep the patient at perfect rest, both during the course of the fever and for a considerable time after. The ice bag to the heart should be used intermittently; that is, being put on for twenty-five or thirty minutes and left off for the same length of time, or even allowing it to remain in place for a longer time, depending upon the results produced. Buxbaum[7] and Laqueur[8] recommend the use of the cold coil to the precordia two or three times daily for a half hour to an hour, or even longer at a time.

Cold mitten frictions should be given from one to three times daily, hot foot baths being used as frequently as necessary. It is needless to say that the heart should be examined daily, the findings being compared with the clinical manifestations. After the fever has subsided, the patient must be carefully guarded from all exposure to cold and damp. He should return to an active condition very gradually, rest in bed being kept up until the pulse rate is nearly normal. The wheel chair may be used from this point, but before further advancement may be made, the pulse rate must again return to normal. The patient may then be allowed to lounge about, being dressed and around the room part of the time. Walking should not be allowed if the pulse rises above ninety. During all this time, such tonic measures as hot and cold to the spine, the cold mitten friction and cold towel rub should be used. After the subsidence of the fever, gentle massage may be permitted. The resistant movements of the Schott method, and the effervescent bath should not be given until well into convalescence; that is, after the fever has been normal for a month or two. From this on, the treatment is essentially that of chronic endocarditis (*q. v.*).

7 Lehrbuch der Hydrotherapie, 1903, p. 234.
8 Die Praxis der Hydrotherapie, 1910, p. 143.

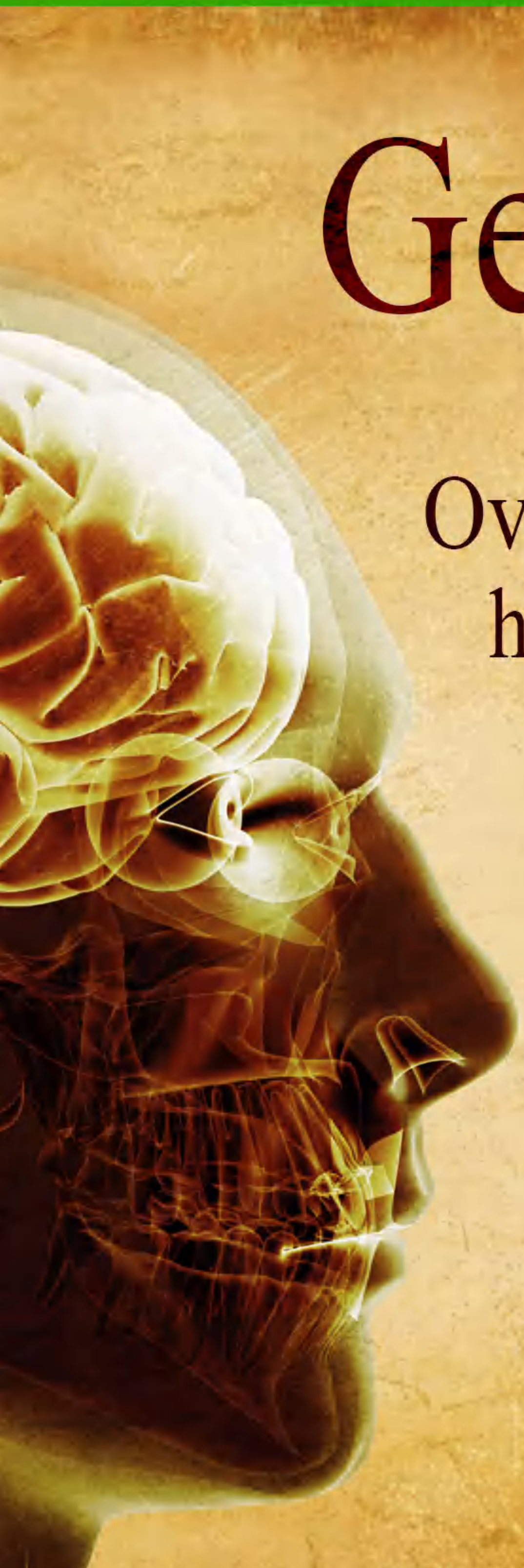
INFECTIOUS ARTHRITIDES

Not only in rheumatic fever but also in a number of other infections, arthritis is a prominent and often very troublesome occurrence. Some of these, especially in the chronic stage respond well to the use of vaccines, but we have obtained more uniform and satisfactory results from the use of scientific hydrotherapy. In these arthritides we include gonorrheal rheumatism, syphilitic arthritis, and the secondary non-suppurative arthritis of scarlet fever, tonsillitis and other infectious fevers. The principles and methods of treatment are very definite. For clinical purposes the cases may be divided into acute and chronic.

The Acute Stage. Each inflamed joint should be packed in ice for thirty minutes to one hour two or three times a day. The more acute the inflammation the greater should be the total duration of the cold. At the close of each of these applications some treatment should be given to promote reaction. This may be by rubbing with snow or by two or three changes of an alternate hot and cold immersion, pour, or spray douche. As the inflammation progresses toward the chronic stage, more heat and less cold should be used.

The Chronic Stage. When an infectious arthritis has existed some weeks or months the treatment should differ radically from that which is given during the first few days or week or two of the inflammation. For chronic arthritis apply to the joint some form of hot application. This may be the fomentation (*Plate XIV.*), the local electric light, or superheated air. After ten to thirty minutes of such applications treat the part by a vigorous alternate hot and cold immersion or alternate spray douche, using from three to six or more changes. The spray douche is better than the immersion. The hot water should be as hot as can be borne and the cold as cold as it can be obtained, which, for the best results, should not be above 60° F. If there is pain in the joint or if it should seem desirable for other reasons, the heating joint compress may be applied after each treatment and kept on until the next treatment.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

These methods have given such uniformly satisfactory results that infectious arthritis has, with us, ceased to be a perplexing problem.

MENINGITIS

In acute cerebro-spinal meningitis, there is a purulent exudate covering the convex dorsal surfaces of the brain between the dura mater and the leptomeninges filling the meshes of the arachnoid and extending downward along the cord. The meninges of the brain are intensely congested. The intracranial pressure is increased. Quincke's lumbar puncture should be used for diagnosis and treatment. The most important treatment is the use of *Flexner's serum*, which has given 75 per cent of recoveries in four hundred cases. The most commonly employed hydrotherapeutic applications are the ice cap and spinal ice bag applied continuously, or with but little interruption. The spinal ice bag should be filled with finely pounded ice and placed along the cervical and upper dorsal spine. Another smaller ice bag should be placed cross-wise of the neck at the base of the brain. The ice cap or helmet should cover as large an area as possible of the convex surface and sides of the cranium. These applications, though extensive and extreme, do not usually cause chilling. It will be found helpful to apply heat to the extremities at intervals. The hot foot bath, hot leg pack, or large fomentations to the limbs and abdomen, may be used. They assist the action of the ice bags in reducing cerebral congestion. The ice bags and ice cap may conveniently be replaced by rubber coils through which ice water is flowing.

Rohrer reports a number of cases in which cold affusions to the head and neck were of great service in relieving or mitigating the severity of cerebral symptoms and bringing about a successful termination. He also advises the cold affusion for the relief of cerebral symptoms, whether delirium or coma, accompanying infectious diseases such as pneumonia, acute meningitis and in sunstroke, neoplasms and tubercular meningitis. When made very cold and much prolonged, they are decidedly antipyretic.

In chronic and tubercular meningitis the opisthotonos, and

muscular ridigity are best met by the use of the full warm bath given at a temperature of 98°—102° F. These may be continned from ten or fifteen minutes to an hour, according to the needs of thc case. The restlessness, delirium and headache are often entirely relieved. The rigidity of the spine and abdominal muscles is favorably influenced. We have seen coma give way to a fairly clear sensorium following the bath. Where the temperature of the patient is above 102°, the ice bag should be kept at the base of the brain and a cold compress to the head during the bath. This is especially necessary in the epidemic form of cerebro-spinal meningitis. In tuberculous meningitis it may not be needed. Aufrecht, Waroschilsky, Wollisch, Netter and others report favorable results from the full warm bath. Rogansky reports among fifty-one cases (not tubercular) in women where the warm bath was used, a mortality of 33 per cent; and among fifty cases where the bath was not used, a mortality of 80 per cent. The warm bath acts as a relaxing and sedative agent. It also aids in depleting the cerebral and spinal circulation and serves as a tonic to the circulatory system. Excitant and stimulating measures should be avoided.

BILIARY INFLAMMATIONS

Cholecystitis, Catarrhal Juandice, Subacute Pancreatitis

Inflammatory states in these ducts and organs are quite likely to be followed by conditions that require operative interference; but if taken early, the milder inflammations subside under proper treatment. In cases of subacute pancreatitis and catarrhal inflammation of the gall bladder and ducts, we have found the following method successful: Once or twice daily there should be given a treatment consisting of a hot foot bath with fomentations to the abdomen and concluded by the cold mitten friction. The hot foot bath and fomentations produce effectual derivation, while the latter application relieves the pain and relaxes the musculature of the ducts and the gall bladder. The cold mitten friction is given for tonic purposes, to increase leucocytosis and combat infection. Fomentations and hot and cold to the spine are used for sedative and tonic

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

appendix. By means of the combined effect of the hot, in drawing the blood from the inflamed part, and the ice bag, in causing contraction of the vessels reflexly, the most effectual derivation is secured. The pain is almost instantly relieved in those cases in which the inflammation has not produced rupture of the appendix. After twenty or thirty minutes in the pack, it should be removed and a vigorous cold mitten friction be given to all parts included by it, except the abdomen. This serves to fix the blood in the skin and so make derivation more permanent. Following this treatment, the heating compress may be applied to the lower abdomen or the ice bag may be applied over the appendix almost continuously. The hip and leg pack with ice bag should be repeated as often as necessary to relieve the pain and make the patient comfortable. It is perhaps needless to say that the treatment should be preceded by a thorough enema. Cathartics should be avoided. A very large fomentation with an ice bag under the center over the appendix may be substituted for the pack. After the temperature has become normal and the acute tenderness has subsided, the patient should be given general tonic treatments, always avoiding extreme measures to the abdomen or about the appendix, since excitation of peristalsis may cause return of the inflammation or rupture of the appendix. In chronic appendicitis the fomentation to the abdomen is best calculated to relieve the pain and tenderness. Where possible, these cases should be operated in the interval.

PELVIC INFLAMMATIONS

Acute Endometritis from Puerperal Sepsis, Salpingitis, Ovaritis, Pelvic Cellulitis and Peritonitis

It is necessary to differentiate between these conditions, although hydriatic treatment is carried out along much the same line in all. In the case of retained secundines following labor or abortion, it is imperative to perform currettage as early as possible. In the case of simple salpingitis, operation should not be done at all. Should the inflammation go on to the formation of a pyosalpinx, operation should be delayed

until the temperature is normal and the acute inflammation has subsided. In pelvic cellulitis operation is unnecessary and dangerous. Should abscess formation occur, either in the cellular tissue or in the peritoneal cavity, drainage should be provided.

With these different conditions in mind and the possible outcome of each, the inflammation should be treated in the same manner as that outlined for appendicitis. The patient may be given the hot leg pack or hip and leg pack, with the ice bag applied to the groin, suprapubic region or other part nearest the inflamed organ. This should be continued twenty to thirty minutes and concluded with the cold mitten friction. The heating compress may be applied or, if it seems wise, in some cases the ice bag may be left in place. In other cases, fomentations to the lower abdomen may be given every two hours. The hip and leg pack with the ice bag, followed by the cold mitten friction, should be repeated two or three times daily according to the necessities of the case. It is well, in nearly all of these inflammations, to precede the pack by very hot vaginal irrigation. As the acuteness of the inflammation subsides, the revulsive compress and other alternate hot and cold applications may be used. Perhaps the most effectual means of treating chronic pelvic inflammations is found in the sitz bath. When it is considered safe to allow the patient to begin to walk, the hot sitz or revulsive sitz may be used. The temperature of the bath should be gradually lowered until the patient is taking a hot sitz followed by a brief application of cold or very cold water. The hot half bath is an effectual means of applying the principles of the sitz bath. In some cases, it is to be preferred. The body is less cramped and both the limbs and hips are entirely immersed in the water. At the conclusion, the patient should receive a cold pail pour to the hips. It is not necessary to use the extreme or prolonged cold sitz in the conditions mentioned above. In place of this, the patient should be given alternate hot and cold percussion douches to the sacrum, feet, and legs. Other tonic measures should form part of the course of treatment. The cold rubbing sitz is beneficial in delayed resolution. Hot vaginal irrigation or alternate

hot and cold irrigation should be used until resolution is complete.

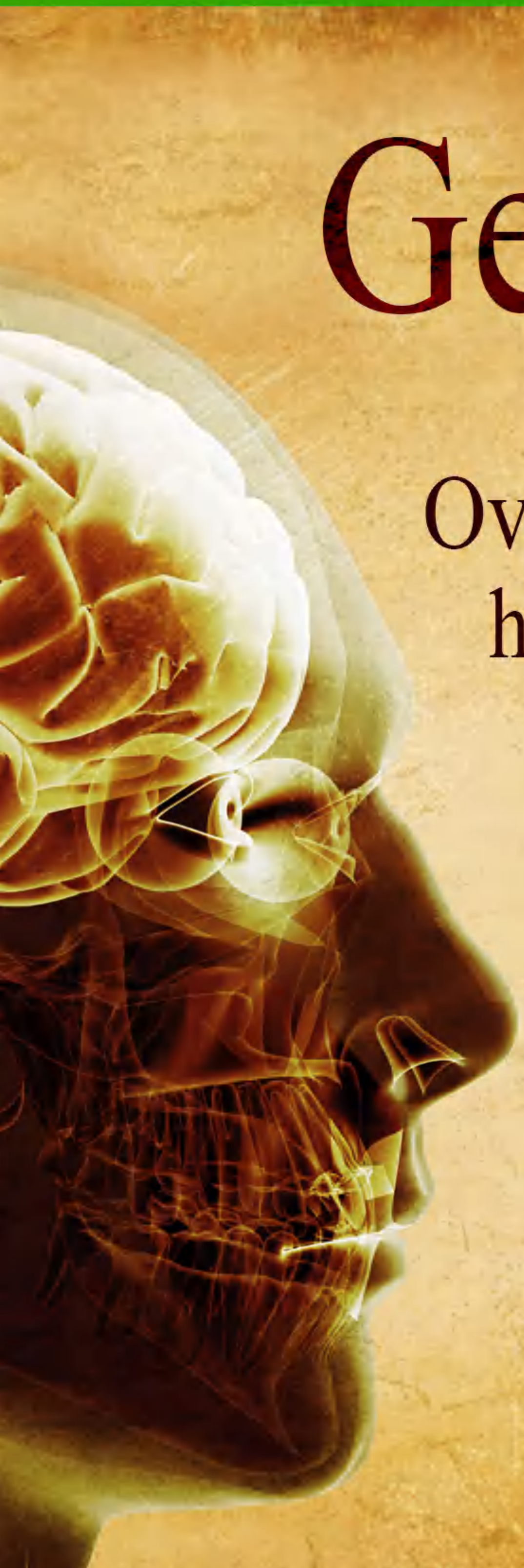
PHLEBITIS

During the early stages of phlebitis, the cold compress or ice bag should be used over the affected vein. At the same time, the limb must be elevated and kept warm. All massage movements are strictly contra-indicated in this condition. After the first day or so, fomentations should be used frequently, the ice bag or cold compress being left in place between fomentations. While the patient is recovering, that is, after the temperature becomes normal and all signs of acute inflammation have subsided, the revulsive compress may be used. The edema should be treated by elevation and such alternate hot and cold measures as the revulsive compress, hot and cold foot or leg bath and the alternate pour. When there is no longer danger from embolism, massage may be used, avoiding, however, the vein itself. Later on, when there remains only the stasis and edema, the most vigorous hot and cold measures such as the alternate douche, are beneficial.

MUCOUS COLITIS

The first object to be accomplished in the treatment of mucous colitis is the removal of the mucous cast covering the mucous membrane. The thorough removal of this coating will be accompanied by more or less pain, since it leaves a raw, unprotected surface. That which most effectually removes the coating is some form of treatment which will produce a vigorous exosmosis. This may be accomplished by the hypertonic saline enema, or the honey enema. In preparing the saline enema, about double the amount of salt should be added as in preparing a physiologic salt solution, or to each pint of saline solution there may be added a quarter of a teaspoonful of Epsom salts. This tends to draw water from the tissues because of the concentration of the solution. Before using the salt solution, the bowel should be thoroughly cleansed, if necessary, by both low and high enemata; after which the salt solution is introduced by means of the high bowel catheter, or by the ordinary enema given in the knee-chest position. A

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

brane. The hot applications tend to relax the musculature and draw blood from the organ to the surface. The patient should drink freely of water in order to dilute the urine, thus lessening its irritating qualities. Regulation of the diet is fully as important as these measures.

In the chronic stage more cold treatment may be used, such as the revulsive sitz, graduated sitz, hot and cold perineal spray, hot and cold rectal irrigation, and the alternate spray douche to the pelvis. These alternate applications may, at first, occasion some vesical spasm, but if persisted in, help to relieve the stagnant circulation. The hot saline enema and continuous hot rectal irrigation also produce good results. Bladder irrigation with hot physiologic salt solution or some mild antiseptic as boric acid or potassium permanganate should be done once daily, rarely oftener. In long standing chronic cases alternate hot and cold rectal irrigation gives excellent results. This plan of treatment is especially beneficial in those cases in which the capacity of the organ is very much reduced and the walls have become greatly thickened and indurated.

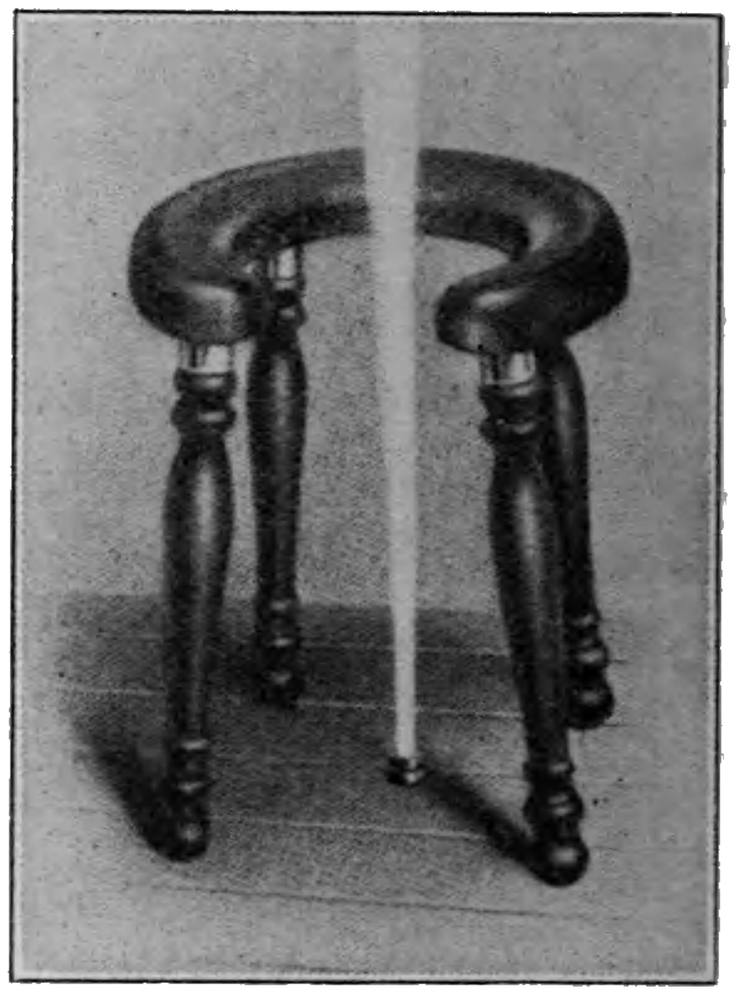


Fig. 53. The perineal douche.

SPECIFIC URETHRITIS, VAGINITIS, OR PROSTATITIS

In the acute stage, in addition to the local medication, the ice bag should be used almost continuously. The Leiter coil is an excellent means of continuous cooling. Some form of internal cooler may be used. The hollow prostatic cooler which is applied to the prostate through the rectum is useful in decreasing acute inflammations of that organ. Desnos recommends very hot (120° F.) rectal irrigation in the acute stages, forbidding it in the chronic stage. We would reverse this rule, using cold rectal irrigation in the acute stage and vigorous hot and cold in the chronic stage. As these conditions progress to-

ward the chronic stage, short hot applications should be used, alternating with the cold, and after the acute inflammation has subsided, the most vigorous hot and cold measures are necessary. That which is the most serviceable is the alternate hot and cold perineal spray. (*Fig. 53.*) Chronic cases which have resisted all sorts of medication very readily respond to this measure. It greatly increases the circulation and stimulates local leucocytosis, both of which are necessary in order to combat the infection which frequently becomes cryptic in this stage and so is beyond the reach of topical medication. The graduated sitz or even the cold sitz may also be used. This should be begun at a temperature of 98°—105°, and after one or two minutes, the temperature gradually lowered to 85°, or after several applications, to as low as 75°. The bath should last from four to six or eight minutes, and be followed by the alternate hot and cold perineal spray. In chronic prostatitis alternate hot and cold rectal irrigation produces astonishingly good results.

CHAPTER XX

STIMULANTS AND TONICS

THERE is a decided difference in the physiologic e
stimulant and a tonic. The idea that stimulant
sary for tonic purposes has lead to great confu
proper understanding of these terms. While to
wide range of applicability, the necessity for s
much more limited. We quote the following
William Broadbent as giving the best idea of the
duced by stimulants: "A falsehood which dies hard
that stimulants of whatever kind actually give st
are necessary for the maintenance of health and vig
is not the case and the well-worn comparison that th
whip and spur, and not the corn and grass, is strictly
Anything accomplished under the influence of stim
done at the expense of blood and tissue and, if frequen
peated, at the expense of the constitution."

On the other hand, a tonic tends to restore the body to
a condition that it is better able to perform its usual funct
It not only "stimulates" and hastens the normal expen
of energy, but it also increases the vital capacity of the
for work. This it does by its action in augmenting the
cesses of anabolism. It will be seen from this that the
can not be a tonic, since it in no way tends to restore an
to its normal condition, nor does it so shape circumst
that the tissues of the organ are built up. For this re
strychnine should be considered a stimulant, and a stimu
only. All tonic measures are physiologic in their na
while stimulants may or may not be natural means. Medi
stimulants produce an unnatural condition which in no

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

creasing their number in the peripheral circulation and thereby preventing globular stasis.

13. Increase alkalinity of the blood.

14. Augment the production of agglutinin and other antibodies.

15. Stimulate phagocytosis.

16. Increase muscular capacity.

17. Decrease fatigue.

Tonic measures, to a greater or less extent, are indicated in all forms of disease. In some conditions the tonic results derived from measures, whose principal effects are other than tonic, are sufficient to secure recovery; but in nearly all diseases some special tonic treatment is needed, and in not a few, this alone is sufficient. In the majority of cases, it is necessary to begin with the mildest of tonic measures, increasing the vigorousness of the treatment as the patient develops the ability to react.

The following are the principal tonic measures in the order of their severity. Taken one after another, they may be said to constitute a *therapeutic ladder*.

1. Wet Hand Rub. A few very anemic patients do not possess sufficient vitality to react at first to the cold mitten friction. These patients should be given a wet hand rub beginning with one or two parts only, and increasing the extent of the area treated as the patient's reactive powers increase. At first, tepid or cold water may tax the reactive powers. If so, the patient must be rubbed vigorously during and following the application. The temperature of the water should be decreased daily 2° or 3° F., until cold water or ice water is used. Usually, before this point is reached, the cold mitten friction may be employed.

2. Cold Mitten Friction. Begin with cold water, dipping the mitten once for each part, and rubbing it vigorously until it is well warmed. It should then be dried and rubbed with the dry hand. With each succeeding treatment the temperature may be lowered and, in a day or two, the number of times the mitten is dipped for each part may be increased to

two and later to three or four. When the patient is able to react to ice water used in this manner, other more vigorous means may be tried.

3. COLD TOWEL RUB. This is graduated in the same manner as the cold mitten friction. Since the cold water is applied to a greater surface at one time, it requires somewhat greater vitality to react to this measure.

4. PAIL POUR. After the warm bath or some other hot treatment, the patient may receive to the shoulders, chest and back, two or three pails of water differing in temperature from 5° —15° F. The first used should contain water from 100°—105°, the second from 80°—90°, and the third from 65°—80°. As the patient shows ability to react to these measures, the temperature of the water may be decreased, or additional pails used.

5. SALT GLOW. This may be made a mild or extreme measure according as fine or coarse salt is used, and much or little friction given. Since it is not accompanied by cold water, it does not severely tax the reactive powers. A pail pour or shower may be used to remove the salt and so combine it with other tonic measures.

6. COLD DOUCHE. This should be preceded by a warm or hot shower, or it may be given as a hot and cold douche consisting of three or four changes. The reaction is enhanced by the use of percussion. At first only a limited portion of the body should be treated in this manner, such as the feet and legs, later the spine and chest also.

7. WET SHEET RUB. The patient should stand in a tub of hot water. At first the sheet should be wrung nearly dry from cold water. This is wrapped about the patient in the manner directed under technique. The rubbing should be *over* the sheet until the skin is warm and then the patient quickly dried by means of sheets and towels. Later, colder water should be used and the sheet wrung less thoroughly.

8. DRIPPING SHEET RUB. When the patient has acquired the ability to react to the wet sheet rub, the treatment may be increased in vigor by pouring over the shoulders while

the patient is still wrapped in the sheet and after he has been warmed by rubbing, from one to three pails of cold water, at first using one containing cool water, and later two or three pails of colder water. After each pour, the rubbing should be renewed and continued until the patient is warm.

9. SHALLOW BATH. A full length tub should be partly filled with cold water. The patient then enters the tub, sitting upright while both patient and attendant rub the limbs and hips. The patient now reclines in the tub while he is again rubbed with cold water, it being dashed up over the body during the course of the rubbing. The water should hardly more than half cover the body. The temperature of the shallow bath may be gradually decreased.

10. COLD PLUNGE. This measure may be considered the last round of the ladder. By active swimming movements, the patient should promptly react to a plunge in cold water at 80° —85° F., and later to much lower temperatures. The plunge bath should not be continued long. At first one or two minutes only are sufficient. Later, five, ten, or even fifteen minutes may profitably be spent in swimming.[1]

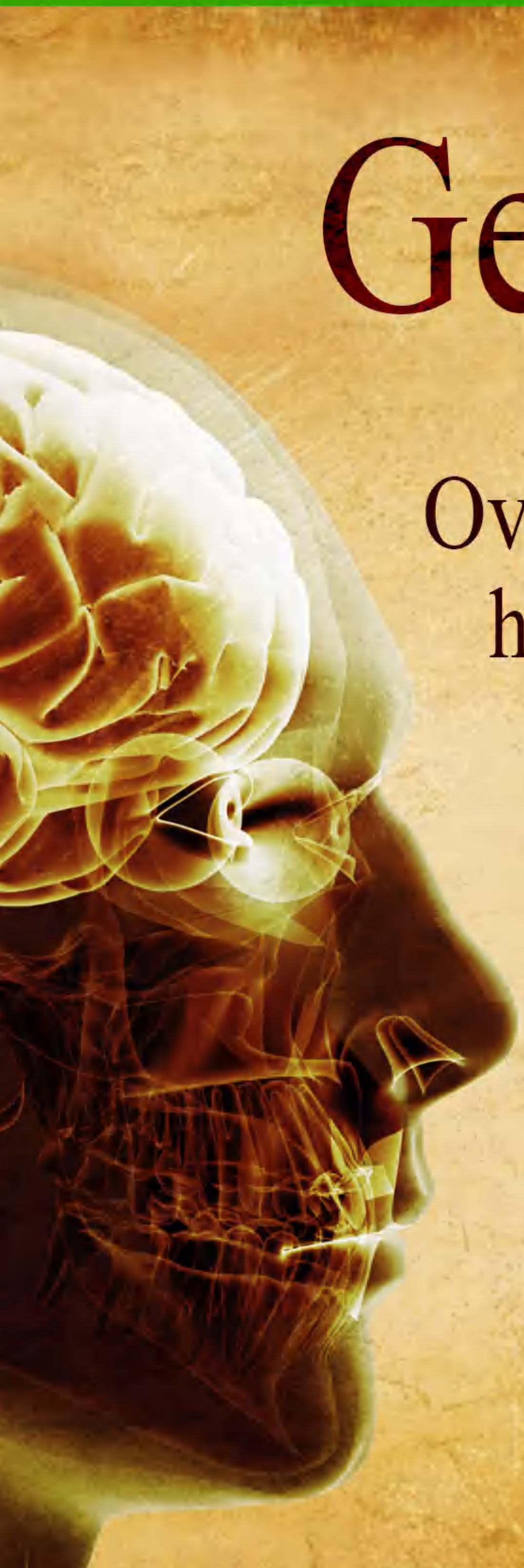
We have already mentioned that there are a large number of conditions in which tonic measures are indicated. In some, however, it is necessary to provide a special course of tonic treatment. The following is a partial list of such conditions. A few of these will be considered somewhat at length.

Indications for Special Tonic Treatment.

1. Anemia.
2. Neurasthenia.
3. Melancholia and hypochondria.
4. Hysteria.
5. Dyspepsia.
6. Insomnia.
7. Chronic inebriety.
8. Chronic articular rheumatism.
9. Pulmonary tuberculosis.
10. Valvular heart disease and obesity with fatty heart.

1 For more complete details of these treatments see technique.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

organic compound of iron with neuclein and that this c
is doubtless an immediate precursor of hemoglobin.
cient is this in the formation of hemoglobin that he pr
call it the "blood former" (hematogen). The fre
vegetables, fruits, grains, and nuts contain co
amounts of organic iron. Asparagus and spinach con
20 to nearly 40 milligrams of organic iron to 100 gra
substance.[3] Ten milligrams or 1-6 grain of iron, t
amount required by an adult, would be contained in fou
of the yolk of egg. Moreover, this iron is in a for
most easily digested and most fully absorbed.

It is thus amply demonstrated that inorganic or
preparations of iron are not only entirely unnecessary,
in many cases, positively injurious, since they deran
digestion. On the other hand, the best food, containin
cient organic iron, will not suffice to cure anemia if in
putrefaction continues; and, through lack of proper to
circulation, the body is unable to appropriate the
receives. In addition, then, to the necessity for a
natural diet and special attention directed toward imp
the digestion, there are two other objects to be attained,
the blood-making organs must be stimulated; second,
circulation must be improved. That all these results c
accomplished by tonic hydrotherapy has been demonstrat
shown in the chapters on the circulation.

That tonic hydrotherapy, combined with a simple na
diet, and outdoor life, fresh air and sunshine is far more
cient than iron, strychnine, arsenic, the hypophosph
quinine and the like, is the daily experience of those
systematically employ physiologic means. It has yet to
proven that arsenic has any effect on the blood but to im
erish it. That it lessens both the per cent of red cells and
hemoglobin, when regularly administered, has been am
proven. In searching for experimental data concerning
positive benefit that may be derived from the administration
arsenic, one is struck with the paucity of evidence along th
line. We are asked to rely upon very vague assumptio

3 Bunge—Physiological and Pathological Chemistry, Second English Edition, p.

mostly empirical in nature. We have frequently treated cases of profound anemia in which the whole picture was that of chronic arsenic poisoning rather than simple anemia, the arsenic having been administered to cure the anemia.

In the hydriatic management of anemia, it is necessary to provide a carefully graded system of tonic treatment. In the extreme forms of anemia, the beginning must be at the bottom round of the ladder of tonic measures. Each application of cold should be preceded by a short hot application, such as fomentations to the spine or abdomen, the hot foot bath, or local electric light bath. No long hot treatments should be used since the vitality is so much reduced as to illy bear the depression occasioned by sweating. However, all forms of local applications of heat are indicated in anemia. Following one or more short moderately hot applications, the patient should be given a wet hand rub, cold mitten friction or cold towel rub, according to his ability to react. This should be repeated about twice daily, or a light massage may be given once a day. Later on, as the circulation improves, the patient may be treated by the cold towel rub, hot and cold to the spine, and still later, alternate hot and cold douches and sprays. Advancement in the tonics should be made slowly. It may take several weeks for the patient to acquire sufficient vitality to react to a general shower bath. The salt glow may be used before the more vigorous cold applications can be borne. Following this, may be used the general affusion or pail pour, at first of warm or tepid water, later of cool and cold water. After some weeks a short full electric light bath may be given, followed by a vigorous hot and cold spray. When this point has been reached, advance may be made more rapidly, using the wet sheet rub, dripping sheet rub, cold shallow bath, and the cold plunge.

Massage is especially indicated in anemia before the patient is able to take much exercise. The manipulation should be what is termed "general massage;" *i. e.*, it should combine all of the procedures usually given in Swedish massage. Of special importance are the movements of deep kneading. After a single massage lasting forty-five to sixty minutes, the red cells

frequently show a gain of 25 to 50 per cent and may even be doubled in number. These gains are of course not permanent but they last longer and longer as the treatments are repeated. The hemoglobin per cent rises more slowly than the red cells.

Full sun baths are especially beneficial. The scientific basis for the use of the sun bath in anemia and chlorosis has been well demonstrated experimentally.[4] Exposure to sunlight increases the oxygen-carrying capacity of the red blood cells. It stimulates hematogenesis, increasing both the number of red cells and the hemoglobin per cent. It is a fundamental protoplasmic stimulant. It hastens cell division and cell growth. It is a most effective stimulant to the peripheral circulation. Pure, fresh air supplies the needed oxygen that makes possible the best results from the sunlight. "Zuntz and his school have shown that the effects of mountain air are apparent, not only in their influence on red corpuscles, but also on the nitrogenous metabolism of the body as a whole, so that there is in most individuals a positive nitrogen balance, an actual reproduction of the conditions found in the growing organism."[5]

An Anglo-American expedition to Pike's Peak in the summer of 1911 confirmed the claims of European observers in the Alps relative to the effect of high altitudes upon the blood. They found a large increase in red cells, hemoglobin, and white cells.[6] The red cells increased 30 to 40 per cent and the hemoglobin kept pace with it. On descent it required about four weeks for the excess of hemoglobin to disappear. These observers claim that the lungs develop a capacity to secrete oxygen from the alveolar air into the blood.

The effects of sunlight and out-door life among natural surroundings are apparent not alone in the physical changes they induce, but also in the psychic improvement of the patient. When proper attention is given to all of the items mentioned, also to digestion (see dyspepsia) the maximum good may be obtained.

---

4 Cleaves—Light Energy, pp. 271, 322.

5 Starling—Fluids of the Body, p. 142.

6 Douglass, Hendane, Henderson and Schneider: The Physiologic Effects of Low Atmospheric Pressures, as Observed on Pike's Peak, Colorado; Proc. Roy. Soc. London (B), LXXXV, 65.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

function. The treatment of dyspepsia is considered in another place.

The overworking of any organ or function leads to exhaustion. The chief cause of nerve exhaustion lies in overactivity of the brain and nerves, accompanying deficient physical activity. Neurasthenia may, however, occur in an individual who is engaged in an occupation requiring constant bodily activity. Worry, grief, disappointment—financial or social—these all have their place in the causation of nerve exhaustion. A comprehensive view of the disease and its causes reveals the necessity for two classes of physiologic effects, viz., tonic and sedative: sedative, to assist in securing rest, the most essential element in building up lost nerve force; tonic, to restore normal nerve activity and hasten the building up process. No hard and fast lines may, however, be drawn between procedures directed to these ends. Tonic measures are, of course, in the long run conducive to normal rest, but they may also be immediately sedative in their effects. This peculiar paradox, that tonic measures produce sedation and sedative measures are tonic, exists only in the realm of physiologic therapy. One would not pick upon the bromides to restore the normal nerve tone or upon strychnine to produce rest or sleep. The special treatment of insomnia and the irritative neurasthenie state will be considered more at length under sedative effects (q. v.).

In beginning the treatment of a neurasthenie patient, it is well, at first, to test the reactive powers by mild measures which will produce no shock. Since first impressions are often very lasting, the initial treatment may consist of such forms of the bath as are not greatly different from those used at home. This serves to make the patient acquainted with the attendant and the attendant with some of the pecularities of the patient. The full warm tub bath and tub shampoo, finished with a warm and then a cool pail pour serves this purpose for a large number of patients. Since nearly all neurasthenics complain of cold feet and more or less abdominal distress, we frequently use the hot foot bath with fomentations to the abdomen. This may be made the second treatment and concluded with a wet hand rub or cold mitten friction. With this, or following

closely, we utilize hot and cold to the spine, the revulsive compress, the pail pour, salt glow, and graduated spray. Later, after considerable reactive capacity has been developed, the cold towel rub and wet sheet rub may be used. The alternate spray, alternate douche, and shallow bath are quite vigorous means and should not be ventured upon in the agitative form of neurasthenia, or not until milder tonics have been used for some time.

The wet sheet pack, although an excellent tonic, as well as sedative means, is often objected to by the neurasthenie. He complains that it makes him nervous, he feels restrained, etc. The sitz bath at the various temperatures at which it may be used, is capable of most excellent results. For this purpose the tub must be deep enough so that the water will cover the greater part of the abdomen. Provided there are no local conditions requiring treatment, the sitz tub may first be filled with water at 98° which is gradually raised to 102° or 103° and then lowered to 90° or 85° just before the close, or it may be concluded with a cold pail pour to the hips (revulsive sitz). The second bath may be begun at 98° or 95° and, without raising the temperature of the water, gradually lowered to 85° or 80°. On each succeeding day, it is begun at a slightly lower temperature and finished with colder water, until it is essentially a prolonged cold sitz. The bath acts by reducing the blood supply to the abdomen and pelvis, decongesting the abdominal and pelvic sympathetics and restoring their tone. It aids in the relief of general splanchnoptosis.

About once a week the patient should be given a short electric light bath followed by a spray, or shampoo and spray. The electric light bath should be three or four minutes in length, sufficient to thoroughly warm the skin and produce beginning perspiration.

The old idea that the melancholic state is due to liver derangement (black bile) is not wholly without foundation. Wrong habits of diet, together with constipation, are large factors in the production of the depressed type of neurasthenia. Both of these crowd the liver with toxins and products of imperfect digestion. An overworked liver in time becomes

a sluggish, torpid liver, incapable of performing its
as a toxin destroyer and emunctory. In addition t
treatment and treatment directed toward the relief
tion and constipation, we have found alternate hot
applications to the hepatic area of special advant
revulsive compress, alternate hot and cold, and esp
alternate hot and cold percussion douche to the liver
used frequently.

For cerebral congestion nothing is superior to the
hot and cold foot bath or the alternate percussion dou
feet. The latter may be preceded by a short hot le
hot leg bath with cold compresses to the head and ne

The work cure for neurasthenia has been successfu
hands of a few physicians who have formulated a defi
for such treatment. That which has been reported
in the line of indoor work. Much more successful is
of gardening, floriculture and horticulture to employ
and occupy the thoughts of the neurasthenic patient
occupations take him out into the fresh air and sunshi
to the extent he can be interested in "helping things
just to that extent the success of the plan is assured.

It has also been shown by Pansini[7] that the actinic
sunlight or artificial light increase muscular capacity
red light has the opposite effect. Red light, of course, co
largely of thermic frequencies and hence its effect is esse
that of heat. Blue light (actinic ray) increases both th
plitude and number of contractions as shown by ergogra

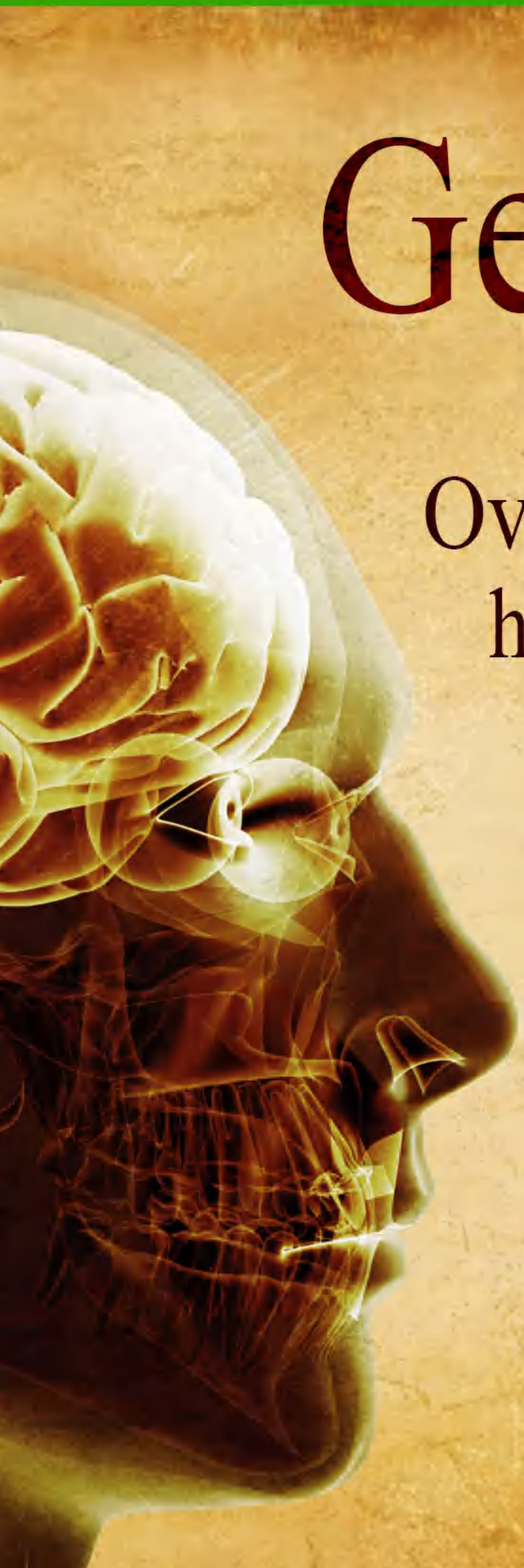
In a control test the muscles were able to lift 1.736 kilo
before recovering from the fatigue of this test, they lifted
kilograms; and after the exposure to the light of a blue
the total of the curve showed 1.848 kilograms, indicating
only the recovery from fatigue but a gain of .112 kilo
over the capacity of the unfatigued muscles.

The general program and the distribution of the treatm
during the day are of importance.

It will be found that the best results are obtained by one
treatment a day. A short sedative treatment may be given

7 Cleaves—Light Energy, pp. 301–303.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

this purpose. Applied by means of a stationary spinal electrode and a labile abdominal sponge, the treatment is certainly most effective. The abdominal muscles are powerfully stimulated by the slow sinusoidal current, thus increasing intra-abdominal pressure, but the greatest effect is upon the splanchnic vasomotors reflexly.

These patients experience much relief by assuming the horizontal position. The movement of "inspiratory lifting," as carried out in abdominal massage, also affords instant relief. The use of abdominal supporters, and the application of broad bands of adhesive plaster to the abdomen, in splanchnoptosis and splanchnic neurasthenia give relief as long as they are in place. Both these means, however, ultimately result in weakening the abdominal muscles, and so, unless accompanied by other treatment, defeat their own purpose. Where it is at all possible to strengthen the abdominal muscles, it is better to adopt some system of exercises especially calculated to develop them.

Of hydriatic means, the following combination is especially efficacious in splanchnic neurasthenia for the purpose of decreasing the splanchnic congestion. A hot foot bath with the cold Winternitz coil to the abdomen and cold compresses to the head and neck, continued for from twelve to twenty minutes, is the first part. A cold sitz of four to six minutes duration follows, and the treatment is concluded by a wet sheet rub. This is especially adapted to warm weather. During the winter months it may be necessary to apply more heat. With less vigorous patients, the first combination of hot foot bath with cold coil to the abdomen and cold compresses to the head may be continued thirty minutes or longer, and concluded with a cold mitten friction. These cold applications to the abdomen and pelvis produce decided and prolonged contraction of the visceral blood-vessels. The fan douche to the hepatic region and abdomen also accomplishes much the same results.

HYSTERIA

While some cases require a greater proportion of sedative treatment, nearly all require more or less of tonic treatment.

The chief result to be obtained by tonic treatment is the restoration of tone to the neurons, so that, by training, self-control becomes possible. The methods outlined for neurasthenia are all applicable in hysteria.

DYSPEPSIA

The special treatment necessary in this condition will be considered later, but local measures unaccompanied by general tonic treatment are often insufficient to accomplish full return to health. The measures recommended for anemia and those necessary in neurasthenia are all applicable in altered states of the digestion.

PULMONARY TUBERCULOSIS

The recovery from pulmonary tuberculosis is essentially a matter of vital resistance. Hence, efficient treatment resolves itself into means for the promotion of this vital resistance and the improvement of nutrition. These means are fresh air, sunshine, and diet, together with other measures which have tonic effects. Although early tuberculosis has proven one of the most curable diseases by these hygienic methods, yet no hard and fast lines can be laid down for their employment in individual cases. The exercise of enlightened and scientific common sense is especially necessary in dealing with this disease. Not all patients can eat the same thing. While milk and eggs may form a sort of dietetic center for the improvement of nutrition, yet these must be intelligently used; nor should other articles, such as cereals and fruits, be neglected. The latter are especially useful in maintaining the alkalinity of the blood and improving urinary elimination. The nutrition may be pushed by a milk diet in some cases with most excellent results, while other patients do not bear this method well. Like all exclusive methods, if used, it should be for a limited time only and for the accomplishment of certain results, return then being made to a more general diet, by which only *all* the needs of nutrition can be permanently met. The tuberculous patient requires as careful dietetic treatment as that given to the patient with a gastric or intestinal disorder only.

In regard to fresh air, it must be insisted that no
than twenty-four hours of outdoor air will accomplish
results. This means that proper sleeping arrangeme
be provided, so that fog and dampness will not in
climates where these are prevalent. Of course, if po
change should be made to a dry climate. Whether thi
be a warm or a cold dry climate, a moderately high
altitude, will depend upon the stage of the disease and
needs of the individual case. An altitude of 4000 to
is beneficial to those who are not nervous, and wh
ing in the lung has progressed sufficiently to be assisted
lung gymnastics of deep breathing.

The patient with a rise of temperature above 100°
observe complete rest. With the temperature between
100°, complete rest is not necessary; the patient may be
about, but rest is still the rule. The full sun bath—di
posure of the entire skin surface to the sunlight—is the
beneficial form of light therapy. The Kime or other re
for the concentration of actinic rays upon the chest is
useful means of promoting healing. The sun bath im
the nutrition, increases cell division and growth, stim
hematogenesis, and increases oxidation. It stimulates cap
circulation, so as to do away with the symptoms of poor
lation—cold hands and feet. It improves the psychic con
of the patient, a result which is not to be lightly esteemed

In regard to hydriatic tonics, we must caution the phy
against anything but those of a very mild nature. Fomen
tions to the various portions of the body, together with the
mitten friction, is all that we have found beneficial. Ge
tonic baths, sprays, and douches had best be omitted enti
Of course these may be used in building up the resistan
one who has recovered, but they are *not* to be used in
treatment of the disease. Fomentations to the chest are
in the treatment of pleurisy and the relief of pain, drawing,
other abnormal sensations. The cold mitten friction is
one of the best means of checking night sweats. Its action
directly upon the vasomotor and secretory nerves. But
of this, by its tonic effect, it helps to do away with the

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

such as the neutral bath, the wet sheet pack, fom
the cold mitten friction.

CHRONIC ARTICULAR RHEUMATIS

It is the usual custom in gouty rheumatism to e
treme sudorific measures. Such treatment, unacco
tonic measures, is applicable only in obese rheumati
those cases only for a limited time. While any f
treatment may temporarily increase the stiffness and
it is quite essential that these patients should be
treatment. The cold mitten friction is probably the
ure, since it quickly produces a reaction and can be gi
parts of the body, avoiding the joints. Tonic
necessary, not only to assist the heat in increasing the
and elimination of toxines and the surplus of nitroge
terial, which, by long crowding with proteid foods of h
content, has become well fixed; but also to increase the
up process and the general body weight.

DIABETES

Diabetes is a condition in which the system is u
warehouse and consume the carbohydrate of an ordin
The disease may be classified under two heads: First,
mentary form in which withdrawal of carbohydrate fr
diet for a time produces a cure, *i. e.*, the body is thereaft
to utilize a moderate amount of sugar. This is looked
a functional disease, although, as remarked below, it m
due to partial destruction of the ductless glands of the pan
Second, a permanent or organic diabetes in which excre
sugar continues after the withdrawal of all carbohydra
has been pretty well proven that destruction of the islan
Langerhans is the causative lesion in the majority of
These ductless bodies are believed to secrete a glycol
oxidizing ferment (oxidase), which has the ability to bu
and oxidize the sugar molecules. This occurs in the g
system, but principally in the muscles. If about one-ten
the pancreas remains intact after partial extirpation, dia
results only on ingestion of carbohydrate. According to Th

and Delamere, Langerhans insufficiency is found in about 80 per cent of cases. Defect in the glycogenic function of the liver may also cause permanent diabetes.

The usual treatment of diabetes is directed toward securing but one end; *viz.*, decreasing the excretion of grape sugar by lessening the ingestion of carbohydrates, substituting proteid (chiefly meat), as recommended by von Noorden. Chittenden[9] has recently shown that the ingestion of proteid, above a certain minimal requirement, which he sets at about 35 to 60 grams, results in a very few hours in the excretion of practically all the surplus nitrogen in the form of urea, the residue being simple carbohydrate not distinguishable from the carbohydrate taken as such. Such a process can hardly be said in any way to conserve the body powers. The great amount of useless labor demanded of the liver by such a diet must result in overworking that organ. All this occurs, to say nothing of the detrimental effects of flooding the system with purins from the large quantities of meat which the von Noorden diet necessitates. While temporary exclusion of carbohydrate from the diet with a gradual return to a moderate ingestion of starches and sugars is quite essential and an effective plan for the dietetic management of diabetes, this alone does not meet the needs of the condition. The real cause of the disease lies in altered carbohydrate metabolism. The sugar passing through unoxidized causes a loss of energy that should accrue from this source. In other words, the carbohydrate fuel falls through the grate before being burned, because of lack of proper regulation of the fire. Lessening the amount of fuel, while a most important factor in treatment, only partially remedies the defect.

The rational management must, therefore, aim at increasing the oxidation of grape sugar, and thereby preventing its elimination in an unoxidized state with the consequent energy loss. There are no known medicinal agents or even any mode of dietetic management which will accomplish this result. Experiment has revealed the fact that nothing so greatly promotes oxidative changes as exercise in the fresh air and tonic hydrotherapy. The effects of these agents on carbonaceous metabol-

9 Nutrition of Man, p. 131.

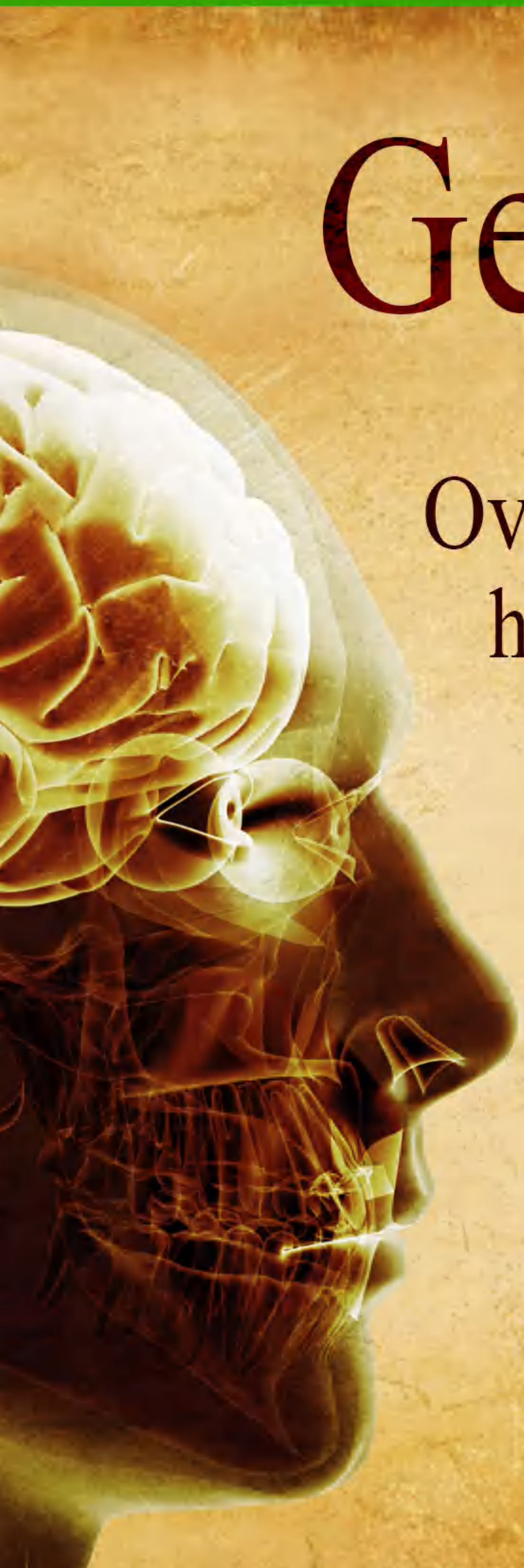
ism we have already considered. Because of the languor, lessened vitality, and great susceptibility to fatigue which is an almost constant accompaniment of diabetes, it is often difficult not to say unwise, in many cases to pursuade the patient to exercise. When there is much loss of vitality the exercise must be of a passive nature, *i. e.*, secured by massage. Massage stimulates the glycolytic powers of the muscles, improves the circulation, and aids nutritive changes. More important than this, however, are the effects derived from applications of cold water accompanied by friction or percussion. Cold frictions, cold douches, and mild alternating hot and cold applications effectually stimulate metabolism. Those hydriatic measures which are accompanied by strong mechanical stimuli have double the effect of cold applications without friction or percussion. Cold douches have been shown to increase oxidation more than 100 per cent. These means also improve the nutrition of the skin, and so aid in preventing many of the annoying cutaneous complications.

Graham Lusk reports a series of experiments on the influence of cold baths on the glycogen content of man in which he shows that extreme cold treatment so greatly enhances oxidation as to quickly change the aspect of combustion from support by carbohydrates to support by fat. These experiments were done with normal individuals. From this report [10] we quote the following:—

"During the shivering which followed the second cold bath the metabolism, as measured by the heat production, was 63 per cent higher than during the subsequent resting period, but the respiratory quotient of 0.75 remained unchanged during both periods. It is evident from this experiment that *the influence of two successive cold baths, which cause shivering during a period when the intestine is free from carbohydrate, is sufficient to change the metabolism from one maintained at the expense of carbohydrate (R. Q.=0.99) to one maintained essentially by the combustion of fat (R. Q.=0.75). Hence the organism of man may be quickly rid of glycogen by shivering.*

10 The Influence of Cold Baths on the Glycogen Content of Man. American Journal of Physiology, Vol. XXVII, No. V, p. 427.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

of languor and debility gives way to a greater incl... exercise, and so hydrotherapy indirectly makes possib... of the other great aid in oxidation—bodily activity.

With thin diabetics, the prognosis is less favorab... can take only the milder tonic treatments. Neither ... bear well any great reduction in the diet. But even ... unfavorable conditions, astonishingly good results ... obtained by carefully graded hydrotherapy combined ... massage. Much time should be spent in the open air ... shine, careful attention being paid to general hyg... especially to good skin activity.

CEREBRAL CONGESTION

Due to the Effects of Sunstroke or Heatstroke

Patients who have once suffered from sunstroke mus... cold climate in which to live. Even moderate heat ... length of time produces harmful results. It would se... in this condition the vasomotor centers have been so int... with that there is a loss of vascular control. This ... some cases, be so extreme that even a short hot trea... limited to a small area may induce general vaso-dilatation ... a special tendency toward cerebral congestion. The con... is best treated by cold applications accompanied by fric... *No hot applications at all should be used.* During all treatm... the head should be kept cool by cold compresses and th... bag, or the ice cravat to the neck. The cold mitten fric... cold towel rub, wet sheet rub, cool or cold showers and sp... may all be used according as the conditions indicate. If ... brain seems unduly congested a great deal of the time, dou... tion is best secured by the cold percussion douche to the f...

Much the same line of treatment is to be pursued in chron... nitroglycerine poisoning, which occasionally occurs in mine... This may be very troublesome. It is accompanied by seve... headaches, in some cases assuming a migraine type. In trea... ing these patients, the cerebral circulation should be steadie... by bathing the head in cold water before other treatment is b... gun, which latter should consist of cold showers, cold percus...

sion douches, and the cold plunge. If milder measures must be used, the cold mitten friction with ice water gives excellent results. However, these patients bear much more extreme cold treatment than any other class, and seem to have no difficulty in reacting.

VALVULAR HEART DISEASE

Etiology and Pathology

Organic heart disease refers to such diseases of the heart as are due to gross structural changes. The term is applied almost exclusively to chronic valvular disease. In the larger number of cases this is the result of some acute inflammatory condition on or about the valves. These valve inflammations may arise as complications of rheumatic fever, tonsillitis, scarlet fever, sepsis, gonorrhœa, pneumonia, pleurisy, or pulmonary tuberculosis. Predispositions are found in prolonged and heavy muscular exercise, auto-intoxication, gout, alcoholism, syphilis, Bright's disease, and arterio-sclerosis. The result is a valve orifice either too large or too small. Scar tissue following the inflammation may cause the valve segments to adhere to each other and so, by partially obstructing the orifice, cause stenosis; the valve leaflets may be partially destroyed or their attachments weakened so that the orifice is too large, or the heart dilated so that the segments are incompetent to close the opening.

In the first case, that is, stenosis, too little blood passes through the orifice and extra force is required to overcome the obstruction. In the latter case, part of the blood returns through the enlarged opening or past the incompetent valves, so that regurgitation takes place at every heart beat. Because of the former condition, the first change in the heart muscle is that of hypertrophy. In the second condition, the first change is that of dilatation of one or more cardiac chambers. If compensated, both conditions result in great hypertrophy and thickening of the muscular wall. The maximum force of the heart will be greater than normal, but the work required of it is also greater, so that in this condition, its reserve force above what it ordinarily uses is less than the normal reserve. Here

the heart is said to be in a state of *compensation*, since the muscle is so much hypertrophied as to still be able to perform its work under ordinary circumstances. Sometimes there is little or no such reserve, *i. e.*, the heart may have barely enough force for its work when the body is at rest. In this

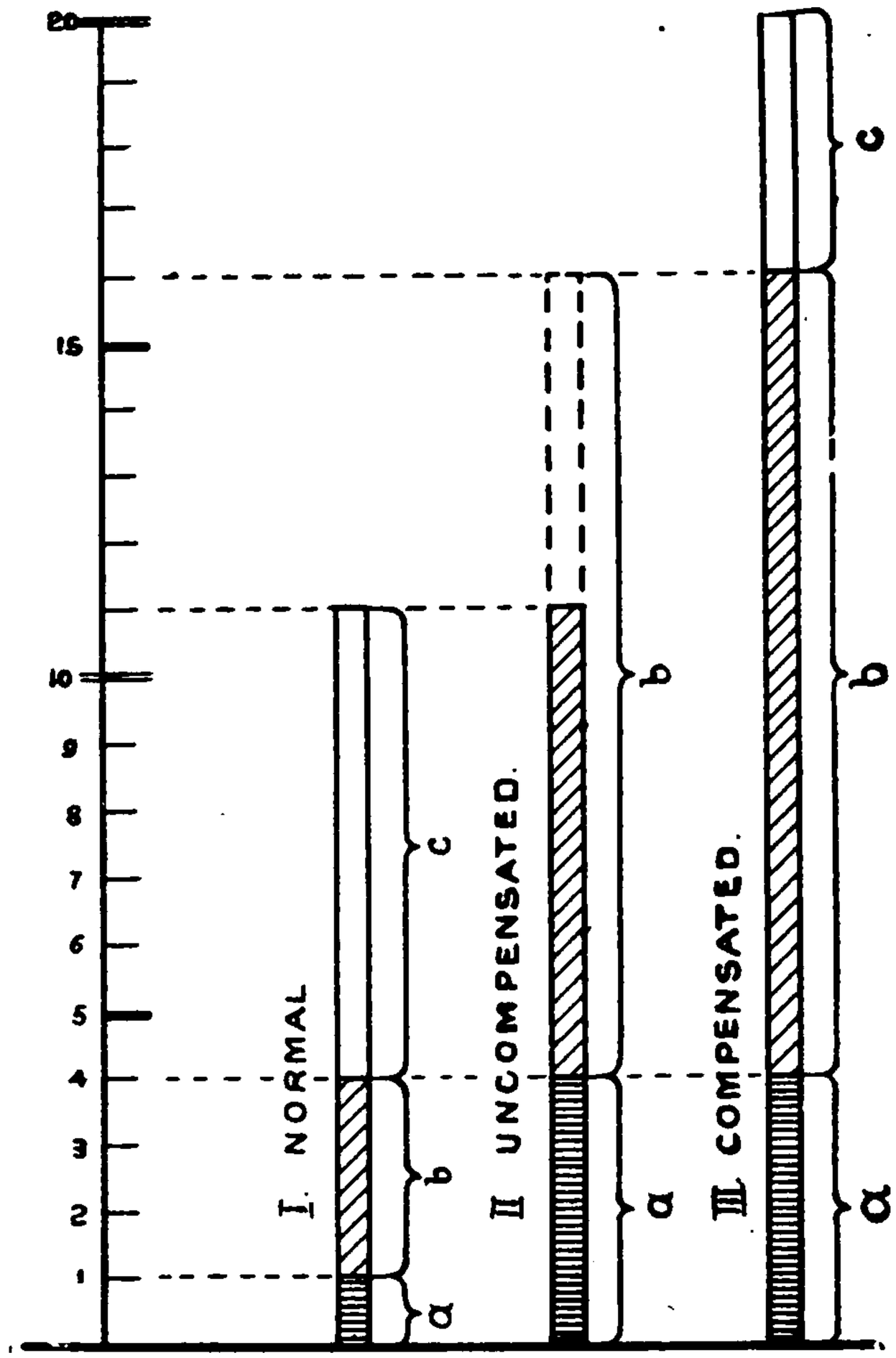


Fig. 54. Diagram showing dynamic conditions in valvular heart disease: A—force required at rest under conditions indicated, B—additional force demanded by moderate muscular work; C—reserve cardiac force above that needed for moderate work.

condition, the heart is said to be in a state of *broken compensation*. This state, that is, where the maximum force is in constant use, is revealed by such symptoms as edema, cyanosis, dyspnœa, heart pang or distress, rapid pulse, palpitation, sleep start, enlarged liver, etc.

Moderate muscular work demands four times the energy used at rest, and the total reserve power of the heart muscle is from

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

(diastole). It also shortens the systole and increases its force. The ice bag should be well wrapped to modify the intensity, so that the application may be prolonged. In some cases, the cold compress is to be preferred. While the ice bag tends to increase the force of the systole, it can hardly be said to come under the head of pure stimulants, since by its repeated use, the effects of over-stimulation are never seen. It always exercises a beneficial effect in aiding hypertrophy of the heart muscle, since by its shortening the systole and increasing the length of the diastole, the actual period of rest is increased. It may, therefore, be said to be a true physiologic measure.

3. Measures which Stimulate the Peripheral Heart, performing part of the work of the circulation, increasing its activity, and so aiding the central heart. In the chapter on the *peripheral heart*, we have discussed at length the physiology of the blood-vessels, their normal action, and the rationale of the measures used to increase this activity.

We need here only briefly summarize the facts already pointed out. Independently of the heart, the blood-vessels exert a pumping or propulsive action upon the blood stream.

Lauder Brunton[14] makes the following observation relative to this activity: "When working under Professor Ludwig in 1869, he directed my attention to the contractile power of the small arteries apart from any nerve center, and while watching their movements I have sometimes seen a regular peristaltic action take place, by which the blood was driven forward in the arteriole just as fæcal matter would be driven forward in the intestine."

"Franke discusses the various theories prevailing in regard to the functional importance of the peripheral blood-vessels. His conclusions reaffirm, he asserts, that the peripheral vessels have an independent pressure and suction action similar to that of the heart. This assumption is sustained by their anatomic structure, physiologic experiments, direct observation of the blood-vessels in living animals, and in certain pathologic conditions in man. At the points where there is the greatest resistance to the circulation, Nature has placed a system of

14 Therapeutics of the Circulation, p. 5.

especially powerful blood-vessels like a second peripheral heart, as in the portal and intestinal vessels. Compensation may fail from disturbances in the peripheral vessels as well as in the heart itself, and the peripheral system may compensate the heart at need; the vessels in the abdomen especially are the last resort of all means to maintain the balance of the circulation. These views, he considers, explain the beneficial effects of gymnastics, massage, and baths.'' [15]

In disease, as long as there remains any vasomotor control at all, the activity of the blood-vessels may be stimulated by applications to the skin surface. The condition of the blood-vessels to be sought in the treatment of valvular heart disease is that known as active dilatation, not only of the arterioles, but also of the other blood-vessels. It consists of an alternate contraction and relaxation occurring at regular intervals. It is, in short, a pumping action. It is often astonishing to note the amount of assistance rendered the circulation in this way, as shown by prompt decrease in the pulse rate following, or even during, some of the procedures listed below. These may be given separately, combined in one treatment or at different times during a course of treatment, as indicated by conditions in the individual case.

(*a*) *Massage*. Friction is perhaps the mildest of measures by which the peripheral circulation may be stimulated. It stimulates the arterioles and, by proper movements, the venous circulation is hastened. All the other procedures of massage are also vasomotor excitants.

The procedure of deep kneading accomplishes more than the other movements of massage. It acts upon the circulation in almost the same manner as exercise. The alternate compression and release of the muscles forces on their contained blood, so that the rate of flow is greatly accelerated. Lauder Brunton records [16] graphically the results of some interesting experiments showing the increase in the rate of venous outflow from muscles during and after massage. In some instances the rapidity was increased two or three times the normal rate.

---

15 Abstract in Journal of American Medical Association of article by M. Franke in Wiener klinische Wochenschrift, March 10, 1910, XXIII, No. 10, p. 347.

16 Therapeutics of the Circulation, p. 135.

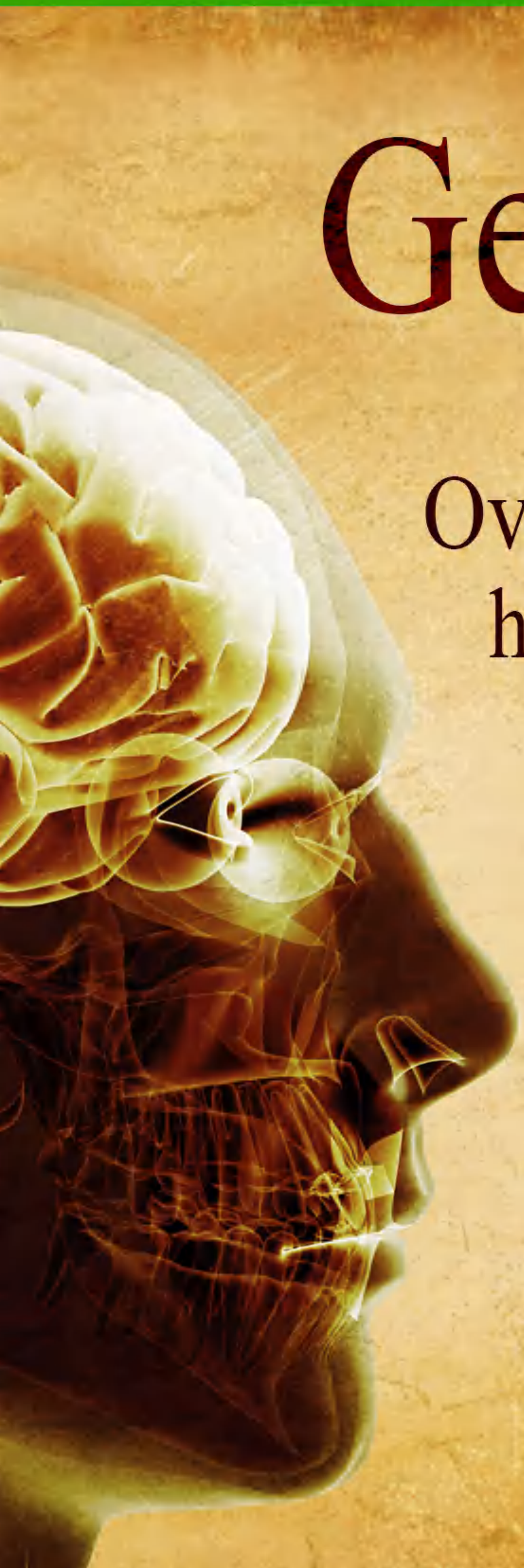
Mechanical vibration is quite similar in its effect to manual massage. Vibration, when properly given, is an excellent means of assisting the peripheral circulation, especially that of the feet and limbs. Vibration may also be given to the back and other parts, as indicated.

(*b*) *Hydriatic Vasomotor Tonics.* The cold mitten friction has the greatest range of adaptability in organic heart disease. It can be used in all stages from the inception of the acute endocarditis through all the varying conditions of established or broken compensation. This is largely due to the readiness with which it may be made a mild, medium, or powerful vasomotor tonic and stimulant. This can be accomplished by varying the temperature of the water used and altering the amount and vigorousness of the friction given. We have never observed, even after the most vigorous cold mitten friction, or its long use over a period of months, any overstimulation such as does sometimes occur with the effervescent bath. The cold mitten friction and ice bag can be used in the acute stage of endocardial inflammation, while it might be dangerous to use the Nauheim bath in this stage. There are many other hydriatic measures similar in effect to the cold mitten friction. Each has its advantages and special indications, as well as limitations. The following is a list of the more important and commonly used hydriatic measures in the treatment of organic heart disease: The salt glow; hot and cold to the spine; hot and cold douche to the spine, legs, and feet; the alternate hot and cold foot or leg bath. Brief fomentations followed by a brisk but brief cold mitten friction may be given to any part of the body as a means of stimulating the peripheral circulation.

(*c*) *Nauheim or Effervescent Bath.* The essential feature here is the chemical irritation of the skin produced by the carbon dioxide and salines with which the water is charged. Natural carbonated waters can be secured in only a few localities, but the carbonic acid gas may be produced artificially in any one of several ways. It powerfully stimulates the vasomotors, having, however, a cumulative action on the vasodilators [17] so that the heart is left without a resistance governor.

17 Hare—Practical Therapeutics.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

example, while the attendant resists, the patient [illegible] tracts the biceps, flexing the forearm. When the [illegible] been flexed, the patient contracts the extensors [illegible] attendant resists the movement. This is gone through [illegible] number of times for each group of muscles. While [illegible] ceeding treatment the number of movements and [illegible]

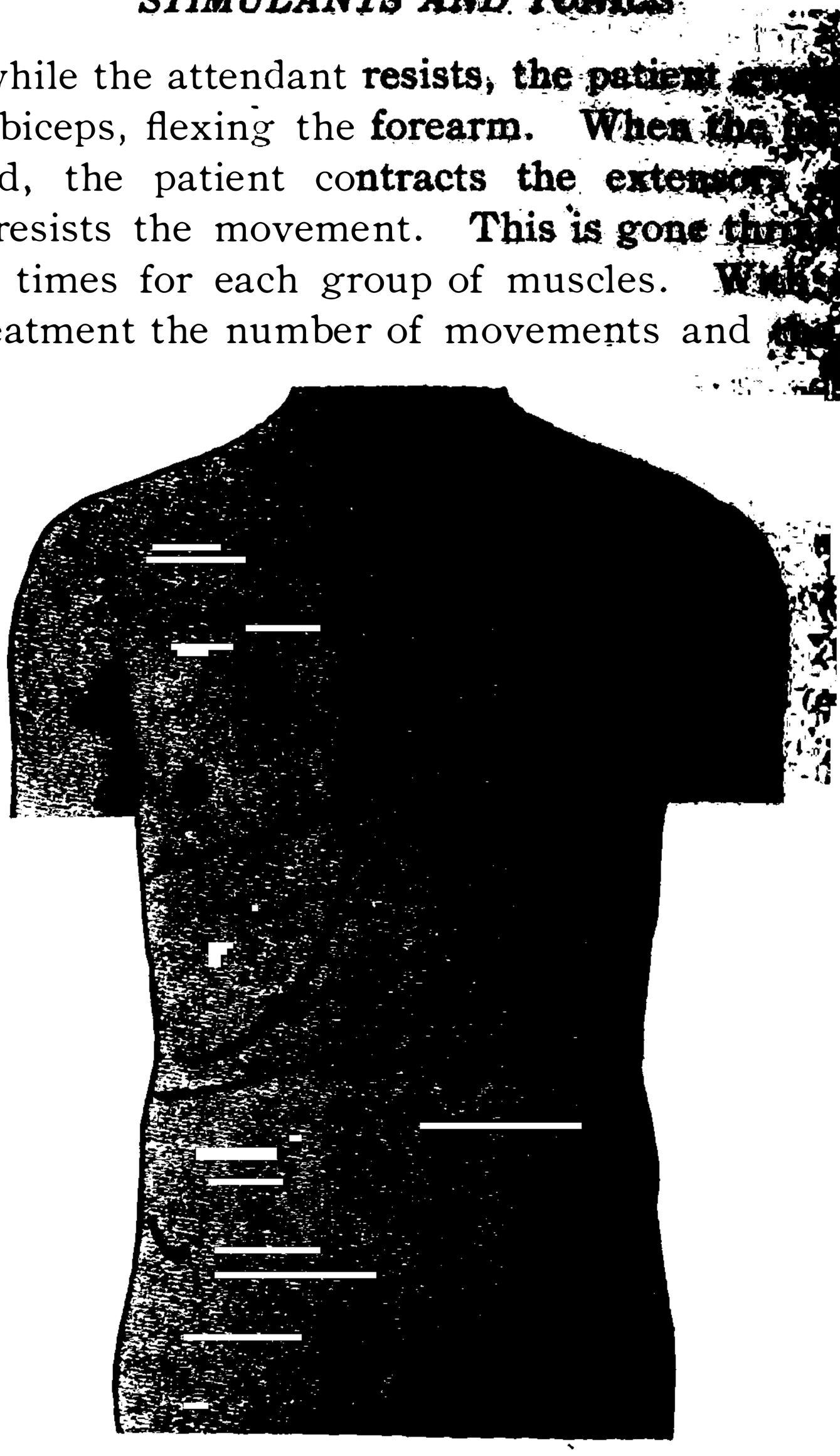


Fig. 55. A—border of cardiac dullness in a case of dilated heart, B—same after a single Nauheim bath, C—lower edge of congested (cardiac) liver, D—same after a course of tonic hydrotherapy.

of the resistance is increased.[18] The gradual contraction [illegible] relaxation of first one and then another group of [illegible] hastens the peripheral circulation and tends to induce the [illegible] of active dilatation of the blood-vessels. This treatment [illegible] not be applied in acute endocarditis, but is applicable in [illegible] chronic stage where compensation is not seriously broken.

18 For details see McKenzie—Exercise in Education and Medicine, p. 328.

(*e*) *Oertel Method.* General exercises, such as walking, use of the arms, etc., follow as a natural consequence of the method just described. As a system, the Oertel method consists in graduated climbing exercises, up hills of various grades and finally even mountain climbing. At first, the patient walks for short distances each day; and later, longer distances and up steeper grades. This is, of course, applicable only where a fair degree of compensation has already been established; never when the compensation is broken or in the slightest impaired. Where systematically followed for months or years, it has resulted in much good and will secure for the patient the maximum cardiac reserve.

These measures combined with careful diet regulation, fresh air, and sunshine will give results which often appear like a complete cure, but of course, do not remove the defect in the heart. At the beginning of the incompetency, the progress may be stayed for years. The promptness with which these measures act and their efficiency has to be seen to obtain a real appreciation of their value. For example, the ice bag to the heart, accompanied by a cold mitten friction, may reduce the pulse from 115 or 120 per minute to 100 or less within fifteen or twenty minutes. In case of a dilated heart, the cardiac dullness may decrease more than an inch in diameter and the apex retract half an inch or more toward its normal position following a single treatment. In case the valve is relatively insufficient, the murmur occasioned by this insufficiency may entirely disappear, whereas before treatment, it may have been considered to constitute a real organic lesion. The minor murmurs of the valves secondarily affected often disappear following a treatment of fifteen minutes with the ice bag to the heart and the cold mitten friction, or ten minutes in a Nauheim bath.

Contraindications. Extreme stimulants and excitants are contraindicated in organic heart disease, unless it may be in emergency. For this reason, the percussion douche to the chest, wet sheet rub, the cold plunge, and such measures should not be used. The use of electricity in any form may produce shock. The electric light bath is usually contraindicated or, if used at all, it must be in those patients which have acquired

a good degree of compensation, and then only for a [redacted]
All other extreme sudorific measures are contraindicated.

General Program

We have already outlined under the head of endo[redacted] treatment for the stage of acute inflammation. As [redacted] endocardial inflammation subsides, the patient may [redacted] daily or three times a week a light general massage [redacted] ing the chest. The ice bag should be applied to the [redacted] or five different times during the day, being kept in [redacted] twenty to thirty minutes each time. Once daily the [redacted] should have a treatment consisting of a combination [redacted] the following measures: Hot foot bath, fomentation [redacted] abdomen, hot and cold to the spine, cold mitten friction [redacted] cold towel rub. This tonic treatment is best given during [redacted] forenoon. The massage may be reserved for the afternoon [redacted] evening. If there is much restlessness or insomnia, it is [redacted] best to give a hot and cold foot bath just before retiring [redacted] ing this time the patient should be kept in bed; but when [redacted] pulse has become normal, he may change to the wheel [redacted] and later, be allowed about the room, walking a few [redacted] for short distances only. The pulse should become normal [redacted] fore any regular walking exercises are taken. The patient [redacted] now be given a salt glow, alternate douche to the feet and [redacted] graduated shower, etc. The Nauheim bath may be given [redacted] the temperature has been normal for a month or two. [redacted] should be followed by the Schott treatment, which at [redacted] should last only a few minutes and consist of mild exercise [redacted] Later this may be prolonged and increased in severity.

In case the patient comes under observation during the [redacted] chronic stage, with compensation broken, the treatment may [redacted] begun at this point or perhaps with milder measures. [redacted] resistant movements should not, however, be used during [redacted] stage of broken compensation. Care must be taken that [redacted] patient is not treated too frequently. This may often [redacted] necessary, but it will be found better to allow the patient [redacted] cient time for rest. Three treatments a day are usually [redacted] and only one of these should consist of the more vigorous [redacted]

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

The ice, having a greater reflex effect, tends to co
blood-vessels of the liver, while the hot application
effect chiefly in derivation. Alternating with this tr
the revulsive compress or hot and cold to the liver
used. The alternate douche to the hepatic region is
best measures that can be used. While acting somew
rectly by a derivative process, the hot and cold leg bath
found to be as efficient as the local treatment.

Acute Edema of the Lungs. This condition may co
cause of chilling and nervous shock. The heart be
gorged and the chambers dilated at the same time. The
should be immediately wrapped in a large blanket, the
legs being placed in hot water and an ice bag held aga
precordia. It is usually necessary for the patient to
The ice bag may be removed every three or four minu
skin being warmed by brisk rubbing. Another at
should apply to the spine a large fomentation, so as to c
entire length and breadth. When the skin is well redd
brief but very cold and brisk cold mitten friction should f
Another fomentation should be applied to the spine,
part may be dried well and covered with the blanket.
arm and leg should be treated in a similar manner, that
skin well warmed and reddened by a fomentation and im
ately followed by a cold mitten friction. Each part shou
thoroughly dried with a rough towel, and the drying fol
by friction with the bare hand until the part is again warm
red. The object to be obtained in this treatment is the dra
of the blood from the heart and lungs to the skin and ske
muscles. However, this can not be effectually done by
alone, but must be accomplished by what may be termed "
lateral fluxion," that is, the blood-vessels of the surface m
be stimulated to unusual activity, so that the blood will be
in the periphery. This not only acts powerfully, but leaves
bad after effects such as are frequently noticed when these co
plications are treated by digitalis, nitroglycerine, and stryc
nine. Neither are these latter stimulants able to accompli
the desired result in extreme cases. In a few hours the mo
rales in the chest, which can at first be heard at some distan

will have entirely disappeared. The finer crepitant rales which remain in the bases of the lower lobes should clear up in from one to three days.

Palpitation and Arrhythmia. These conditions are largely due to digestive disturbances, especially that form of indigestion accompanied by gas formation. The treatment should, therefore, be directed toward the relieving of constipation and decreasing of amylaceous dyspepsia. It may be necessary to avoid even moderate quantities of starchy foods unless most thoroughly dextrinized. Tachycardia is best controlled by the ice bag, cold mitten friction, rest, etc. Nervous disturbances, nerve fatigue, etc., are also responsible for temporary arrhythmia.

OBESITY WITH FATTY HEART

It is not safe to employ extreme sweating measures in obesity accompanied by fatty degeneration of the heart muscle. Consequently, the treatment of these cases at the hot springs is a dangerous procedure. They must be treated in much the same manner as valvular heart disease. The patient should be kept at rest with an ice bag over the heart for a considerable portion of the time. Beside this, the patient should be given cold mitten frictions, cold towel rubs, hot and cold to the spine, general massage; and later, the alternate douche to the spine and legs, hot and cold foot bath, wet sheet rub, etc. Treatment should be very carefully graduated so that the heart is not subjected to over-stimulation before it has sufficiently increased its strength.

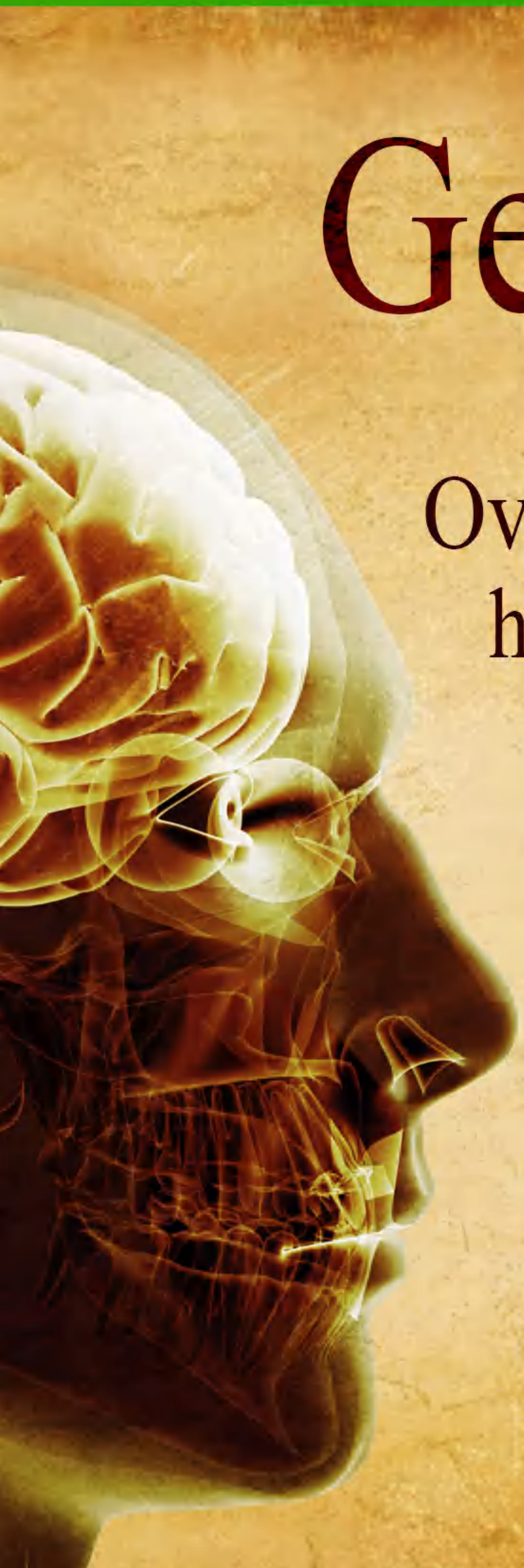
EXCITANT AND STIMULATING EFFECTS

In many emergencies it is necessary to employ extreme stimulating measures. These aim at the sustaining of vital activity in order to tide the system over a crisis, or until such time as the natural vitality of the patient comes to his assistance. Such measures are especially directed toward the heart, blood-vessels, and respiration. In collapse, surgical shock, drowning, and asphyxia, these measures are indicated. As we have noted many times, the greatest amount of assistance to

the heart can be given by vigorous stimulation of the peripheral blood-vessels. In addition to such measures, certain applications may be used which have a direct reflex effect upon the heart itself. The most efficient reflex stimulation comes through the accelerator nerves. Short very hot fomentations may be applied to the front of the chest, covering well the heart area. This should be continued from thirty seconds to a minute, and immediately followed by the rubbing of a cake of ice over the heart. The extreme change in temperature produces powerful stimulation. The part should be immediately dried, after which a second fomentation, very hot and continned for half a minute or more may be used, again followed by the ice rub. After three or four such applications, it is well to rub vigorously with the bare hand the skin of the precordia. These procedures may be given at the same time as artificial respiration.

A very efficient stimulating measure is the slapping of the chest with a cold wet towel. If this is done during the movements of artificial respiration, it should be given while the inspiratory movement is made. In the asphyxia of the new-born infant, thermic applications are indispensable. If slapping of the chest and buttocks does not produce respiration, it is well to employ the alternate hot and cold immersion. Two large dishpans will be found handy containers for the hot water and the cold water. The hot water must not be hot enough to produce a burn or even erythema. It must be of such a temperature as may be well borne on the back of the hand or the cheek. The cold water should produce decided excitation, but ice water should not be used. The child should be held in the hot water for ten or fifteen seconds, and then merely dipped in the cold water. It should then be returned to the hot for about the same length of time and again dipped in the cold. Another plan which has proven equally effective is rubbing the chest with a smooth cake of ice while the infant lies in the hot water. These procedures are usually the most effective stimulants that can be used. All other means of resuscitating the new-born have their place and applicability. The physician should not too readily become discouraged in working with an asphyxiated

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

alternate hot and cold douche to the feet. The ... may be accomplished by the sudden application of ... press to the lower abdomen or upper inner ... thighs.

Intestinal Stimulants

Intestinal excitation is indicated chiefly in ... There are a large number of measures which are ... laxed conditions of the intestinal musculature. ... should be put upon some regular program. This ... veniently embody several of the measures which are ... stimulating peristalsis. Among these measures ar... enema, cold enema, or alternate hot and cold rectal ... The graduated enema is an excellent means of accusto... patient to the cold enema. It is especially useful in ... patients who have acquired the enema habit. Of ... applications there may be employed fomentations to t... men, the revulsive compress, hot and cold spray dou... abdomen. These same measures may be applied to ... from the middle of the dorsal region to the sacral regi... alternate hot and cold percussion douche to the feet a... also tends to stimulate peristalsis. In atonic constipa... cold rubbing sitz is an excellent measure. It should l... two to four minutes and be followed by the alternate dou... the spine and abdomen. These measures should be car... selected and utilized according to the severity of the ... special attention being given to the cause. The above t... ments, except the hot enema and fomentations to the abdo... are not applicable in spastic constipation such as that ac... panying lead poisoning. In this case it is best to use fome... tions to the abdomen, the hot sitz, together with large w... enemata for thorough cleansing of the colon and relief of ... pain. Oil enemata may be given at night to be retained ... night or for several hours.

A number of other measures not hydriatic in nature may ... conveniently combined with hydrotherapeutic treatme... Among these are the following: Abdominal massage, spi... nerve stimulation, special exercises to strengthen the abdomi... muscles, vibration to the abdomen, faradic electricity to ...

abdomen and spine, also sinusoidal electricity and the Morton wave from the static machine. Some of these forms of electrical stimulation may be applied by means of a rectal electrode and an abdominal sponge. All exercises which strengthen the abdominal muscles should be utilized, such as walking, rowing, horseback riding, bicycling, etc.

Contraindications to Excitant and Stimulating Measures.

1. Old age.
2. Infancy.
3. Arterio-sclerosis.
4. Acute mania.
5. Tuberculosis (pulmonary).
6. Emaciation.
7. Thin diabetic patients.
8. Bright's disease.
9. Exhaustion from any cause.
10. Hemorrhage.
11. Severe coughing.
12. Asthma.
13. Emphysema.
14. Organic heart trouble.
15. Chorea.
16. Extreme neurasthenia.

CHAPTER XXI

SEDATIVE EFFECTS

MEASURES which reduce or check the over-activity of an organ or function are said to have a sedative effect. Since there are many organs and functions, one might so elaborately classify sedative effects as to prove confusing, and so lose the distinctive principles governing hydriatic sedatives. Any application must of necessity affect more than one structure, as we have learned concerning tonic measures; but we have also learned that every application has its predominating effect. For the sake of clearness we shall, therefore, here discuss only nerve sedatives—those measures which relieve irritation, nervousness, spasm and convulsions, and are conducive to rest, relaxation, or sleep. The *principal* sedative measures may be classified as follows:—

I. General Sedatives.
   1. Pure sedatives.
   2. Tonic sedatives.

II. Local Sedatives.
   1. For the relief of pain (analgesics).
   2. For the relief of paræsthesia.

The first (I) employs mild hypnotic, calmative, and antispasmodic means, and mild tonics almost entirely. The second (II) must, of necessity, employ extreme means, since pain and abnormal sensations can not be relieved by mild applications.

GENERAL SEDATIVES

1. Pure Sedatives: Temperatures at or not far removed from neutral.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

bral hyperemia. The pronounced sinking of the brain substance, the positive diminution of the respiration and heart beat, the weakening of the reflex excitability and of activity of the cerebral ganglia observed in trephined rabbits during the wet pack, combined with the positive diminution of the vessels of the pia mater, represent the fundamental conditions for physical calm and sleep. These are probably also present in man during the wet pack. Sleep is accompanied by a decided diminution of blood in the cerebral vessels; indeed, the latter has been accepted as an essential condition for the production of sleep. This may explain why the wet pack, properly applied, is a useful procedure in the insomnia of neurasthenics."

The cold sitz, cold coil to the abdomen, etc., produce sedation by reducing congestion of the sympathetic ganglia of the abdomen and pelvis. Fomentations to the spine withdraw blood from the spinal cord, and the heat is in itself relaxing and depressant. Heating compresses are mild derivatives and combine with this derivation a neutral temperature. All antipyretic measures are in the nature of the case antispasmodic and hypnotic, since they lessen toxemia and so relieve the nervous system. Cold sponging is sedative in both actual fever and feverishness. Hot sponging is usually most effective in conditions purely nervous. In acute mania the wet sheet pack is a most excellent means, and serves a double purpose in restraining the patient while applying the neutral temperature.

Indications for the Use of Pure Sedatives.

1. Insomnia.
2. Agitative neurasthenia.
3. Hysteria.
4. Mania.
5. Chorea and choreiform diseases.
6. Paralysis agitans.
7. Spastic spinal paralyses.
8. Epilepsy.
9. Locomotor ataxia (first stage).
10. Nervousness due to congestive headache.
11. Clonic and tetanic spasms from various causes.

Precautions. The personal factor or idiosyncrasy has much to do with the selection of a sedative treatment. If a patient has taken a dislike to a certain measure, it is likely to produce agitation rather than sedation. Sedative effects are likely to be transient, and so the treatment must be frequently repeated. With neurasthenie patients a treatment which may have given good results in a certain case may be robbed of its effect by some unusual occurrence which may seem trivial in itself, such as slight alteration in the manner in which it is given, or the changing of an attendant.

2. Tonic Sedatives. Insomnia and nervousness may be due to a lack of normal fatigue such as follows active work, especially out of doors. This is particularly true of those in sedentary occupations, such as professional, business, and office men. These persons may be of fairly good physique and health otherwise. It also occurs in enforced idleness, as after fractures, operations, etc., and in the case of chronic invalids. The rational treatment consists in the production of fatigue. Where possible, of course, exercise in the open air is the most efficient means of producing fatigue. Mild tonics are usually all that can be well borne. A few cases may be given even the most vigorous treatment. The following are the means most used as tonic sedatives:—

(a) Hot and cold to the spine.
(b) Wet hand rub.
(c) Cold mitten friction.
(d) Hot and cold spray, shower, or douche.
(e) Neutral faradic tub.
(f) Massage.
(g) Rapid faradic current.

The *indications* have been outlined above. Some of the *principal* conditions requiring tonic measures in order to produce sedation are,—

1. Insomnia.
2. Neurasthenia.
3. Splanchnic neurasthenia.
4. Chronic rheumatism.
5. Paralyses (flaccid).

LOCAL SEDATIVES

1. Analgesics (relief of pain). For the purpose of relieving pain, extreme hot or cold applications are absolutely essential. Just which shall be used depends upon the particular cause and condition in each case. Some aim at the cause and others at the immediate relief of the pain, where the cause can not be removed in a short time.

For the relief of pain, hot applications are usually employed. We say that heat has a specific pain-relieving effect. This is true; but it must be remembered that the relief of the pain is due to the production of definite circulatory changes which remove the cause of pain. In inflammatory states the cause of

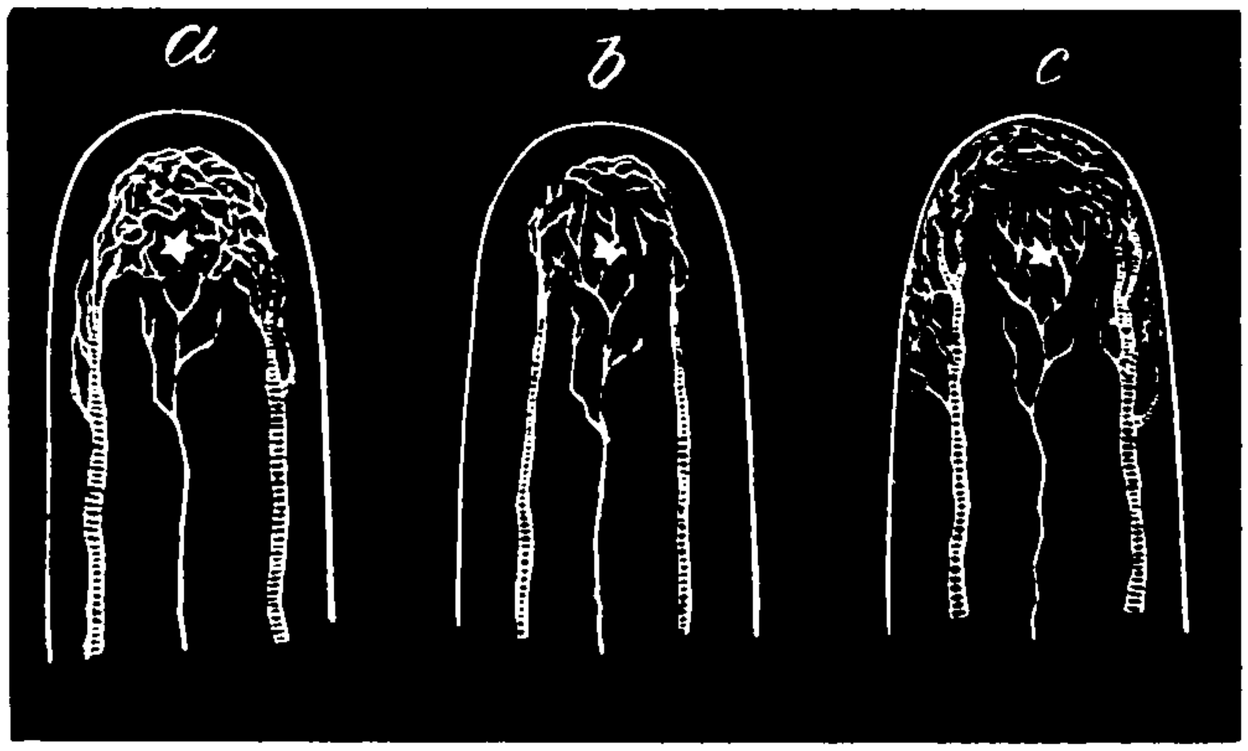


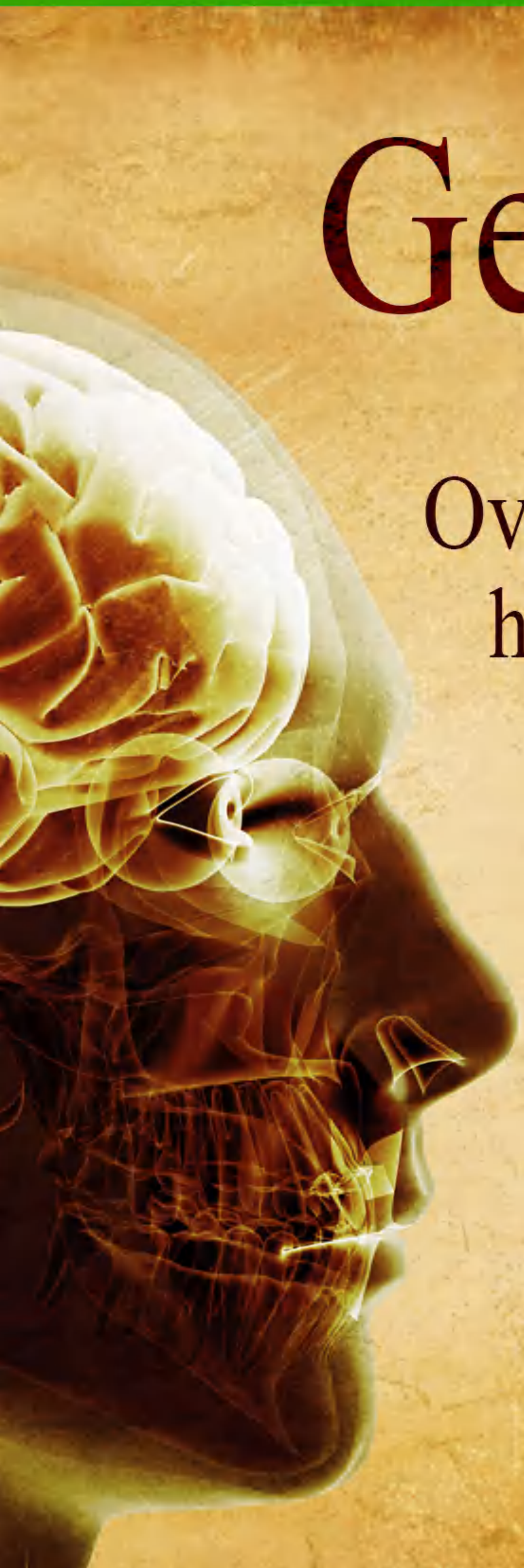
Fig. 56. Diagram to show the effects of heat and cold in lessening the pain of inflammation. (Brunton.)

pain is to be found in pressure upon nerve filaments occasioned by the congestion and heightened vascular tension. By derivation, heat reduces the congestion or it relaxes the tension, and thus the cause of pain is removed. When properly applied, cold may accomplish the same results. These principles are well illustrated in a diagram devised by Lauder Brunton.[2]

"The diagram (*Fig. 56.*) is supposed to represent the end of the finger. The small star indicates the point of irritation, *e. g.*, a prick by a thorn. The line in the center of each finger is intended to represent the nerve going to the injured part; and at the side of each figure is an artery and vein connected by a capillary network. In *a* the capillary network around the

2 Therapeutics of the Circulation, p. 174.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

(a) Ice bag.
(b) Immersion in cold water or ice water.
(c) Very hot sponging.
(d) Stupes.
(e) Weak chemical irritants, as neutral saline bath, bicarbonate of soda bath, saline sponging, alcohol rub, witch-hazel rub, menthol compress.
(f) Short sweating bath followed by tub shampoo and cool bath.

Indications:—

1. Pruritis from various causes.
2. Hives and heat rashes.
3. Formication.
4. Numbness and tingling.
5. Burning and smarting.

INSOMNIA

Baruch not inaptly styles the insomnia of neurasthenia an *opprobrium medicorum*. If one were to form an opinion from the bad effects of medicinal treatment and the frequency with which such treatment is used, the condition is indeed a discredit to scientific medical practice. The insomnia accompanying neurasthenia is due to a peculiar association of nerve exhaustion with hyperirritability. Doubtless nerve poisons from auto-intoxication play a large part in the causation. It would seem that congestion of the cerebral and spinal centers is also a cause of nerve irritability and sleeplessness. It is present in the majority of cases.

Because of the lack of nerve tone, general tonic treatment, as outlined for neurasthenia, is quite as essential as sedative measures which aim principally at the insomnia. In many patients, lack of normal fatigue is the chief, if not the sole cause. In such cases a mild or even a vigorous tonic treatment given about an hour before bedtime will produce the best results. With some persons brisk exercise to the point of moderate fatigue, taken just before retiring, will accomplish the same results.

We have principally to consider the insomnia due to increased

reflex excitability and unusual irritability of the nerve centers. The condition may be perpetuated long after removal of the first cause has been effected. This is especially true of those patients who "can't go to sleep" because of constant worrying about their inability to sleep. These persons are the bane of the neurologist's life. They are exceedingly introspective and often almost hysterical. In order to decrease reflex excitability it is necessary to remove as far as possible all external stimuli and at the same time decongest the spinal and cerebral centers.

For these purposes the ideal means is found in the neutral bath or pack. The body is enveloped in a non-irritating medium, the skin is slightly warmed and both the skin and the skeletal muscles relaxed. The temperature of the neutral bath should be not less than 94° F. and it is often better to use water a little warmer, say 96° or 97° F., since the warmth secures a full relaxation. The bath should be given in a quiet, fairly warm room and last for fifteen or twenty minutes to a half hour or longer. The disturbing effect of drafts may be avoided by stretching a sheet across the top of the tub. It is well to lower the temperature of the water two or three degrees just at the close of the bath. A patient should never be put into a neutral bath with cold feet. All parts of the body should be warm beforehand. The neutral bath or warm bath has an effect similar to the neutral pack in causing the sinking of the brain substance. The rationale of the wet sheet pack has already been explained. With many patients it is the most efficient means that can be used. By means of woolen blankets the covering of the pack can, by an observant nurse, be so regulated as to be kept constantly at the neutral stage. The feet should be more warmly covered than the upper part of the body. An exceedingly restless patient who has had but little sleep for weeks may sleep for hours or all night in a neutral pack.

For cases of agitative neurasthenia with insomnia we have recently found the oxygen bath more efficient than any other means. The temperature of the water should be 97° or 98° F. since the oxygen gas produces a slight anemia of the skin. For the same reason it is well to precede the bath by a hot foot

bath or fomentations to the spine. The bath itself lasts twenty minutes. No pour or shower or any other stimulating measure should be used after it. The bath should be taken in the late afternoon or early evening, never later than 7:30 P. M. It may be used daily, but it seems to give as good or better results administered three times a week only. The method and other effects are described under technique (*q. v.*).

The salutary effects of a drugless sleep are felt all the next day. There is not the usual after-tendency to drowsiness. The patient feels like himself. Quite the contrary condition follows the rest obtained by trional, the bromides and other hypnotics. The patient is likely to be drowsy during the succeeding forenoon. For this reason medicinal soporifics often defeat their own end. The patient must be kept awake during the daytime so that natural fatigue may result and thus the system demand rest and sleep.

There are many other measures which will be found useful. The milder types of insomnia respond very quickly to a set of three fomentations to the spine given just at bedtime. If thought best, this may be followed by a light rub either to the spine alone or to the body generally. The tepid spinal affusion has an effect similar to the spinal fomentation. It should be applied to the lower dorsal and lumbar spine. Some cases of insomnia seem to be due solely to cerebral hyperemia. This is common in brain workers. In these cases the feet are almost invariably cold. If the unbalance is extreme, a very hot foot or leg bath with cold to the head should be given for about ten or fifteen minutes. This should be followed by an alternate hot and cold percussion douche to the feet. Sometimes the latter will accomplish the results as well when given alone as following the hot foot bath. The vigorous fluxion produced in the feet by the combination of percussion with thermic stimuli results in more permanent cerebral derivation than a hot foot bath alone.

The moist abdominal girdle is an excellent adjunct to a sedative treatment. As shown by the experiments of Schüller, it lessens the filling of the cerebral vessels. It may be used after any of the treatments recommended above. It should be

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

once or twice a day and prolonged from twenty m
hour. The bath should feel warm, having a te
96° or 97° F. On the alternate days the oxygen b
substituted with good results. The wet sheet pac
be used, being kept at the neutral stage. It should
the same length of time as the bath, or the patie
allowed to sleep in it and be removed later with a wet
After some improvement has been secured, in a w
days, other sedative means which combine with
tonic effects may be used. These should at first be
such as a wet hand rub, tepid sponging, and the ne
affusion or pour. The heating abdominal compres
abdominal bandage may give good results. Fome
the spine, followed by the cold heating compress fo
twenty minutes is an excellent sedative. During
course of treatment, the neutral baths or packs shou
tinned. When convalescence is well established the c
friction, cold towel rub, graduated and alternate spra
used, also light massage. All of these measures
remedy the anemia; even the neutral bath is helpf
direction. The beneficial effects of outdoor life in the
sunshine and fresh air can not be over-estimated.

In case chorea is complicated by endocarditis, t
system of treatment should be followed as outlined for
docarditis of rheumatism. The only alteration neces
substitution of sedative treatment once or more daily
of the tonic treatment, such as the cold mitten friction
rheumatic endocarditis.

PARALYSIS AGITANS

While this is considered an incurable affection, the
may be much benefited and the progress of the disease
for quite long periods of time by general hygienic manag
combined with sedative and mild tonic hydrotherapy.
measures recommended above for chorea are all helpf
shaking palsy. Dana[3] especially recommends the lu
(neutral) bath and mild massage. Oppenheim[4] has

3 Text Book of Nervous Diseases.
4 Diseases of the Nervous System.

improvement following the use of the faradic bath. Vibrating chairs or vibrating machines adjusted to give a fine rapid movement may show good results. Outdoor life in the woods and country are especially beneficial.

SPASTIC SPINAL PARALYSES

There are a number of lesions of the cord which ultimately result in degeneration of the upper motor neuron, chiefly in the lateral column. The inhibitory control from the cerebral cortex being cut off, a condition of spastic paralysis results, *i. e.*, a loss of control associated with rigidity and spasticity of the muscles. Such a condition occurs after various forms of myelitis, especially a transverse myelitis, also in amyotrophic lateral sclerosis. If there is an acute onset as by trauma or inflammation, as frequently occurs in myelitis, the patient must be put to rest, either absolute or partial, according to the nature and needs of the case. In some cases gentle spinal extension should be used for some weeks and perfect quiet observed. In other cases, the patient may be allowed to move about the bed. During this time spinal fomentations may be applied twice daily, followed by the heating spinal compress. The warmth of the limbs should be maintained by the hot foot bath or hot water bottles. It is necessary that the patient be given tonic treatment to keep up the nutrition and invigorate the circulation. These must, however, be quite mild, such as the wet hand rub and moderately cold mitten frictions. Later, light massage to the limbs may be used.

As soon as the necessity for absolute rest is past, in the chronic stage when spasticity becomes marked, nothing has proven so helpful as the prolonged neutral or warm bath. In those cases in which cure is possible this measure is almost a specific. The patient should be made very comfortable in the tub by using a sheet hammock, rubber pillows, etc. The temperature of the water should be from 95°—97° F. It must feel slightly warm to the patient. At first the bath may be twenty minutes to an hour in length, gradually increasing the time up to three or four hours of continuous immersion daily. Even six hours in the neutral bath may prove beneficial.

Where the necessary facilities can be had, the continuous flowing bath is a most grateful substitute. The gentle motion of the water appears to add much to the effect. The salutary effects are manifest in a lessened degree of rigidity, the limbs become more supple and can be separated to a greater extent. In order to obtain any permanent benefit, the patient must submit to treatment for many months.

In the subacute stage, positive galvanism to the spine may be useful. During this time mild alternating hot and cold applications may be used to the part of the spine affected. Later in the disease, prolonged neutral baths give better results.

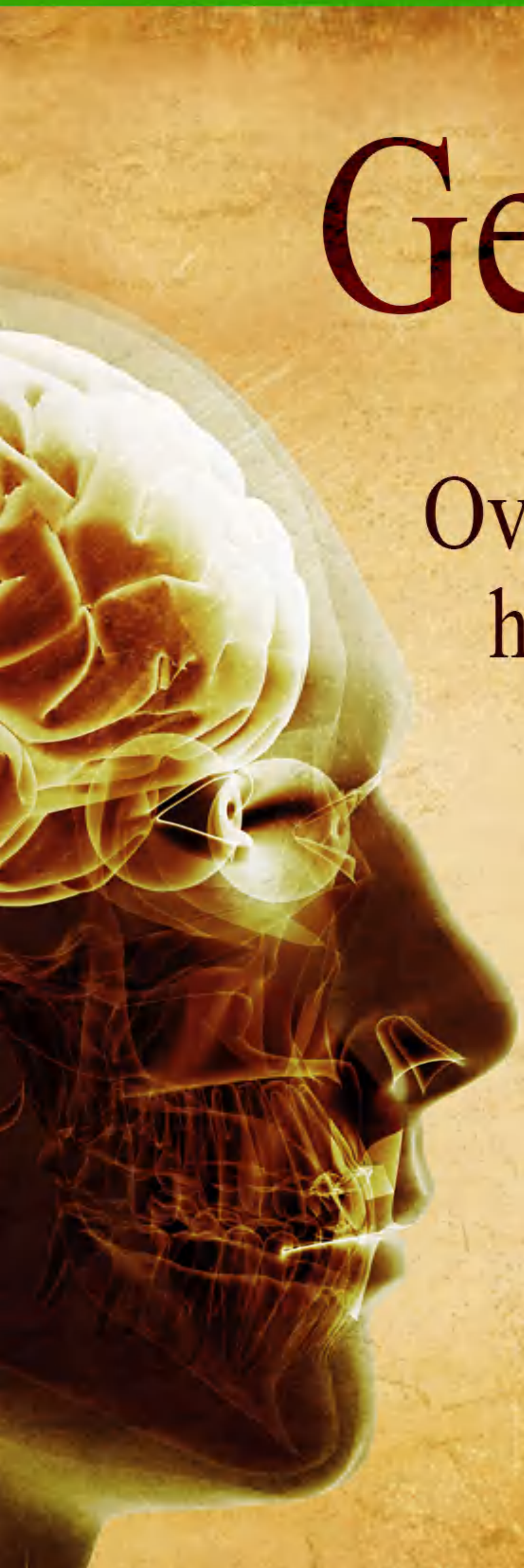
LOCOMOTOR ATAXIA

In the treatment of tabes dorsalis, we are concerned chiefly with the first two stages, the initial or pre-ataxic and the ataxic. In the paralytic or third stage, there is little that can be done except to make the patient comfortable and treat symptoms as they arise.

In the pre-ataxic stage the patient must be put to rest. This may be accomplished by restricting or prohibiting exercise. It is usually best to proscribe exercise altogether for a time. The wheel chair may be used or, if thought best, the patient may be put to bed for two or three months. Simple, regular habits are imperative. During the period of rest, the patient may be treated by fomentations to the spine, cold mitten frictions and the warm bath. Dana recommends that this latter be given for ten to twenty minutes daily and followed by a single cold pour to the spine and rubbing. The object of treatment during this stage is to keep up the patient's general nutrition and afford rest, both mental and physical, so as to relieve the tax on the spinal nerves.

If the progress of the disease can be stayed, the treatment outlined for the ataxic stage may be ventured upon, beginning mildly. The Fraenkel exercises may now be begun. These should at first consist of the more simple movements and the effort restricted to a few minutes. Later on, as coordination improves, they may be more prolonged and made up of more complicated exercises.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

and hyperactivity of the thyroid gland. The dis
described as hyperthyroidism. The thyroid is one o
less glands producing an internal secretion. The
cal nature of this secretion is not known. It is
closely associated with some iodine compound. It
that class of substances known as chemical messen
mones. It exercises a special influence over certain fu
In infancy the absence of the gland is marked by the
known as cretinism, in which both the mind and the
main in an undeveloped state. In adult life atrophy
of the gland produces the condition known as myx
cachexia strumipriva. In these conditions mental
below par, cerebration is exceedingly slow and all bodily
ments are deliberate and physical activity much de
The opposite condition, known as hyperthyroidism,
either by hypertrophy of the glandular tissue or by gi
doses of thyroid extract, produces a train of symptoms
opposite of the above. The patient is nervous, restle
able, and may be subject to insomnia. There is a fine
of the fingers when the hand is held away from any
with the digits spread. During the early part of the d
mental activity is excessive, ideation is rapid, and all the
functions are increased in acuity. If intoxication becom
tense, the pulse may be very rapid, running from 100 or
160 or more per minute; the skin is usually warm and
being covered with perspiration the most of the time.
blood-vessels are dilated. Catabolic changes are increased
hastened as shown by the fever and increase in the excreti
nitrogen. There is a feeling of languor, and asthenia may
come very marked. In the gland itself, the colloid materi
deficient in amount, there is an increase in the numbe
secreting cells, even to the filling of the alveoli with cells.
blood-vessels of the gland are dilated and may be increased
number. Later, the parenchymatous cells degenerate (c
lysis) liberating a large amount of thyroid secretion; the m
aggravated symptoms may be present while this is going o
The stethoscope applied over the gland frequently detects a s
tolic bruit. Owing to this increased vascularity and the hyp

trophy of the parenchymatous tissue, the thyroid is enlarged. Later in the disease the eyes become prominent, the lids are closed with difficulty, and the eyes feel dry. It is supposed that the exophthalmia is due to dilatation of the blood-vessels in the orbit.

It will be seen that these conditions set forth the necessity for treatment directed toward decreasing and depressing the activity of the thyroid gland. In the spontaneous cure of this condition, the colloid material increases in amount, producing pressure upon the parenchymatous cells, thus causing their atrophy. The increase of the fibrous stroma of the gland has the same effect. In these facts lies the rationale of the beneficial action of the X-ray. It has a specific effect in destroying or causing atrophy of highly differentiated tissue, while it favors the production of connective tissue. X-ray exposures should not be given so frequently as to cause unduly rapid disintegration of the secreting cells, in which case thyroid intoxication may ensue. The vascularity of the gland must also be decreased.

Albert Kocker makes the following statements:[6] "By reducing the hypertrophic thyroid tissue or reducing its blood supply, we reduce the possibility of too extensive reaction to the primary cause and also enable the gland to adapt itself to counteract new outbreaks of primary causes which a nervous subject can easily show.

"The fact that increased vascularization is indispensable for the development of the disease also proves that what reduces vascularization prevents its development."

At the same time it is necessary to slow the heart rate and restore the blood-vessels to their normal tone. While all cases will not respond to the same treatment, or even to different measures arranged in different ways, yet in general, the treatment should consist of the means making up the following program: An ice cap should be placed over the goiter almost continuously or for thirty minutes to an hour from two to five times a day. These cold applications reflexly contract the blood-

6 Surgical Treatment of Exophthalmic Goiter—Journal of American Medical Association, October 12, 1907, pp. 1242—1243.

vessels of the gland, thus decreasing its vascularity and the amount of blood in the gland. They also tend to inhibit or depress the glandular activity, decreasing the formation of the internal secretion. At the same time, an ice bag should be applied to the precordia in much the same manner and for the same length of time as the ice bag to the goiter. It may be found convenient to alternate these applications, keeping the ice bag over the goiter for thirty minutes, then applying it to the heart for the same length of time, then reapplying it to the goiter; these alternations being continued more or less during the entire day. The vaso-dilatation and warm moist skin require some treatment which will restore the vessels to their normal tone and check the over-activity of the sweat glands. This is best accomplished by the cold mitten friction. It should be given from one to three times daily. Many of the principles governing the treatment of organic heart disease are involved in the treatment of parenchymatous goiter. The cold friction, by restoring the peripheral vessels to their normal tone, assists the heart action and so reduces the rate.

The vascular conditions present in exophthalmic goiter and the therapeutic indications to be derived therefrom are very ably discussed by James Mackenzie[7] from whom we quote the following:—

"The essential features arising from the circulation in many cases of exophthalmic goiter, it seems to me, are the abnormal and persistent dilatation of the arterioles, and a heart acting with a force relatively great to the resistance opposed. These are indicated by the rapid and forcible pulse-wave felt by the finger, and the visible pulsation of the superficial arteries and the carotid. The corresponding sphygmographic features are a high upstroke and a rapid fall, so that the dicrotic notch is near the base line. The rate of the pulse may be greatly increased, up to 140 to 160 per minute. The same factors—the unusually forcible injection of the blood into the arteries of low blood pressure—are present in aortic regurgitation. Though the beating of the carotid is due to similar causes in the two cases, the low arterial pressure at the end of the diastole is

7 Diseases of the Heart, Second Edition, p. 133.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

true there is a natural tendency to recovery among young adults, nineteen out of twenty recovering without much treatment but rest. Hyperthyroidism beginning in persons from eighteen to twenty years of age is likely to run a course of three or four years and end in a spontaneous cure. Operative interference will be much less frequently necessary when these measures—rest, hydrotherapy, etc.—are given a thorough trial by those experienced in their use.

METHODS FOR THE RELIEF OF PAIN

Deep-Seated Inflammations

Those treatments which have already been outlined for the relief of congestion and inflammation in internal organs are also most effective in relieving the pain occasioned by the inflammation. In the majority of cases, derivation by collateral heat, together with cold directly over the part, is used to relieve the congestion and pain. In others, hot applications alone are used. This is true of pleurisy, in which cold applications increase the pain. In many cases the pain is relieved best by very hot applications applied directly over the seat of pain. It has already been mentioned that cold may be used over an inflammatory process in soft tissue, while in bony parts it is necessary to use hot applications directly over the seat of the pain. In the ease of osteomyelitis and usually in mastoiditis, cold applications or the ice bag applied over the inflamed part increases the pain. When an inflammation has gone on to the formation of an abscess, cold applications, especially the ice bag, have very little influence on the pain as far as relieving it is concerned, and may make it worse. Fomentations over an abscess may relieve the pain for a time, but this does not last as long as the relief afforded previous to the formation of the abscess.

In order to decrease the throbbing pain of an inflammatory process or collection of pus in the bone, it is best to apply the ice bag over the large artery supplying the inflamed part. The relief of the pain in this case is brought about chiefly by reducing the congestion. If, at the same time, a very hot fomentation is applied over the part, the effect is intensified by the specific pain-relieving action of the heat.

Superficial Inflammation

In the early stage of a superficial inflammation, a prolonged cold application is usually very effective in relieving the pain. This should be accomplished by immersion in cold water or ice water or by the use of the ice bag. Later on, it will be found that very hot applications more effectively relieve the pain. Either very hot fomentations or hot immersion may be used. Sometimes the neutral or warm pour is very grateful, there seeming to be an added effect from the affusion that is not obtained by quiet immersion. The production of fluxion by alternate extreme hot and cold immersion is productive of good results where there is not much throbbing pain.

Gastric or Duodenal Ulcer

It is often the case that the pain is worse during the time that there is little, if any, hemorrhage from the ulcerated surface. In case hemorrhage of any moment occurs, it is necessary to use some cold applications, such as cracked ice by mouth or the ice bag over the stomach. Otherwise, the pain is best relieved by very hot fomentations applied to the epigastrium, or the full hot trunk pack. These applications my be followed by either the moist abdominal girdle or by the heating wet sheet trunk pack. The effect of these applications is to relax the musculature of the stomach and so, by decreasing peristalsis, relieve the pain incident to muscular contractions.

Rectal Ulcer

The same principles apply here as above. The pain is most effectively relieved by applications which relax the bowel, thus decreasing the movement and consequent irritation of the ulcerated surface. This may be accomplished by the hot enema or fomentations. Usually the hot sitz bath is much more effective.

Hemorrhoids

Two different plans may be followed in relieving the pain occasioned by rectal varicose veins. Very hot applications are effective in relieving the pain, but these have no tendency to decrease the size of the hemorrhoids. On the contrary, they

may increase the dilatation of the veins, stasis of blood, and consequent pain. Of the hot applications which may be used, the very hot sitz bath is most effective. In case facilities for this are not at hand, fomentations may be used.

For permanent results, we prefer cold applications, such as the prolonged cold sitz bath, ice bag to the perineum, or the hot and cold perineal spray. To be effective, these treatments should be repeated once or twice daily for several weeks. The temperature of the cold sitz bath may be decreased as rapidly as the patient is able to bear it.

Neuralgia

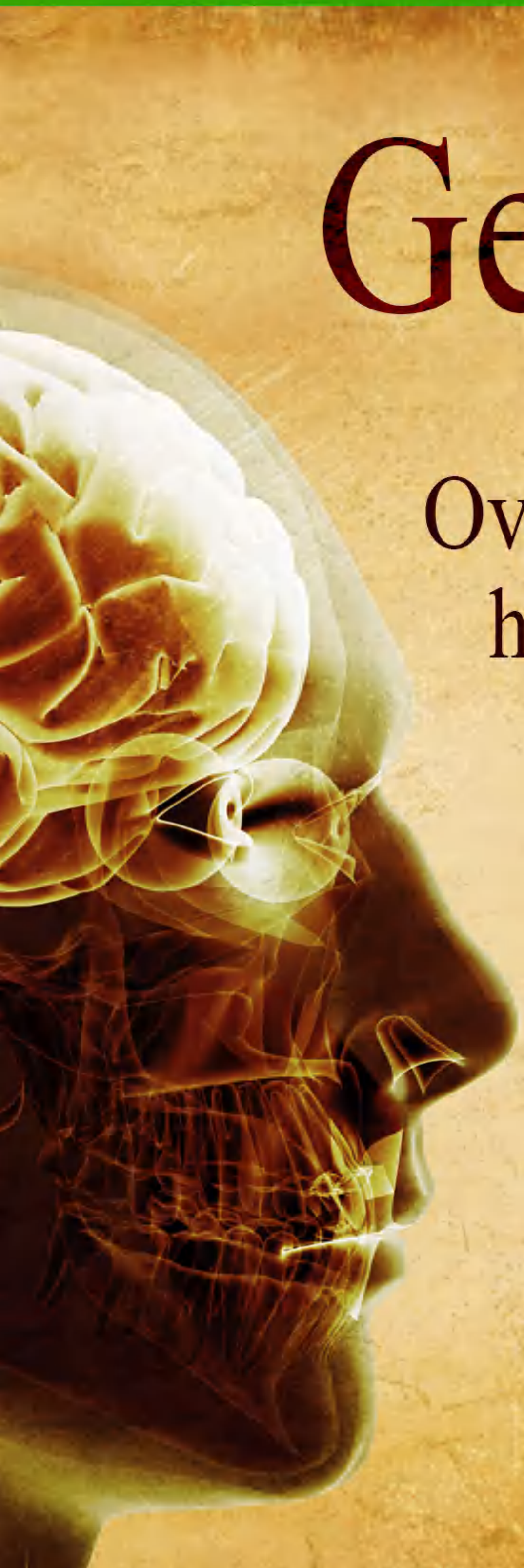
The classification of neuralgias into two types has simplified the treatment of this condition. Simple neuralgias, not due to pressure from tumors, exostoses, etc., we have classified as either toxic or inflammatory. By the term toxic, we designate such neuralgias as are due to rheumatic (uric acid) diathesis or some form of auto-intoxication. The essential element in the causation of this form of neuralgia is the circulation of toxins in the body, or the accumulation of toxins about nerve centers or nerve trunks.

By the term inflammatory neuralgia, we understand such conditions as are due to actual inflammation, usually of those inflammations as pass through the regular stages of an inflammatory process, from acute to chronic.[8] It may often be difficult or impossible, and in some cases, unnecessary to make these distinctions. It will be readily understood that some of the changes occurring in an ordinary inflammation are produced by the accumulation of toxins about nerve trunks. Local congestion of tissues occurs in both cases.

1. Toxic Neuralgia. Where there is a local accumulation of toxins about a nerve trunk, it appears that hot applications most effectually relieve the pain while cold increases the pain. Nitrogenous extractives and other nitrogenous toxins are soluble with difficulty. They are more readily dissolved in hot water. Since prolonged hot applications raise the local

8 The term inflammatory neuralgia is not intended as a synonym for neuritis, such as alcoholic neuritis, which latter results in nerve degeneration and gives the R. D. electric test.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

douche applied up and down the thigh over the sciat

In all cases of neuralgia, it is best to make repeat for the cause. While the majority of cases of facial neuralgias are not due to conditions which can be rem operation, yet this is sometimes the case. In this conn might be mentioned that operation for facial neuralgia majority of cases, not only a failure, but an actual det the patient. The relief of the pain is merely tempor because of shock, nerve exhaustion, etc., repeated render the patient much more susceptible to pain.

Myalgia—Lumbago

Lumbago is the most common myalgia, and is that t here. It follows colds and exposure to cold and d The actual cause and the morbid condition are not wel stood. The treatment differs considerably from other measures, in that the best results are obtained by t vigorous stimulation. We have obtained almost inva failing results from the use of large very hot foment the lumbar spine followed by the alternate hot and cold sion douche to same region and heavy massage or vibra the large lumbar muscles. About once a day the s static spray or short static spark may be used; also slow soidal or static surging to produce vigorous muscular co tions. In acute cases these treatments bring prompt and in chronic cases, in a few days or a week or two.

Tenesmus,—Rectal or Vesical

Pain in hollow muscular organs is chiefly due to the c tractions of the muscular tissue. This activity of the muscu wall increases the irritation arising in the mucous membra To relieve tenesmus of the bladder or rectum, we have fo the hot sitz bath the most effectual. The heat should be p longed a sufficient length of time to fully relieve the pa Only a brief dash of cold water should be given at the cl In some cases it should be omitted entirely. Large fomen tions or the hot hip pack may be used. In rectal tenesmus small hot enema or the starch enema affords relief. The one

should be given before fomentations or the hot sitz is applied. Cold applications stimulate muscular contraction, and hence increase the pain.

Dysmenorrhea

The condition here is somewhat similar to a tenesmus. It is most frequent in sharp anteflexions of the uterus, or may be occasioned by chilling. In order to afford immediate relief, it is necessary to relax the musculature of the organ. Cold causes contractions of the uterine muscle and so prevents the outflow of blood, while hot applications relax the muscle. Often simple fomentations are sufficient to afford relief. It may, however, be necessary to use the short hot sitz bath. No cold treatment should follow it. The application of the unwrapped ice bag to the sacrum may be used, accompanying some hot application to the feet and legs. It may be necessary to continue this twenty or thirty minutes. Hot applications in front may be used at the same time. The ice bag when applied anteriorally has the opposite effect, that is, it causes contraction rather than relaxation. Probably the explanation of the action of the ice bag to the sacrum in relaxing the uterus, as has been pointed out, lies in the fact that the posterior area is in less perfect reflex relation with the uterus; and for this reason, the reflex is easily paralyzed, the effect then being opposite to that which we usually expect from the ice bag. The use of the ice bag, however, is not as satisfactory as hot applications alone.

In addition to these measures, the hot enema and very hot vaginal irrigation may be administered prior to the use of the fomentation or hot sitz. In the case of suppressed menses with pain, when due to colds or exposure to dampness, it is well to use a hot foot bath; or better, hot leg bath, together with some local hot applications. This reduces the extreme pelvic congestion, renders the outflow easier, and so relieves pain.

Colic,—Renal, Biliary, Intestinal

The pain of renal, biliary, and intestinal colic is largely due to spasmodic contraction of the non-striped muscle of these parts. The irritation of the mucous membrane by the calculus stimulates the muscle to contract. To relieve pain from cal-

culus or the pain of intestinal colic, it is necessary to ... hot applications in order to secure perfect relaxation.

1. Renal and Biliary Colic. It is usually ... morphine is absolutely essential in these conditions ... use of the full hot blanket pack or hot trunk pack, ... may often be entirely dispensed with. If the pa... fully relieve the pain, a much smaller dose of mo... would otherwise be required, will be sufficient. T... should be wrung from boiling water, quickly spread ... bed over a dry blanket and as quickly as possible wra... the patient. A thin dry blanket may be used next t... if it seems advisable. It is not necessary to include ... in the pack. A hot-water bottle over the abdomen ... bags along each side of the trunk will help to maint... of the pack. In cases where the pain is not so seve... fomentations may be sufficient. The full hot tub b... good results in some cases. Wherever a hot applicatio... prolonged, cold compresses should be applied to the ... neck. No cold applications whatever should follow ... pack. Even a very brief application of cold may brin... pain.

2. Intestinal Colic. In regard to the causation of colic ... in hollow viscera and particularly the intestine and the ... to which it is referred, Mackenzie relates an interesti... perience with a patient on whom he performed an intesti... section without anesthesia. He says, "It turned out ... had expected, and I was able to break down numerous old ... recent peritoneal adhesions, to detach them from the liver ... bowel, to resect a piece of bowel and mesentery, and to ... these structures without the patient experiencing the slig... sensation. But I found that he occasionally groaned with ... when I was not touching him, and watching to see the cau... found that the upper part of the resected bowel, which was ... on one side in a warm aseptic cloth, occasionally passed ... peristalsis, contracting from a wide tube to a thick fleshy ... when this happened the patient groaned with pain. I as... him where he felt the pain, and he passed his hand invari... over the umbilical region. I started the peristalsis se...

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

warm pour to the burned part is very effective in relieving the pain. In extensive burns, it is often necessary to use a full immersion bath of either neutral or cool water. In the absence of facilities for this, a prolonged wet sheet pack, renewed by frequent sprinkling with cold water, may be used. With the exception of extensive burns or where the pain is unbearable, we do not greatly favor the use of hydrotherapy for the relief of the pain. The use of picric acid in saturated aqueous solution, followed by drying and dusting the part with stearate of zinc, has given such good results in the relief of pain, rapid dermatization, and healing that we use it as a routine treatment.

Sprains and Bruises

Hot applications, including fomentations and hot immersion, are common household remedies for the relief of pain occasioned by sprains and bruises. These applications do effectually relieve the pain and relax the muscles. In many cases, much better results may be obtained by the prolonged cold immersion. This reduces the congestion and helps to prevent excessive exudation of serum into the soft tissues about the sprained part. Along this line, we may draw a practical lesson from the method instinctively pursued by wild animals. They usually seek a stream or body of cold water and stand in it for hours at a time. Whatever method is used at first, after a day or two, it will be found advantageous to utilize alternate hot and cold applications, such as the hot and cold spray, pour, or immersion. These stimulate the circulation, thus hastening the absorption of the edema.

Fractures

There are two objects to be attained by hydriatic applications in fractures. These are the relief of the pain and the relaxation of the muscles. The limb should be enveloped in a large fomentation or immersed in very hot water. Care should be taken that a burn or blister does not result. These methods are in too common use to need extensive discussion. It will always be found easier to set a bone if the muscles have been thoroughly relaxed by the preliminary use of hot applications. The same principles apply to the reduction of hernia by taxis.

Headache

The subject of headache is such a large one that we can not enter into it here with any degree of completeness. A few principles of therapeutics will, however, be helpful in obtaining an understanding of the scientific application of physiologic therapy in the relief of this condition. In order to give these principles with the least possible repetition, we have adopted the classification of J. W. Shiels:—[10]

I. Functional headaches.
   1. Toxemic headaches (acute, chronic).
   2. Neuropathic.
   3. Reflex.

II. Organic headaches.

III. Circulatory headaches.
   1. Anemic.
   2. Hyperemic (active).
   3. Hyperemic (passive).

The above is very much abreviated. As given by Shiels, each division embraces from five to twelve or more individual items—the designations of morbid conditions, diseases, or pathologic states.

Functional Headaches. *The acute toxemic headaches* of acute infections, acute nephritis, uremia, diabetic acidemia, and acute drug poisonings, are best relieved by direct and vigorous treatment of the causative diseases. Ice bags to the carotids and to the base and vertex of the brain will help in relieving the accompanying congestion.

The *chronic toxemic headaches* of gout, rheumatism, constipation, torpid liver, and other diseases affecting metabolism, are also to be treated by treating the causative disease. But in these conditions it requires patient, persistent effort over weeks or months of time in order to produce satisfactory results. Out-of-door life, sunshine, and tonic and eliminative hydrotherapy will do much to remove the toxins by stimulating their oxidation. In addition to this, the measures recommended for neuropathic headaches will prove helpful in relieving or miti-

10 Shiels—California State Journal of Medicine, November, 1909, p. 401.

gating the distress until more permanent results can be secured by the removal of the cause. In some of these diseases the headache is made worse by an accompanying anemia or hyperemia, in which case the measures recommended below for these circulatory conditions should also be used.

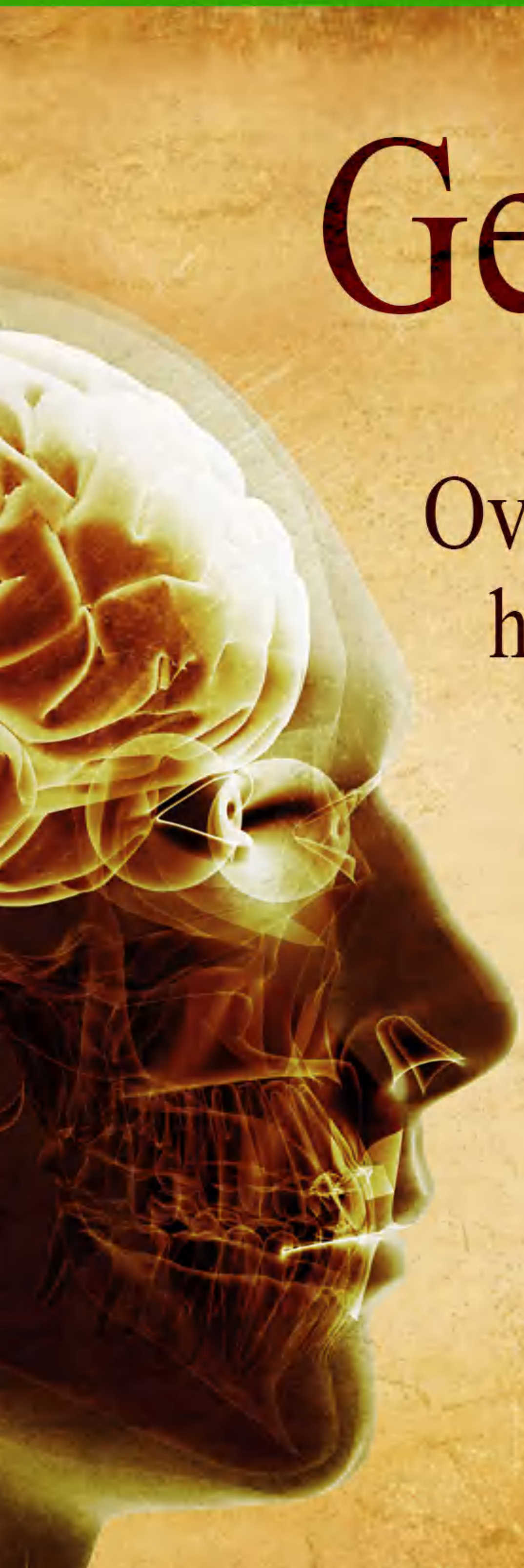
Neuropathic headaches are relieved with ease or difficulty according as they are of short or long standing, *i. e.*, as to whether or not they have become habits, appearing periodically. The neurasthenie headache usually responds to tonic hydrotherapy and out-of-door life. It is the form of headache which is most benefited by nerve pressure and nerve stimulation, spinal and head massage. It is in these neuropathic headaches that the osteopath acquires a justly obtained reputation for skill. However, any thoroughly trained masseur who has acquired a fair knowledge of anatomy can accomplish the same results without the recital of osteopathic dogmas with which the osteopath accompanies his treatment and by which he ties his patient to himself and his creed, greatly to the patient's detriment in case of other or more serious maladies.

Positive galvanism to the base of the brain or forehead, the positive static head breeze, or mild faradism to the head, are useful in certain cases of neuropathic headache.

Migraine, in our experience, is both toxemic (metabolic), hyperemic, and in many cases reflex (from the liver, stomach, or pelvis). It is most discouraging and unsatisfactory to treat as far as immediate relief is concerned. We have attained success only by a painstaking, diligent, and often prolonged search for the cause. If it is the expression of visceral gout, a rigidly purin-free diet with eliminative and tonic hydrotherapy, fresh air, and sunshine, continued for months or years, will ultimately result in a satisfactory cure. If reflex, the diseased organ or function must be sought out and treated. In all cases out-of-door work is one of the most beneficial means of treatment.

Organic Headaches. The headache of acute or chronic meningitis is to be treated in the same way as any headache due to acute congestion. The results are less satisfactory because of the high intracranial pressure. This factor may be

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

susceptible to hyperemia, the treatment should be [illegible] by the hot foot bath or hot leg pack and finished by [illegible] ten friction or the alternate hot and cold percussion [illegible] the feet, in order to prevent active congestion and [illegible] permanent derivation.

In connection with the subject of headache, we [illegible] frain from uttering a caution against the use of anal[illegible] is true that patients desire and often demand some [illegible] immediate relief. The relief received, the patient [illegible] reform, or in many cases no attempt at reform, and [illegible] causes are not searched out. The headache powder [illegible], on the next occurrence of the headache, and in a [illegible] time the habit is formed. It is then a much more [illegible] matter to afford temporary relief without the drug, [illegible] more difficult matter to effect a permanent cure.

The patient had better have suffered a little temp[illegible] comfort and pain, and have yielded to the physician's [illegible] starting a search for the cause and instituting a [illegible] treatment for its removal and the correction of the [illegible] habit. Practically all headaches other than organic, [illegible] some of these, may be entirely remedied by persist[illegible] painstaking endeavor.

CHAPTER XXII

EXPECTORANT EFFECTS

THERE is a definite series of changes accompanying the course of such conditions as colds, acute bronchitis, and simple croup. In all congestions and inflammations of the mucous membrane of the respiratory tract, the first change is that of intense congestion accompanied by swelling and turgescence of the membrane which is dry and much irritated. In this condition the cold is said to be "tight" because of the extreme irritation and the fact that the dry mucous membrane renders gaseous interchange difficult. Very soon there begins to appear a secretion of a thick tenacious mucus, accompanied by leucocytes. Later, the character of the secretion becomes altered. It is more fluid, contains frothy mucus and is more purulent in nature. When this change occurs, the cold is said to have "loosened." From this time on, expectoration becomes easier. During the first stage of the turgescence of the mucous membrane, there is no expectoration. Later, there is a very small amount of thick mucus which is expectorated with difficulty; and after the cold has thoroughly loosened, the quantity is very much increased, while the sputum is quite fluid.

In the application of measures designed to relieve these conditions, that which appears most rational is the hastening of this series of changes and relieving such symptoms as pain and cough. During the first stage, that is, the stage of congestion, and the second stage when there begins to be a secretion of thick mucus, it is necessary to decrease the congestion and increase the fluidity of the secretion. This is best accomplished by moist heat, such as the inhalation of steam, fomentations to the chest and throat, hot water drinking, the heating chest

pack or some general sudorific measure. The moist heat dilates the blood-vessels and stimulates the activity of the mucous glands, so that they produce a more fluid secretion. These measures should be continued with but little change until the symptoms are considerably ameliorated. Then after the first day it is best to employ alternate hot and cold applications, the revulsive compress, cold mitten friction, etc., in order to promote resolution, absorb the exudate, and prevent further excessive secretion. This is best accomplished by stimulating the circulation, so equalizing it that congestion of the pulmonary mucous membrane and the mucous membrane of the nose and throat is decreased. These measures also stimulate the depth of respiration and increase gaseous interchange. All sudorific measures ease difficult respiration and increase the fluidity of expectoration. The following are the most useful measures in the treatment of inflammations of the respiratory tract:—

1. Russian or vapor bath.
2. Inhalation of steam, plain or medicated.
3. Fomentations to chest and throat, or the hot trunk pack.
4. Heating chest pack and heating throat compress.
5. Hot water drinking.

Several of these may be combined: for example, fomentations to the chest and throat may be accompanied by hot water drinking, inhalation of steam, and the hot foot bath. Expectoraut effects are indicated in the following conditions:—

1. Colds.
2. Acute bronchitis.
3. Chronic bronchitis.
4. Asthma.
5. Croup.
6. Bronchiectasis.
7. Pulmonary tuberculosis.

Precautions. All of the applications recommended for expectoraut effects are of a more or less diaphoretic nature, and consequently the patient is predisposed to colds and there is greater liability to a return of the symptoms. For these reasons, it is best to employ such measures as the alcohol or witch-hazel rub

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

to the chest and neck. This should be continued until the harsh, brassy cough gives way to free and easier expectoration. When this occurs the dyspnœa and cyanosis will be relieved. The inhalation of medicated steam is a great aid in the treatment. Special inhalers may be provided (*Figs. 57 and 58.*), or an ordinary tea-kettle or basin may be utilized for the production of steam which may be conveyed to the patient by means of an inhaling funnel or mask. The drinking of some hot liquid will increase the sweating and hasten the loosening of the secretions.

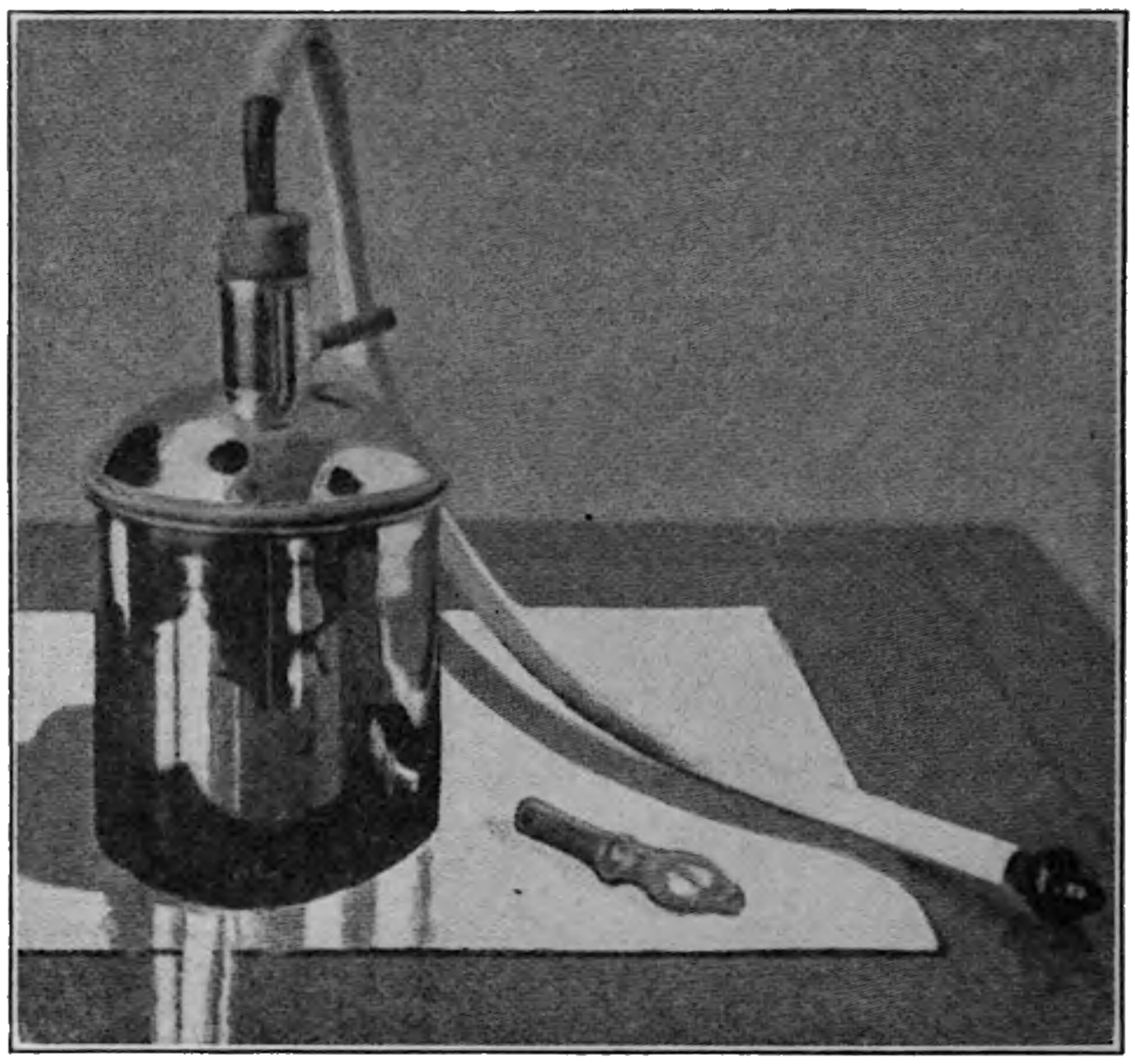


Fig. 57. Inhaler for medicated steam. (Kellogg.)

The heating compress or the moist chest pack should be applied after the fomentations and left in place from thirty minutes to two or three hours. The child usually falls into an easy sleep following such treatment. In some cases it may be necessary to dispense with the moist inside part of the chest pack, using only the dry pack.

ASTHMA

The treatment of the asthmatic paroxysm by means of hydrotherapy is a disappointment, and this in spite of the fact that by a more or less prolonged course of hydriatic, dietetic, and climatic treatment, very severe cases of asthma of long standing are almost completely cured. Permanent and very decided re-

sults are obtained in cases that submit to treatment for a sufficient length of time. Hydriatic applications, however, may be made to assist in relieving the patient during the paroxysm. Two objects are to be attained,—the lessening of the dyspnœa and facilitating expectoration. These may be accomplished by some mild sweating treatment, fomentations to the chest, or the inhaling of medicated steam. As soon as the patient breaks out into a gentle perspiration, the dyspnœa begins to lessen.

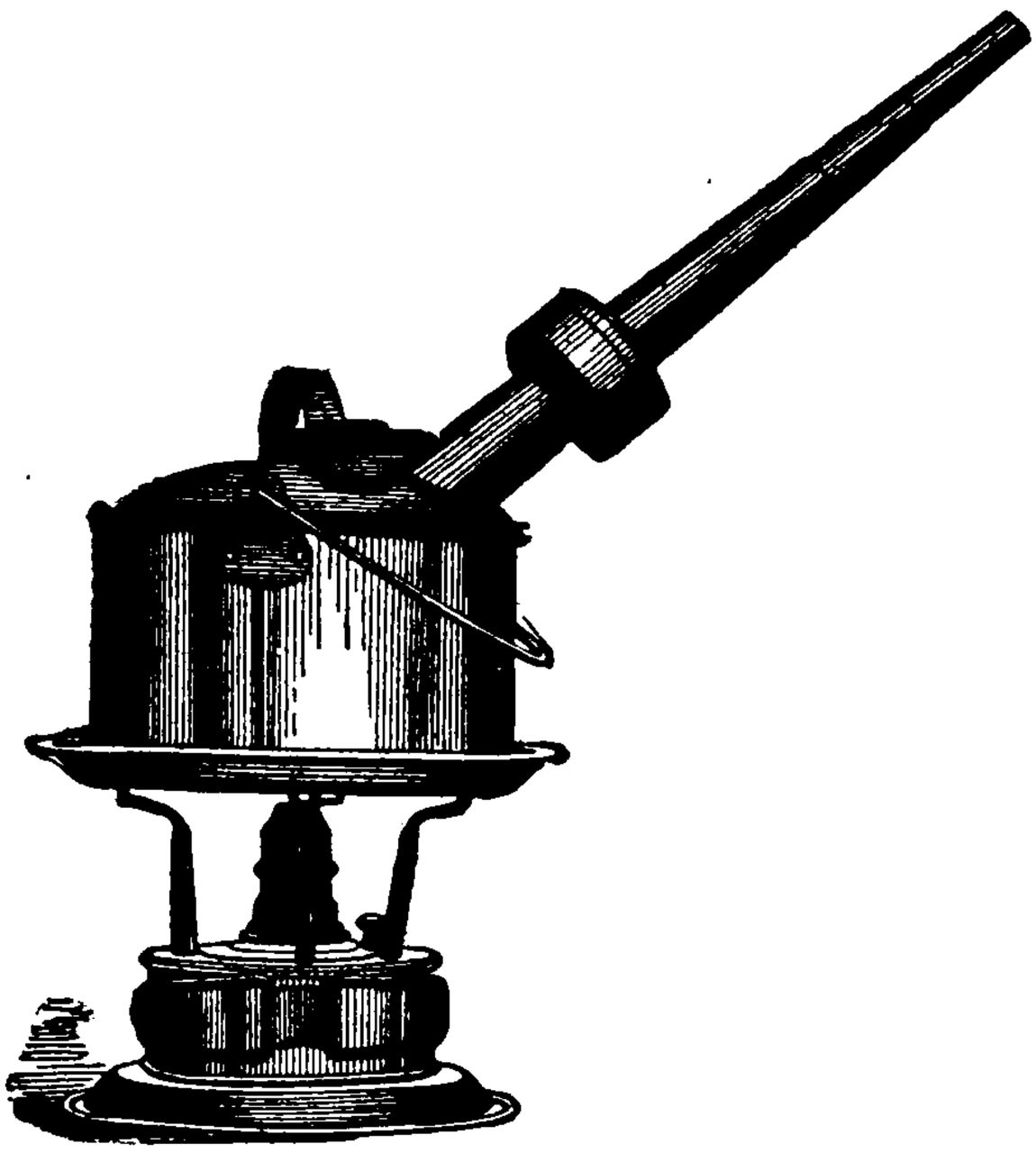


Fig. 58. An improved croup kettle. (Dieffenbach)

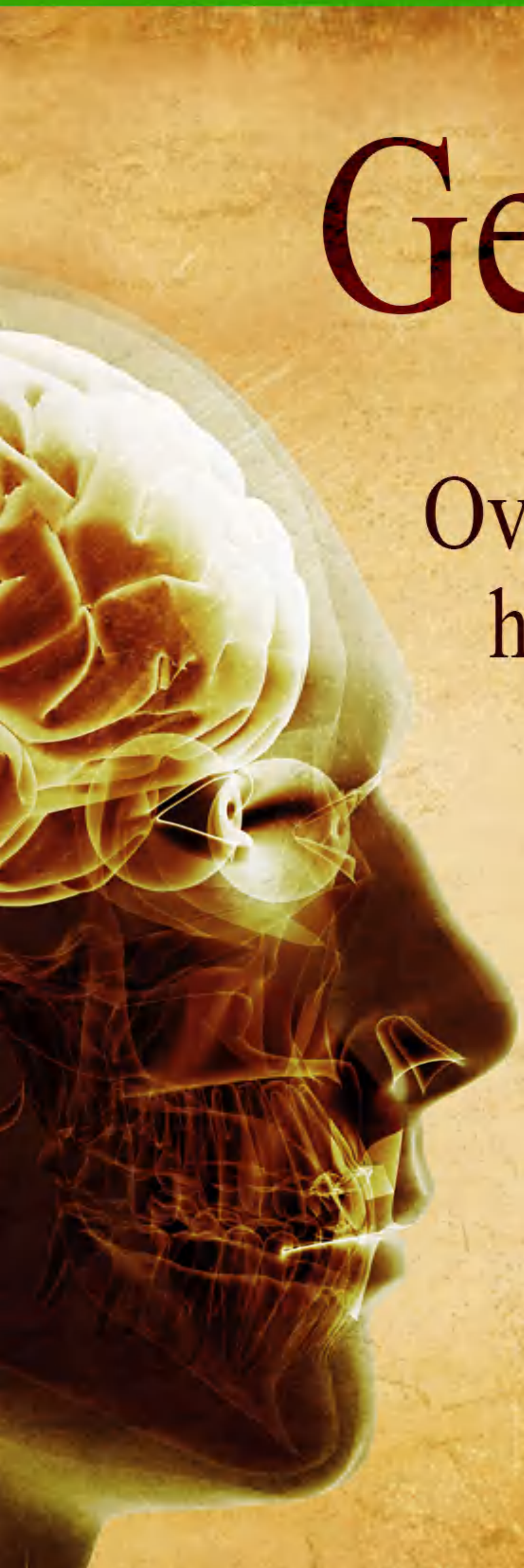
CHRONIC BRONCHITIS

This condition is treated in much the same manner as any chronic inflammation. The results to be obtained are: First, relief of the cough; and second, lessening of the amount of expectoration and facilitating its expulsion. The patient should be given a definite program of treatment, such, for example, as the following: Hot foot bath, together with fomentations to the chest and the cold mitten friction; also fomentations or revulsive compress to the abdomen, revulsive compress to the chest, hot and cold to the spine, cold towel rub, salt glow. It is usually best to have the patient wear some form of a dry chest pack. All of these measures stimulate the circulation, reducing

the venous stasis in the lungs, and promote resol… fact that the circulation in the lungs is more rapid … crease the amount of the secretion. The patient's g… resistance is raised by such a course of treatment.

The digestion requires special attention. "Stom… is not a bad name for many cases of chronic bronch… the indigestion, auto-intoxication, and sluggish condi… liver are very largely accountable for the excessive … If the patient may be induced to give up all complicat… desserts, meats, rich and highly seasoned foods, and li… self to a very simple diet, the condition will yield to t… much more readily. The same is true of bronchial asth… astonishing are the results obtained in both these dis… rigid dietetic regulation, accompanied by general toni… ment, that, although requiring a long time to produc… seem almost miraculous.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

8. Dry pack.
9. Electro-thermal pack.
10. Heating wet sheet pack.
11. Hot spray or douche.
12. Hot leg or foot bath.
13. Hot sitz bath.
14. Fomentations to the spine.
15. Hot water drinking.
16. Hot enema.

Each measure has its own range of applicability adaptability to the needs of the individual case. local and milder measures have a wide range of The more extreme and general heating treatments ha contraindications which must not be disregarded. applications should usually follow sweating treatme main effects of diaphoretic applications are as follows:

1. Increase perspiration (water chiefly).
2. Increase catabolic changes (spoliative or reducing)
3. Increase elimination of toxins through the through the kidneys indirectly by relieving these orga overworked or congested, thus making more efficient th which is done. In health, diaphoretic measures do not i the amount of urine and may considerably decrease it, b all conditions where there is lessened functional activity o kidneys, diaphoretic measures tend to produce diuresis hasten the elimination of toxins through that channel.
4. Increase the activity of the sebaceous glands and general, thus improving its nutrition.
5. Relieve internal congestion.
6. Decrease dropsical effusions.
7. Prepare the patient for cold treatment by promo ability to react.

There are a large number of conditions in which diaphor measures are indicated. In a few diseases the most vigor sweating treatments may be used with great benefit. Below given a list of diseases and morbid conditions which requ special diaphoretic treatment. Very vigorous means may used in all but the first three.

Indications for diaphoresis:—

1. Icterus.
2. Systemic poisoning (toxemia).
3. Internal congestions.
4. Secondary syphilis.
5. Obesity.
6. Acute rheumatic fever.
7. Gouty rheumatism.
8. Gout (podagra).
9. Bright's disease, acute and chronic.
10. Uremia.
11. Eclampsia.

Contraindications to *extreme* sudorific measures.

1. Asthma.
2. Organic heart disease.
3. Emaciated rheumatics and diabetics.
4. Sunstroke and heatstroke.
5. Pulmonary tuberculosis.
6. Asthenic fevers.
7. Icterus.
8. Emaciation and exhaustion.
9. Old age.

DIURETIC EFFECTS

We have previously shown the close connection existing between the functions of the kidneys and skin in diseases of either of these organs. Above is given a list of the various sudorific measures. All of these treatments are beneficial in conditions of defective kidney activity. It has long been known that nephritis and diseases of metabolism, closely associated with the functions of the kidney, are benefited by free diaphoresis. In these diseases all brisk sudorific measures indirectly increase urinary secretion. This is probably due to the fact that renal congestion is lessened, the stagnation relieved, so that while there is less blood in the kidneys at any one time, the rapidity of the renal circulation is increased. The secretion of urine is therefore more efficient and the quantity of the watery and solid constituents is increased. The increase in

urinary solids is due not alone to stimulation of the renal epithelium by a quickened circulation, but also to heightened metabolic changes occurring in the tissues themselves. The stimulation of the general circulation and especially of the hepatic circulation and of the liver cells, produced by sweating treatment or accompanying the reaction to cold treatment, has been shown to increase the toxicolytic powers of the liver. Toxemia is thus lessened in a very direct manner. The blood being less toxic, irritation of the renal cells is decreased and the work done by the kidney is more efficient.

The following are the principal diuretic measures which are useful in kidney insufficiency and allied conditions:—

1. Full blanket pack.
2. Electric light bath.
3. Russian and other vapor baths.
4. Hot air baths.
5. Full warm tub bath.
6. Water drinking (especially with above).
7. Cold (or hot and cold) douche to lower sternum and lumbar spine (entire width of back).
8. Cold heating trunk pack or the rubbing wet sheet pack.
9. Fomentations to lumbar spine.
10. Intermittent or continuous proctoclysis with warm physiologic salt solution.

Indications:—

1. Bright's disease, acute or chronic.
2. Uremia, eclampsia, and other toxemias.
3. Acute suppression of the urine.
4. Ether and post-operative nephritis.
5. Ptomaine poisoning.
6. Poisoning by lead, turpentine, alcohol, etc.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

pack. The full hot bath and the mud baths commonly used at hot springs may be used. These do not, however, have any advantage over the first three measures mentioned.

The patient should have one prolonged sweating treatment daily. It is often necessary to finish with a very short cold spray. This should not be greatly prolonged for the reasons above mentioned. The patient should take as much vigorous exercise as possible. Heavy massage may also be used. It is needless to say that the following of such a program will result in weakening the patient, as well as in reducing the weight. These measures will all fail unless the diet is reduced, especially as regards the total number of calories. As soon as the patient returns to his usual habits of inactivity and over-feeding, there will be a prompt gain in weight which will replace all that has been lost. Extreme sweating treatments do, however, materially reduce the weight and, by guarding the diet and encouraging exercise, the loss in weight may be quite permanent.

ICTERUS

It is usually impossible to employ prolonged or extreme diaphoretic treatment in this condition, but free perspiration should be encouraged, since by increasing the elimination of bile through the sweat, it relieves the nervous irritability and aids in relieving pruritus. Local hot applications are illy borne because of the extreme sensitiveness of the skin. The electric light bath is a very efficient means, since its heat is evenly distributed. The drinking of much water is an essential for both free diaphoresis and diuresis.

SYSTEMIC POISONING

In many conditions in which toxic substances circulate in the blood and lymph, free diaphoresis materially hastens their elimination. Such substances may be produced by auto-intoxi-. cation from intestinal sources, or faulty metabolism. General poisoning may result from the ingestion of ptomaines, lead, mercury, alcohol, etc. In some cases, vigorous diaphoresis is necessary; in others, only mild diaphoresis with copious water drinking should be used. Because of the weakness and debility

resulting from the poison, extreme sweating measures can not be used. A short electric light bath is often all that is necessary. Renal elimination should be hastened by free water drinking.

INTERNAL CONGESTIONS

The use of sudorific measures in relieving congestion of the viscera has been considered elsewhere, especially in connection with inflammations and diseases of the kidneys. It is not possible for an extreme congestion to exist in the internal organs while the skin is red and congested, as occurs in a sweating treatment. But in order to more permanently relieve the internal congestion, it is necessary that the blood be retained in the skin. This is not accomplished by the hot alone, but can be by the reaction hyperemia resulting from a cold friction. The principle of these effects has been considered in connection with the subjects of derivation and fluxion. The relief of visceral congestions by general sudorific measures is indicated in acute nephritis, eclampsia, uremia, pulmonary congestion, acute pleurisy, and the early stages of many infectious diseases such as influenza, measles, scarlet fever, etc.

GOUT AND GOUTY RHEUMATISM

General Consideration

The literature on the purin diathesis is most voluminous and much of it unreliable; there are, however, some important facts regarding purin metabolism that have been sufficiently well proven to allow of their being used as a foundation for the basic principles involved in the treatment of these conditions. We can not here attempt anything like a complete consideration of this question, but merely point out those facts which seem to us to be of importance in determining the treatment. There seem to be three causes for the accumulation of basic purins and uric acid in the system. These are: First, excessive ingestion of purin-containing foods over long periods of time; second, defective and deficient xanthin oxidation and uricolysis; and third, decreased elimination of purins because of kidney insufficiency.

To provide a diet free from purin is not difficult, and so the removal of this first cause is a comparatively easy matter. To remedy the second is, however, a more difficult matter. It has been shown how applications of both heat and cold accomplish a quite thorough xanthin oxidation, *i. e.*, a change of the basic purins to uric acid. This change of basic purins to uric acid is a distinct advantage, as uric acid is less irritating to the renal epithelium than the bases. "Mammals form uric acid only from the purins and have the power of destroying some of the uric acid formed. This uricolytic power is relatively weak in man."[1]

Nucleoproteids are converted into free purins and these, in turn, are changed into uric acid by the loss of nitrogen and the addition of oxygen. "Wiechowski has particularly studied the enzyme concerned in the destruction of uric acid by the tissues, and the fate of free uric acid in the body. This uricolytic enzyme, which has been appropriately called uricase by Batteli and Stern, is an oxidizing enzyme, acting best in experimental digestions when a lively current of air is running through the digestion mixture, and which seems not to be present in the blood plasma and tissue fluids, but only in the cells. It acts rapidly and with striking effect, for active organ extracts are sometimes able to destroy quite considerable quantities of uric acid in a few hours; for example, one gram of powdered tissue, dry weight, can often destroy totally 0.1 gram of uric acid in four hours. Unlike the enzymes of autolytic disintegration of tissues, uricase is not inhibited by the presence of an excess of serum. Another interesting feature is that this enzyme acts reversibly, or at least tissue extracts which destroy uric acid with a current of air running through, *soon build up the uric acid again when the air is shut off*."[2]

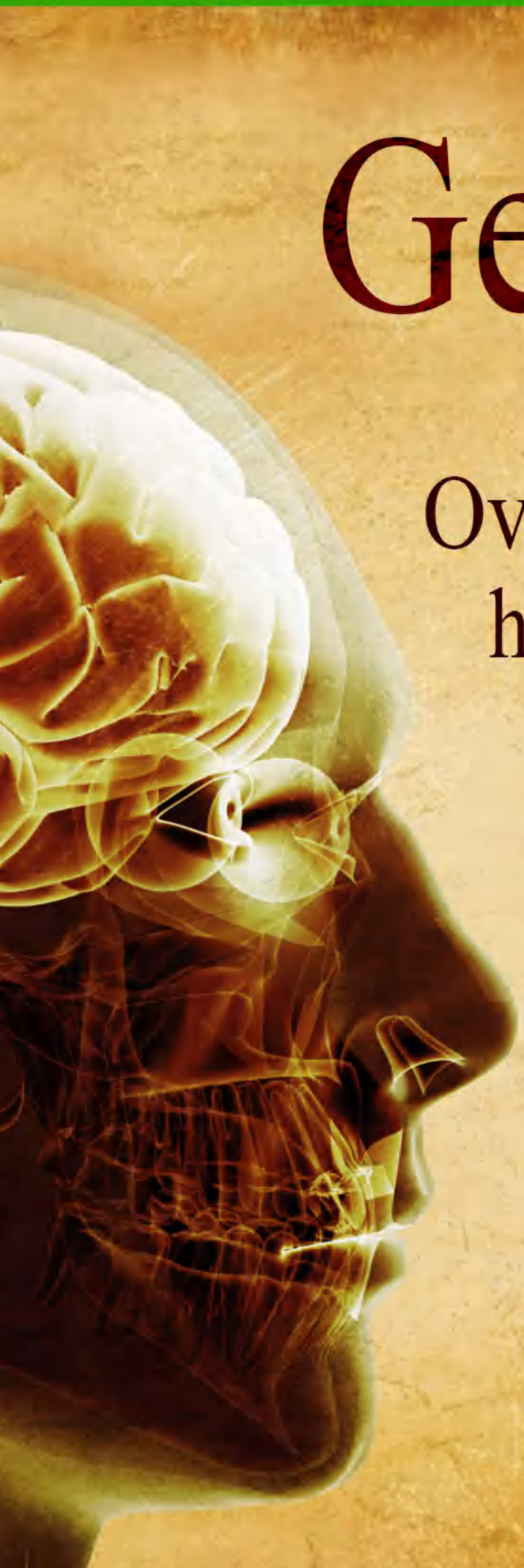
The above facts show the benefit to be derived from hydrotherapy in stimulating the circulation, increasing the oxygen-carrying capacity of the red cells, and increasing oxidation in the body tissues. Out-of-door life in the fresh air and sleeping

---

1 H. G. Wells—Trans. Chicago Pathological Society, May 1, 1909.

2 Editorial in Journal of American Medical Association, October 9, 1909, p. 1191; see also The Oxidases, Bulletin No. 59, p. 103, of Hygienic Laboratory, Public Health and Marine Hospital Service of the United States.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

"On the result of an analysis of about two score of the so-called mineral waters, the Bureau of Chemistry of the Department of Agriculture has recently issued a circular of inquiry, the essential features of which I give herewith. It has been found that nearly all 'lithia waters' either contain only spectroscopic traces of lithium (unweighable quantities in from 2 to 4 liters), or contain less than one part per million (approximately 0.05 grain per gallon) of lithium."

Along the same line we quote[6] the following from Bunge:—

"If it be desired to prevent the formation of uric acid sediments, or to dissolve concretions that are already formed, by the administration of alkalies, it is more sensible to advise the use of fruits and potatoes than to order alkaline mineral waters, the continued use of which may produce disturbances which we are unable to estimate. Because the combination of uric acid and lithia is more soluble in water than its combination with soda or potash, it has been thought necessary to treat the uric acid diathesis with a few decigrammes of carbonate of lithia, or even with mineral waters containing one centigram of lithia to the liter. This naive idea simply implies ignorance of Berthollet's law. We know that in solutions of bases and acids, every acid is distributed to all the bases in proportion to their quantity. It follows that only the very smallest portion of uric acid will combine with the lithia, the largest proportion combining with the preponderating quantity of soda, which we introduce as chloride of sodium. The largest proportion of lithia will reappear in the urine, united with the chlorine of the chloride, with sulphuric and phosphoric acid. There will be no increase in the solubility of uric acid."

Treatment

Purin diathesis, true gout, and allied conditions, such as the myalgias, lumbago, the visceral forms of gout, etc., are usually treated by extreme diaphoretic measures. It must be confessed, however, that the majority of rheumatics are not able to stand such treatment. Only those who are obese or of more than average weight can stand extreme sweating measures. It is

6 Physiological and Pathological Chemistry, Second English Edition, p. 322.

for these reasons that many a rheumatic patient leaves a course of baths at the hot springs in worse condition than when he began. Many and many are the patients that year after year visit the various spas of this country and Europe, deriving each time only a temporary benefit. For this, there are two reasons: All are given the same routine of hot baths, regardless of the individual conditions and needs. Obese or emaciated, they are all treated alike. Second, there is a failure to eliminate from the diet all purin-containing foods and reduce to a minimum the proteid intake. Chittenden has shown that a daily ration containing 35 to 60 grams of proteid is not only compatible with perfect health, but also conducive to gain in muscular capacity, increasing the endurance to prolonged muscular effort and lessening fatigue. In gout and gouty rheumatism the proteid should be reduced to the least amount compatible with the actual need of the body for nitrogen. As pointed out by Garrod, every particle of food not absolutely needed for the nourishment of the body merely nourishes the disease. One can not hope to cure disease unless the cause is removed. In the purin diathesis, the two chief causes are over-feeding and under exercise. The over-feeding is in the line of heavily proteid foods and foods containing purin. These must be eliminated from the diet, if great benefit is to be derived from treatment.

For practical purposes, we must divide gouty rheumatism into two classes, *viz.*, obese rheumatics and emaciated, anemic rheumatics. In the first class, sweating treatment may be used with benefit when properly combined with tonic measures. In the second class, extreme sweating treatment is not permissible.

Rheumatism with Obesity. Those patients who are well nourished may be given a thorough sweating treatment daily. Any of the sudorific measures recommended in obesity are serviceable. The Turkish bath, Russian bath, electric light bath, full superheated dry air bath, hot blanket pack, sweating wet sheet pack, or electro-thermal pack, are all applicable. Their effects may be greatly enhanced by free water drinking. The mineral waters possess no advantage over any pure water. The beneficial results are derived from the free perspiration

and diuresis it induces. It thus affords ample solvent for the increased nitrogen excretion. F. Umber[7] claims that alkaline water has the opposite effect; also that the blood of gouty patients is able to dissolve larger proportions of free uric acid than it ever contains. He declares that none of the alkalies or mineral waters have any specific influence on the purin metabolism in gout and that the propaganda for the "lithium content," etc., of springs should be abandoned.

Tonic measures should not be neglected. The strength should be maintained and the circulation stimulated. All hot baths should be followed by some form of cold treatment. These may at first have to be mild, but obese patients stand cold treatment well. The alternate hot and cold percussion douche is an excellent means. It serves as a massage, stimulates the vasomotors, and restores the tone lost because of the hot bath. It should be applied especially to the spine and legs and should consist of from three to five complete changes from hot to cold. The patient should be dried from the cold and may either rest or take exercise after it, according to the conditions of the particular case under observation. Individualization is the life of therapy no less with rheumatism than with other diseases. Light or heavy massage may be given. The massage douche is highly recommended by some. It possibly possesses some advantage over the percussion douche. The Turkish shampoo is an excellent means of combining massage with vigorous sudorific measures. Other tonic applications may be used, such as cold affusions and general sprays and showers. Later in the disease, the wet sheet rub may be used to advantage.

Rheumatism with Emaciation. This condition is doubtless in some cases the direct result of "hot springs" treatment. Hot treatment must be used with much caution. The vigorous sweating treatments are never to be employed if the patient is under weight. Local hot applications are permissible and a mild sweating treatment once a week may in some cases be ventured upon. Hot applications to the swollen joints, as fomentations, local hot air baths, superheated air (*Plates XV and*

7 Therapie der Gegenwart, February, L, No. 2., pp. 73—120.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

XVI.), or local electric light bath should be followed by a tonic friction. At first this may be a wet hand rub with tepid water, then with cold water and later, the cold mitten friction. These frictions should be applied to the muscular portions of the body, the swollen joints being avoided. The joints should be enveloped in heating compresses or packs wrung from cold water. These should be thoroughly covered with several layers of flannel or absorbent cotton, if necessary, in order to exclude the air. The effect may be increased by counter-irritants or anodynes. After a time the alternate soft spray douche may be applied to the joints and the body generally. When convalescence is well established, the patient should be given daily some general tonic treatment with only short preliminary hot applications.

In true gout, *i. e.*, where the disease is localized in the metatarso-phalangeal joint of the great toe, the tonic measures outlined for gouty rheumatism must be used in the interval. Only hot applications can be made to the foot during the paroxysm.

At first the patient suffering from rheumatism will complain some of increased stiffness and possibly pain in the joints after even a mild cold friction. This should not deter the physician from following the plan outlined nor cause discouragement on the part of the patient. If much complaint is made, the alcohol rub may for a time be substituted.

Faradization of the joints by the rapid faradic current helps to relieve the pain and the annoying paresthesias that keep the patient awake. Gentle massage of the muscles and rubbing to the spine are helps in treating the insomnia. The myalgias such as lumbago may be treated as recommended elsewhere. In lumbago, however, the most vigorous hot and cold percussion douche to the back should be used, followed by heavy massage or firm deep vibration to the large muscles of the back. These relieve the pain as milder measures will not.

In some cases of rheumatism, notably where the patient is bed-ridden or must be closely confined to the wheel chair, it is best to follow a somewhat different plan than that outlined above. In these cases; only mildly hot local applications, such

as the fomentation, radiant heat, and the hot foot bath should be used. The usual regime of cold treatment should be omitted and its place taken by carefully applied but thorough massage. This massage should include special attention to nerve stimulation; spinal and abdominal movements. The use of faradic and sinusoidal electricity for the same purpose is an addition of distinct advantage.

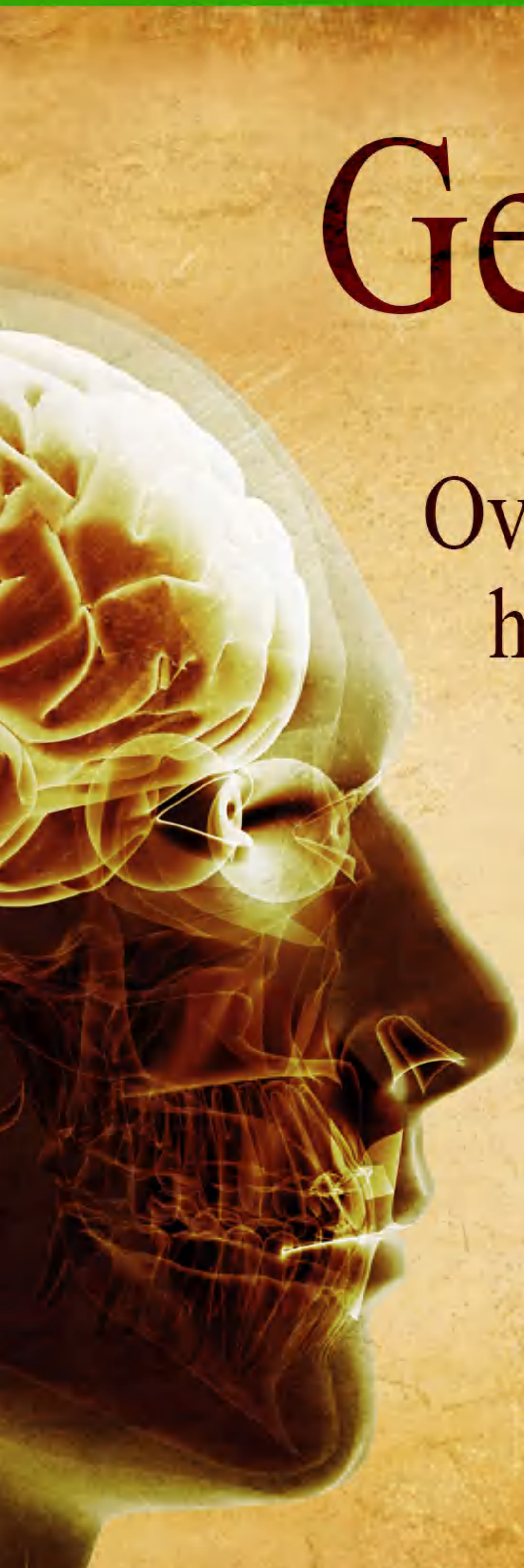
In all cases of chronic rheumatism, special attention must be given to the alimentary tract and to the digestion. Modern investigations into the contributing causes of chronic articular rheumatism are turning more and more to alimentary stasis, intestinal infections, and auto-intoxications for an explanation of the pathogenesis of metabolic forms of chronic articular rheumatism. In some of these cases the purin diathesis doubtless has nothing to do with the disease or at most plays only a minor part. The routine use of gastric lavage and copious enemata for a limited time may be productive of excellent results. These treatments must be thorough to be effective. Purin accumulation through defective xanthin oxidation and very limited uricolysis are a part of this auto-intoxication, and are surely to be traced to an overworked and functionally deranged liver as one source of their occurrence.

BRIGHT'S DISEASE

Diaphoretic measures are valuable in both acute nephritis and in the various clinical and pathological varieties of chronic nephritis. It is hardly necessary for our purpose to discuss the structural alterations occurring in the kidneys in Bright's disease. Only in acute nephritis is there hope of any marked restoration of the normal structure. However, the functional perversions may to a great extent be corrected. The alteration of function which is the chief, if not the sole cause of the various clinical manifestations of nephritis, is the renal impermeability and insufficiency in the elimination of nitrogenous wastes and salines. There is also an abnormal permeability to albumen and, in some cases, to water, notably so in the interstitial variety of chronic nephritis.

In interstitial nephritis and the kidney of arterio-sclerosis,

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

chlorides or nitrogen in the diet. The full warm bath frequently increased the elimination of sodium chloride two or three times the usual amount. In one case, increase in the nitrogen and sodium chloride of the urine occurred without increase in the total amount of urine and continued for three days after the treatment.

Relative to the relation of the two crystalloids—glucose and sodium chloride—to dropsy and diuresis, some interesting facts have been pointed out by Starling. While the presence of unusual amounts of glucose in the circulating fluid induces diuresis at the expense of tissue fluids, the ingestion of much salt does, under certain circumstances, tend to increase tissue fluids and limit diuresis, producing a "water-logged" condition.

"If a solution of 30 grains of glucose in about 30 cubic centimeters of water be injected into the jugular vein, the first effect is a great increase in the volume of the circulating blood, brought about by the osmotic attraction of water into the vessels at the expense, first, of the tissue spaces, but ultimately of the tissue cells. The consequence of the hydremic plethora thereby induced is increased circulation through the kidneys and increased output of urine containing large quantities of sugar. . . . Under ordinary circumstances, the concentration of the tissues thus induced would produce intense thirst and an increased intake of water, so that the urinary flow would be maintained at a high level until the whole excess of the glucose had been excreted."[9]

"The ingestion of an excessive quantity of salt provokes thirst rather than diuresis. If this excessive ingestion were continued or became chronic, there would be a tendency for the amount of this salt in the body to continually increase, the salt being associated with sufficient water to maintain the molecular concentration of the body fluids at their normal height. It is not surprising, therefore, that excessive quantities of salt have been found to exert a deleterious influence in cases of dropsy, or that marked benefits as regards the reduction of dropsy have been attaided by the limitation of salt in the diet."[10]

---

9 Starling—Fluids of the Body, p. 153.
10 Ibid., p. 154.

Edema is lessened by warm or sweating baths and sometimes very promptly. The dropsy responds even more promptly to alternate hot and cold applications to the edematous parts. The rationale of these hydriatic effects in lessening edema is a very interesting study. We have already dwelt quite at length upon the vascular changes produced by alternating thermic applications. Starling has recently correlated present knowledge regarding the causation of dropsy. In the summary he brings out a number of practical points. "Ranvier has shown that if, after ligature of the inferior vena cava, the sciatic nerve be divided on one side so as to produce dilatation of the arterioles on that side, the limb in which the nerve has been divided will become edematous."[11] There must be other factors beside venous obstruction if edema is to result. Starling concludes that the determining cause, other than stasis, lies in an increased permeability of the vessel wall. This is due in disease to lack of the proper nutrition and oxygen supply to the cells of the vessel wall. "Cohnheim showed that, after long continued anemia of the rabbit's ear, the vessels became so permeable that restoration of the normal circulation was followed by pronounced edema of all the tissues."[12]

The same results were obtained by Barlow. This anemia resulted in asphyxia and starvation of the cells. A long continned venous stasis must affect the vessel walls in much the same way, since it also decreases the oxygen and nutritive supply. In chronic nephritis there is usually a marked anemia with hydremic blood and this appears before the edema. From experiments by Bolton, one may conclude that edema results solely because of this series of changes occasioned by the stagnation of blood in dilated veins and that plethora or increased capillary tension are neither of them necessary for the production of edema. These facts have led Starling to the belief that alterations in the endothelium of the capillary wall must be regarded as the essential factor in the production of edema. The retention of nitrogenous wastes in nephritis must be an added cause of injury to the vessels. With these facts in mind, the

11 Starling—Fluids of the Body, p. 159.

12 Ibid., p. 162.

rationale of hydriatic treatment is quite evident. The restoration of tone to the vessels, both blood and lymph, hastens the circulation, thus relieving the stasis and consequently improving the nutrition of the vessel walls. The nutritive processes and activity of the endothelial cells are directly stimulated by hydriatic applications. In short, the entire series of morbid changes from the decreased permeability of the kidneys to the venous stasis and increased permeability of the vessel walls, is met by the one agent—warm water. There is no evidence that free water drinking is harmful in edema where the amount of urine is less than normal. On the contrary, it has been shown that plethora is not a contributing factor in edema. The diuresis it induces greatly lessens nitrogenous retention and thus, by decreasing the toxemia, aids recovery.

Acute Nephritis. Beginning as it does as an acute imflammation and passing through the various stages of the inflammatory process, acute Bright's disease should be treated along the lines laid down for inflammations. The peculiar course of the disease is governed by the anatomic and physiologic relations of the kidneys, organs of necessarily constant activity, and activity of such a character that it must militate against their recovery. The kidney is congested, swollen, edematous, and tense at the onset of the first symptoms; later, venous stasis is the predominating physical change. To relieve these conditions, sweating measures have abundantly proven their superiority. These congest the skin and relieve the kidney congestion. The patient should perspire freely for an hour or more, at least once a day. The skin should be warm and moist all of the time. Free diaphoresis may be accomplished in several ways. It is often best to resort to some of the milder measures, such as the hot foot bath with fomentations to the abdomen or spine, or the hot trunk pack. If the symptoms are urgent, the full hot pack may be used. The head should be kept cool, and if the pulse is over 100, an ice bag placed over the heart. During the sweat, copious water drinking should be encouraged. This favors diaphoresis, and as soon as the renal congestion lessens, it aids in diuresis. The patient may be sponged off with tepid water and then placed between warm blankets to continue per-

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

usually necessary and, if a large ice cap is used, it will cover the sternal kidney area as well. Other forms of hot bath, such as the Russian and electric light, may be best left for subacute or chronic nephritis after the acute symptoms have largely subsided.

Chronic Nephritis. In chronic nephritis, whether a sequel of the acute or coming on insidiously and complicated by cardiac and vascular changes, it is possible to utilize a greater variety of measures and more vigorous tonics can be borne. A southern climate is of advantage largely because free perspiration is secured without effort and there is less tendency to chilling. We have utilized with success all hot baths, such as the Russian, Turkish, electric light, and superheated air. These may be given two or three times a week. About once a week or once in two weeks, it is desirable to follow a vigorous sweating treatment by the Turkish shampoo. All these extreme sudorific treatments should be concluded by some form of the hot and cold shower, douche, or spray. The douche is the best means since it combines percussion effects with the thermic stimulus and so lessens the tendency to chilling. The alternate application of fomentations and an ice bag to the lower sternum and kidney region produces mild fluxion in the kidney. The alternate hot and cold percussion douche to the lower sternum and the lower dorsal and lumbar regions is more vigorous and a very efficient means of stimulating renal activity.

Nearly all hydriatists recommend very highly the full warm bath as the most serviceable measure in subacute nephritis. While we do not doubt its great utility, yet we have seen better results by employing, in about two out of every three treatments, more vigorous means and means employing more tonic effects. These are obtained to only a slight extent by the warm bath. Where there are marked changes in the heart and vessels, we have found tonic hydrotherapy a necessity. Of tonic measures, one may use hot and cold to the spine, the revulsive compress to the kidney region or abdomen, the cold mitten friction, the ice bag to the heart, and the alternating douche. The Nauheim bath is highly recommended both for the relief of dropsy and the treatment of cardio-vascular disturbances.

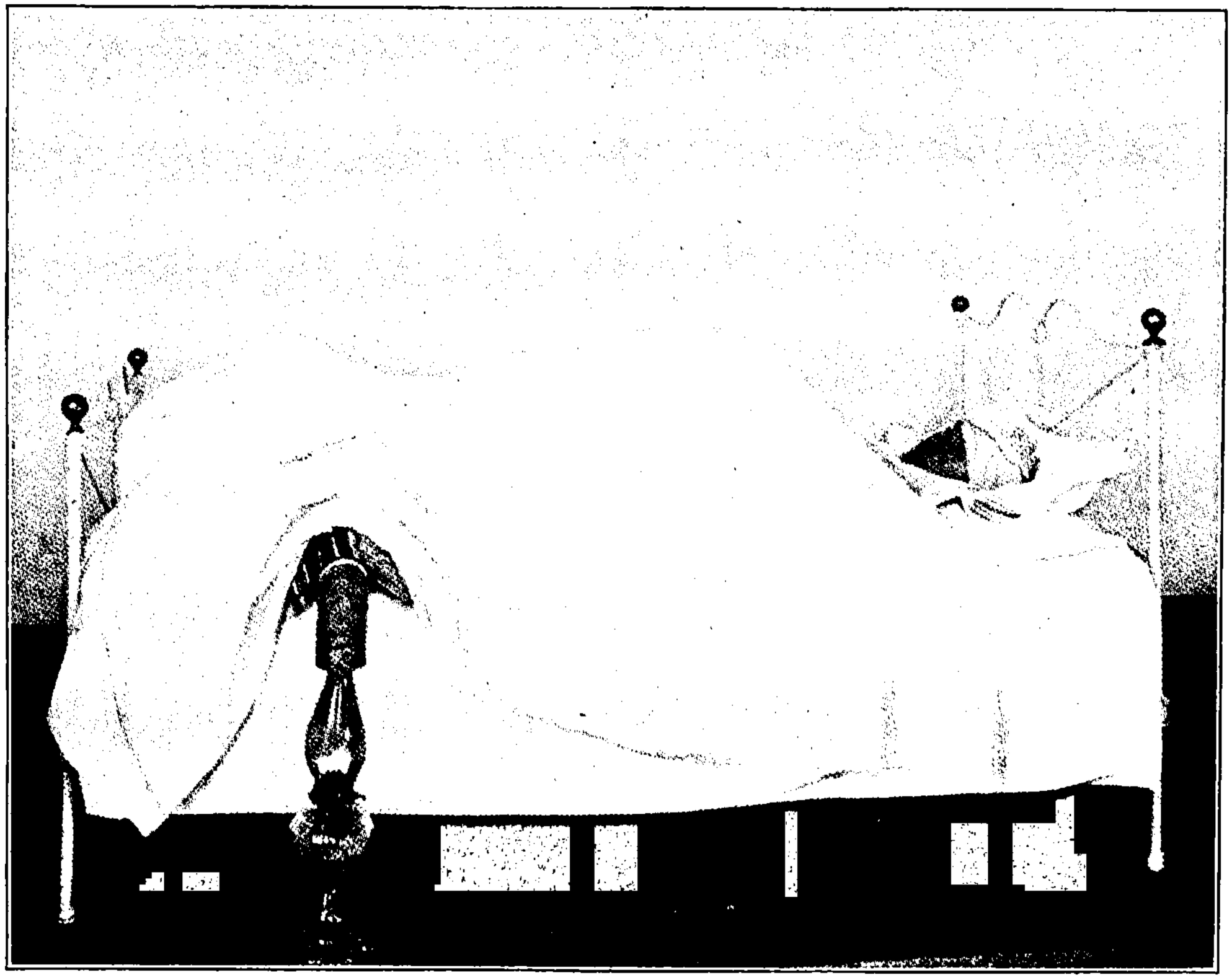
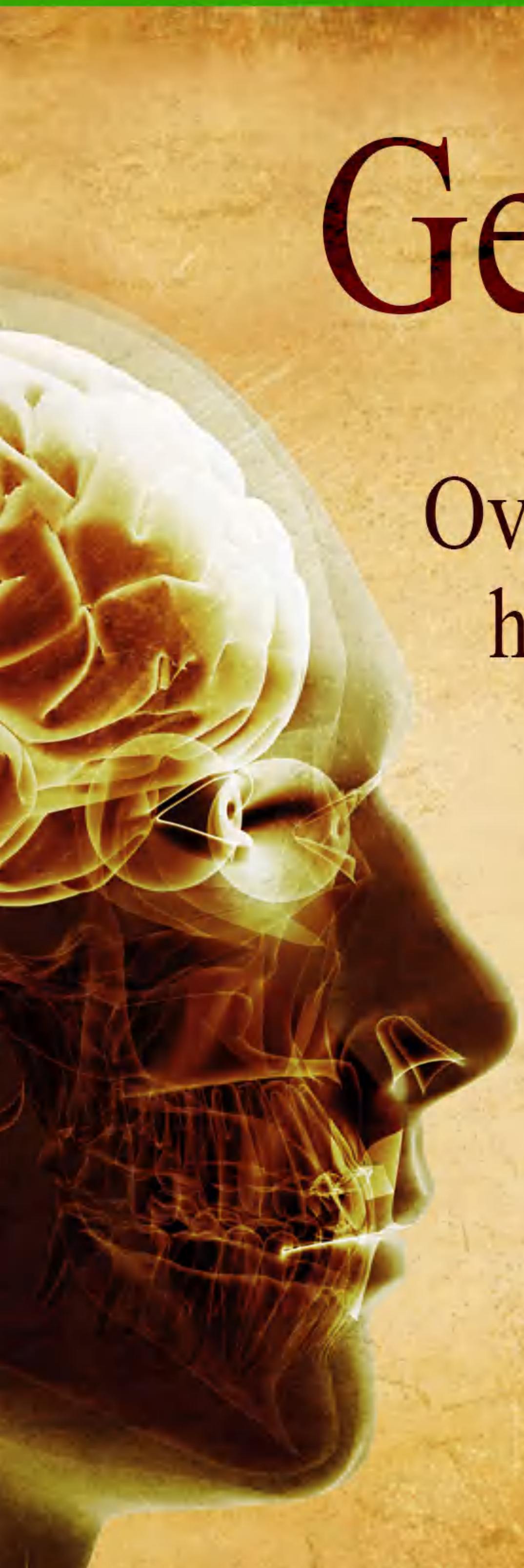


PLATE XVII. Hot air bath in bed. (Kellogg.)

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

It has recently been shown that the endogenous uric acid in the blood in interstitial nephritis varies according to the functional activity of the kidneys.[14] These observations were made on a purin-free diet. This retention of uric acid is very favorably influenced by exercise and hydrotherapy. Umber noticed that on a purin-free diet the elimination of uric acid decreased after exercise, owing to its participation in the increased oxidation incident to muscular exertion. That like results may be obtained by hydrotherapy has been shown by the researches of Strasser.

UREMIA AND ECLAMPSIA

These pathologic states, while not identical, have many points in common. In uremia, there is, in the majority of cases, a retention of toxic urinary products because of the kidney iusufficiency. While all observers are not agreed as to the constant occurrence of kidney insufficiency in eclampsia, yet nearly all agree that its manifestations are accompanied by a severe poisoning from some autotoxic source. Croftan says there is much chemical and clinical evidence to show that in uremia the general metabolism and, in particular, the manifold functions of the liver, are perverted. The kidney may not be primarily involved and possibly in some few cases not at all. In the majority of cases, however, there are demonstrable lesions in the kidney as well as functional inadequacy during life. A great variety of conditions have been reported, among which are infarcts, acute and chronic congestion, edema, greatly increased tension, and actual nephritis. In a case of eclampsia reported by Wiemer[15] the tension was so marked that the kidney substance bulged out on incision in the course of Edebohl's operation. Braak and Mijnlieff[16] report a case in which the right kidney was much enlarged and so painful that the patient, in coma, reacted when it was palpated. They report thirteen other cases

---

14 In gout the endogenous uric acid in the blood is more constant and never exceeds a certain maximum amount (about 0.003 per cent). A demonstrable amount of uric acid is always present in the blood in gout, even when the food has been free from purins for weeks or months, while blood from normal individuals on a purin-free diet contains no uric acid.—Journal of American Medical Association, April 3, 1909, p. 1110.

15 Monatschrift für Geburtsh und Gynakologie, March, 1908.

16 Centralblatt für Gynakologie, October 19, 1908.

of eclampsia accompanied by increased tension in the kidney. All were treated by decapsulation and, with one exception, recovered. Franck reports ten cases with no bulging or increased intracapsular tension.

Hepatic changes are almost universally present. In fact, functional and structural alterations of the kidneys and liver are very frequently associated. Their functions are consecutive, *i. e.*, the liver is the chief agent in the preparation of wastes for excretion and the kidneys receive these for purposes of excretion. This naturally leads to the view, which is also supported by clinical analyses, that in many cases the decrease of urea in the urine is due not to failure in its elimination, but to failure in its formation from the various precursors, including the ammonia compounds; uremia then, being due to these toxic antecedents, rather than to poisons retained with the urea, and of the amount of which the decreased urea excretion is a gauge. "Somewhere in the organism there is a deficient changing of ammonia and amino-acids into urea. This has been called 'deficient desamidation' by Ewing, who asserts that the process is no more than an oxidation. This work is in a great measure performed by the liver, and therefore we are not surprised to find the liver most severely involved." [17]

In this connection it is interesting to note the relation of one of the chief causes of uremia and eclampsia, *viz.*, a diet rich in meat, to the size of the liver. Dr. Chalmers Watson [18] calls attention to the difference in the size of the liver in meat-fed rats and in bread-and-milk-fed rats. From an examination of the livers in the two cases, it was shown that the average liver weight of the meat-fed rats was 6 grams, while the average liver weight of the bread-and-milk-fed rats was 4 grams. The meat diet had caused an increase of 50 per cent in the size of the liver.

Moreover it has been shown that a severe acidemia may cause the convulsions and coma characteristic of uremia and eclampsia. Were this the case, sweating treatment, if much pro-

17 Davis and Foulkrod—The Etiology of Eclampsia—Journal of American Medical Association, January 7, 1911, pp. 11, 12.

18 London Lancet, October 12, 1907.

longed, would only deepen the difficulty since, if unaccompanied by cold, it increases the acidosis.

For practical purposes, we may divide the treatment into two parts: First, the treatment of chronic uremia, the conditions that predispose to the acute attack, and the pre-eclamptic state; second, the treatment of the acute attack of uremia or eclampsia, the convulsive seizures and coma. It should be borne in mind that in eclampsia a neurotic temperment predisposes to the attack and that there is the added factor of pregnancy which may, in spite of vigorous treatment, demand hasty emptying of the uterus.

"Chronic" Uremia and the Pre-eclamptic State. The principles involved in the treatment of faulty nitrogenous metabolism have been discussed in the consideration of gout and Bright's disease. Those persons living upon a highly nitrogenous diet, containing purins, are predisposed to the uremic state. Women who partake heavily of tea and coffee are predisposed to eclampsia. The reason for this is that the caffein greatly increases the amount of basic purins which must therefore be raked over by the liver and thrown out by the kidneys.

Alfred Schittenhelm [19] has shown by experiments upon dogs the extent to which caffein increases basic purins and uric acid. We give below a table of averages which shows these items. The dog was kept on a purin-free diet previous to the tests. The pre-period lasted three days. For three days following this, three daily doses each of 0.3 grams of caffein were administered. Next intervened a period of two days with purin-free diet, and following this the same daily amount of theobromin (as previously of caffein) was given for two days.

	PRE-PERIOD	CAFFEIN PERIOD	INTER-PERIOD	THEOBROMIN PERIOD	AFTER-PERIOD
Uric acid in gm. N.	0.006	0.008	0.006	0.007	0.006
Purin bases in gm. N.	0.005	0.026	0.009	0.013	0.008

Chronic congestion of the liver as pointed out above and hepatic cirrhosis are also factors in the causation of uremia. The vicious cycle and disordered liver accompanying periodic

19 Zur Frage der harnsaurevermehrenden Wirkung von Kaffee und Tee und ihrer Bedeutung in der Gichttherapie—Therapeutische Monatshefte, March, 1910, p. 115.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

prolong the hot pack. Whenever it is used, the cerebral circulation should be guarded by the cold compress, ice bag, or cold affusions to the head. An ice bag should also be used over the heart. The patient may be removed from the pack by a wet hand rub or other cold friction and put between blankets to continue perspiring gently. Croftan, Edwards, and others favor the use of the full hot bath as recommended by Liebermeister. The bath begins at 98° or thereabouts and is generally run up 5° or 6°, the head being kept cool by cold affusions.

The rationale of these sweating treatments lies not alone in the elimination of toxins by the skin. In fact, we believe this is only a part, and perhaps often a small part of the real effect. Soon after free diaphoresis has been established, urinary secretion begins to increase and may, in acute suppression, appear very promptly. This is doubtless due to the relief of the kidney congestion and the reduction of renal edema and increased tension in those cases in which these occur. Relieving renal stasis always results in freer excretion of urine. The case of eclampsia with great enlargement of the kidney mentioned above as reported by Braak and Mijnlieff, having refused operation, recovered under the use of wet packs with hot-water bottles and medicinal measures. The coma subsided and the kidney gradually returned to normal size. O. M. Hayward reports a case[20] of eclampsia in which two hot packs failed to relieve the coma. With the patient deeply comatose, pulse 160 and very weak, axillary temperature 105.2° F., and respiration irregular and gasping, she was wrapped in a sheet, placed on a table, and a cold rubbing pour administered. In five minutes there was some improvement and the cold pour and rubbing were continued. In thirty minutes the patient was returned to bed with a temperature of 100° F., pulse 100, and respiration nearly normal. The failure in the hot pack was doubtless due to the fact that it was unaccompanied by a cold friction. This might have been administered by the cold mitten or, as was done later, by the cold pour and rubbing wet sheet pack.

The use of a large ice cap to the heart and over the lower third of the sternum is desirable and usually necessary.

20 Modern Medicine, March, 1908, p. 60.

CHAPTER XXV

PEPTOGENIC EFFECTS

THIS term—"peptogenic effects"—is here used to designate a variety of effects upon the digestive organs and digestive activity in the sense of increasing the efficiency of these organs and functions. The measures directed toward improving the digestion also increase the activity of the liver. All tonic treatments increase the muscular and glandular activity of the stomach and intestines, also the glandular activity of the liver and pancreas. They aid digestion and sharpen the appetite. In addition to general tonic treatments, it is necessary to direct special attention to the digestive organs themselves. The following are some of these special treatments which are useful in promoting digestion and absorption:—

1. Winternitz pack (hot and heating trunk pack).
2. Hot trunk pack.
3. Fomentations to the abdomen.
4. Revulsive compress to the abdomen.
5. Hot and cold to the spine.
6. Hot and cold douche to the abdomen, liver, and spine.
7. The umschlag (moist abdominal girdle).
8. Hot-water bottle or Winternitz coil over the stomach after a meal.
9. Ice bag over the stomach, or cold water drinking, before a meal.

These treatments properly selected to meet the needs of the individual case are indicated in,—

1. All forms of atonic indigestion.
   (a) Hypochlorhydria.
   (b) Anacidia.

(c) Gastrectasia.
(d) Gastroptosis.
(e) Lowered gastric motility.
(f) General splanchnoptosis.
(g) Biliousness.
(h) Periodic sick headaches (in interval).
(i) Amylaceous dyspepsia.

2. Chronic congestion of liver.
3. Anemia of liver.

ATONIC DYSPEPSIA

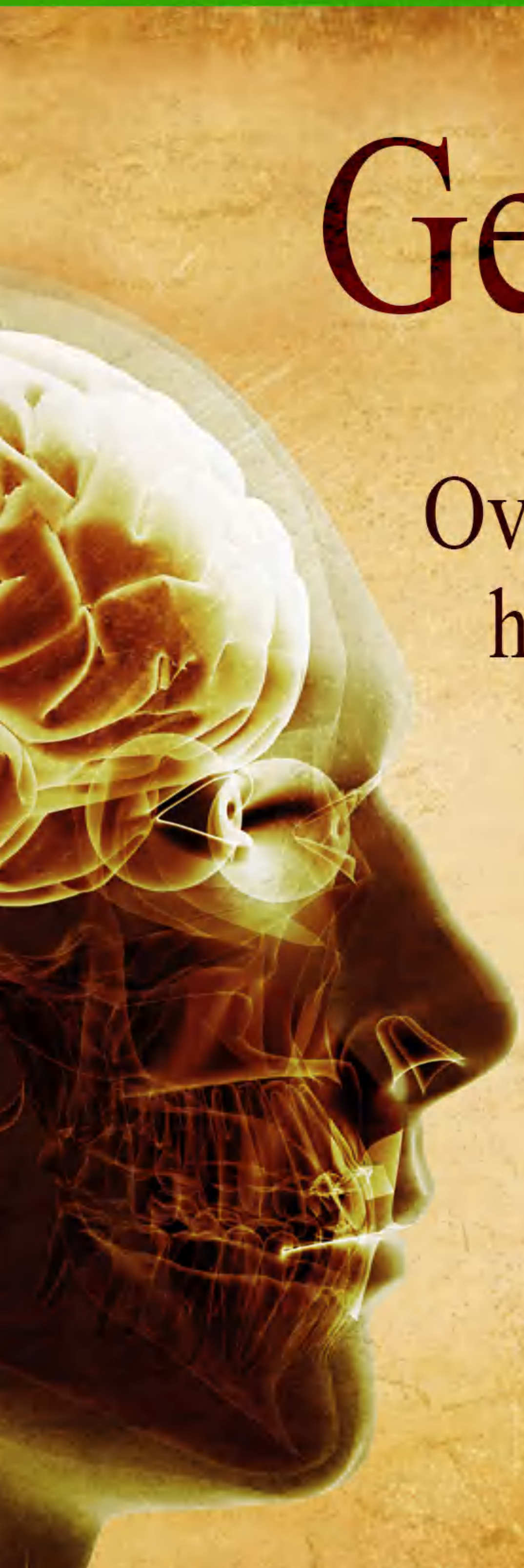
This term is not used in its ordinary restricted sense as applying alone to painful digestion. We use it here to designate a great variety of digestive disorders associated with deficient gastric secretion, and lessened motility with more or less distress or discomfort after meals. These various conditions may be grouped in this manner for convenience in considering their hydriatic management, for this must be carried on along much the same lines in all. The aim is to produce a general increase of tone in both the glands and musculature of the digestive organs. We hardly need mention that special attention must be paid to the matter of diet, exercise, rest, favorable environment, etc. These are all of prime importance.

In the more severe grades of defective digestion, something like the following program should be carried out:—

Half an hour before the meal, the patient should be instructed to take half a glass of cold water or even ice water. Bits of ice or a small amount of fruit ice may be taken twenty minutes to half an hour before the meal. Instead of cold internally, an ice bag may be placed over the stomach beginning half or three quarters of an hour before the meal and continued for ten or fifteen minutes. The skin over the stomach should warm up before the meal is taken. This will require about fifteen minutes after the ice bag has been removed. The philosophy of these measures lies in the fact that the cold application produces a reaction which comes on at the time the meal is taken, so that the glandular activity is increased during the period of digestion.

The experimental basis of this old and very successful means

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

rub. Other applications which may be used are the hot and cold douche to the abdomen and liver, also to the spine. At night it is well to apply the moist abdominal girdle. It should be dry by morning. The protected girdle is not used in this condition.

In addition to these hydriatic measures, the patient should be given general massage with special abdominal massage, vibration to the abdomen, faradic or sinusoidal electricity to abdomen and spine, or the Morton wave to the abdomen and spine. Since these various measures are not applicable to all cases of atonic dyspepsia, they should be selected according to the needs of the individual case. All of them, with the exception of fomentations to the abdomen and the hot trunk pack, are contraindicated in hyperchlorhydria and gastric or duodenal ulcer with much hemorrhage.

Patients with dyspepsia soon become accustomed to cold applications and may be given most vigorous tonics. After a week or so of treatment a general cold affusion or pail pour may be used daily. The cold wet sheet rub may also be used after tolerance for douches and pail pours has been acquired. The cold morning plunge is not excelled as a general tonic and exerts a beneficial action on digestion. It sharpens the appetite, thus aiding in the production of "psychic juice" which Pavlov assures us is five times as efficient in gastric digestion as the chemically excited secretion.

Pavlov has further shown that another of the circumstances favorable to the activity of the gastric glands is an abundant supply of water in the organism. He says,[2] "One of these favoring circumstances we discovered in the introduction of large quantities of water into the system. We based this upon earlier facts, showing that the quantity of juice was strikingly dependent upon the amount of water in the organism." This makes clear the necessity for free water drinking between meals in order to provide fluid for the formation of the requisite amount of gastric juice.

In cases of motor insufficiency associated with marked dilatation, cold drinks can not be used before the meal, since there

2 Work of the Digestive Glands, Second English Edition, p. 245.

PLATE XVIII. Winternitz pack (hot and heating trunk pack).

PLATE XIX. Winternitz pack (with hot water bottle).

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

one-half inches from the right iliac spine. It would easily hold one and one-half or two gallons. The pylorus, for a distance of two inches, admitted with great difficulty a small size lead pencil. The condition, of course, should have been treated surgically by some form of pylorectomy.

The caution here is not against systematic washing of the stomach to free it from decomposing remnants of food, but against the use of *hot* water for this purpose. If it seems advisable to resort to gastric lavage frequently and warm water is used first, it should be followed by a "dash" of cold.

In those cases of gastric dilatation and lessened motility not associated with pyloric obstruction, hydriatic means produce excellent results. In addition to the measures recommended above, the alternate hot and cold douche to the epigastrium may be used; at first, with little or no force, later, with moderate percussion. The percussion douche to the mid-dorsal spine, also to the legs and feet, serves as a vigorous tonic. Gastrectasia, associated with a general splanchnoptosis, irritable, tender sympathetics, and a feeling of weight and dragging in the abdomen may be benefited by the cold sitz-bath begun as a graduated measure. The continuous cold coil to the abdomen acts in the same way. The cold sitz may be prolonged to five or six minutes and the cold coil left in place twenty to thirty minutes.[3]

HYPERCHLORHYDRIA

Nearly all cases of indigestion pass through the stage of hyperacidity at the beginning of the departure from normal. In only a few, however, is this condition so marked as to require special treatment. The patient is of a nervous temperament, and eats rapidly, swallowing his food with very imperfect mastication. The free hydrochloric acid may be double or even treble the normal amount. The course to be followed is just the opposite to that outlined for hypochlorhydria. The patient may drink hot water or use a hot application over the stomach preceding the meal, after which an ice bag should be used for twenty to thirty minutes, or even longer. The hot

3 See also the treatment recommended for splanchnic neurasthenia.

water drinking or the hot application to the epigastrium produces an atonic reaction. In this connection it should be noted that among the experiments performed by Professor Pavlov, on one occasion the work of the large stomach was arrested for several days by the application of *very* hot water. Thus it will be seen that by applications of heat of a suitable temperature an overactive state of the gastric glands may be depressed and their activity be brought back toward normal.

It is needless to say that dietetic regulation is the most important factor in the treatment of this condition. Oils, whether free or emulsified, have a specific inhibitory action upon the secretion of hydrochloric acid. The patient should discard the use of meats entirely. Other heavily proteid foods should be interdicted. Salt and condiments should be proscribed. The hyperacidity may be lessened by the use of the protected or sweating moist abdominal girdle. Tonic treatments should be replaced by sedative measures such as the neutral bath, neutral pack, or heating pack. These may be given one or two hours **before** a meal or at night.

CHAPTER XXVI

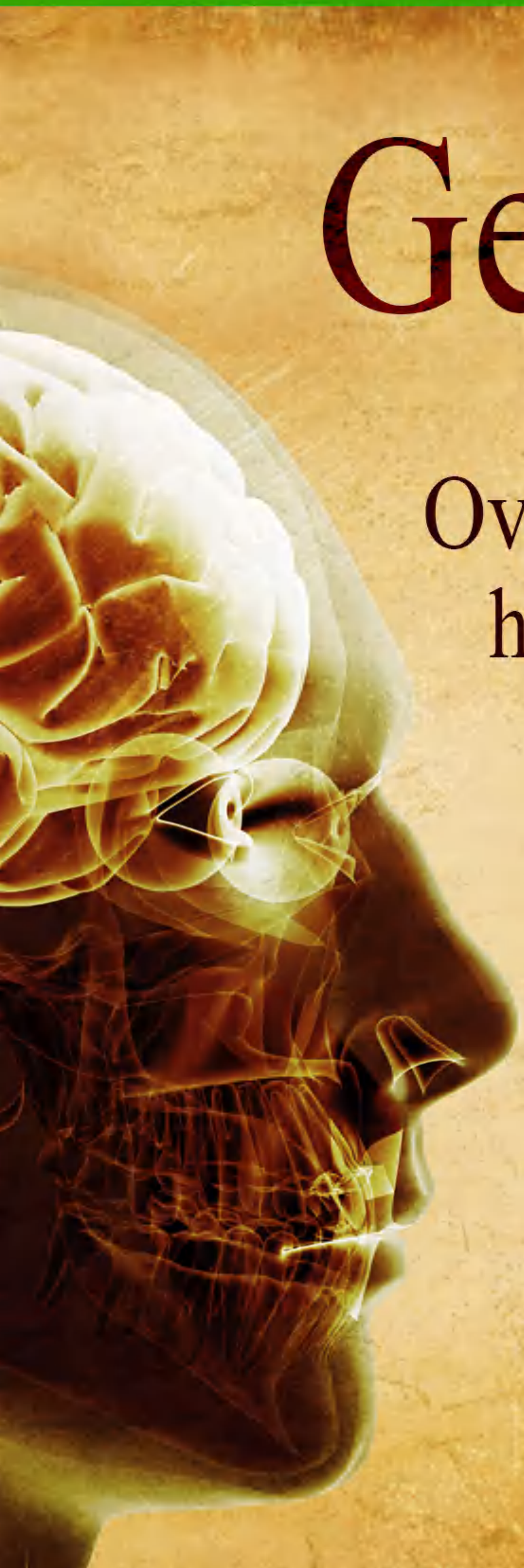
HEMOSTATIC EFFECTS

CAPILLARY hemorrhage and hemorrhage from small blood-vessels does not usually require surgical treatment. Hemorrhage into the hollow organs tends to check itself, provided the circumstances are at all favorable, so that in many cases absolute rest, accompanied by the use of the ice bag, may produce all that is desired. Thermic applications may be made directly to the part or so as to influence the blood-vessels reflexly. Cold may also be used over the trunk of the artery supplying a part. If heat is used to check the hemorrhage, the application must be very hot and be made *directly* to the bleeding part. The *reflex* effect of even very hot water produces only a transient narrowing of the vessels, while in a short time the vessels become dilated and the hemorrhage increases. Thermic applications may be used either to the part itself or to the reflex area. In fact, it is quite a general rule that cold is more efficient through reflex action, while hot is efficient only when applied directly to the bleeding vessels. In nearly every case where cold is used, it is well to employ some hot application for derivative purposes. The hot should not, however, produce sweating, since this tends to dilate the blood-vessels and increase the hemorrhage.

Epistaxis

Thermic applications are often very effectual in treating capillary hemorrhage from the nose. Very cold water or very cold water may be drawn into the nose. An application of ice may be made over the nose itself. Of the more remote reflex areas use may be made of that at the back of the neck and the head by having the patient hold a chunk of ice at the back of the

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

cases, the shallow cold foot bath (water two or three inches deep), without other means, serves to check the hemorrhage. This is through reflex action. In case it is necessary to keep the patient in bed, an ice bag should be placed over the pubes and another ice bag between the upper surfaces of the thighs. At the same time the patient should be given a hot foot and leg pack. These means will often prove so effectual that douching or astringent douches are unnecessary.

Post-partum hemorrhage, if occurring immediately after delivery of the child and of such an amount as to produce fainting, should be immediately treated by manual stimulation of the uterus through the abdominal wall, or failing in this, by the hot intra-uterine douche. If the hemorrhage is slight and not alarming as to require the intra-uterine douche, the patient should be given a very hot vaginal douche with or without a hot pack. An ice bag may be used over the pubes and replaced after the douche, or it may be kept in place without interruption. Any of these means which may be at hand should be applied. Ergot hypodermatically, being given as soon as possible after the placenta has been passed.

Apoplexy

The early treatment of cerebral hemorrhage should consist of an ice bag, ice cap, or large ice helmet applied to the head, with ice bags or compresses placed at the back of the neck and over the carotids. The limbs should be kept warm by hot-water bottles, etc. These applications may be left in place until there is reason to believe the hemorrhage has been checked. Usually the hemorrhage does not continue for any great length of time, but in some cases almost the entire cerebrum may become infiltrated with blood and the ventricles filled. Cold applications, if used promptly, may check such excessive hemorrhage. Perfect rest is an absolute essential to the success of any form of treatment.

CHAPTER XXVII

HYDROTHERAPY IN SURGERY

UNDER various heads we have already considered the hydrotherapeutic treatment of many surgical diseases. The treatment of inflammatory diseases, many of which require surgical intervention, has been discussed under its proper head. In considering the effects of pure stimulants and under treatment designed to relieve pain, still other surgical conditions have been discussed. There remains then to be considered only the general relation of hydrotherapy to operative treatment and the care of the patient. For convenience the subject of hydrotherapy in surgery may be divided into three sections, *viz.*, preparatory treatment, immediate care, and after-treatment.

PREPARATORY TREATMENT

The physical condition of the patient at the time of operation has a great deal to do with his behavior upon the operating table and with the comfort and rapidity of his subsequent convalescence. Of course in conditions demanding immediate attention there is no time for preliminary treatment, but in a very large number of surgical diseases it is neither necessary nor advisable to hurry the patient to the operating table. This is true alike of many inflammatory and many non-inflammatory conditions.

In considering the realm of physiologic therapy we have already mentioned the advisability of delay in the operative treatment of certain inflammations, especially of pelvic inflammations. Even definite inflammatory states largely limited to the Fallopian tube or the ovary are usually accompanied by more or less cellulitis. Sometimes an inflammation whose most

marked effects are in the cellular tissue involves other p
as to necessitate removal of such parts or mechanical me
their release from plastic exudates or adhesions. In such
the induration and residual thickening may be cleared u
quite a degree of the normal mobility restored as has bee
cussed under the treatment of the chronic stage of i
mations. These results may be so thoroughly accomp
that the remaining conditions will necessitate very muc
operative work and work which can be easily and rapidly
formed with a minimum of trauma and consequent shock
resulting shortening of the period of anesthesia is also
tinct advantage.

The stability of the circulatory system is still another
of great importance in surgery. In those who have had ch
inflammatory or suppurative lesions and in neurasthenic
other chronic invalids the circulation is unbalanced and the
motors fail to properly control the ebb and flow of circula
changes. The anesthetic and the operative procedure both
to further unbalance the circulation. By interference with
vasomotors the liability to undue cooling of the surface and
consequent internal congestion are much increased. Sli
chilling during or following operation may produce mar
retrostasis of blood to the interior, and thus result in deepen
an already existing inflammation.

The preparation of the patient by a preliminary two or th
weeks' course of vascular hydriatic tonics will guard agai
these dangers. In this length of time the vitality of the pati
may be materially raised. Such a course of treatment will al
result in ridding the system of the accumulation of half oxidize
leucomaines which have piled up during the preceding invalid
ism. Sweating treatments at intervals of two or three day
may also be necessary to still further enhance elimination and
incidentally to promote the nutrition and healthy activity of the
skin.

The stimulation of kidney activity and the consequent in
crease in urinary leucomaines is another factor in the general
clearing-out process. Because of the more perfect oxidation
and more complete elimination of waste products, the alkalinity

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

in preventing surgical shock. In this connection[1] W. J. Mayo has said, "We hear a great deal about shock but we don't see it. We sometimes see collapse from loss of blood."

The patient should not be weakened by repeated catharsis. Limit the preparatory use of cathartics to what is really indicated, and on the morning of the operation finish the cleaning out by means of a thorough enema of tepid or warm water. The patient should reach the operating table with warm feet and hands, and during the operation the extremities should be kept warm by the use of blanket coverings and, if necessary, hot-water bottles applied outside the blanket. The use of a hot foot bath, concluded by a dash of cold water, given just before entering the operating room, may do much to prevent or limit splanchnic engorgement.

Surgical Shock

Until the researches of Geo. W. Crile placed the subject of the causation of surgical shock upon a definite experimental basis, the ideas held by practicing surgeons were most various and conflicting, and these ideas underwent frequent change. If one might judge of these ideas by the therapy employed at that time (and it is to be regretted the therapy still used by a very large number of surgeons), one would unquestionably say that some derangement of the heart itself or its nerve supply has been looked upon as the cause of surgical shock. That the heart is not primarily at fault in shock has been proven beyond question.

Crile makes a sharp distinction between shock and collapse. Although there are many contributing causes, he considers that the primary and principal alteration of function in surgical shock is a derangement of the vasomotor mechanism. Collapse is due to loss of body fluid, *i. e.*, to hemorrhage. It may also be due to direct damage to the heart muscle, the respiratory organs, or the nerves of either. While both conditions may be present in a given case at the same time, yet they are essentially distinct entities. These are the views generally accepted by surgeons today.

1 Remarks made at clinic in St. Mary's Hospital, August 4, 1910.

The prevention of shock is fully as important as its treatment, and to accomplish either result, it is necessary to understand the causes of the disordered function. We may, therefore, with profit discuss briefly the causes contributing to the production of surgical shock. Crile[2] enumerates these under approximately six heads. They are:—

1. Duration of operation.
2. Trauma.
3. Temperature.
4. Physical condition of subject.
5. Anesthesia.
6. Hemorrhage.

To this list Yandell Henderson[3] has recently added another factor, *viz.*, acapnia. The term is used to designate a state in which there is a deficiency of carbon dioxide in the blood. In connection with these seven contributing causes we should also discuss the vasomotor and the cardiac changes present in shock.

1. Duration of Operation. The duration of an operation always bears a direct relation to the occurrence of shock. "In all the experiments in which pure shock was produced, it was found that a considerable time was required, usually half an hour or more."[4] With ether as the anesthetic, it was found that dogs would survive its continuous administration for a period of time averaging ten hours.

2. Trauma. As has been mentioned, trauma is one of the chief external causes of shock; in fact, the term, "traumatic shock" is frequently used interchangeably with surgical shock. Trauma of nerve centers, nerve trunks, or areas richly supplied with nerves, is especially liable to produce shock. Shock is also especially likely to occur on exposure of the brain, pleura, and peritoneum. "Exposure of the capacious splanchnic area is attended by a rapid dilatation of the splanchnic vessels, leading to intense congestion, detracting thereby a dangerous amount of blood from the somatic circulation, and inducing a rapidly declining blood pressure."

---

2 An Experimental Research into Surgical Shock, 1899, pp. 135—144.
3 American Journal of Physiology, Vol. XVII.
4 Crile—Blood Pressure in Surgery, 1903, p. 298.

3. Temperature. "Contact with air is a very great irritant to local tissues, owing to the lowering of local temperature and to the drying." Animals operated in a cold room seem to succumb more readily than under ordinary warmth. The depressing effects of cold were plainly seen when cold water was brought in contact with the intestines or when an intra-venous injection of cold saline solution was given. The effects of warm towels applied to the exposed intestines or of warm saline solution in the abdomen immediately improved the respiration and checked declining blood pressure. The same effect of cold and warm salines was noticed on the brain and exposed nerve fibers.

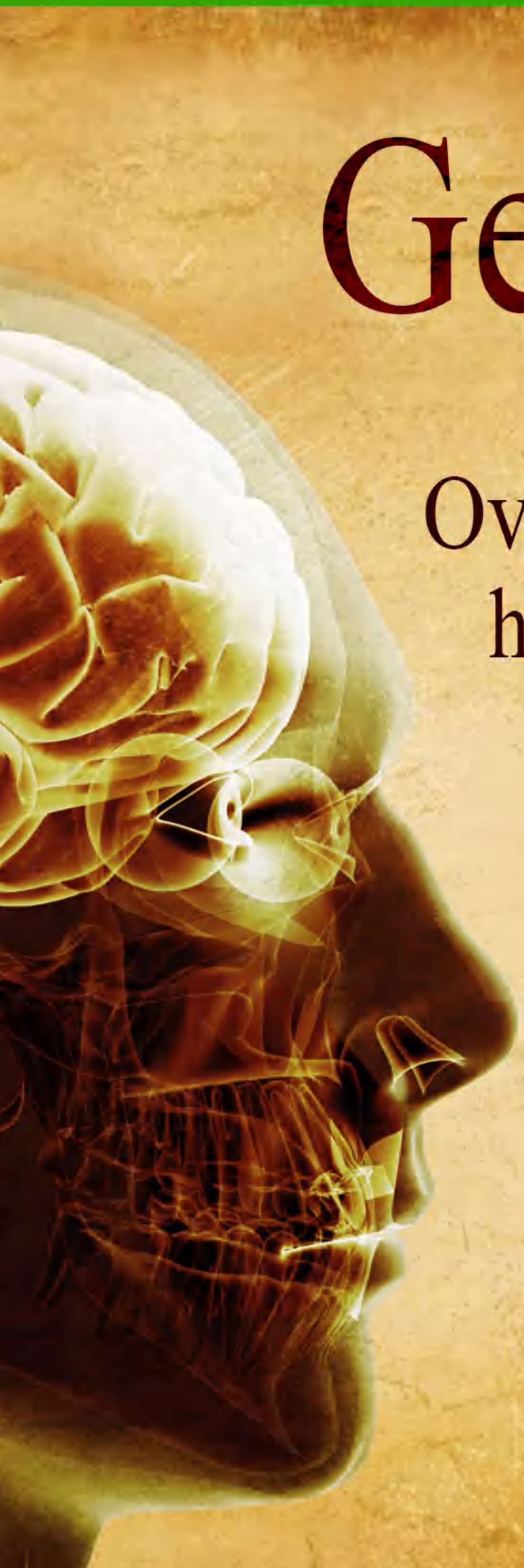
4. Physical Condition. Individuals in impaired health, poorly nourished, with sluggish circulation, too young or too old, are always bad subjects for operation. We have elsewhere mentioned various physical conditions which contribute to the occurrence of shock.

5. Anesthesia. Over-anesthesia, rapid anesthesia at the start, or awkward or irregular giving of an anesthetic, contribute to the production of shock. Chloroform requires much greater care in its administration than ether. Chloroform is more toxic than ether. Chloroform may cause sudden cardiac arrest; and if this occurs, it is usually before surgical anesthesia is attained. In this respect clinical experience coincides with experiment. For these reasons, in America, the majority of surgeons prefer ether, using it almost exclusively.

6. Hemorrhage. Loss of blood always predisposes to the occurrence of shock. Hemorrhage from veins is productive of more immediate harm than hemorrhage from arteries. "Hemorrhage from large venous trunks caused the most profound effect upon the blood pressure, because the quantity of blood supplied to the heart was immediately diminished, while, if the hemorrhage was arterial, the income of blood was not so suddenly diminished. The output of the heart does not depend at all upon the height of the arterial pressure, but is in direct proportion to the venous pressure."

7. Acapnia. Henderson holds that carbon dioxide is a harmone or chemical regulator of respiration and that the phenom-

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

"In a number of vasomotor phenomena observed, it is apparent that there are regional vasomotor actions quite independent of each other."

"There is no portion of the circulatory apparatus so delicate whose equilibrium is so easily disturbed, and whose connection with all parts of the body is so minute as the vasomotor. A priori, it would be the most readily disturbed as well as the most readily exhausted and to such conclusions do our observations lead us. The more richly supplied with vasomotor nerves was a given area, the more rapidly was the vasomotor mechanism exhausted when such area was subjected to injury. This principle was abundantly illustrated in the experiments in the splanchnic area."

"The experiments of Mall show that the splanchnic nerves are vein-nerves and control this large and spacious vascular area. Every experiment in this area gave evidence of the dilatation of the vessels controlled by these nerves, and the decline of pressure occurred *pari passu* with this dilatation."

Cardiac Changes. It is perfectly evident, as remarked by Crile, that "The heart is the base of support of the blood pressure, and any interference with its action at once causes marked changes in the pressure." The heart action is thus directly influenced by venous pressure in the vena cava. Henderson places special emphasis upon this latter factor in discussing what he has called the "veno-pressor" mechanism. The recognition of this factor in cardiac action is, however, not new. It was early pointed out by Crile in his researches into the causation of altered heart action (and lowered blood pressure) in shock. He says, "The output of the heart is in direct ratio to the pressure of the vena cava, and not at all to the height of the aortic blood pressure. The venous pressure, then, determines the heart's output and the venous pressure is, in a good measure, dependent upon the force and frequency of the heart-beats, together with the necessary vascular tone, which is under the control of the vasomotor nerves."

Through vasomotor exhaustion the blood accumulates in the dilated veins, especially those of the splanchnic area which are so capacious. There has, therefore, occurred "a hemorrhage

into the veins." This is due both to exhaustion of the vaso-motors of the veins with consequent vaso-dilatation and to the failure of the arterioles to continue their pumping action. This latter is likewise a result of vasomotor failure. The results of vein engorgement may be temporarily overcome by pressure upon the abdomen or by the use of the pneumatic suit devised by Crile.

In regard to the relation of intra-abdominal tension to the veno-pressor mechanism, the observations recorded by Leonard Hill[5] are instructive. "When a large hutch rabbit is held for a few minutes in the vertical position with its limbs stretched out and head uppermost, it may become unconscious and die from cerebral anemia. The blood collects in the large flaccid abdomen, the animal not being able to return it to the heart by changing its posture. It struggles to maintain a circulation—cerebral anemia excites convulsions which squeeze the blood from the limbs, etc., into the heart—but the difficulty in face of the circulation is too great and the animal dies. A wild rabbit with taut abdomen is not affected in this way, neither is a cat or dog, but a goat is with its capacious belly. The wild rabbit can, however, be brought into like state by a dose of chloral, and so can a dog by chloroform poisoning or by bleeding. The emotional fainting of a man is due to the inhibition of the nervous system—a neutralization of all other afferent stimuli by one all-powerful one—the consequent sudden relaxation of muscular tone, collapse of the body and non-return of venous blood to the heart. The horizontal posture or compression of the abdomen immediately restores from syncope the rabbit or the man."

Pumping Action of the Blood-vessels. The control or maintenance of a definite vascular *calibre* is not the only work of the vasomotors; vascular *activity* is also controlled by the vasomotor centers. Arterial vascular activity helps to fill the veins and venous vascular activity helps to maintain blood pressure in the vena cava. While laying great stress upon vascular *calibre* in its effects upon the work of the heart, nearly all observers entirely ignore vascular *activity*. To illustrate the three factors

5 Further Advances in Physiology, p. 173.

in the circulation, Henderson[6] employs a diagram in which the arteries are represented by rigid tubes and changes in their calibre as equivalent to the widening or narrowing of nozzle outlets. While this may illustrate one factor in the work of the vasomotors, it entirely overlooks arterial activity, the result of which it is impossible to conceive of as illustrated by mere changes in resistance, brought about by the widening or narrowing of the nozzles.

In conclusion it must, therefore, be admitted that failure of the vasomotor mechanism is the chief immediate cause of surgical shock. Neither the views of Porter and Quinby, Seelig and Lyon, or Yandell Henderson have greatly altered this conception of the pathologic physiology of shock.

The Treatment of Shock

There is no better place than the operating room in which to demonstrate the prompt tangible results obtained by the use of hydrotherapeutic stimulation. In operations upon the head, in prolonged or extensive abdominal operations, breast amputations, etc., and in other cases where shock is likely to appear and prove dangerous, the success attained by the use of hydrotherapy has, in our hands, been uniformly gratifying. This has also been the experience of many others working in the association of medical institutions with which the writer is connected.

The plan which we have followed is very similar to that outlined in Chapter XX for the relief of acute edema of the lungs and circulatory crisis in valvular heart disease. There are certain additional features to be taken into account, so that it will be repeated here in full. The principles involved in the hydrotherapeutic treatment of surgical shock are neither complicated nor difficult to understand. Their intelligent effective application, however, requires a knowledge of the causation and morbid physiology of shock, a thorough acquaintance with the methods used and an experience in their use, in order to know how to adapt the means to the case in hand and bring results where these results are difficult to obtain.

6 American Journal of Physiology, Vol. XXVII, No. I, p. 159.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

the water with a Turkish towel. After this another fomentation is applied, again followed by the ice. These alternations should be repeated three or four times, after which the well covered ice bag should again be placed over the heart.

Wherever there is any hope at all of vasomotor response, these measures result in prompt rise of blood pressure and as prompt cardiac response to the increased venopressure. Where an abdominal operation is being done, it is, perhaps, needless to say that warm gauze napkins should be applied and, if feasible, some pressure exerted upon the splanchnic area in order to more quickly send the blood on to the heart. Rather than leave fluid in the abdomen, we prefer to give warm saline solution per rectum even while the patient is still on the operating table.

Unless the shock is very severe it will not be necessary to repeat the vasomotor stimulation short of thirty or forty minutes. If the condition of the patient permits and repetition of the vigorous measures outlined above is not really needed, it will be better from now on to employ milder tonics after giving some efficient derivative treatment.

The principle of this plan of treating shock lies in the effect of brief applications of heat to the skin surface and especially to the limbs, in order to warm the skin and aid in reducing internal congestion. The quickly following cold friction produces vigorous stimulation of the vasomotors, so that the blood pressure rises immediately. The vascular condition is not at all comparable with that produced by the injection of adrenalin. It is not a stationary vaso-constriction that results from a cold friction, but a vascular activity—a rapidly alternating dilatation and contraction of the blood-vessels. This is a true pumping action which is in reality only a heightening of the normal activity of the blood-vessels.

The effect of different temperatures upon the blood pressure has already been discussed in Chapter IX, where the laws deduced by Müller are recorded. Müller's studies into the effects of baths on blood pressure were carried out by means of a Riva-Rocci instrument and were very carefully done with apparently every precaution taken. Those who desire to study fur-

ther these experiments will find a complete consideration of the question given in his paper.[7]

In meeting Henderson's acapnia, what could be more ideal than raising the carbon dioxide content of the blood and tissues by stimulating its production from the tissues themselves through increased oxidation? That this can be efficiently done by thermic and mechanical stimuli and results very promptly from the application of such means, has already been shown in Chapter XII. The circulatory stimulation and the stimulation of respiration by the same means serve to maintain the proper per cent and proportion of oxygen and carbon dioxide in the blood.

In concluding the consideration of the treatment of surgical shock, other than a practical experience in the satisfactory results attained, we could offer no better apology for the presentation of so simple a plan for its treatment than to summarize the experimental work and conclusions therefrom, reached by recognized authorities, showing the failure of older and more pretentious methods. Those who wish the facts at first hand will find the results of the most exhaustive and conclusive studies along this line given by Doctor Crile in his monumental work, "Blood Pressure in Surgery,"[8] which appeared in 1903.

Alcohol. "The immediate effect of intravenous administration only was observed. The first effect usually noticed was a decline in the blood pressure. In the majority of such instances a compensatory rise followed; in a number of instances no change in the blood pressure was noted; in but few was there a rise. The average length of the stroke of the manometer (height of pulsewave) was increased. There was no evidence that the heart beat more forcibly. In animals reduced to varying degrees of surgical shock, the usual effect of an average dose of alcohol was the production of a further depression; in smaller doses but little effect was noted, while in larger doses a more marked decline often occurred. In few instances the administration of a considerable dose in deep shock was followed

7 Über den Einfluss von Badern und Douchen auf den Blutdrück beim Menschen—Deut. Arch. für klin. Med., 1902, Volumn LXXIV, p. 316.

8 Quotations immediately following, unless otherwise credited, are from this work, pp. 261—300.

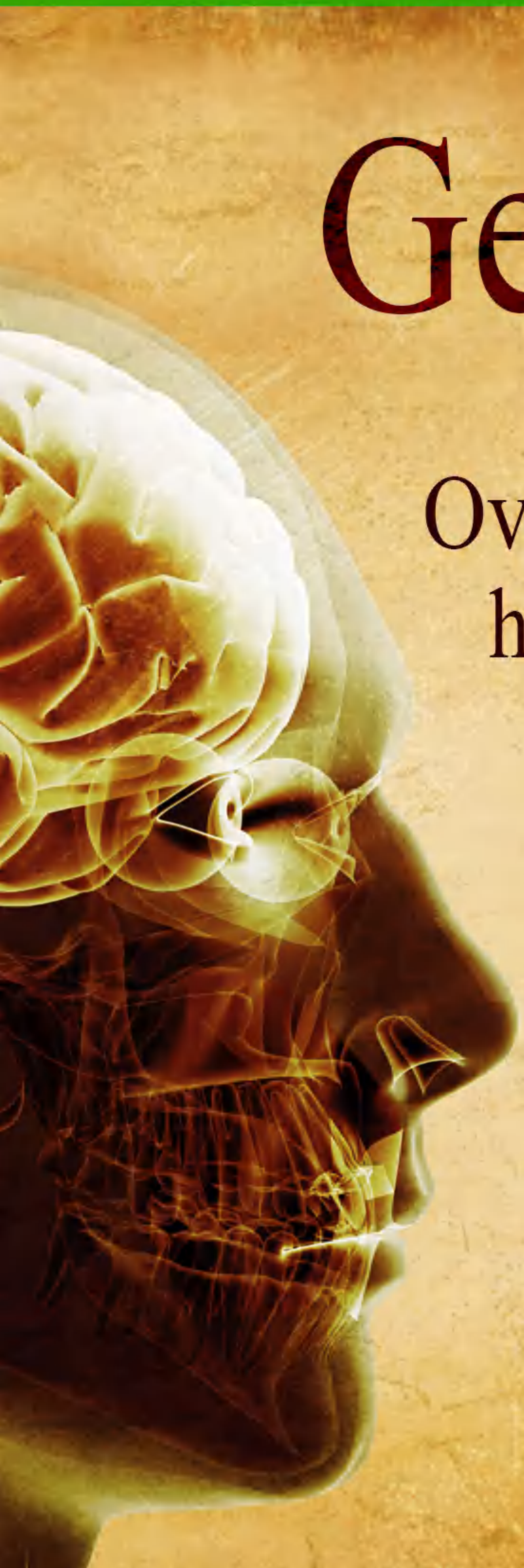
by almost immediate death. In a number of experiments the decline in the blood pressure was as prompt and as marked as in the administration of the amyl nitrite and nitroglycerine. In no instance, in the normal animal, did death immediately follow the largest dose of alcohol; the more profound the shock, the more marked was the depressing effect of alcohol. In a number of experiments alcohol was given prior to procedures intended to produce shock. It is not certain that it rendered the animal more susceptible. It is quite certain that the susceptibility was not diminished."

Nitroglycerine and Amyl Nitrite. "The immediate effect of nitroglycerine and amyl nitrite upon the pulse was an increase in its volume and a decrease in frequency. The immediate effect upon the respiration varied. At times there was a slight increase, more frequently a slowing of respiration. The immediate effect upon the blood pressure in almost every instance was a fall. The decline was usually rapid. There were but few exceptions, and in these there was usually no effect. A rise was rarely observed. In the latter it was but temporary and was usually followed by a fall. The descent in the blood pressure was gradual and rather rapid; the ascent, more gradual."

"In the experiments in which the animal was in deep shock, and the blood pressure was gradually falling, there was no evidence to show any decrease in the rapidity of the decline. On the contrary, as nearly as could be estimated, nitroglycerine distinctly increased the rapidity of the decline. The effect of nitrite of amyl was in every respect similar to that of nitroglycerine. In many instances the heart beat irregularly after the injection. On the whole, nitroglycerine and amyl nitrite increased shock."

Digitalis. The administration of digitalis in the normal animal produces a rise of blood pressure which is well sustained. The drug is very likely to cause over-stimulation resulting in sudden cardiac failure. In varying degrees of shock, digitalis produces a less marked rise of blood pressure than in the normal animal. "The respiration when at all affected was either impaired or arrested. Death in the digitalis experi-

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

when but little shock was present, a marked effect from strychnine was obtained; and when most profound, there was no effect. In the intervening degrees the effects were proportional; but after giving the strychnine the animals, not yet in complete shock, always passed into a deeper degree of shock. In any degree of shock, after the administration of a therapeutic dose of strychnine, the animals passed into deeper shock. Later in the research it was found that the most convenient and certain method of producing shock for experimental purposes, is by the administration of physiologic doses of strychnine. The treatment of shock then by therapeutic doses of strychnine is inert and physiologic doses dangerous.

"It then follows that treatment of shock by vasomotor stimulants in the form of drugs is on precisely the same basis as treatment by burning the animal or crushing his paws, or by subjecting it to injury or operation, it would seem to be as reasonable to treat strychnine shock by administering traumatism as traumatism by strychnine."[10] [11]

The more recent researches of Wallace and Pamment[12] on the effects of strychnine upon blood pressure fully agree with those of Crile. They induced low blood pressure by chloral, the nitrites, hemorrhage, diphtheria toxin, chloroform, and by shock. In no case, except chloral poisoning, did the use of therapeutic doses of strychnine produce a rise in blood pressure.

"Surgical shock is an exhaustion of the vasomotor center. Neither the heart muscle, nor the cardio-inhibitory center, nor the cardio-accelerator center, nor the respiratory center, are other than secondarily involved. Collapse is due to a suspension of the function of the cardiac or of the vasomotor mechanism. In *shock* therapeutic doses of strychnine are inert, physiologic doses dangerous or fatal. If not fatal, increased exhaustion follows. There is no practical distinction to be made between external stimulation of this center as in injuries and operation, and internal stimulation by vasomotor stimulants, as by strychnine. Each in sufficient amount produces shock;

10 Detroit Medical Journal, May, 1903, pp. 38, 39.

11 Doctor Crile shows sections of brain tissue revealing degeneration of the Purkinje cells from continuous use of strychnine.

12 Report before American Society for the Advancement of Clinical Investigation, May 13, 1912. Abstract in Journal of American Medical Association, July 20, 1912, p. 219.

and each, with equal logic, might be used to treat the shock produced by the other. Stimulants of the vasomotor center are contraindicated. Cardiac stimulants have but a slight range of possible usefulness, and may be injurious. . . . Adrenalin acts upon the heart and blood-vessels. It raises the blood pressure in the normal animal, in every degree of shock, when the medulla is cocainized, and in the decapitated animal. It is rapidly oxidized by the solid tissues and the blood. Its effects are fleeting; it should be given continuously."[13] The effect of a single dose of adrenalin lasts from two to four minutes. "The longest time that the action of the extract on the blood pressure was prolonged was found to be four minutes. . . . With the continuous flow of the extract into the vein, however, the pressure was kept up as long as the flow was continued, and for the usual time after it had been discontinued."

AFTER-TREATMENT

Post-anesthetic Infections. The question of how best to prevent and treat post-anesthetic pneumonia, wound infections, and other infections following operations is an ever-present one, and to the surgeon the cause of no little anxiety during the first three or four days of the after-care of the patient.

Modern aseptic technic together with caution in regard to unnecessary traumatism in operating and in regard to injury of the tissues by strong antiseptics or the prolonged application of antiseptics, also the proper use of serum drainage, has reduced wound infection very largely to a matter of the resistance of the patient's tissues.

We have already shown how the tissue resistance may be increased by preparatory treatment. There is, however, one cause of lowering of the vital resistance which, in the nature of the case, can not be eliminated. This factor in lowering resistance is nothing else than the anesthetic itself. It results in limiting or checking for the time-being, both phagocytosis and leucocytic activity.

After anesthesia, the power of the blood to destroy pathogenic bacteria is markedly reduced. "In fact, the members of the

13 Detroit Medical Journal, May 1903, p. 45.

entire group of alcohol, ether, and chloroform reduce the power of the blood to combat bacteria; the state of a man after a long anesthesia is comparable to that of an alcoholic with bronchitis who has been sleeping off an overdose of alcohol in a door-way or a freight car.

"So important a subject is this post-operative pneumonia that much interest attaches to the recent studies of Graham on anesthesia and the bactericidal powers of the blood. According to these experiments, it is not the power which serum itself has of destroying bacteria through bacteriolysis which is reduced by anesthetics, but the destruction of bacteria by phagocytosis is greatly reduced. Now it so happens that the organisms which we have to fear in surgery, the pneumococcus and the pus cocci, are destroyed chiefly through phagocytosis and not by bacteriolysis, which gives added importance to this depressing effect on the bactericidal powers of the blood. Apparently ether, the anesthetic which Graham has studied, reduces both the efficiency of the opsonins and the power of the leucocytes to take up the sensitized bacteria; these effects can be seen both in the blood of the patients or animals after anesthesia, and in drawn normal blood treated with ether in the test tube. The action of the ether is not permanent, the opsonic power being restored promptly on removal of the ether." [14]

Dr. C. Achard has recently called attention to these facts and their importance in the causation of certain post-operative accidents in a paper [15] read before the Academie de Medecine.

The use of morphine as an anesthetic aid, even where definitely indicated, must of necessity be an added source of danger from infections. L. Reynolds [16] has emphasized this fact and called attention to the disadvantage in using morphine.

"From experiments performed by him, Reynolds concludes that morphine exerts a marked influence on the leucocytes. Not only does it check diapedesis, but phagocytosis is diminished in a marked degree. The growth of bacteria, on the other hand, is not appreciably affected. What bearing has this

14 Editorial in Journal of American Medical Association, February 18, 1911, also March 26, 1910, pp. 1043—1045.

15 April, 1910.

16 London Lancet, February 26, 1910.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

tine use of gastric lavage before the patient recovers from the anesthetic is one of the best means for getting rid of the ether, preventing vomiting, and the occasional occurrence of acute gastric dilatation. The use of the saline enema is specially helpful. In giving continuous proctoclysis, after the volume of the circulating fluid has reached normal, the added fluid is eliminated by the kidneys as fast as it is absorbed.

This same measure also helps in decreasing the danger from post-operative nephritis. As soon as the patient is out from under the anesthetic, copious water drinking should be insisted upon. It will not be likely to cause vomiting, and if it should seem to have this effect, gastric lavage may be resorted to and continued until the stomach has been washed clean. Sips of very hot water or swallowing bits of ice will then relieve the trouble, and in a little while the free use of water may be continued.

An active circulation will also aid in the elimination of the ether; and this, together with the stimulation of leucocytic activity, may be accomplished by the use of the cold mitten friction with the ice bag to the heart. Both these measures increase the depth of respiration and the volume of tidal air so that more thorough ventilation occurs.

Considerable importance attaches to the prevention of internal congestions and visceral stasis of blood, especially in the lungs and about the site of operation. As a means to this end, we have adopted as almost a matter of routine the use of the hot foot bath, the hot leg pack, or electro-thermal pack to the legs as soon as convenient, immediately following the operation. If the hot leg pack is used, a dry blanket should be placed next to the skin. A well covered ice bag is placed over the heart at the same time. The treatment is continued until the limbs are well reddened and should be concluded by a cold mitten friction to the same skin surface. This procedure will usually last about thirty minutes. It will probably not be necessary in ordinary cases to repeat it for several hours or until the next day.

Transient albuminuria does not usually require any special treatment. If albumen and casts appear in the urine, derivative

treatment is indicated and free perspiration should be encouraged. Sweating should never continue long at a time.

If pneumonia occurs, use derivative measures and apply the cold coil or cold compress to the chest. These should be occasionally interrupted by the application of a fomentation or the revulsive compress used. The ice bag to the heart and the cold mitten friction are also of great service in treating post-operative pneumonia. For further details see article on pneumonia in Chapter XIX.

After gall-bladder, appendix, tubal, and some other abdominal operations, a right sided, diaphragmatic and consequently much hidden pleurisy may appear. It is usually not severe and will respond to the usual treatment.

CHAPTER XXVIII

INSANITY AND DRUG ADDICTIONS

JESSIE H. SIMPSON, M. D.

THE INSANE

THE treatment of the insane is still in the involutional period to a more marked degree than any other line of therapy, and the introduction of hydrotherapeutic measures has done much to alleviate this unfortunate class, tending as it does to eliminate the use of hypnotic drugs and mechanical restraint.

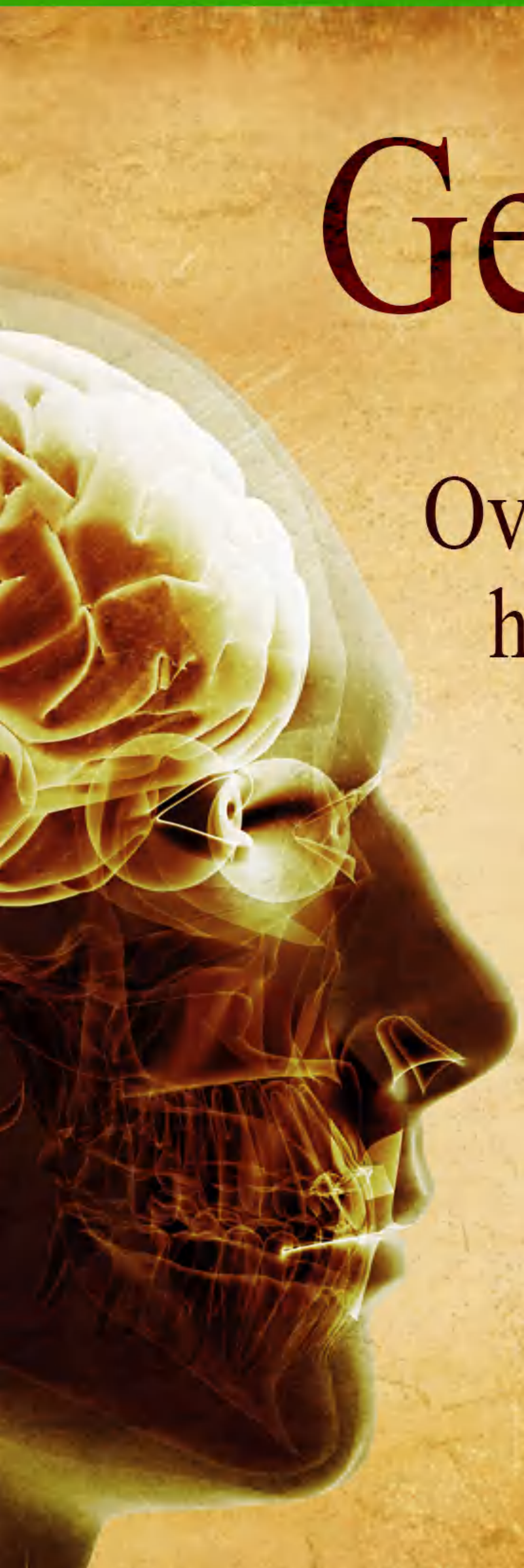
In dealing with the insane two very different lines of symptoms are encountered, so that for the purpose of this chapter we will divide them into excited and depressed cases regardless of mental diagnosis.

Many of these cases when first coming under treatment show marked symptoms of autotoxemia, which suggest colonic flushings, and measures calculated to stimulate skin elimination with free drinking of water, and indeed all hydrotherapeutic measures should be preceded by thorough cleansing of the intestinal tract.

The *excited cases*, whether manic-depressive, paretics, seniles, dementia præcox, or other, presenting the symptoms of sleeplessness, hyperactivity, logorrhea perhaps destructive, profane, violent, and resistive, require sedative treatment, which must be adapted to the condition of the individual patient. Here two methods have proven very helpful,—the continuous flowing bath and the wet pack.

The continuous flowing bath (*Plate XX.*) requires a special tub six feet long, which is supplied with a large overflow vent near the top and a large outflow, so that the tub can be emptied and cleaned quickly. The inflow may consist of one large

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

night, or he may be removed at any time when the restraint becomes tiresome. If, however, he does not become quiet in an hour, he should be removed from the pack and sponged and dried, as under these conditions the pack may become heating and send his temperature up to an alarming degree. Debilitated patients, or those suffering from arterio-sclerosis, should not receive this treatment, the continuous bath being preferable.

Depressed cases require tonic treatments. Of these the salt glow holds a leading place; hot and cold to the spine followed by the needle spray and fan douche; fomentations to the liver, if that organ is inactive, followed by the spray and douche; the electric light or hot air bath followed by the spray and douche are all useful, together with liberal feeding and good hygiene.

DRUG HABITUES

Morphine, Cocaine, Etc. Whether immediate or gradual withdrawal of the drug is practiced or whatever method of cure is used, hydrotherapy is a useful adjunct. During the early abstenance symptoms, when the patient is suffering from nausea, diarrhea, shifting pains, and great restlessness and sleeplessness, the continuous bath administered for one-half hour to two or three hours at a time relieves the symptoms and frequently induces sleep. Sometimes a wet pack will bring sleep, fomentations will relieve the pains when they are more localized, and an ice cap at the pit of the stomach will frequently relieve the nausea.

After these early symptoms have been relieved, elimination can be stimulated and the patient toned up generally by the use of electric light or hot air baths followed by the spray and douche.

Alcohol. In delirium tremens the continuous bath is indicated together with other measures. If this is not available, hot packs may be used. For the later effects of alcohol, elimination, and tonic treatments are needed, the electric light and hot air baths holding a leading place, each to be followed by the spray and douche.

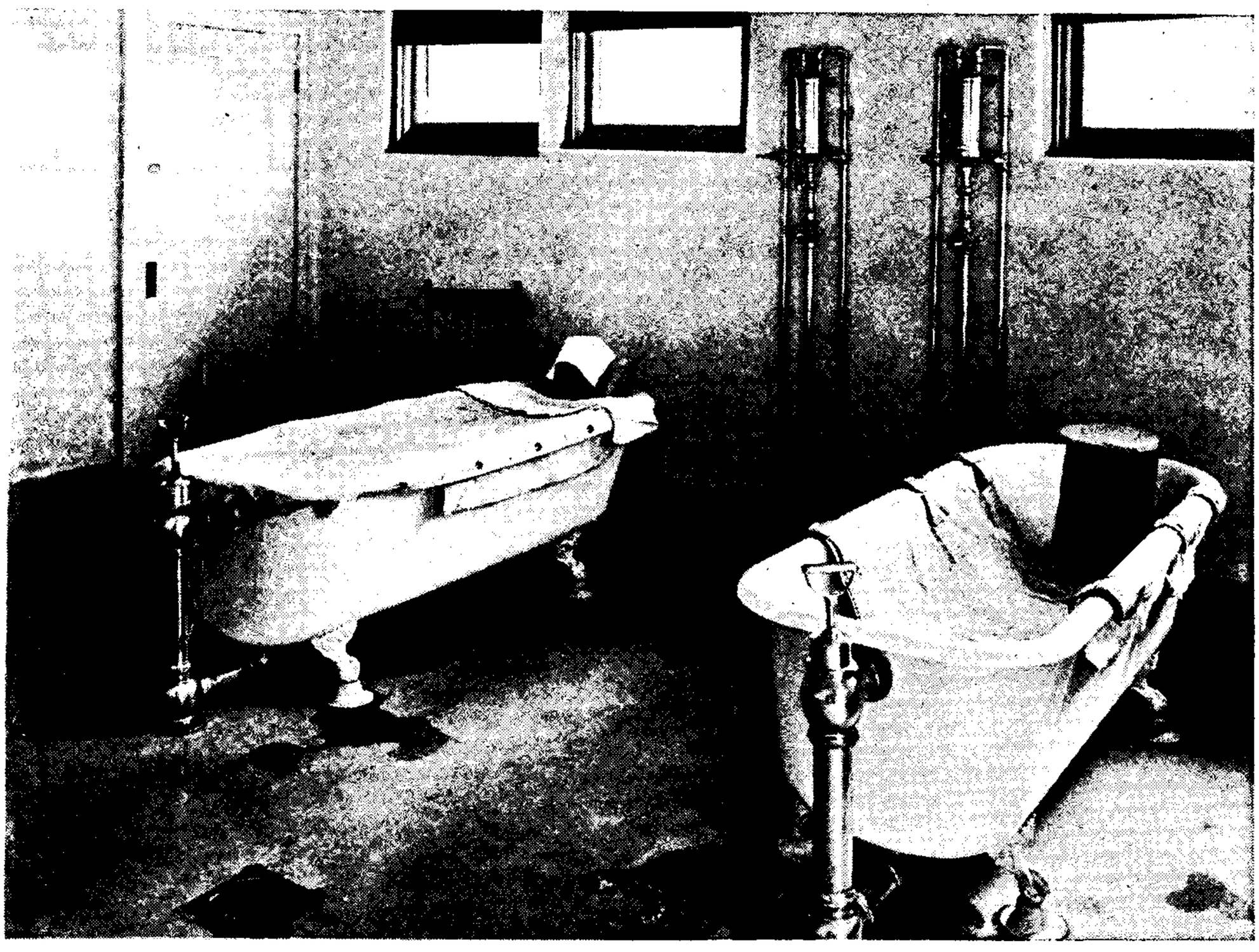


PLATE XX. The continuous flowing bath as installed at the Southern California State Hospital.

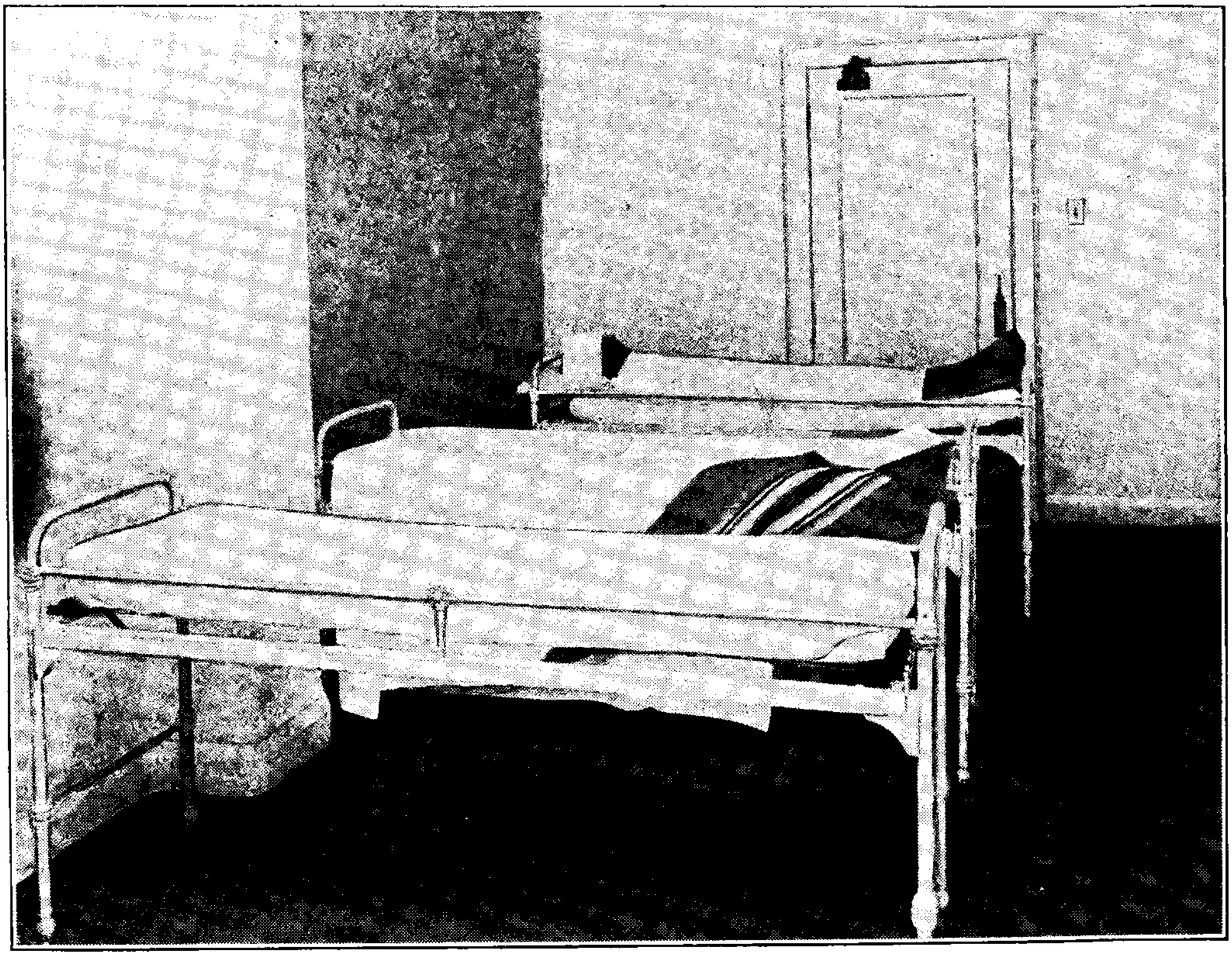


PLATE XXI. The wet sheet pack and pack tables at the

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

7. Rubs and Frictions. These are procedures in which the chief effect is derived from friction with the bare hands. Examples: Centripetal friction, oil rub.

8. Baths. Under this heading are included various local and general procedures in which the body is immersed in water, light, heated air, or vapor. Examples: Tub bath, foot bath, electric light or Russian baths.

9. Shampoos. The term shampoo applies to local or general cleansing measures by means of soap and water. (It is sometimes applied to massage). Examples: Swedish shampoo, Turkish shampoo.

10. Packs. A pack is a procedure in which a considerable portion of the body is enveloped in wet sheets or blankets for therapeutic purposes. Examples: Hot blanket pack, hot hip and leg pack, wet sheet pack.

11. Sprays and Douches. A spray or douche consists in the projection of one or more streams of water against the body. Examples: Shower bath, needle spray, pail pour, hot and cold douche.

12. Enemata. An enema is an injection of fluid into the lower bowel. Examples: Warm enema, rectal irrigation, coloclyster, oil enema, starch enema.

13. Vaginal Douches. The vaginal douche consists in the flushing or irrigating of the vaginal cavity with a fluid. Examples: Hot vaginal irrigation, disinfectant douches, styptic douche.

GLOSSARY OF TERMS

The terms listed below are used to designate the various physiologic or therapeutic effects of water and in the description of methods. Some of these have applied meanings slightly different from that ordinarily given.

1. Tonic. A tonic effect is one in which vital activities are increased so as to restore the body to a normal tone or condition. The nutrition, circulation, and other body functions are promoted.

2. Pure Stimulant. A stimulant arouses the body to unusual activities. It may be compared to a whip and is used chiefly

in emergencies. Like a tonic it increases vital activities, but to a much greater degree. Between a pure stimulant and a tonic there are various gradations which might be designated as mild stimulant, extreme tonic, etc.

3. Sedative. A sedative or calmative agent is one which lessens vital activity and is conducive to relaxation and rest.

4. Antispasmodic. The relaxing of spasm or relieving of convulsions.

5. Depressant. A depressant effect is one in which heightened or normal body activities are decreased to a marked degree. Such an effect is desirable only where a function is greatly overactive.

6. Anodyne. An anodyne effect refers to the relief of pain.

7. Spoliative. A spoliative treatment is one which increases the oxidation and breaking down (catabolism) of tissue; tending to reduce weight.

8. Diaphoretic. The production of sweating. An agent that produces sweating is said to have a diaphoretic or sudorific effect.

9. Diuresis. Increased excretion of urine.

10. Eliminative. An eliminative effect consists in promoting and hastening excretion from the kidneys (diuresis), skin (diaphoresis), and lungs.

11. Depletion. Depletion is the lessening of the amount of blood in a given part,—practically it is the reduction of congestion.

12. Derivative. Derivation is the drawing of blood or lymph from one part of the body by increasing the amount in another part. The term depletion is also applied to this process, but refers particularly to the result produced.

13. Fluxion. Fluxion consists in greatly increasing the rapidity of the blood current in a particular part. It is the production of active or arterial hyperemia.

14. Revulsive. A term used to designate a treatment consisting of a single prolonged application of heat followed by a single very brief application of cold. This meaning is not

strictly adhered to as the term is also used where three applications of such proportionate duration are made.

15. Alternate. The expression "alternate hot and cold" is used in this text to describe treatments in which the duration of the cold application is from one-fourth to one-half that of the heat (in a few cases equal with it) and in which three or more changes from heat to cold are made.

16. Antipyretic. The lowering of the body temperature in fever.

17. Refrigerant. Relieving of thirst and restoring the alkalinity of the blood by such means as free water drinking and the use of fruit juices.

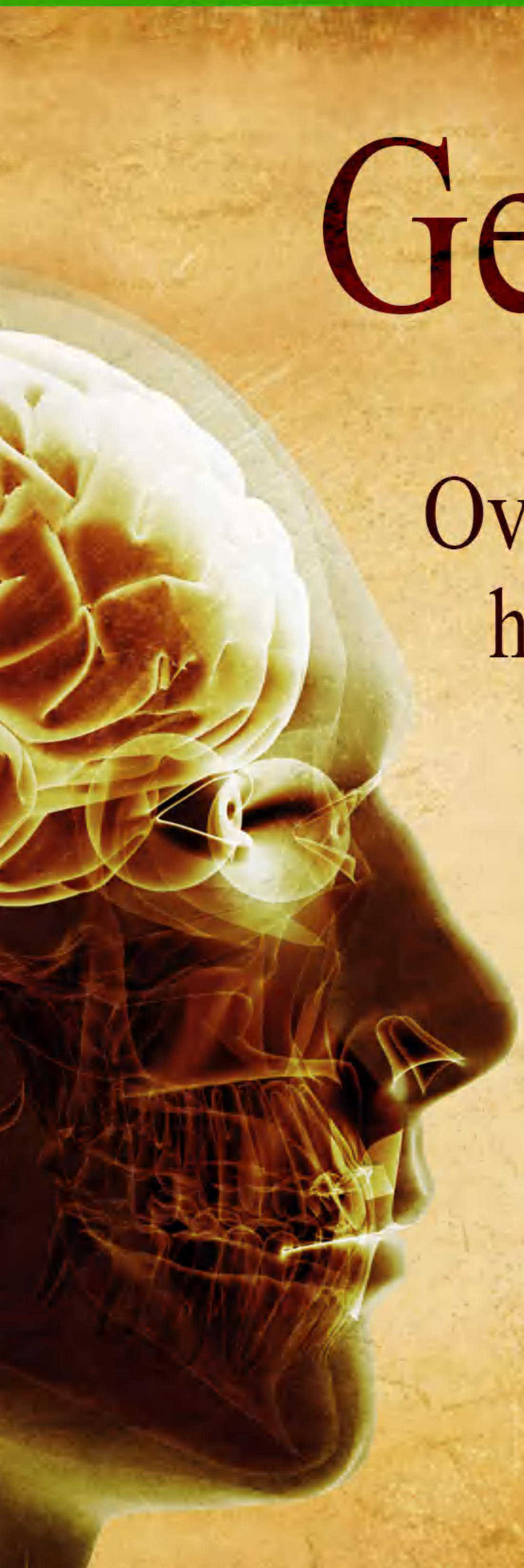
LOCAL APPLICATIONS OF HEAT

Fomentations—Fo.

A fomentation is a local application of moist heat by means of cloths wrung from hot water.

(*a*) *Articles Necessary.* In well equipped treatment rooms the fomentation tank should be so arranged that the water from which the fomentations are to be wrung can be heated by live steam passed into the water through a coil. When properly arranged the escape of steam from this coil into the water will be noiseless and cause the water to boil more vigorously than over a fire. The outlet of the tank should be controlled by a valve, never by a plug. A wringer with extra long rollers should be clamped to the side or end of the tank and a table placed immediately beyond the wringer on which the fomentations may be wrapped (*Plate XXIII.*). The fomentations will be hotter if heated directly by live steam. Special steam boxes (*Plates XXIV and XXV.*) may be provided for this purpose or live steam passed into fomentation cloths packed in a pail. If treatment is given at the patient's residence a boiler or pail of hot water may be used. In an institution it is rarely necessary to carry a pail of hot water to the patient's room, as the fomentations will be hotter if prepared in the treatment rooms and packed in a pail in the manner described below. The nurse should also be provided with a set of six fomentation

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

shape and size for the part to be treated, fold it quickly inside the dry fomentation cloth. It is now ready for use. By again doubling together the surface of the fomentation to be applied to the patient, it can be carried with less loss of heat. The fomentation should be large enough to cover a much larger area than the part affected.

Where it is necessary to wring the fomentation by hand, partially twist the long folded piece while it is held doubled together with one hand holding each end. Both ends are now grasped in one hand and the fomentation dipped into the boiling water. When it is ready to wring, twist tightly, handling the fomentation cloth by the dry ends. Next pull the ends apart. The water is thus squeezed out. (*Plate XXII.*) The twisting and pulling may be repeated as necessary for thorough wringing of the cloth. By releasing one end while holding up the cloth by the other, it may be quickly untwisted and at once wrapped in the dry covering.

Where it is necessary to give the treatment in the patient's room, a set of three fomentations may be packed in a *papier mache* pail in such a way as to preserve their heat for a half hour or even longer. First, line the pail with large, dry fomentation cloths. Prepare each fomentation as usual and pack in tightly or better still, wring by hand the inside cloths, leaving them twisted as tightly as possible and pack closely in the lined bucket. A hot-water bottle may be placed in the bottom of the pail if thought necessary and another over the wet cloths. The necessary number of dry fomentation cloths may be packed into the top of the pail and the fomentations made up in the room as needed.

(*d*) *Procedure.* The fomentation should lie closely in contact with the skin, and be renewed in three or four minutes; or in case of pain, as soon as it becomes comfortable. If unbearably hot, rub the part with the hand under the fomentation or remove the moisture by firm rubbing once or twice with a Turkish towel wrapped about the hand. The fomentations may be applied over a towel in order to temper the heat. Always be careful to protect from chilling the area being treated, by keeping it covered with the fomentation cloth or a towel.

PLATE XXII. Wringing a fomentation by hand.

PLATE XXIII. A fomentation tank with wringers and tables for folding.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

as hot as can be borne, and renewed as soon as it becomes comfortable. In some cases of pain the cold application at the close should be omitted, the part being dried and immediately covered with flannel or other dry covering.

For sanitary reasons it is desirable that each patient furnish his own fomentation cloths. However, persons with communicable diseases should not be admitted to a general treatment room.

(*f*) *Effects*. The fomentation is used to relieve pain, produce derivation, as a preparation for cold treatment, and for stimulating or sedative effects, according to the temperature and mode of application. Its first effect is that of a vital stimulant; unless followed by a cold application, the reaction is atonic. A brief application is stimulating; prolonged applications sedative or depressing. For sedative effects the heat should be moderate and the application more prolonged before renewal. These points should be observed in applying fomentations to the spine for insomnia.

Hot Gauze Compress—H. Comp.

This is used when it is desired to apply moist heat to such sensitive parts as the eye, a wound or infected part where the cloth must be disinfected or discarded after being used.

Several thicknesses of gauze, cheesecloth or ordinary cotton cloth of appropriate size and shape, are wrung from boiling water and applied in the same way as a fomentation. Because the compress is usually small and unprotected, it cools quickly, and for this reason must be more frequently renewed, nor does cotton hold heat as long as wool. From ten to fifteen minutes will usually suffice to obtain the desired result. The treatment should be concluded in a manner similar to the fomentation.

Stupes

A stupe consists in the application of a medicament by means of a fomentation. When gauze compresses are used, the disinfectant or medicament may be put into the hot water from which the compress is wrung. In case of a large fomentation with flannel cloths, the medicament may be applied by compresses

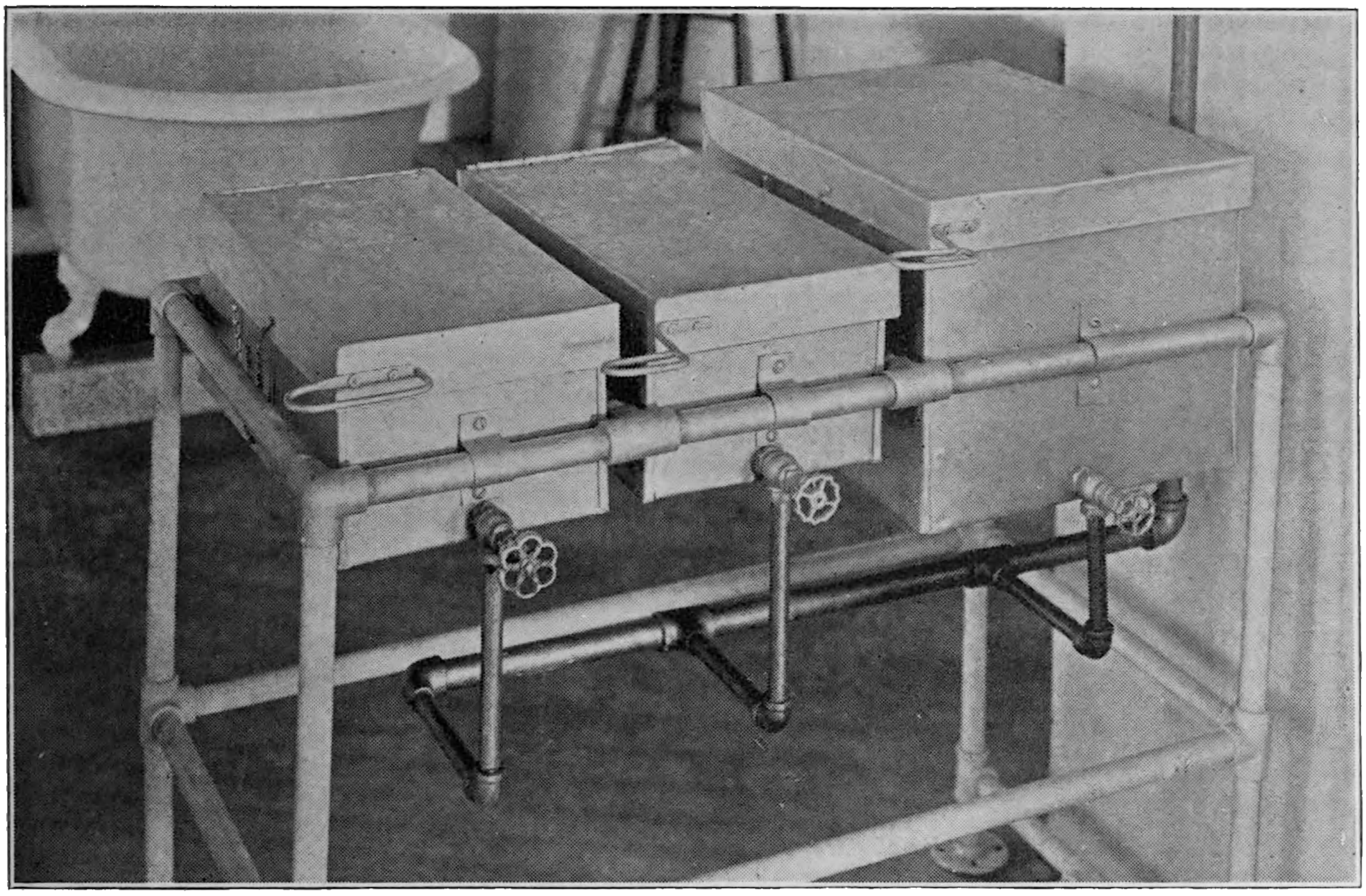


PLATE XXIV. Steam boxes for heating fomentations and packs—closed.

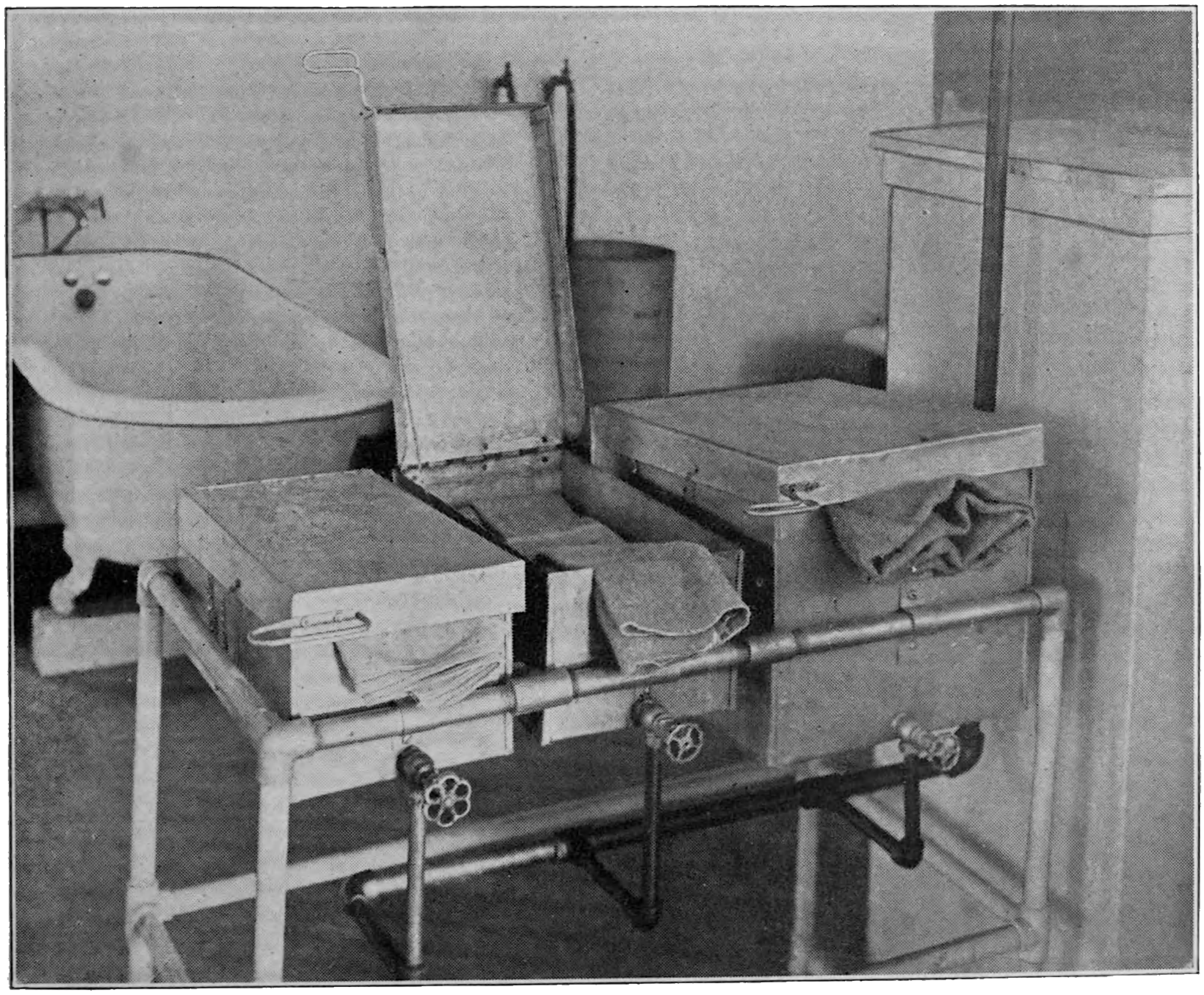
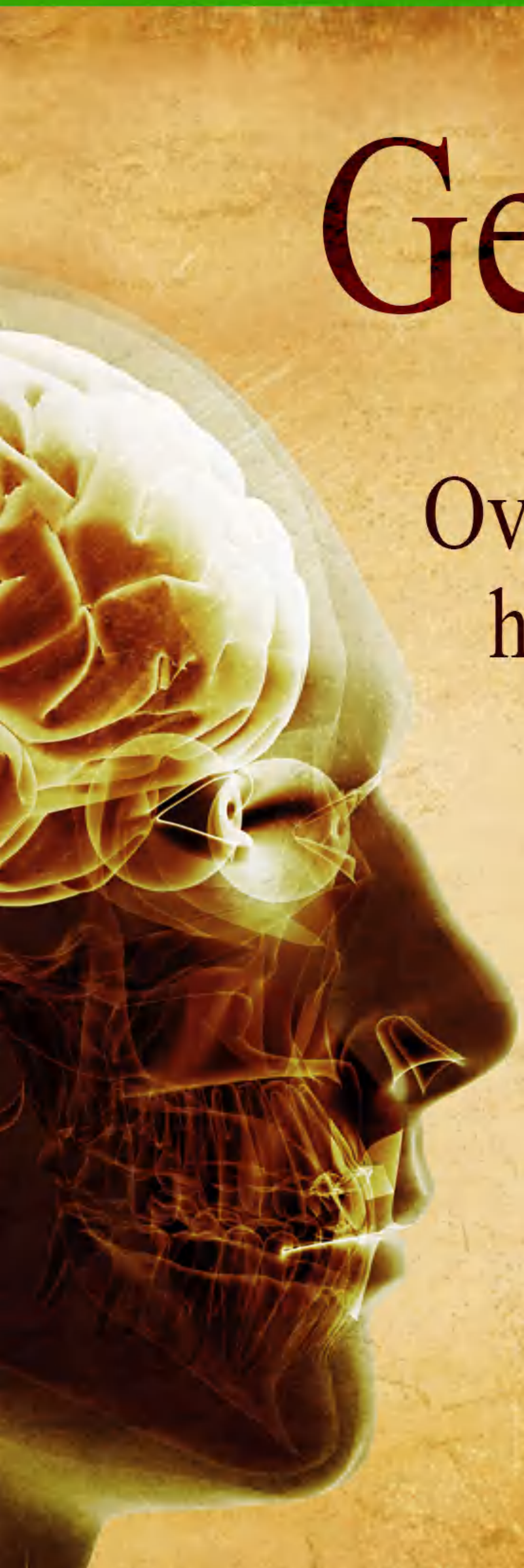


PLATE XXV. Steam boxes for heating fomentations and packs—open and in use.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Alternate Hot and Cold to Head—H. & C. Hd.

(*a*) *Articles Necessary.* Two compresses of three to five thicknesses of gauze or cheesecloth about twelve inches square, two ice bags filled with finely chopped ice and covered with cheesecloth, a spine bag partly filled with hot water and covered with a fomentation cloth or towel, a bowl of ice water and a pail of boiling water.

(*b*) *Procedure.* Place the spine bag crosswise of the cervical spine, bringing it well up under back of head and neck. Lightly wring cheesecloth from ice water and apply to face, covering top of head and ears. Press down firmly over forehead and temporal arteries; renew every minute.

After three minutes replace spine bag by two cloth-covered ice bags, and the cold compress to face by another wrung quite dry from hot water; the latter should be renewed every minute. In another three minutes replace the first applications of spine bag to the back of the neck and cold compress to the face. Continue these alternations for three complete sets of hot and cold. Cool all the parts by wiping off with a cold compress and dry thoroughly, especially the hair.

(*c*) *Effect.* These alternating hot and cold applications stimulate the cerebral circulation and the treatment is, therefore, indicated in headache due to anemia of the brain, also in passive congestion and in a cold in the head. Any *alternating* hot and cold application produces *fluxion*.

Simultaneous Hot and Cold to Head—Simul. H. & C. Hd.

Place an ice bag to the base of the brain and another ice bag, or better, ice cap, to the vertex after moistening the hair so that the cold will penetrate. Also place ice bags or ice compresses over the carotids. Now apply a fomentation to the face, covering the ears and forehead. Gauze or cheesecloth should be used under the fomentation when applied to the face. The nose should not be covered by the fomentation as it is uncomfortable when so done, and it is better for the patient to breathe cooler air.

This treatment is very effective in reducing cerebral congestion and relieving congestive headache. It is well to conclude

the treatment by an alternate hot and cold percussion douche to the feet, cold cervical and cephalic compresses being kept on while giving the douche.

Simultaneous applications of heat and cold so given that the cold application is placed over a reflex area of, or the large artery supplying, the deep part, produce *depletion*.

Hot-Water Bottles

These should be partly filled with hot water (never boiling water) and wrapped in cloth, preferably flannel or a Turkish towel. Great care should be taken in applying them to patients with paralysis and during and after operations that burns do not result. The safety of the hot-water bottle may be tested by holding it against the cheek. When not in use, the bottle should be hung bottom end up with the stopper out. It should never be left doubled sharply upon itself as it is likely to crack at the fold. The hot-water bottle is made in two- and three-quart sizes. The spinal hot-water bottle is useful in giving hot packs, also for the local application of heat to the spine or legs. The metal hot-water bottle is very durable. It is serviceable as a bed warmer and for the feet. It must be well covered and great care exercised in its use that burns are not produced by leaving some part of the metal exposed. These bottles are shown in *Plate XXVI*.

Fomentations and hot packs may be reenforced or prolonged by the use of hot-water bottles, or the bag may be wrapped in a moist cloth covered over by a dry one, to give the effects of a mild fomentation.

Winternitz Coil

This consists of a coil of rubber tubing about ten or eleven inches in diameter, through which a stream of hot water is caused to flow. (*Fig. 60.*) A dry blanket is placed on the treatment table, and over this is placed a doubled sheet, wrung from cold water or ice water, so that it may be wrapped about the trunk. The patient lies down on the wet sheet and one end is wrapped tightly about the chest and abdomen. The coil is now placed on the abdomen over the wet sheet, and the other end of the sheet wrapped around the trunk over the coil. The

dry blanket is folded over and about the patient. A small stream of hot water at 135° flows slowly through the coil from the center outwards. The treatment is continued from thirty to forty minutes, or even three hours in cases of very slow and defective digestion. It is concluded by a cold mitten friction. A hot-water bottle may be used in place of the coil. (See hot and heating trunk pack.)

The coil may be used for cold water in the same manner as the Leiter coil. In fact the cold coil is much more frequently used and for a greater number of purposes than the hot coil.

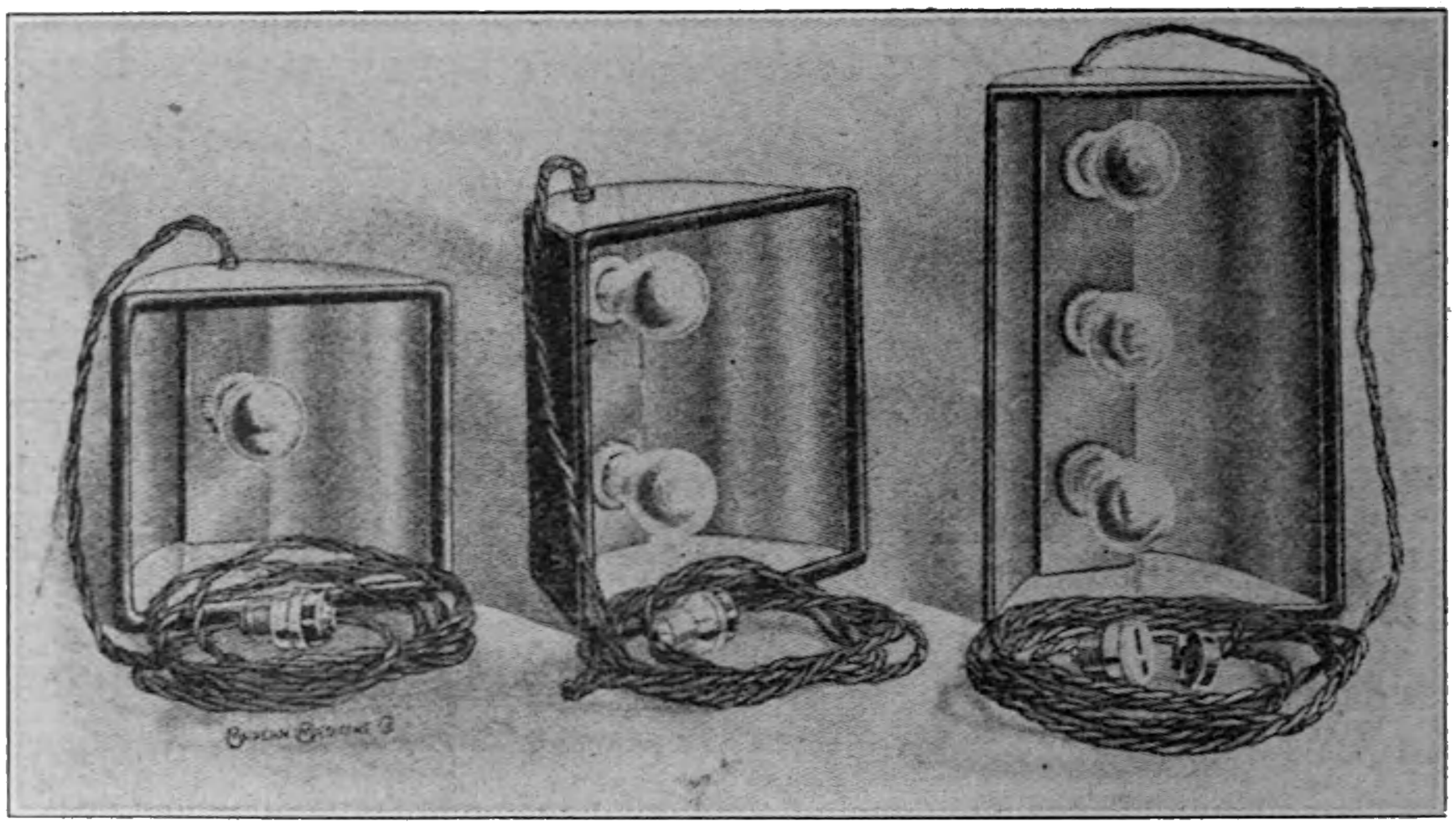


Fig. 59. Three sizes of radiant heat.

Radiant Heat—Rad. Heat.

The radiant heat is a local application of heat by means of electric lights arranged in a reflecting metal case. (*Fig. 59.*) From one to twelve or more such lights may be arranged in a single case, and the case so constructed as to fit to any part of the body. An instrument with one light is perhaps the most useful. An oblong case containing three lights is a convenient means of applying heat to the spine. A case in the shape of a half cylinder and containing six or more lights may be made for the feet and legs.

In applying the radiant heat, the body should be protected from the edge of the case by towels or fomentation cloths. The

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

amount of heat may be regulated by the number of lights or the distance from the skin. Leave in place for ten to twenty minutes, or until the desired results are obtained. Cover the part well after drying perspiration, or use a cold wet towel. The local electric light is a convenient means of applying heat to the feet, knees, and other joints. It may be used over bandages and surgical dressings where it is not desirable to remove them.

LOCAL APPLICATIONS OF COLD

Cold Compress—C. Comp.

A cold compress is a local application of cold by means of a cloth wrung from cold water. Hand towels, ordinary cotton cloths, or better still, cheesecloth may be used. These should be folded to the desired size, and wrung from cold water or ice water. The wringing should be just sufficient to prevent dripping. They will be colder if taken immediately from a block of ice. As a continuous cold application, the compress must be very frequently renewed, always before it is warmed to any great extent. The thicker the compress, the less frequently will it require renewal. A set of two compresses should be used and renewed at intervals of from one to five minutes depending on the thickness of the compress and the result to be obtained. Cold compresses may be applied to the head, neck, over the heart or lungs, to the abdomen, spine, etc. When applied to the head they should be pressed firmly down on the surface being treated, especially over the forehead and the temporal arteries. The pillow should be protected by rubber cloth covered by a towel. When applied to the abdomen in typhoid fever, the bedding and patient's garments should be protected by Turkish towels. Unless very thick and always when left longer than three to five minutes, the nature of the application changes and it becomes a heating compress.

When applied over a large artery it decreases the amount of blood in the part beyond the application. Such an application is called a *proximal compress*. Examples of this are found in such applications as a cold compress to the neck, over the femoral artery, at the bend of the elbow, etc. Ice bags are also used for the same purpose.

Ice Pack—Ice Pk.

An ice pack is used where a large continuous and very cold application is desired. Spread cracked ice over a thick Turkish towel, folding one end and the edges over this so as to retain the ice. Apply next to the skin or over a single layer of flannel. This may be used over the heart, also over a consolidated lung area in pneumonia. In the latter case it should never be applied until after the hot packs used in this disease have warmed the body sufficiently to prevent chilling. It should occasionly be interrupted by applying a fomentation. This helps to preserve the desired reflex effect.

Snow may be used in place of the pounded ice. In applying an ice pack to a joint, first wrap the part in flannel so as to prevent actual freezing, then pack the snow or pounded ice closely against the flannel forming a layer about one inch thick, retaining it in place by a larger flannel cloth wrapped about all and pinned together (*Plate XIII.*). Several gum rubber ice bags filled with snow or pounded ice are better for pack purposes, as there is no danger of wetting the bed linen.

Ice packs should be interrupted often enough to prevent freezing, and the part either rubbed with snow or a fomentation applied to renew the local reaction.

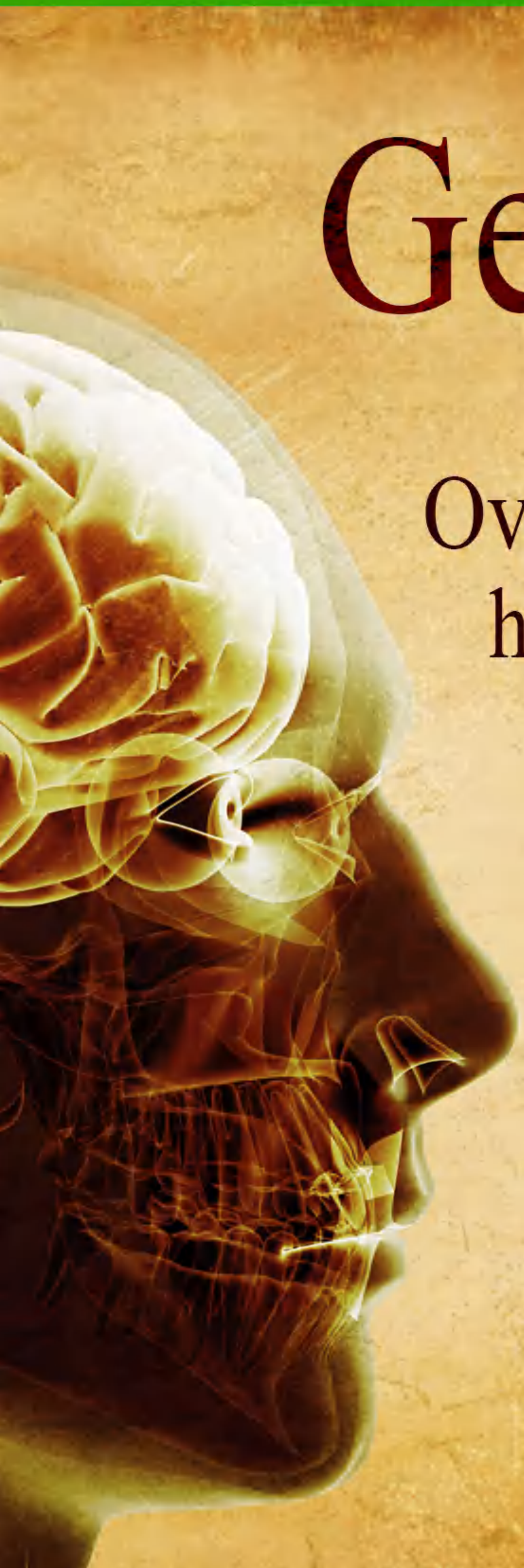
Ice Cravat

The ice cravat or collar is made in the same way as the ice pack, the towel being filled with ice and folded so as to be about three inches wide and encircle the neck. If the towel is wrung from ice water, it must be more frequently renewed than when cracked ice is used.

An ice cravat may also be made by using two narrow spinal ice bags (*Plate XXVII, fig. 3.*). These should be filled with pounded ice and wrapped in linen or cotton cloth.

The effect is that of a proximal application. The carotid arteries and their distal branches are contracted, also the vertebral arteries. Thus the blood supply to the brain and head generally is very much lessened. The ice collar is frequently used in fever, in congestive headache, in acute epidemic men-

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

the coil. The rate of flow may be very conveniently
by tying a knot in the outflow tube just above where it
the receiving pail. This knot may be loose or tight as
for rapid or slow flowing of the cold water through
The reservoir should be about two feet above the level
coil and may be a large can with an outlet at the bottom
ordinary pail may be used and the outflow secured by
age.

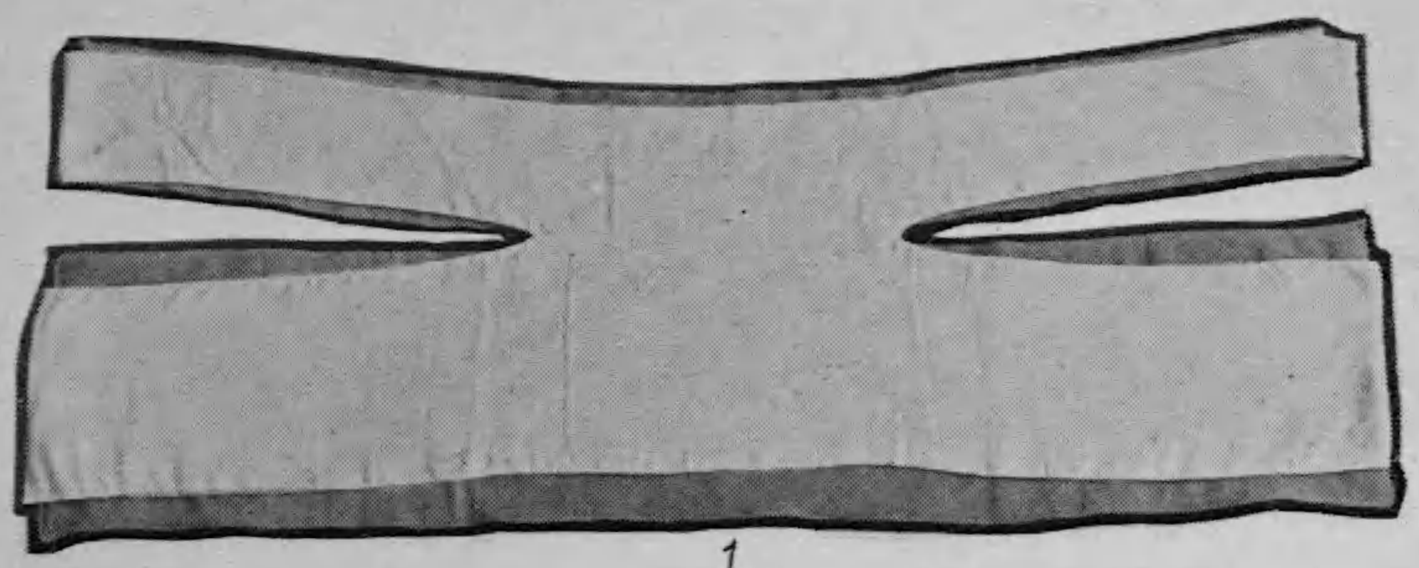
The coil should always be applied over a cold compr
covered with a dry flannel cloth or fomentation cl
applying it to the head, the coil may be made in the sh
cap (*Plate VIII.*) and held in place by light band
folded towels. Always wet the hair before placing the
The Leiter coil is not used as much as the rubber coil
a small flat coil of flexible metal tubing through which
of cold water or ice water passes. It may be mould
any part, and is often used over the mastoid.

HEATING COMPRESSES

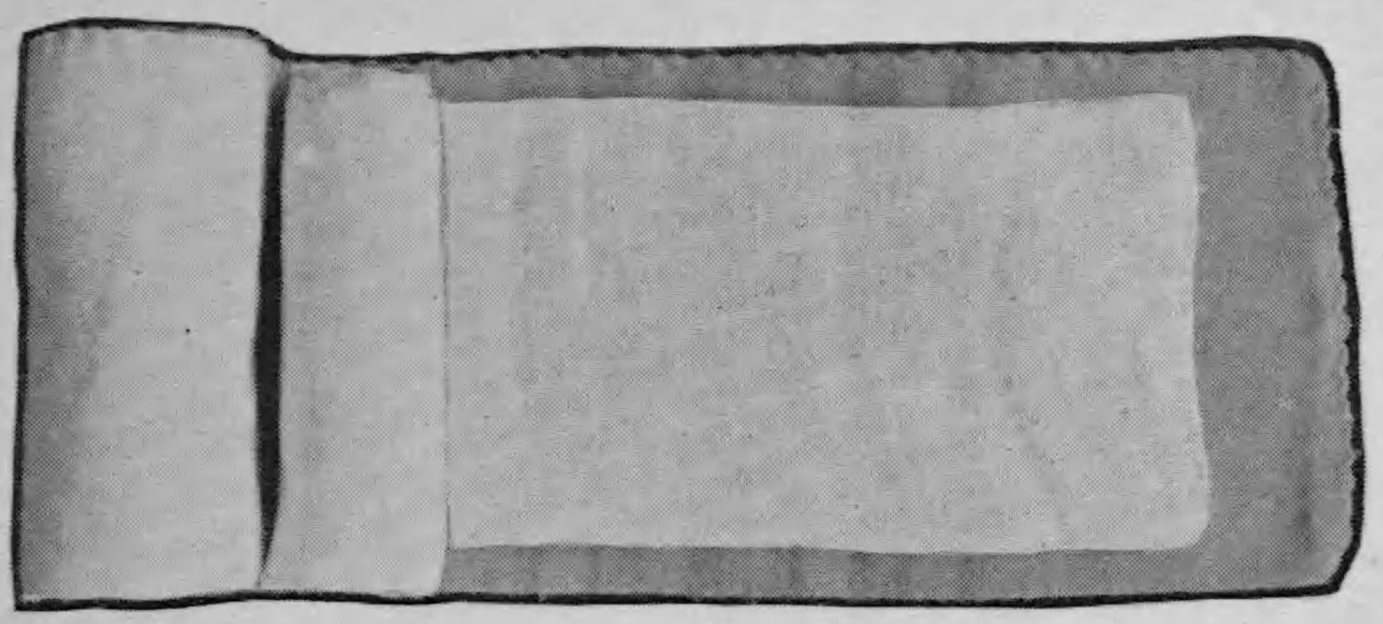
A heating compress is a cold compress so covered that
ing up soon occurs. The effect is, therefore, that of a
application of moist heat.

A heating pack or compress consists of an application of
to the body by means of three or four thicknesses of gau
one of linen or cotton cloth wrung from cold water and so
fectly covered with dry flannel or mackintosh and flannel
prevent the circulation of air and cause an accumulation
body heat. In case warming does not occur promptly, it sh
be aided by hot-water bottles or the radiant heat. It is usu
left in place for several hours between other treatments, or o
night. If left on over night it should be dry by morning
an impervious covering such as a mackintosh or oiled sil
used. On removal of the compress the part should be rubb
with cold water.

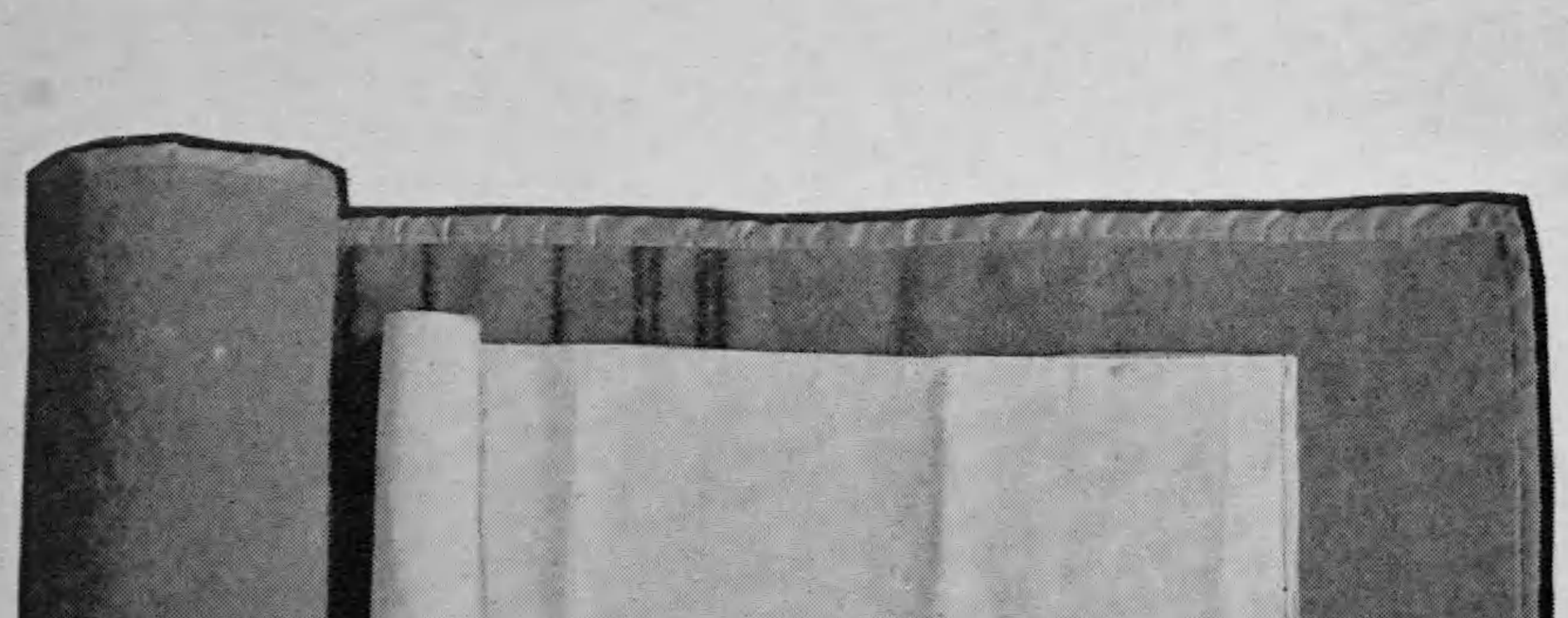
According to the extent and location of the surface involv
the nature and thickness of the coverings, the temperature
amount of water left in the wet cloth, and the duration of
application, it may have the following effects, *viz.*, tonic, se
tive, derivative, or sweating.



1



2



3

PLATE XXVIII. 1. The square chest pack. 2. The roller chest pack. 3. The moist abdominal bandage.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

The outer flannel part should be about two inches wider and of the same length and slit in the same fashion. The flannel part should be spread out on the treatment table and the linen over it after being wrung from cold water. The patient now lies back on this. The narrow strips are brought up over the shoulder and across the chest. (*Plates XXXI and XXXII.*) The top of the wider strips should fit under the axilla and be brought across the chest. The flannel should now be applied in the same manner and at all loose places be drawn tight or folded in and the whole fastened with safety pins.

3. Fitted Chest Pack. From flannel cut a front and a back piece in much the same shape as for a vest making the necessary curved cuts about the arms and neck. The front piece should be the larger so as to come back under the arms and lap over the back piece; also on each side of the neck, a strip four inches wide should be made long enough to overlap the back piece.

An inside piece of the same shape should be cut from gauze or thin linen. This inside piece should be about one and one-half inches narrower at all edges so that when covered by the flannel it will not be exposed at any place, but be covered at least one inch beyond its edge.

After applying see that it fits snugly and is well pinned with safety pins so as to prevent the entrance of air at any place along the edges.

Various other forms may be improvised to meet the needs of the home not provided with the more perfect requisites. To retain the moisture and so give greater sweating effects the cloth may be covered with mackintosh, gossamer cloth, or oiled silk of the same size and shape. When so covered it is spoken of as a protected chest pack.

4. Partial Chest Pack. It is often desirable to apply the moist cloth to only a portion of the chest. The gauze or linen may be cut to any desired shape and size and applied to the proper area under the square or roller flannel pack. The chest being covered principally by dry flannel, this form approaches in effect the dry pack.

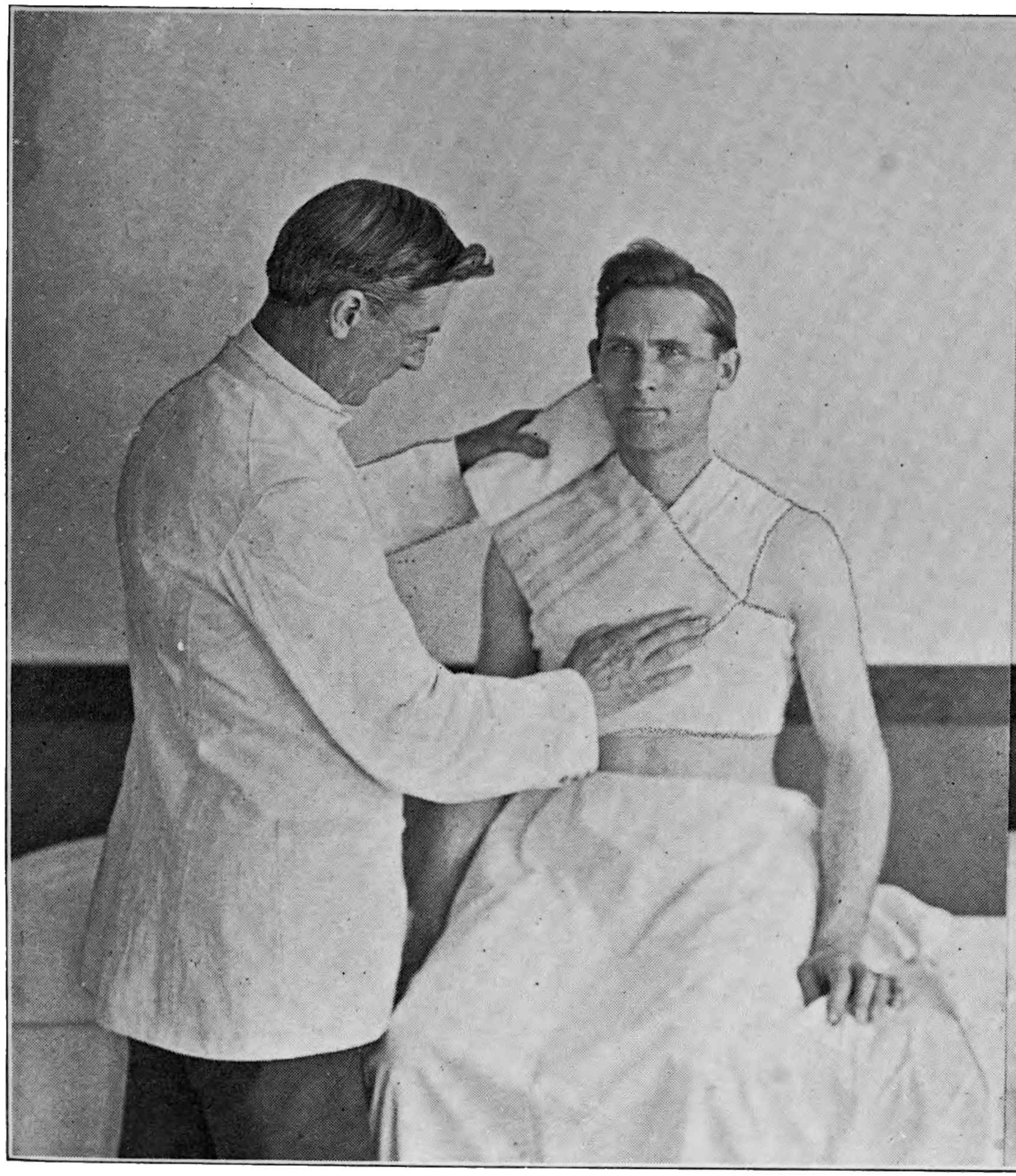


PLATE XXIX. The roller chest pack—applying.

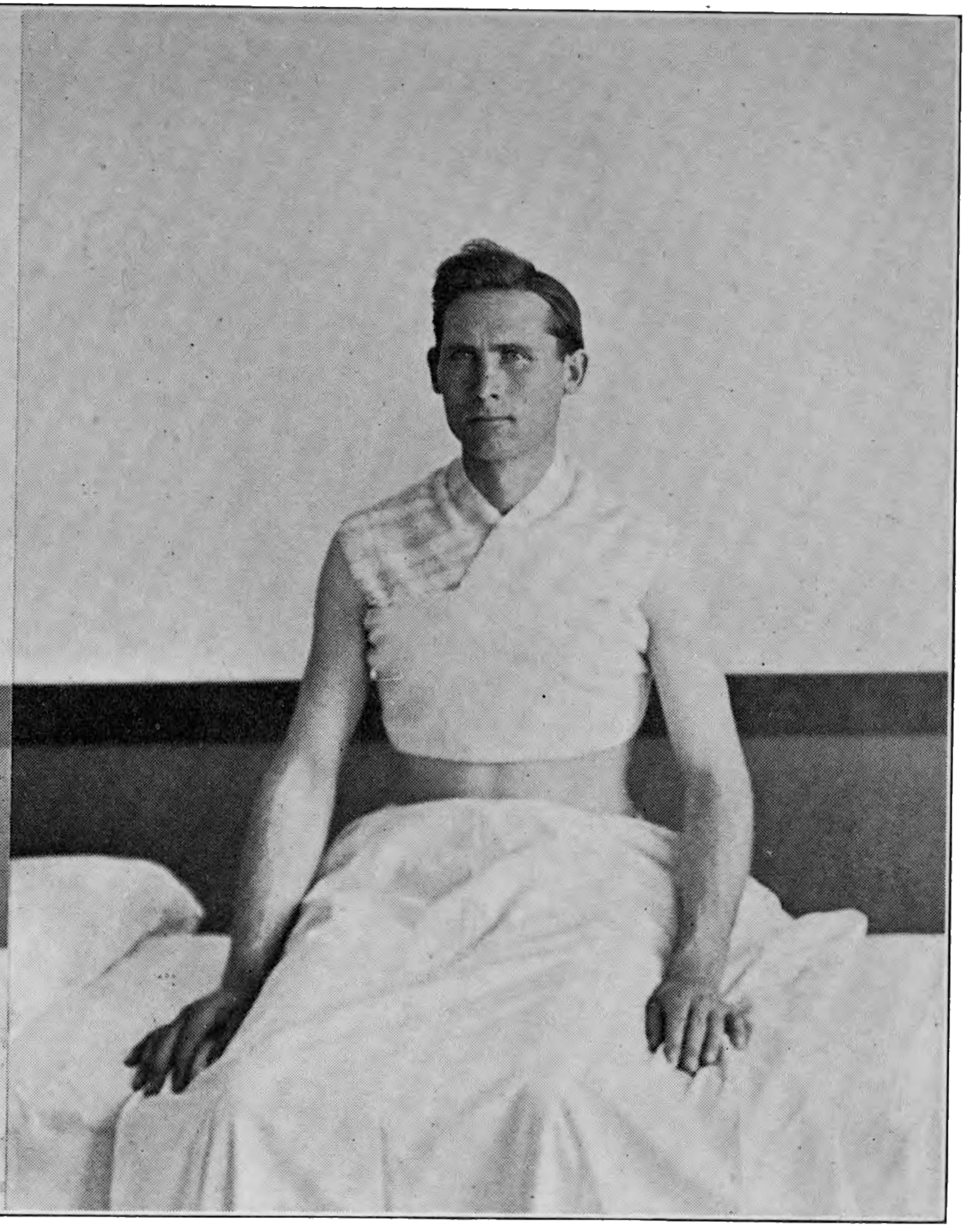
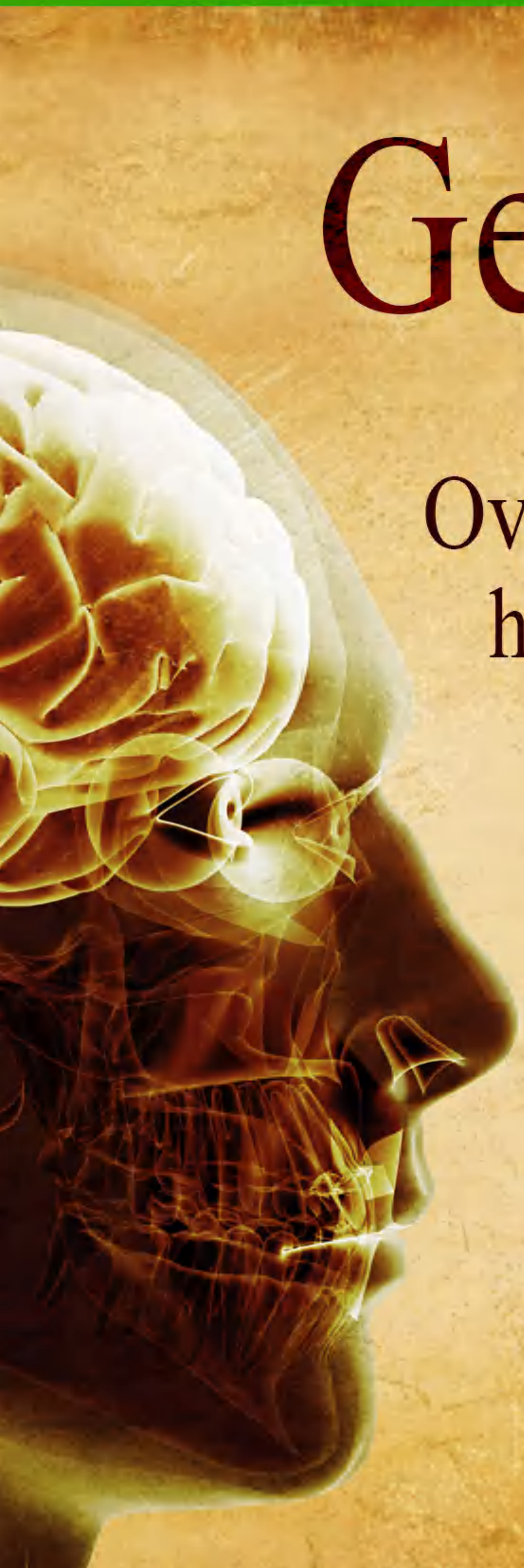


PLATE XXX. The roller chest pack—finished.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

The moisture may be retained by a bandage of oiled s
mackintosh of the same width as the linen and applied b
it and the flannel. This is spoken of as a protected girdl

The sweating underneath will be more profuse than w
the impervious covering. Since the moisture is retained
not be dry by morning. The protected girdle is indic
hyperacidity and where it is desirable to produce conge
relaxation.

The ordinary moist abdominal bandage is useful in m
forms of atonic indigestion, in neurasthenia, anemia
liver, insomnia, catarrhal jaundice, constipation, etc. In
conditions it is usually warn only at night.

Heating Throat Compress

Four to six thicknesses of cheesecloth or two or th
ordinary cotton cloth about three inches wide and long e
to encircle the neck twice are used inside. The outside co
of two thicknesses of flannel not less than four inches w
This compress being small, considerable water may be le
it and still be found dry by morning. The neck shoul
rubbed with cold water immediately after removing the c
press in the morning. The "cold cloth around the neck" i
very common household remedy for sore throat, hoarsen
tonsillitis, etc. It is indeed a very efficient measure; its use
ness can hardly be overestimated. The heating throat co
press is indicated in pharyngitis, acute laryngitis, tonsilli
quinsy, and in inflammation of the Eustachian tube. It is al
useful in clergyman's sore throat. In tonsillitis, quinsy, a
inflammation of the Eustachian tube, the compress shou
extend upward about the lower part of the ear and may be h
in place by a bandage over the top of the head.

Heating Joint Compress

Heating compresses may be applied to the foot, ankle, knee
hand, wrist, etc. Rarely more than two thicknesses of gau
are used. It is often necessary to use cotton for a covering t
obtain close application to the skin surface. This may be held
in place by a three-inch roller bandage or a broad flannel cloth.

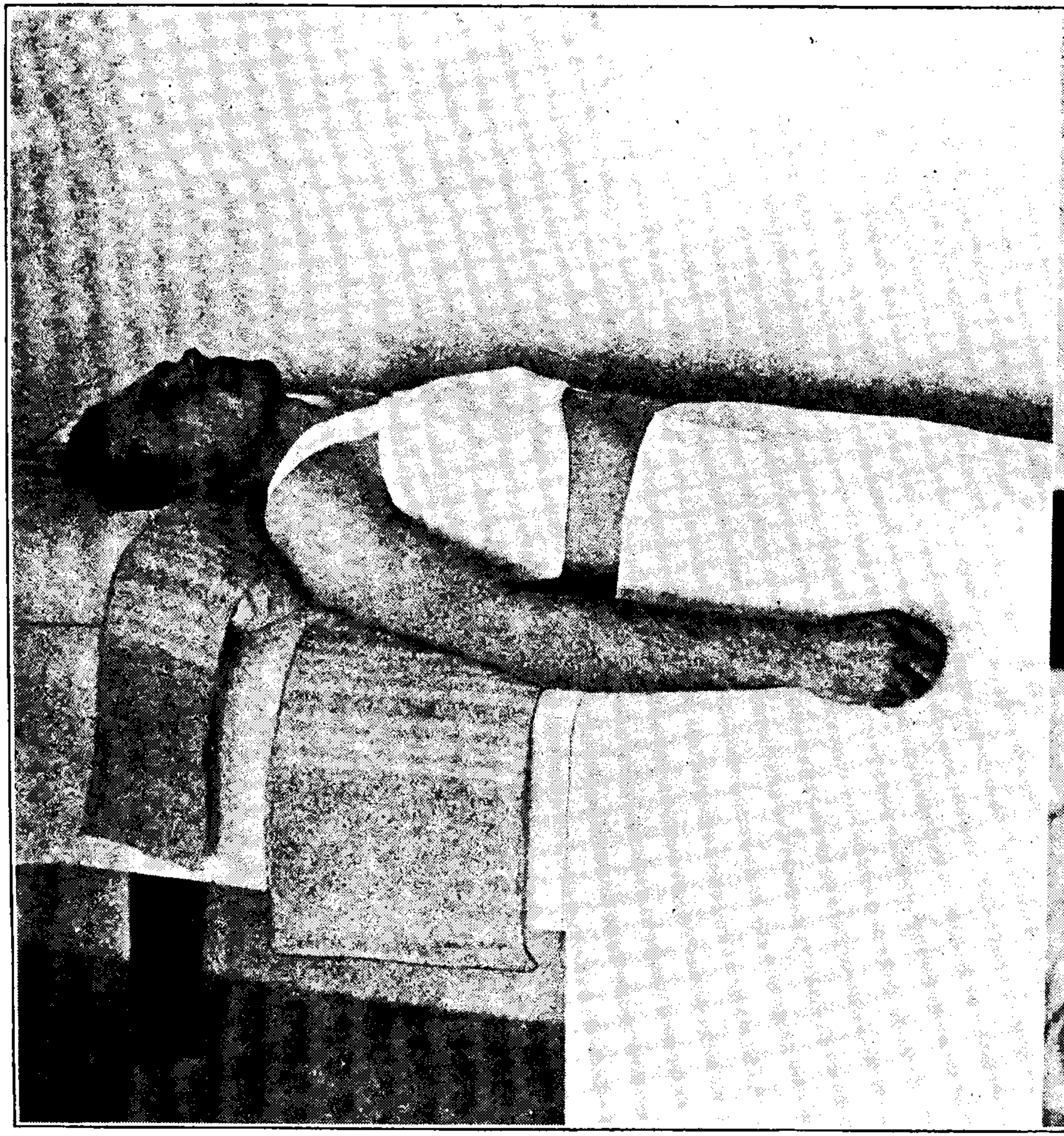


PLATE XXXI. The square chest pack—applying.

PLATE XXXII. The square chest pack—finished.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

The *charcoal* poultice is especially valuable in foul ulcers or wounds. In may be prepared of charcoal and adding equal parts of flaxseed meal and powdered boiling water until the resulting mixture is the consistency mush. This is evenly spread on a cloth and applied part, or directly on the part and covered with a and some impervious cloth as oiled silk.

TONIC FRICTIONS

A tonic friction is an application of cold water so with friction as to produce decided thermic and circulatory reaction. The effects are briefly described as stimulant and tonic. These have been discussed in detail in the chapter on stimulants and tonics, *q. v.*

Given in the order of their severity, the tonic frictions are as follows: Wet hand rub, cold mitten friction, cold towel rub, wet sheet rub, and dripping sheet rub. To these may be added the ice rub and salt glow. While the latter is not particularly an application of cold, the friction gives tonic effects similar to the others, and the procedure is not far different. The ice rub may be used for stimulant or tonic purposes, but is more frequently used as an antipyretic.

Cold Mitten Friction—C. M. F. or Cmf.

(*a*) *Articles Required.* A bowl or pail of cold water at 50° or 60° F. or ice water, a sheet, three Turkish towels, two friction mitts made of such coarse material as woolen mop (*see corner figure in Plate XXXV.*), and compresses for head and neck.

(*b*) *Procedure.* The patient should be warmly covered and the feet warm; if not, give hot foot bath. Bare one part of the body at a time. Do not expose any part longer than necessary to dry quickly and thoroughly and recover at once with warm dry covering. Before beginning the regular part of the treatment bathe the patient's face and neck with cold water or apply cold compresses to the head and neck. This is especially necessary in treating patients with valvular heart disease. In this condition an ice bag should be placed over the heart before be-

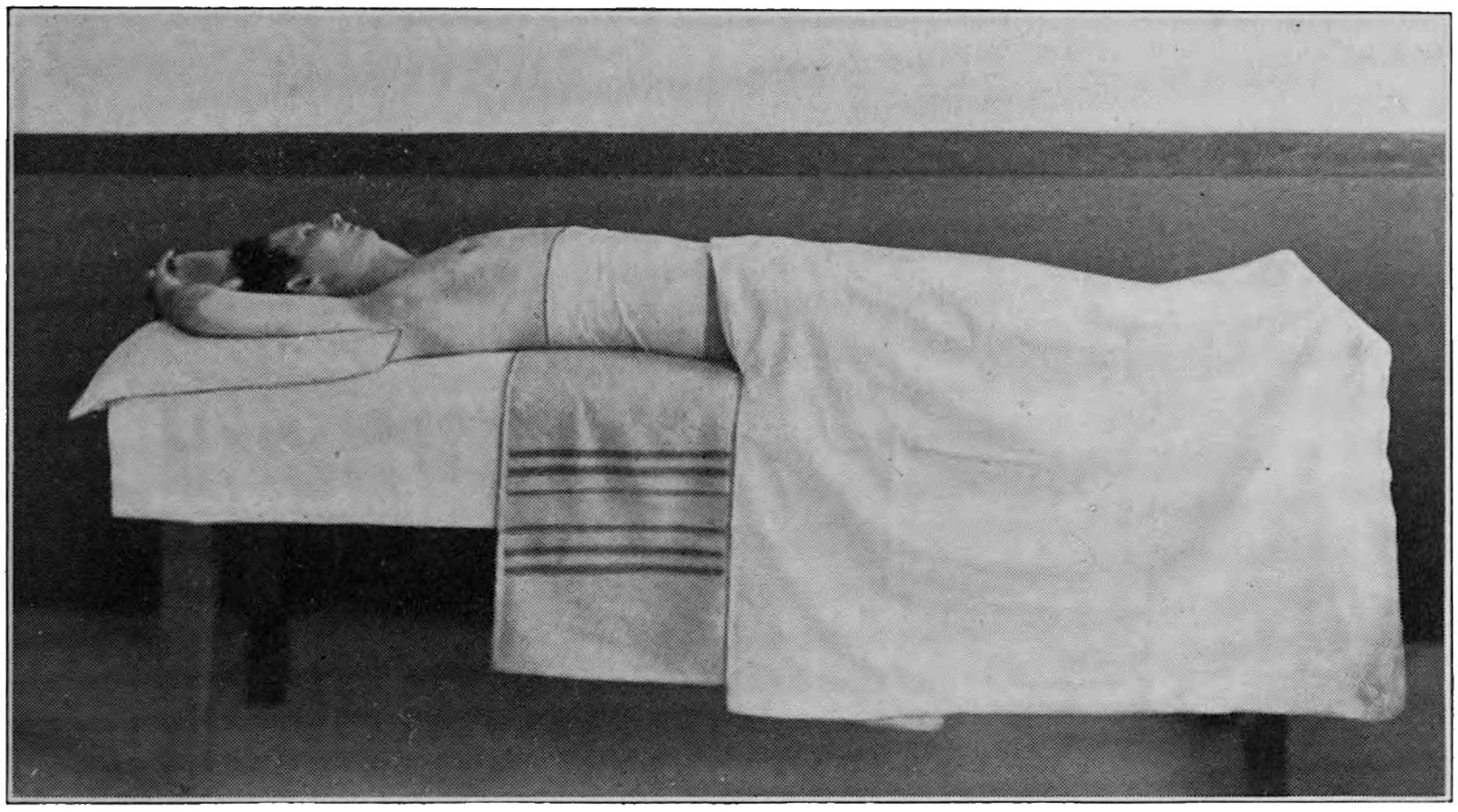


PLATE XXXIII. The moist abdominal bandage.

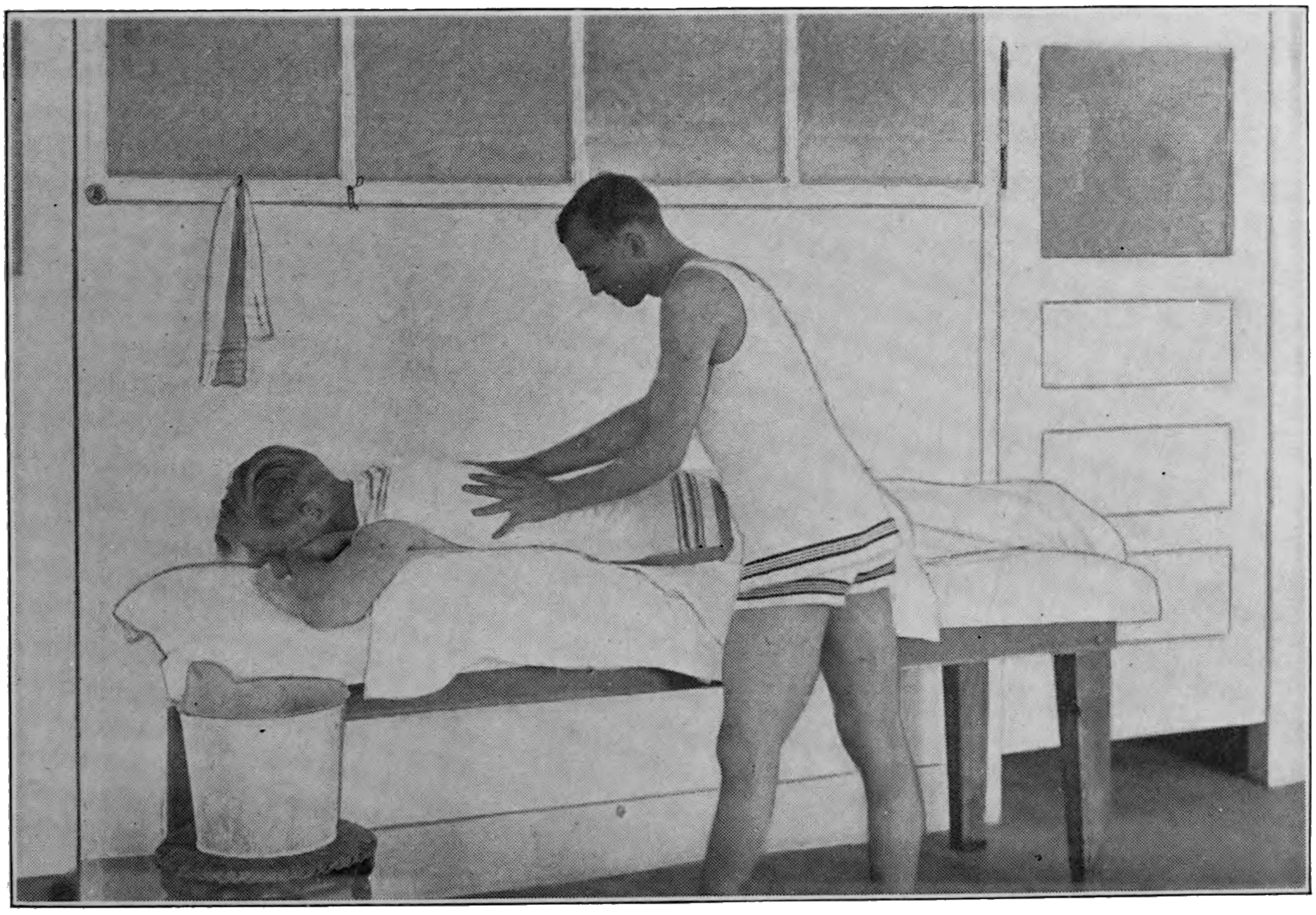
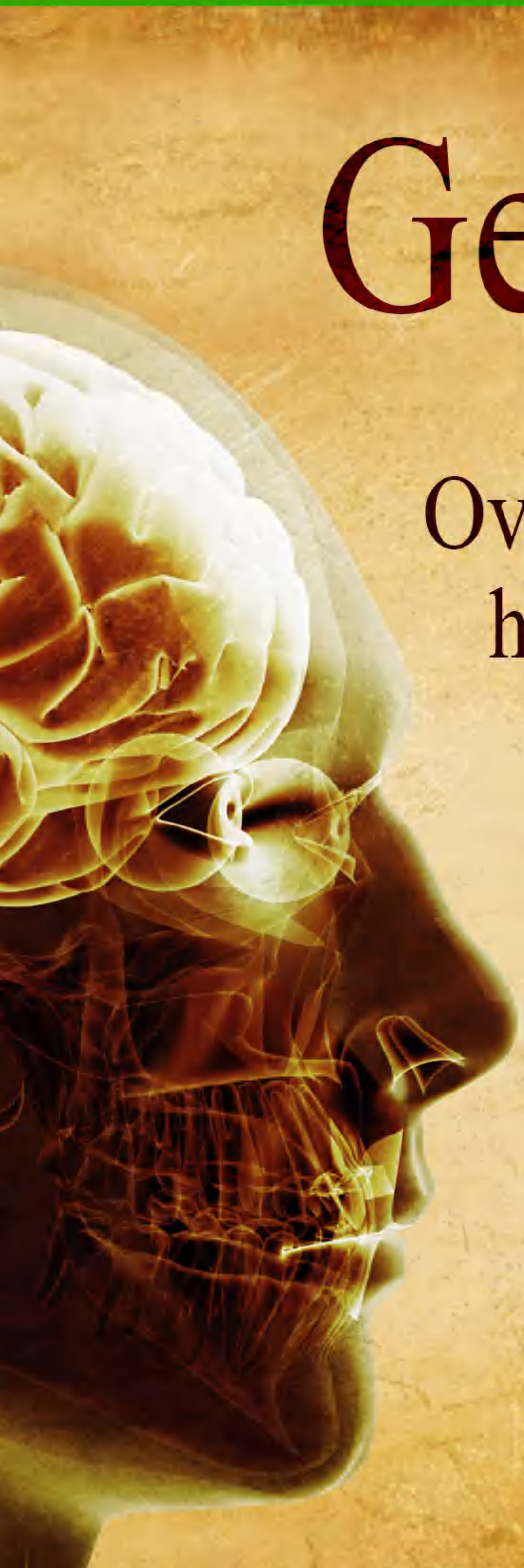


PLATE XXXIV. The cold towel rub—treating the back.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

To vary the severity and tonic effects, the temperature of the water may be changed; more may be left in the mitts, the mitts dipped two or three times in treating each part, the friction given more vigorously.

Wet Hand Rub—W. H. R. or Whr.

The same order and general procedure is followed as in the cold mitten friction. One part at a time is bared, rubbed with the hand dipped in cold water, followed by percussion, and dried, finishing with brisk rubbing with the dry towel in the hands. Dipping from two to four or more times increases the tonic effect.

Cold Towel Rub—C. T. R. or Ctr.

In giving the cold towel rub, a plain hand towel is used instead of the mitts employed for the cold mitten friction. The same order is followed as in the two previous treatments, beginning with the arms, then the chest and abdomen, and lastly, the back (*Plate XXXIV.*).

The arm is held vertically with the palm toward the nurse, the towel is dipped in cold water and wrung lightly, quickly folded and wrapped lengthwise around the arm, turning the upper corners into the palm to be grasped by the hand of the patient, or the arm may be held nearly horizontal while the attendant wraps the towel spirally about the arm by a rapid circular movement. The part is then rubbed with toweling movements outside of the towel. Percussion may also be given to insure a greater reaction. The towel is now removed and the arm dried as after the cold mitten friction.

When the chest and abdomen are treated, the wet towel is spread out over the entire surface and the patient grasps the upper corners next the shoulders and holds tightly while the nurse rubs with downward strokes outside the towel. The other parts are treated in a similar manner.

It should be remembered that the cold towel rub takes more heat from the body than the cold mitten friction, and it therefore requires greater reactive ability on the part of the patient. Because it does abstract considerable heat from the body, it

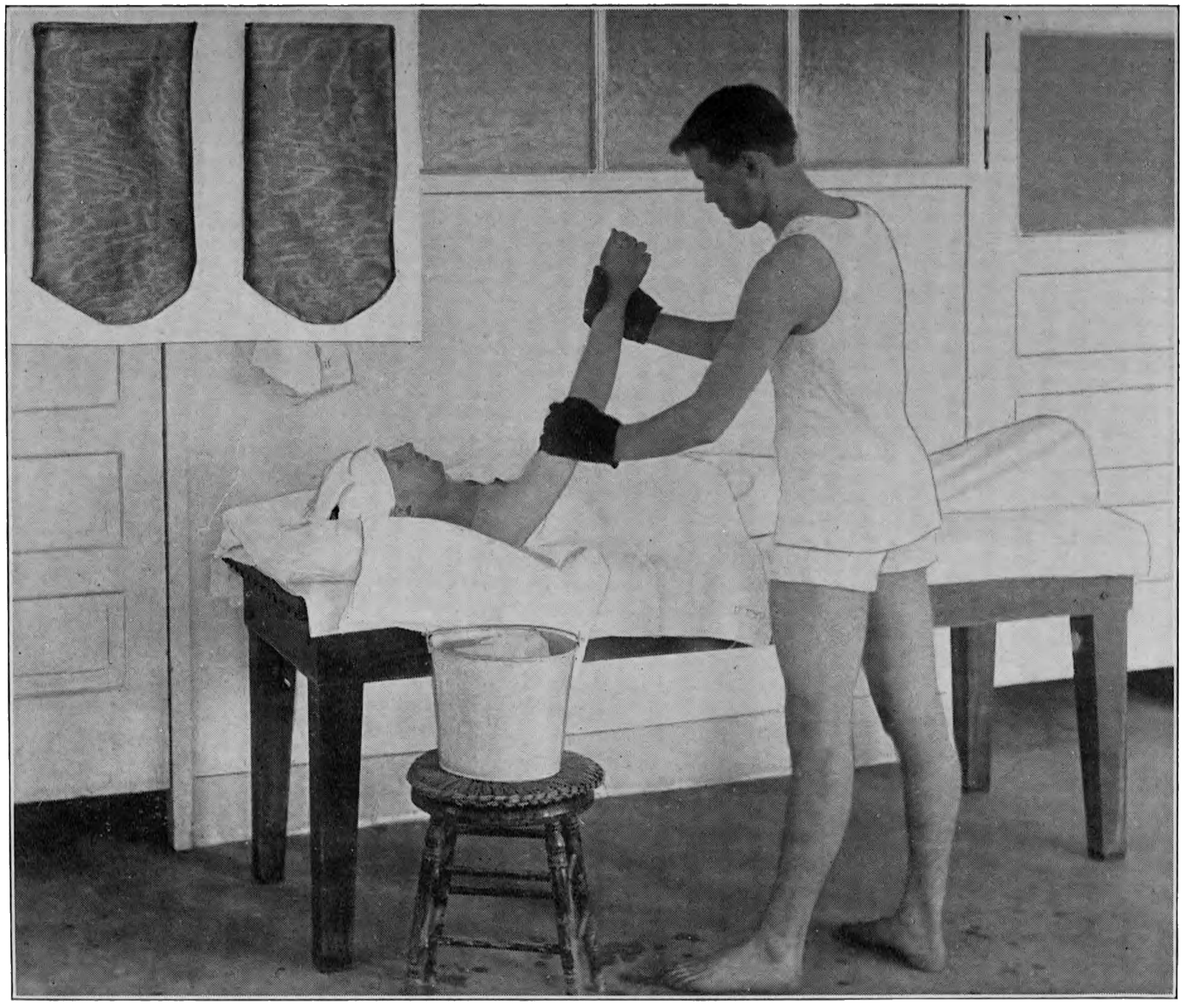


PLATE XXXV. The cold mitten friction—treating the arm. Corner figure—the friction mitts.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

Ice Rub

The order of parts treated and the procedure in a... are substantially the same as in the wet hand rub, ... mitten friction. In giving the ice rub, however, it is ... to more thoroughly protect the bed or treatment tab... ing with oil cloth and towels. Turkish towels should ... closely about each part so as to absorb the water as ... the skin. The cake of ice to be used may be held in ... or better yet, wrapped in one or two thicknesses of ga...

The ice rub is not much used for general tonic pur... more frequently as an antipyretic. When used for ... pose, each part should be rubbed for some time and ... without friction or percussion with the hands. Its ... application to the spine is more decidedly antipyretic ... same length of application elsewhere. When given in ... fever, the abdomen should be avoided. Cold compres... be applied to the head and neck and also to the he... essary.

Salt Glow—Sgl.

Prepare about two pounds of coarse salt wet with ... water. The treatment should be given in a "wet ... in a bath tub. The patient stands in a tub of hot water ... standing at the side of the patient, begin with the arm ... the entire skin surface of the shoulder, arm and hand w... water from the foot tub. This is done by dipping the ... with the hands. Next apply the wet salt, spreading it ... over the skin. Now, with one hand on each side of th... rub vigorously with to-and-fro movements until the skin ... glow. Stepping behind the patient to the opposite side, ... ceed in the same manner with the other arm.

Retain the last position to treat the front and back of ... trunk. With one hand in front and one behind, wet the ... surface with hot water from the foot tub. Now spread th... as before and rub the entire skin surface of the chest, abdo... shoulders, back, and buttocks. Stepping behind the pa... and with one hand under each arm, continue rubbing with ... salt, treating the sides of the chest, abdomen, and the hips.

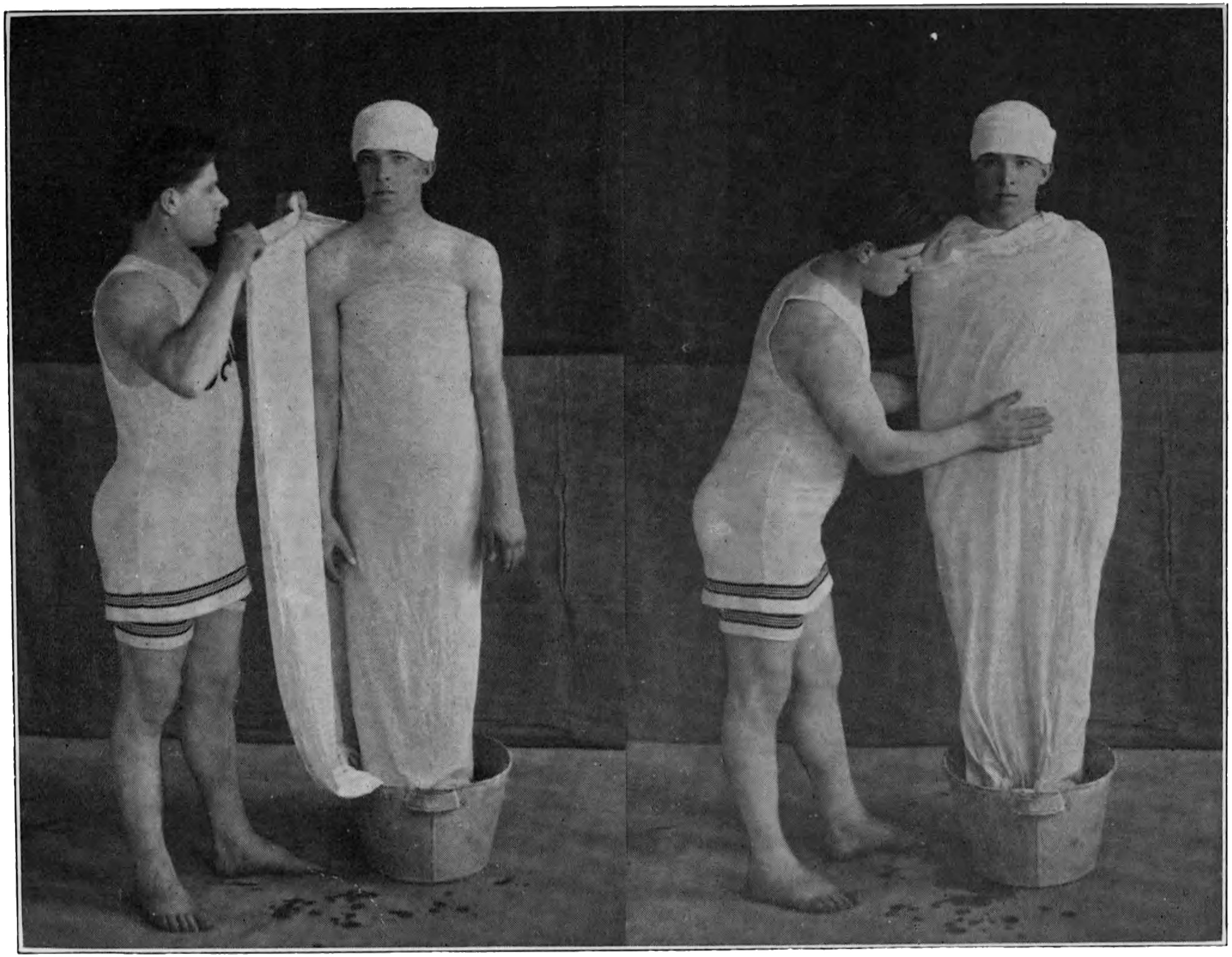
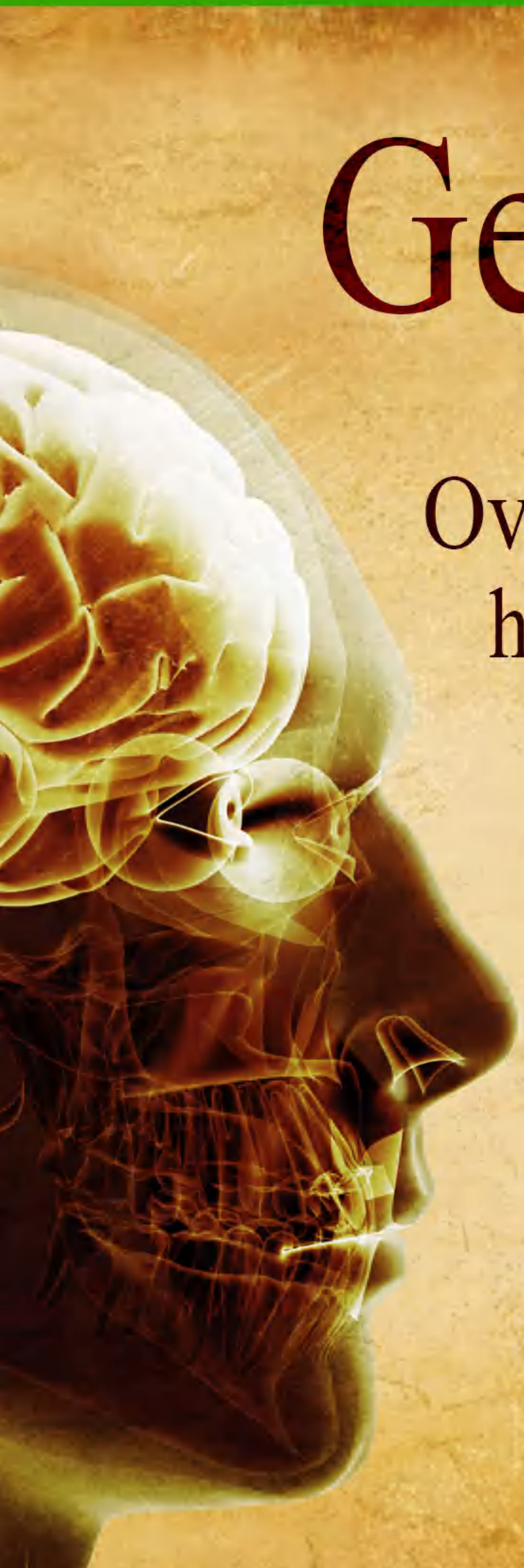


PLATE XXXVI. The wet sheet rub—applying the sheet.

PLATE XXXVII. The wet sheet rub—rubbing the patient.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

part at a time and treat in the following order: The arms, chest, abdomen, legs, thighs and back. The cloth or sponge should be dipped several times for each part. Dry thoroughly.

2. Tepid Sponge—Tepid Spg. The tepid sponge has an effect similar to that of the neutral bath, *i. e.*, it is sedative. It may also be used to reduce fever but is not as effective as either the hot or the cold sponge.

3. Cool or Cold Sponge—C. Spg. Cold sponging is used in the treatment of fever where the skin is hot and there is no tendency to chilliness. Each part should be gone over several times. The temperature of the water and the duration of the treatment should be governed by the intensity of effect desired.

Saline Sponge—Sal. Spg.

About four ounces of common salt are dissolved in a basin or bowl of tepid water. The bare hand is dipped in the salt water and each part rubbed lightly.

The saline sponge has a mild tonic effect. Because of the salt, it stimulates the vaso-motors to a greater extent than plain water.

Alkaline Sponge—Alk. Spg.

Use about two ounces of bicarbonate of soda to a small basin of hot or cool water according to the case. Apply with the bare hand, a soft cloth or sponge. The alkaline sponge is useful in itching, smarting and other abnormal sensations. It is usually applied only to the part affected.

Vinegar and Salt Rub

The vinegar and salt rub is very useful in checking the excessive perspiration or night sweats of phthisis.

Prepare a half pint of equal parts of vinegar and water to which add one or two tablespoonfuls of salt. Apply with the bare hand, drying lightly afterward. The application should be thorough to the parts that perspire the most; other parts may be gone over less thoroughly.

Alcohol Rub—Alc. R.

The alcohol rub is frequently used following a sweating treatment instead of the cold friction or spray. Its purpose is, of

course, the prevention of taking cold. Use one part of alcohol to one part of water (proof spirit, 50 per cent). Dip the hands in the alcohol and rub each part, dipping the second time if needed. No drying with the towel is necessary.

Witchhazel Rub—Wzr.

The witchhazel rub has about the same effect as the alcohol rub. It is sedative and a mild astringent. The same procedure is used as for the alcohol rub.

Menthol Rub—Menth. R.

The application of menthol to the skin gives a sensation of cold. The effect is similar to that of the alcohol rub or cold sponging. Use one ounce of menthol liniment (menthol cryst. 1 oz., alcohol 1 pint) to three or four ounces of water.

Soap Wash

The soap wash is used for cleansing the skin in the case of bed patients. Using a bowl of water at 102° F., with soap and wash cloth go over each part separately. With another bowl of water at 75°—85° F. and another cloth, remove the soapy water and dry thoroughly with a Turkish towel. Each part is gone over with the soapy water followed by rinsing with plain cool water and then dried before the next part is treated.

RUBS AND FRICTIONS

These terms are applied to procedures in which the chief effect is derived from friction with the bare hands.

Centripetal Friction—C. F. or cf.

The centripetal friction consists principally of friction strokes from the periphery toward the center. It is designed to hasten the circulation, especially in the superficial veins.

General Order of Movements:—

1. Light to-and-fro friction, once.
2. Apply lubricant, twice.
3. Centripetal friction, three times.
4. Percussion, twice.
5. Stroking (centrifugal), three times.

Arms

1. Beginning at fingertips, give light, quick to-and-fro friction to the shoulder, being sure to cover thoroughly the entire surface. Let the hands glide back as in stroking the arm.

2. Apply lubricant with long strokes from fingertips to shoulder, returning with four rotary sweeps. Give twice.

3. Friction.

Hand.

(a) Heavy centripetal stroking to back of hand, three times.

(b) Palm of hand same as back of hand, beginning at fingertips. Finish with double rotary movement in palm, three times.

Arm and Forearm.

(a) Empty blood-vessels by heavy, even stroking from wrist to elbow. The patient's elbow rests on the table. With one hand on each side and using hands alternately, give three movements with each.

(b) Empty blood-vessels from elbow to shoulder, sweeping well over shoulder. With hands in the same position and alternating as for forearm, give three movements with each.

4. Percussion. With one hand on each side of the arm, which is held up by the patient, and with hands working together, give percussion from shoulder to fingers and return. Give twice. Place the patient's arm on the table at his side, give percussion down and up to external surface as far as hand.

5. Stroking, three times.

Legs

1. Leg flexed and foot flexed. Placing one hand on the sole, the other on the dorsum of the foot, give light, quick to-and-fro friction transverse of foot. Then placing the foot flat, continue with rapid strokes to the sides of the foot, the back and front of the thigh. Glide hands to knee; quick strokes to back of thigh; glide to toes.

2. Apply lubricant with long strokes to back of leg and front of thigh, coming down to knee with three rotary sweeps, then long strokes to back of thigh, down with three rotary sweeps from knee to ankle. Give twice.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

ing outward from median line over ribs and abdo[illegible] times, advancing toward the pubes.

(d) Stroking from umbilicus outward and [illegible] ward middle of Poupart's ligament, three times.

4. Percussion up and down left side, the same on [illegible] Give twice.

5. Stroking, three times.

Back

1. Light friction with the full hand down spine, [illegible] nating, three times each; to-and-fro friction, beg[illegible] up on neck, covering shoulders, back and hips, [illegible] times.

2. Apply lubricant with long strokes up spine, [illegible] sweeps down sides, twice.

3. Friction.

(a) Heavy friction with full hand down spine, [illegible] nating, each three times.

(b) Heavy rotary, full sweep to shoulders, three [illegible]

(c) From shoulders down, following the ribs, [illegible] arms stroking toward the spine, six times.

(d) Lower back—heavy friction upward over bu[illegible] ward spine, three times; upward on hips, three tim[illegible] ward, using thumb and thenar surface over crest of ili[illegible] times.

4. Percussion up and down on left side, same on ri[illegible] Give twice.

5. Stroking.

(a) Full sweeps covering back, three times.

(b) Slow strokes with full hand down spine, six [illegible]

Oil Rub—O. R.

The oil rub softens the skin and is frequently used as a [illegible] tective after sweating treatments. It may be given in the same manner as the centripetal friction, omitting [illegible] number one (light friction) and procedure number four (per[illegible] cussion). If desired, the following abbreviated method [illegible] used, always omitting the percussion after hot treatments.

General Order:—

1. Apply lubricant.
2. Rotary friction.
3. Percussion.
4. Stroking (centrifugal).

Arms

1. Apply lubricant; beginning at hands with a long stroke, go over the arm up to the shoulder, three times.

2. Beginning at hand, apply long stroke up to shoulder, returning with alternate rotary movements, three each to shoulder, arm, elbow, forearm, wrist and hand, three times.

3. Percussion up and down twice on external surface. Give same on inner surface; six percussion strokes to the hand.

4. Finish with long strokes from shoulder to fingertips, three times.

Legs

1. Beginning at foot, apply lubricant with long strokes up to hip with both hands, covering the entire surface, three times.

2. Apply long strokes from the foot to knee, returning with alternate rotary movements, three each to knee, calf, ankle and foot, twice. Return to hip with long stroke. With hands on anterior surface of thigh, from hip to knee, give eight or ten rapid alternate rotary friction movements. Give the same on the posterior surface of the thigh, three times. Continue with rotary friction from knee down as at first, once.

3. Percussion same as arm.

4. Long stroking movement from hip to toes, three times.

Chest and Abdomen

1. Lubricate; with hands working together, begin at median line below, going lightly up the median line and down the sides, three times.

2. Hands working together, stroke the neck downward three times; then give rotary movements three each above clavicle, to shoulder below clavicle, nine down each side, nine up over median part of abdomen and chest, three times.

3. Have patient take and hold a deep breath. Beginning well over at lower left side, give percussion up that side to top

of shoulder, down on same side of median line, up side of median line to top of shoulder, and down [illegible] twice.

4. Stroking (movement same as in lubricating), [illegible]

Back

Procedure the same as for the chest. Finish with gentle downward strokes to spine.

Tulcum Rub—Talc. R.

The talcum rub is useful where oil is objectionable, in warm weather or where there is a tendency to too[illegible] spiration after treatment. It dries rather than [illegible] skin. It is also useful in hives, and should be given [illegible] prolonged cool bath. The procedure is the same as [illegible] oil rub.

Dry Friction—D. F.

The procedure for dry friction or the dry hand rub [illegible] is the same as for the oil rub except that no lubricant [illegible] If given briskly with vigorous to-and-fro friction and [illegible] by percussion, the effect is to quicken the circulation [illegible] skin and warm the surface. The treatment also stimulates [illegible] heat production.

Slow, heavy friction without percussion, as to spine, head, etc., is sedative.

BATHS

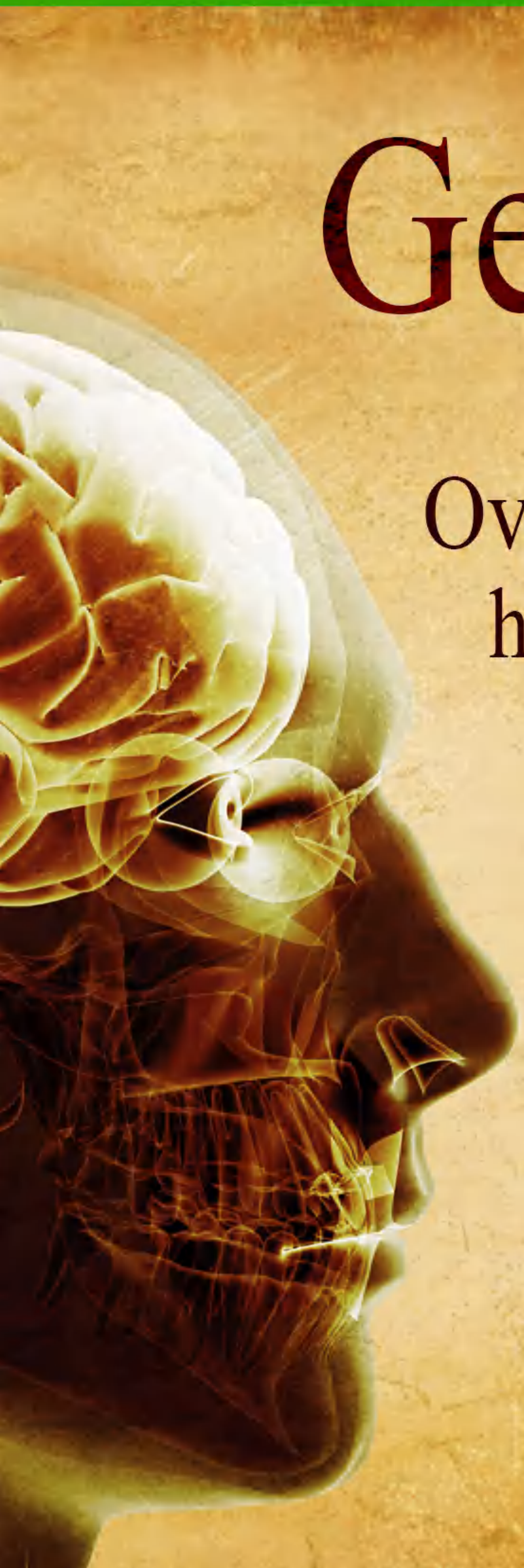
Various procedures more or less similar and commonly [illegible] baths are included under this head.

1. Partial Immersion Baths

Hand and Arm Bath

The hand and arm may be immersed in neutral, hot or [illegible] water, or the two latter alternately: For this purpose empty a foot tub (better one of elliptical shape) with sufficient [illegible] to immerse the hand and forearm to the elbow, or including the elbow. Very deep pails may be used. When hot water is used, it should be as hot as can be borne. Immersion of the hands in cold water is useful in controlling epistaxis.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

patient sitting up, and in all cases where there is a tendency to faintness.

Effects. The foot bath is an efficient means of securing a derivative effect. It draws blood from all other parts, especially those that are congested. The cold pour or douche given at the close helps to maintain the blood in the feet. It is sometimes desirable to use a *mustard foot bath*, in which case add three or four tablespoonfuls of mustard to the water.

2. Cold Foot Bath—C. ft. B. The water should be from two to four inches deep at a temperature of 45°—60° F. The feet should be previously warmed and during the bath, rubbed with the hands or one foot by the other; duration, one to five minutes.

Effects. The shallow cold foot bath causes reflex contraction of the blood-vessels of the brain, pelvic organs and liver; also contraction of the muscles of the uterus, bladder, stomach and intestines. The cold foot bath should not be given during the menstrual period or in case of acute pulmonary, abdominal, or pelvic inflammation.

3. Alternate Hot and Cold Foot Bath—H. & C. ft. B. Use two tubs of water deep enough to well cover the ankles, one as hot as can be borne (temperature gradually raised) and the other at 45° F. Immerse the feet in the hot water for two minutes and in the cold fifteen to thirty seconds. Continue alternations for ten to fifteen minutes, wiping from the cold.

Effects. The alternate hot and cold foot bath produces powerful fluxion effects in the feet. For this reason the derivation secured by its use is very decided and enduring. It is especially useful in congestive headache, in which case it is well to apply a cold compress to the head or head and neck at the same time. It is also useful in treating infections of the foot, Charcot's joint at the ankle, tuberculosis of the ankle or bones of the foot and in gangrene to hasten the production of the line of demarkation.

Leg Bath—Lg. B.

For the leg bath a tub should be provided deep enough to immerse the legs to the knees. (*Plate IX.*) If used in the

treatment room the tub should be fitted with an outlet at the base so as to obviate the necessity of tipping the tub over to empty it. It should be placed near or against the wall, so that it may be filled from a hot and a cold water wall faucet by two short rubber hose. Also provide a stool an inch or two higher than the tub. The patient should be covered with a sheet or blanket and, if the room is not warm enough, a large fomentation cloth or Turkish towel placed over the knees. If necessary, place a doubled fomentation cloth under the knees over the rim of the tub.

1. Hot Leg Bath—H. lg. B. Begin with the water at 103° F. and increase the temperature as rapidly as can be borne. Use cold cephalic and cervical compresses (or ice bags) and renew before they become warm. In case the leg bath is combined with other hot treatment,, as fomentations to the spine, it may be necessary to use an ice bag over the heart, especially if the treatment is continued to profuse perspiration. The treatment should be continued in a given case until the desired effect is produced. This may require from five to thirty minutes according to conditions and the particular effect desired. Finish with a cold dash to the legs.

Effects. The hot leg bath is a much more powerful derivative measure than the hot foot bath and is one of the best treatments that can be used for this purpose. When combined with fomentations to the spine or chest, and especially when the patient drinks some hot liquid at the same time, very profuse perspiration is produced.. If used in the home, such a sweating treatment should be concluded by a cold mitten friction, or if given in the treatment room, by a graduated or alternate hot and cold shower and spray. The pail pour is also sometimes used for the same purpose.

2. Alternate Hot and Cold Leg Bath—H. & C. lg. B. The procedure is the same as with the alternate foot bath. It is necessary to apply a cold compress to the head and often an ice bag to the heart.

Effects. The alternate hot and cold leg bath produces most powerful fluxion in the legs and feet. It is especially useful

in treating edema of these parts whether due to heart or kidney disease. After two or three treatments have been given, pieces of ice should be added to the cold water. The treatment may be followed by heavy centripetal friction to the feet and legs.

Sitz Bath—Z.

For the sitz bath a porcelain sitz tub with special inlet and outlet is the most satisfactory; one of metal or an ordinary wash tub may be used. In addition there should be a foot tub for immersion of the feet in hot water. Also a pail of cold water with a hand towel for keeping the head cool (*Plate XXXVIII.*).

Protect the patient from contact with the tub by towels or fomentation cloths placed behind the back and under the knees. Cover the patient with a blanket or sheet. The temperature of the foot bath should be at least two or three degrees above that of the sitz bath.

1. Cold Sitz Bath—C. Z. Sufficient water should be used to cover the hips and come up on the abdomen; temperature, 55°—75° F.; foot bath, 105°—110° F.; time, one to eight minutes. Rub the hips to promote reaction. Friction mitts may be used. If desired, the water may be flowing. It adds somewhat to the effect.

Effects. If of brief duration (two to four minutes), it greatly stimulates the pelvic circulation and the musculature of the bowels, bladder and uterus. When given with very cold water (55°—65°) and vigorous friction (*cold rubbing sitz bath*) these effects are intensified. The cold rubbing sitz bath is very useful in constipation, in subinvolution and in hastening the absorption of residual thickening after pelvic inflammations.

With the temperature somewhat modified, it may be used in children in treating nocturnal enuresis.

2. Prolonged Cold Sitz Bath—C. Z. Temperature, 70°—85° F.; time, fifteen to forty minutes; foot bath, 105°—110° F. This may be begun at a higher temperature and very gradually lowered to the desired point (*graduated sitz bath*). It should not at any time cause chilliness, and rubbing is not desirable.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

at 55°—85° F.; foot baths, 105°—115° F. Apply cold compresses to the head and neck. The patient sits in the hot water for two or three minutes, then in the cold for fifteen to twenty seconds, and again in the hot water. Three complete changes from hot to cold are made as is usual in *alternate* treatments.

Effects. The alternate sitz bath produces powerful fluxion effects in the pelvic viscera. It is useful in chronic pelvic inflammations after the patient has become accustomed to the revulsive sitz. It may also be used to great advantage in atonic constipation.

Hot Half Bath—H. ½ B.

The hot half bath is given in a full length bath tub. Fill the tub with water at 100°—102° F. and deep enough to reach the patient's navel when the patient is sitting. The patient now sits down in the tub with the shoulders covered by a sheet and the head kept cool by a cold wet towel (*Plate XXXIX.*). It is usually best to apply this just before the patient enters the bath. The temperature of the bath is gradually raised to 108° or 110° F. and continued for three to eight minutes. If necessary, an ice bag should be used over the heart. Conclude the treatment by a cold pail pour to the hips.

The effects and uses are the same as those of the revulsive sitz. This treatment must not be confused with the shallow bath which is given with cold water, and is a tonic measure.

II. Full Immersion Baths

The tub used for general or full immersion baths should be long enough so that the body may be completely immersed,—a 6-foot tub for men, in many cases a 5½-foot tub is long enough for women. The head should rest on an air pillow or small invalid ring, and for emaciated patients, a folded sheet placed under the nates. In a hot bath, the head must be kept cool by a cold compress. In the case of full tub baths it is especially necessary that the temperature of the water be tested by means of a thermometer. In ordering tub baths, the desired temperature should be specified on the prescription.

PLATE XXXVIII. The sitz bath.

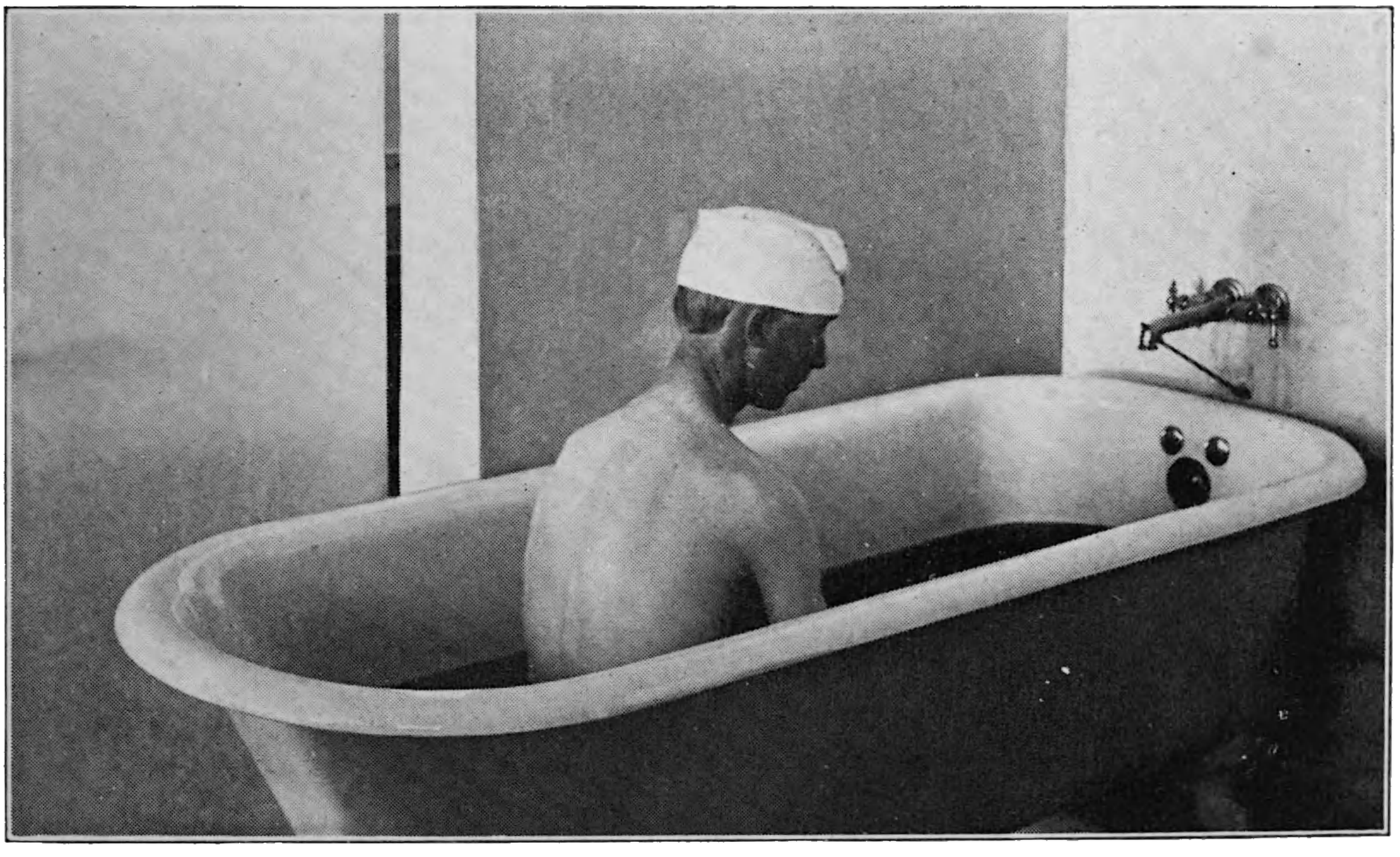
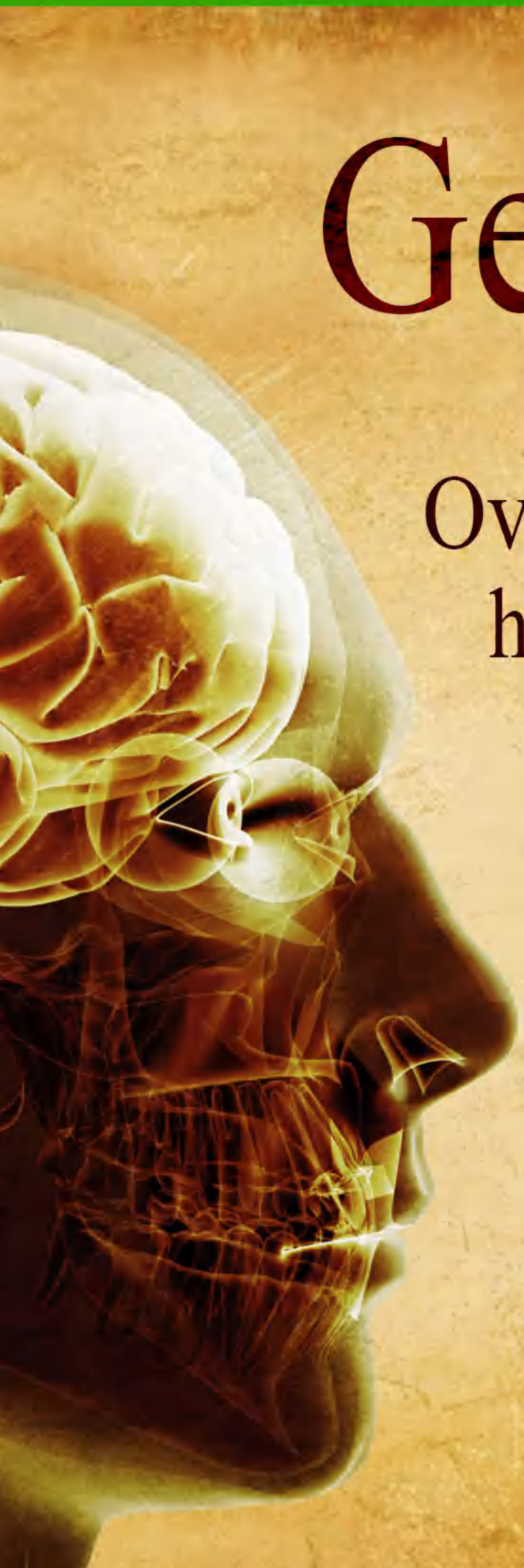


PLATE XXXIX. The hot half bath.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

3. Continuous Flowing Bath. This requires a special tub seven feet long, which is provided with a large outflow and an overflow vent near the top (*Plate XX.*). The inflow pipe may consist of one large opening at the head of the tub or of several small openings along the sides. The water is supplied to the tub from a mixing chamber which is fitted with a thermometer. A continuous supply of hot water at a constant temperature and pressure must be assured, also of cold water. The water is regulated to the desired temperature in the mixing chamber before it is turned into the tub. The usual temperature is 98° F. When the tub is full and overflowing the current is reduced to a gentle stream. The patient rests on a canvas hammock which swings from the rim of the tub; he is protected by a canvas cover and provided with a rubber air pillow. An ice turban should be placed upon his head and he should be given cold water plentifully to drink. It is well to keep a thermometer in the tub and consult it frequently, not relying wholly upon the thermometer in the mixing chamber.

As this bath is used chiefly in maniacal cases, the patient must be watched constantly. Very excited or violent patients should be wrapped in a sheet or blanket pack, which must be securely pinned about them, and then placed in the tub. The duration of the bath depends upon the degree of sedation or effect obtained. It may last for hours or days. In the latter case the patient must be removed once or twice in the twenty-four hours, the bowels given proper attention and the skin anointed with oil to prevent too great maceration. The continuous flowing bath is perhaps the most useful treatment in excited cases of insanity. It, together with the wet sheet pack, has revolutionized the treatment of mania.

4. Cold Bath—C. B. or C. Tub. Temperature, 55°—90°. Short time, a plunge only to twenty or more minutes, depending upon the temperature and effect desired. It is necessary to employ rubbing constantly or at frequent intervals. The patient's face should be bathed in cold water before entering the bath, and it is imperative that the skin be warm before the bath is given.

Effects. When given to a patient with a normal temperature

and lasting for a few seconds or minutes only, the effect is that of a stimulant and tonic. The *cold rubbing bath* is the most commonly employed method of treating typhoid fever in institutions where tubs are available and convenient to use. The strict Brand bath is too severe a measure for many patients. The methods, indications for and the precautions in the use of the cold bath have been very fully discussed under the treatment of typhoid fever, *q. v.*

5. Brand Bath. As advised by Brand for the treatment of typhoid fever the procedure is as follows:—

Temperature, 65°—70° F. Bathe the face and head in cold water or ice water. Lift the patient into the bath. He should be rubbed constantly to keep the blood in the skin. If chilling can not be prevented by vigorous rubbing, the patient must be removed from the bath. Time, fifteen minutes. Repeat when the temperature reaches 102.5° or 103° F. Effect, antipyretic.

6. Graduated Bath—Grad. B. The graduated bath is as efficient in lowering febrile temperature when much prolonged and is less objectionable to the patient than the Brand bath. As the bath is frequently used in typhoid, the patient should be made comfortable by an air pillow and hammock made by tying a sheet across the tub fastening the corners and sides underneath. Temperature, begin at 98° or above, depending on the height of the fever, *i. e.*, from 3°—5° lower than the mouth temperature. The skin must be warm to begin with. Apply cold compresses to the head. Gradually reduce the temperature of the bath to about 85° F.; when below 90° F. or if the patient feels chilly or shows goose flesh, he should be rubbed constantly to keep the blood in the skin, and so prevent or overcome chilling. A spine bag filled with hot water may be laid along the spine for the same purpose. Both pulse and temperature should be closely watched during the bath. The temperature of the patient should be taken every twelve or fifteen minutes. On removal, immediately wrap the patient in a sheet, drying quickly, and if there is goose flesh or chilliness, rub briskly with the hands until the blood returns to the skin. If very cyanotic, put the patient into a hot blanket pack for a few minutes and take him out with a cold mitten friction.

Effect, tonic chiefly or antipyretic according to the condition in which it is given.

7. Cold Shallow Bath—C. S. B. Fill the tub four to six inches deep with water at 65°—75° F. The patient's feet should be warm before entering, and the head kept cool by cold wet towels. The patient sits down in the cold water and rubs the arms, legs and chest vigorously while the attendant rubs the hips and back. Cold water dipped from the tub is dashed over the shoulders and back, and these parts are again rubbed. The patient now lies down in the bath and rubs the chest and abdomen, while the attendant rubs the legs. This procedure may be repeated once or twice if desired.

The entire treatment should last from two to four minutes, and on emerging from the bath, the skin surface should be in a decided glow, otherwise the proper effect has not been obtained. The cold shallow bath is one of the most vigorous tonic measures employed in hydrotherapy.

Hydro-Electric Baths

In giving the hydro-electric or electrothermal bath a neutral temperature is usually employed. The patient is completely immersed in the water with the head on an air pillow and kept cool by a cold wet towel. The electrodes should hang from the side of the tub, so they may be placed in any desired position along the sides or at the feet of the patient. The treatment is begun with one electrode at the feet and the other near the arm on the opposite side. The electricity is turned on to comfortable tolerance. Time, five to twenty minutes. After half the time has expired the electrode should be reversed, the one at the foot of the tub being brought up along the arm of same side, and the other near the opposite arm, being placed at the foot on the same side. These directions do not apply to the galvanic bath. In using galvanism the positive pole should be placed at the head, preferably dipping into the water underneath the pillow, and the negative pole at the feet.

Precautions. To avoid shock there should be no current passing when the patient steps in or out. Be sure all appliances are in good order before the patient enters the bath. Keep all

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

ing system, galvanic electricity is dangerous. Even... may result if carelessly used. Its administration sho... entrusted to a nurse unless specially trained in the... and possessing the requisite knowledge of the phys... galvanic current. Moreover the effects usually sought... galvanic tub bath may be obtained in other ways wi... risk to the patient.

Precautions. In the use of the galvanic tub bath all... cautions mentioned above should be carefully observe... current must never be turned on before the patient en... always be turned off before he steps from the bath. ... not done a severe shock may be occasioned as the patie... one foot in the bath with the other on a wet floor, thus... a grounding contact through a cement floor or worse yet ... some metal pipe near by.

Always ascertain the polarity before the electrodes are... To do this, place the electrodes in water an inch or two... and turn the current on. The bubbles formed at the ... pole are larger and more numerous than those formed ... positive pole. Place the positive pole at the head of t... and the negative at the foot. Be sure that they do not co... contact with the skin at any point. Sinusoidal and the ... ary faradic are alternating currents and there can therefo... no distinction as to polarity.

Effects. The positive pole is a vasoconstrictor; the neg... pole a vasodilator. For this reason the positive pole decr... congestion, the negative pole increases it. The positive ... has a sedative effect; the negative pole a stimulant or irri... effect. These are the reasons for placing the positive pole ... the head and the negative pole at the feet of the patient. ... a neutral temperature is used the total effect is decidedly se... tive. All forms of the electric tub bath are disagreeable ... some persons. These idiosyncrasies should not be ignored.

The temperature and duration of the bath and the strength of the current should be specified on the prescription. The bath should last from ten to fifteen minutes and from twenty to thirty-five milliamperes be used. The amperage should not be high enough to produce an unpleasant sensation. If there ...

saline substances dissolved in the bath, the amperage will run much higher before the same effects are produced as with ordinary water. With thin subjects a comparatively low amperage must be used; with subjects in good flesh or overweight a stronger current may be employed.

Medicated Baths

A tub bath may be altered by the addition of various medicaments. Such baths are not of great practical importance except in a very limited number of skin diseases.

1. Saline Bath—Sal. B. Add from three to five pounds of common salt to the tub of water at 90°—94° F.; time, ten to twenty minutes. The addition of salt adds to the tonic effect through stimulation of the peripheral circulation so that the water may be a few degrees cooler than an ordinary neutral bath. The effect is similar to a bath in sea water.

2. Alkaline Bath—Alk. B. Add one-half to one pound of bicarbonate of soda to the tub of water at a neutral temperature. One-fourth pound of carbonate of soda may be used. Time, ten to twenty minutes; effects; relieves cutaneous irritation, itching, etc. Useful in certain skin diseases, as eczema, also in relieving the itching of hives and jaundice.

Nauheim Bath

The effervescent or artificial Nauheim bath is one in which the water is charged with saline substances and carbon dioxide gas. Many different formulae are used to prepare such a bath. To produce the carbon dioxide gas in the bath, it is necessary that an acid come in contact with an alkaline carbonate, setting free the carbon dioxide; or salines may be dissolved in the water and the carbon dioxide added from a generator.

Various proprietary mixtures prepared in cakes are offered for use. In using these, dissolve the sodium chloride and sodium bicarbonate in forty or fifty gallons of water. The bottom of the tub is then covered with rubber sheeting. On this rubber sheeting place the acid cakes. In about three minutes, when effervescence is well under way, the patient should lie down in the bath.

A very complete and satisfactory formula is the following:—

Sodium carbonate (sal soda) - -	1½ lb.
Sodium bicarbonate (baking soda) - -	½ lb.
Calcium chloride - - - - -	3 lb.
Sodium chloride (common salt) - -	2 lb.
Sodium bisulphate - - - -	1 lb.

After mixing the first four, dissolve in a few inches of warm water in the bottom of the bath tub. When thoroughly dissolved, fill the tub with water at the desired temperature. The sodium bisulphate which is the acid part of the formula, should be granular or finely pounded and dissolved separately in a wooden or paper pail containing hot water. As it may require some time for this to dissolve, it should be prepared before the bath is to be given. When thoroughly dissolved, pour into the tub and quickly mix with the rest of the water. The bath is now ready for use. The amounts of the saline ingredients may be gradually increased for the succeeding baths of a course.

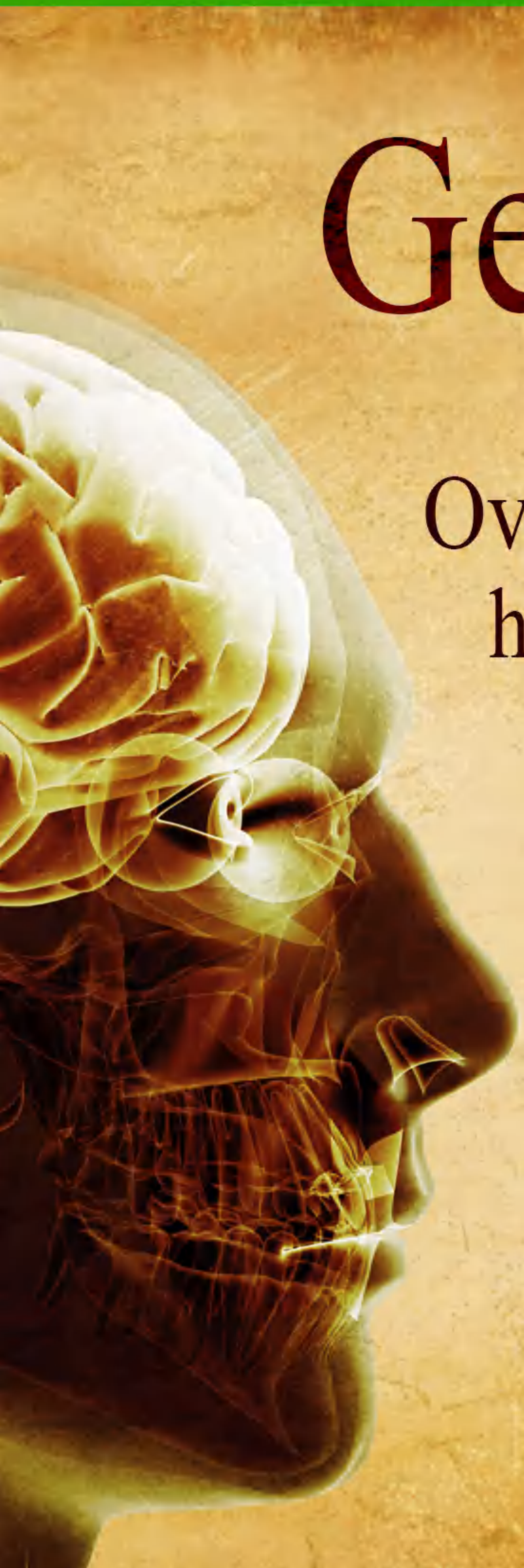
Three-fourths of a pound of commercial hydrochloric acid may be used in place of the sodium bisulphate. This should be mixed with two or three times its volume of water, and after the salts are all dissolved and the tub filled with water at the desired temperature, the bottle containing the acid should be opened under the water. It may be moved about to hasten the diffusion of the acid into the water of the bath.

The following is a simpler and less expensive formula; it is the formula we usually employ.

Sodium chloride - - - -	3 to 8 lb.
Sodium bicarbonate - - - -	¾ to 1½ lb.
Muriatic acid - - - - -	¾ lb.

The temperature of the bath should range from 85°—94° F. The lower temperatures should be used for the later baths of a series. The duration of the bath should at first be from five to eight minutes. The time may then be gradually extended to fifteen or even twenty minutes. A cold compress should be applied to the head and an ice bag to the heart. The patient should not be rubbed during the bath. About three baths a week may be taken for three or four weeks. Not over twenty baths should constitute a course.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

acute stage of endocarditis. Some highly recom[illegible] in locomotor ataxia.

Oxygen Bath—O_2 B.

This bath is similar in effect and technique to the [illegible] bath. It was introduced by Sarason of Berlin in [illegible] stead of carbon dioxide, the bath water is charged wit[illegible] gas. To produce this, requires the action of a cata[illegible] an oxygen-containing chemical. Oxygen generator[illegible] used for the same purpose but are not regarded as [illegible] because of the larger size of the bubbles. It is the g[illegible] is dissolved in the water which produces the results [illegible] that which collects as bubbles producing effervescen[illegible]

The standard method of preparing the oxygen b[illegible] follows: Fill the tub with sufficient water at 95°—9[illegible] cover the patient to his neck. Dissolve in this 300 [illegible] sodium perborate ($Na\ BO_3$) by sprinkling uniformly [illegible] surface of the water. Next add the catalizer, 15 [illegible] manganese borate ($Mn_3(BO_3)_2$) by the same procedur[illegible] patient gets into the water in one or two minutes a[illegible] catalizer has been put in. The liberation of oxygen co[illegible] for fifteen to twenty minutes. The patient should rem[illegible] quiet as possible, moving the limbs only occasionly. The [illegible] sation is that of an agreeable tickling and prickling abou[illegible] spine, shoulders and limbs. At the end of twenty mi[illegible] remove the patient and dry with as little disturbance as [illegible] sible. If a brownish sediment remains in the tub it ma[illegible] easily rinsed off, if this is done immediately after the bath.

The baths may be administered on alternate days or for [illegible] or five days a week, a course consisting of twenty to th[illegible] baths. The effects are similar to those of the carbon dio[illegible] bath in the production of a powerful stimulation of the p[illegible] pheral blood-vessels. The oxygen bath, however, di[illegible] essentially in the following points: Instead of the redne[illegible] the skin produced by the carbon dioxide bath, there is ei[illegible] no change or the skin is paler, the peripheral diversion [illegible] blood occurring into the skeletal muscles rather than the s[illegible] A lowering of blood pressure occurs after the oxygen b[illegible]

instead of a rise, as after the carbon dioxide bath. For this reason it is indicated in cases of high blood pressure and in cardiac and renal diseases associated with increased vascular tension.

It is also a powerful sedative to the nervous system, and is therefore a most efficient measure in the treatment of insomnia, also in asthma, neurasthenia and various paresthesias. Because of the tendency to paleness of the skin, it is an advantage to precede the bath by some heating procedure, such as a hot foot bath, fomentations to the spine or a short electric light bath. For the same reasons the bath is administered at higher temperatures than the carbon dioxide bath. For sedative purposes the bath should be administered in the afternoon or early evening, or at least an hour before retiring. In cases of hypertension reductions in blood pressure of from 15 to 35 mm. Hg. have been reported.

III. Miscellaneous

Russian Bath

The Russian bath consists in the immersion of the body in hot vapor. The steam, as it is turned into the Russian room, partially condenses and hangs suspended as a thick fog. For every gram of steam that thus condenses, 537 calories of heat are liberated. This fact accounts for the intense heating effect obtained by the use of this form of hot treatment.

For the Russian bath provide a steam tight room with a marble slab. A sliding window should be so arranged at the end of the slab that the patient's head may be outside of the steam room. (*Plate XL.*) The steam should enter below the slab so as not to strike the patient directly, and be controlled by a valve near the sliding window so that the attendant may regulate the amount of steam and keep the head cool at the the same time by frequently changed cold compresses to the head and neck.

Procedure. Move the bowels by an enema and give a preliminary hot foot bath. Have the patient drink water before and frequently during the bath. This is necessary in order to provide for the profuse perspiration which the treatment should

induce. See that the slab is warm; if not, pour over it several pails of hot water. Warm the room to about 100° F., and cover the slab with a folded sheet.

The patient is now assisted onto the table and lies on the back with the head on an air pillow just without the opening. The window is lowered and a towel wrung from ice water is placed about the neck, or hung across the lower end of the window and tucked around the neck. Another cold compress is applied to the head and covers the temporal arteries. A third cold compress should be applied to the precordia. In some cases it will be necessary to use an ice bag over the heart.

Next turn on the steam, gradually raising the temperature of the room to 115° or 120° F. A small amount of steam should be constantly escaping to maintain the temperature. Change the compresses to the head and neck frequently. The patient should be closely watched during the entire time of the treatment. The bath should last from ten to thirty minutes. Just before the patient rises from the slab, renew the ice compress to the head. Finish the treatment with a graduated or alternate spray or shower, or better still, a shampoo and graduated shower. The spray or shower should be in the Russian room or only a few steps from it. (*Plate XLI.*)

Effects. The effects of vigorous sweating measures have been considered elsewhere. The "washing out" effect is, perhaps, the greatest; and the thoroughness of this depends very largely upon the water taken before and during the treatment. Sweating measures greatly increase catabolism, especially of carbohydrates and fats. The products of nitrogenous metabolism show more complete oxidation.

The Russian bath is of great service in obesity, chronic rheumatism with obesity, gout, Bright's disease, autointoxications, chronic alcoholism, and in arterio-sclerosis unless extreme. It is contra-indicated in diabetes, valvular heart disease, all diseases associated with emaciation and in extreme arterio-sclerosis.

Cabinet Vapor Bath

The principle involved in the cabinet vapor bath is the same as that of the Russian bath. Various water-proof cabinets are

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

offered for sale. They are useful in a home where more elaborate facilities can not be provided. An alcohol stove heats water in a basin under or near the stool provided for the patient. This is continued until the cabinet is full of vapor, when it is ready to enter. The patient sits on the stool with the head outside of the cabinet. The duration of the treatment should depend upon the rapidity of vaporization and upon the effect desired. The preliminaries, procedure and precautions to be taken are the same as in the Russian bath. Conclude the treatment with a shampoo, cold towel rub, graduated shower or other cold application.

Turkish Bath

The Turkish bath consists in the immersion of the body in hot air. The Russian room may be used for this purpose and conveniently heated by steam coils. Hot air boxes similar in shape and size to the upright electric light cabinet may be used (*Plate XLII.*). The patient is treated in the same manner as in the Russian bath. The head and neck should be kept cool by cold compresses and, if necessary, an ice bag applied over the heart. The temperature of the room should be gradually raised from 120° to about 170° F. The bath may last from fifteen to forty-five minutes. Perspiration is often somewhat delayed, in which case brisk friction to the skin may hasten its appearance. If perspiration is much delayed, the patient is likely to behave badly in the hot air bath, and for this reason should be closely watched until free perspiration is established. Owing to the difficulty with which some patients react to dry hot air, the applicability of the Turkish bath is somewhat more limited than that of the Russian bath.

The Turkish, or hot air bath, is of very great service in chronic Bright's disease. It may be used daily. It lessens nephritic dropsy both directly through increased perspiration and indirectly by aiding kidney elimination.

Superheated Air Bath

In the superheated air bath the temperature reaches 250°—350° F. Special metal cabinets for the entire body (*Plate*

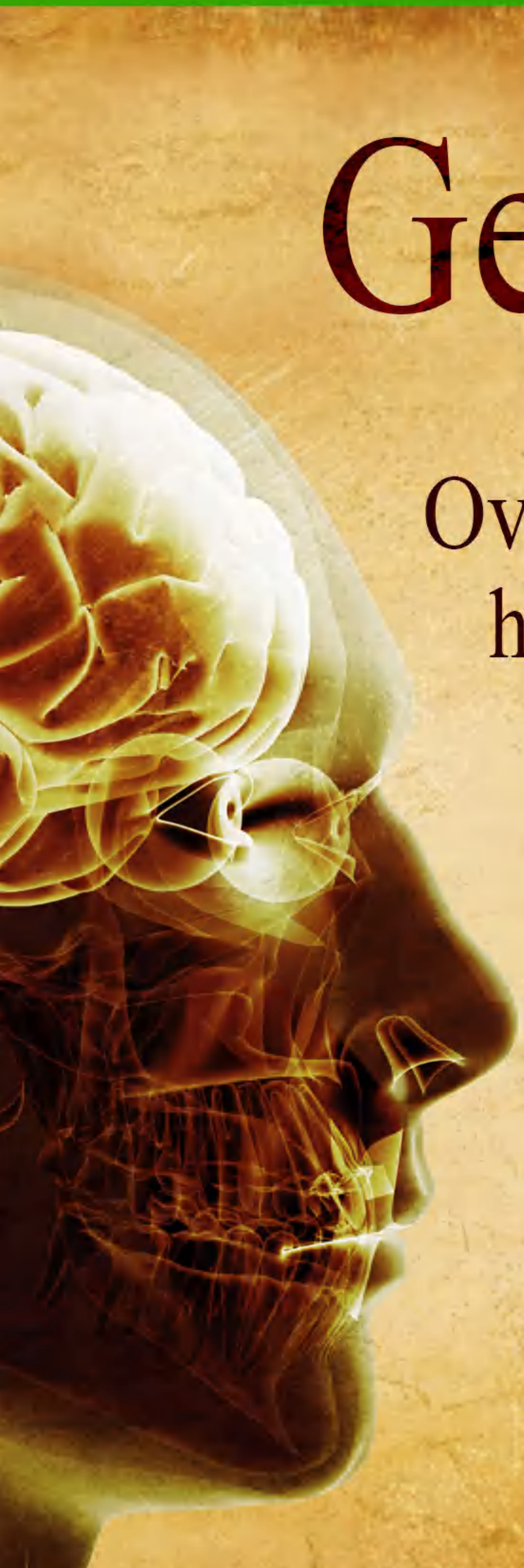
XLIII.) or various parts (*Plates XV and XVI.*) may be chased. The body or part to be treated should be the wrapped in Turkish toweling (*Plate XLIV.*) and sh rest on any part of the cabinet likely to become hot en burn. By means of a gasoline or other burner, the t ture of the air in the cabinet is gradually raised to 250° F. These burners are placed just below the cabi them are fitted inverted funnels with a short, wide s ing directly into the cabinet. The entering hot air spread by means of an asbestos shield so that it will not strike the skin surface. The patient's pulse and gener dition must be watched very closely in giving a full bath. An ice bag should be kept on the heart and t presses on the head and neck. These precautions are necessary where only a single part, such as the knee and ankle are being treated. The treatment may be con by an alcohol or witchhazel rub. Great care must be exer that the patient does not take cold afterward. The Tu toweling with which the body or limb is wrapped absorbs the perspiration, thus preventing its collecting skin in drops. Should it collect in drops, burning is likely to result.

Effects. The superheated air bath is a much more vigor measure than the Turkish bath. It is of special advanta articular rheumatism, whether occurring in acute rheum fever, chronic gouty rheumatism or in specific arthritis. Wh one or two joints are being treated, the application should co tinue from twenty minutes to an hour after the temper has reached 300°—350° F. When the part is taken out a m mentary dash of cold water may be given or the part clean from perspiration and a heating compress applied. In gon rrheal rheumatism this treatment may be followed by, or alte nate with, the prolonged ice pack, *i. e.*, prolonged to about hour's duration.

Electric Light Bath—E. L. B.

In giving the electric light bath, special upright or reclining cabinets fitted with mirrors and incandescent lights are used (*Plates XLVI and XLVII.*)

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

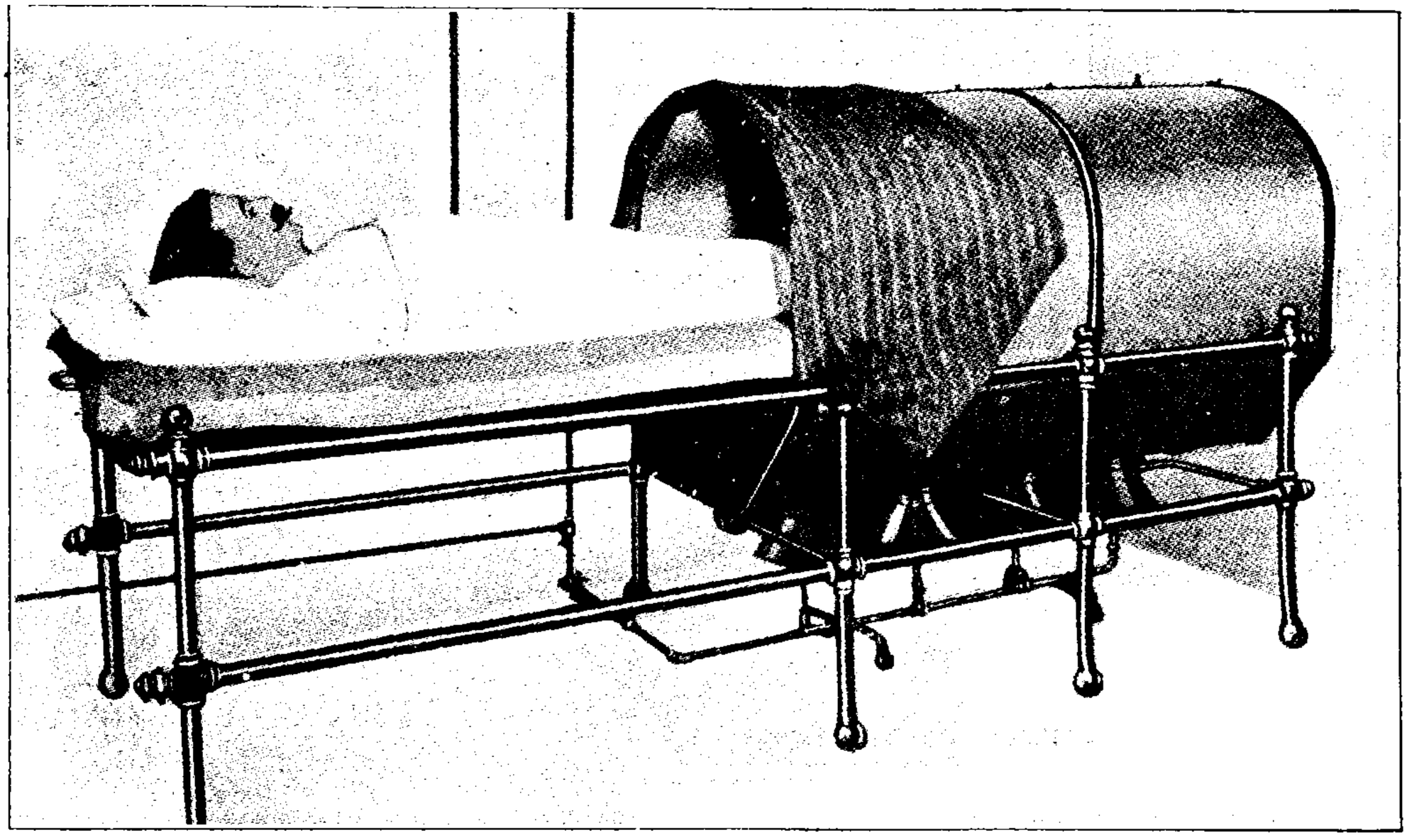


PLATE XLIV. Superheated dry hot air bath. Patient in Turkish toweling suit ready to be slid into cabinet.

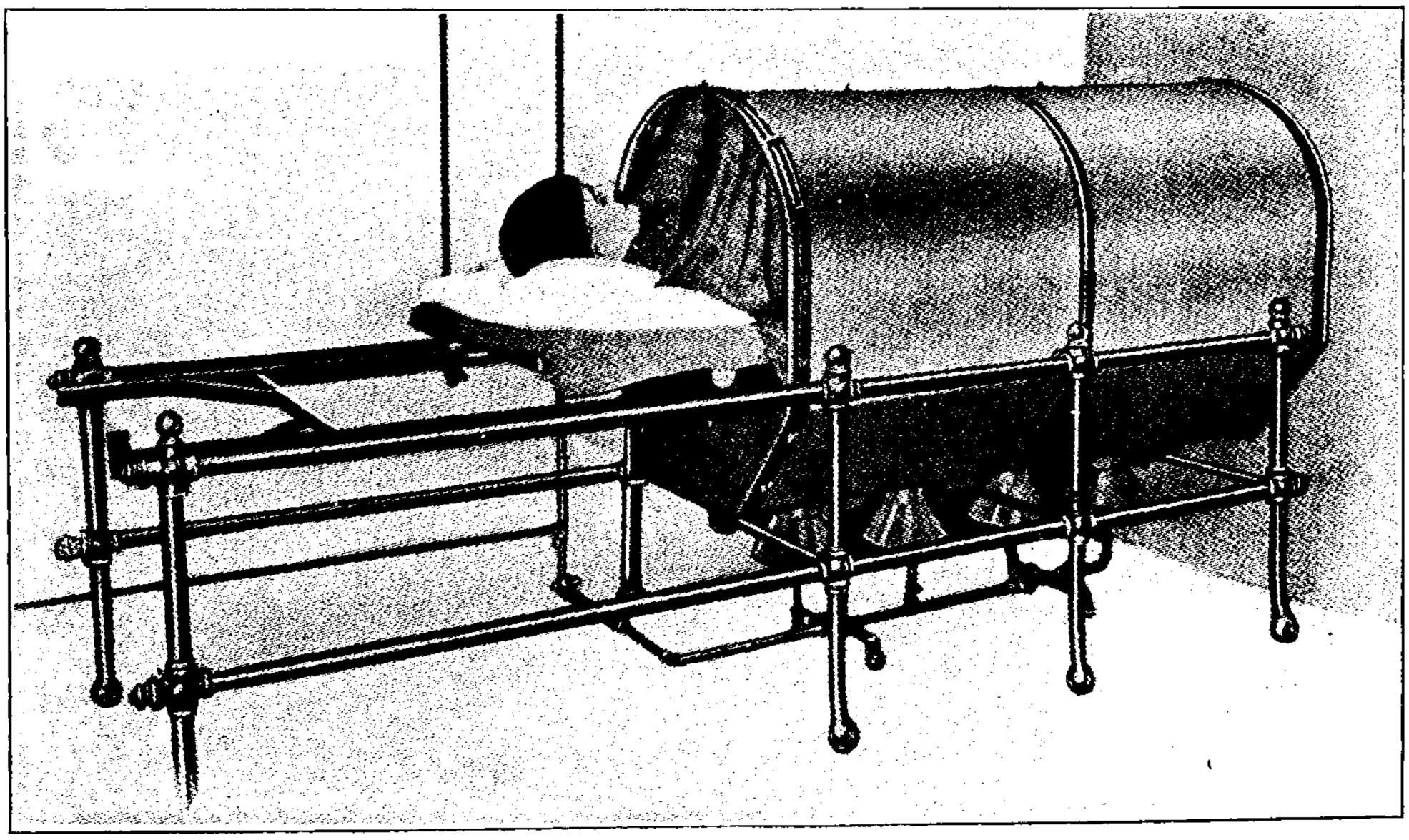


PLATE XLV. Superheated dry hot air cabinet in use.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

cated to the body by direct conduction or by convection, but by absorption of the rays of radiant energy as they are retarded and stopped by the skin and subcutaneous tissues.

On the other hand, for strong derivative effects, the electric light bath is unsatisfactory. For derivative purposes the heat must be brought in actual contact with the skin by applying the heated substance directly to the skin. For this reason, stronger derivative effects are secured by partial or full hot baths and hot packs.

The uses of the electric light bath are numerous and considerable space would be required merely to enumerate them. However, it is of special advantage in Bright's disease, arteriosclerosis, lead poisoning and other toxemias, obesity, gout, acute and chronic rheumatism, neurasthenia, diabetes, skin diseases and also for general tonic and sudorific effects. It seems to be almost a specific in treating morphine habitues. They obtain from it more relief than from any other measure.

SHAMPOOS

Swedish Shampoo—Ssh.

For giving the Swedish or slab shampoo, provide a pail of water at 103°—105° F. on a stool of convenient height near the head of the slab, also a shampoo brush and a half bar of soap. If the slab is not kept warm by being in a warm room, pour over it two or three pails of hot water. Cover the slab with a doubled sheet and assist the patient onto the slab, placing the head on an air pillow. Quickly lather an arm by dipping the brush and soap in the pail of hot water and rubbing together over the part. With brisk short movements go over the part thoroughly, using as much friction as is comfortably borne. Do the same with the chest, abdomen and legs.

Next assist the patient to turn over on the slab by putting one arm under the neck and grasping the opposite shoulder, and the other arm under the near leg and grasping the opposite knee. Treat the back, hips and backs of the legs in the same manner as the front of the body. Pour the remaining water in the pail over the patient to rinse off the soap suds. Follow the shampoo by a warm and cold shower or spray.

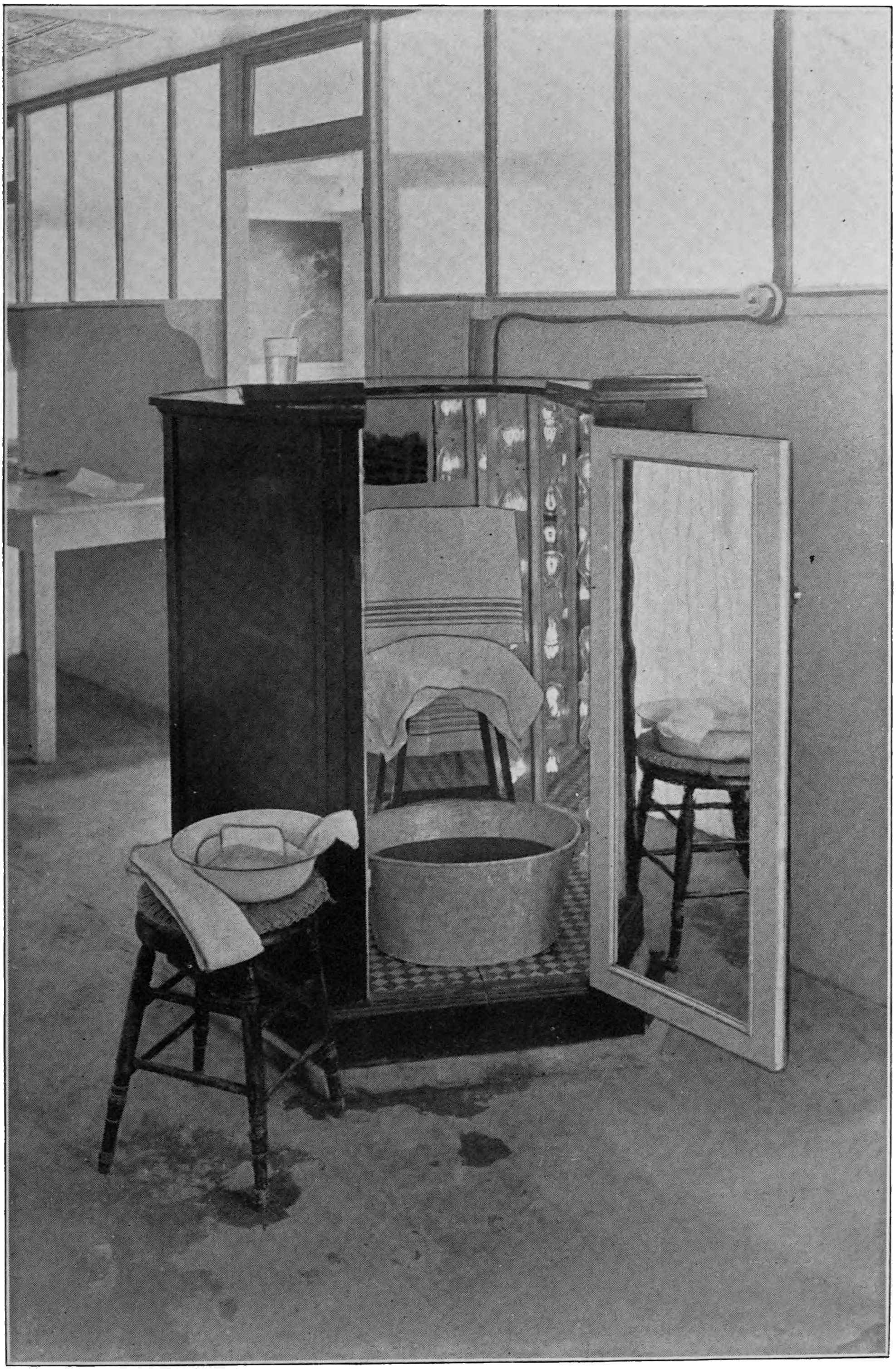
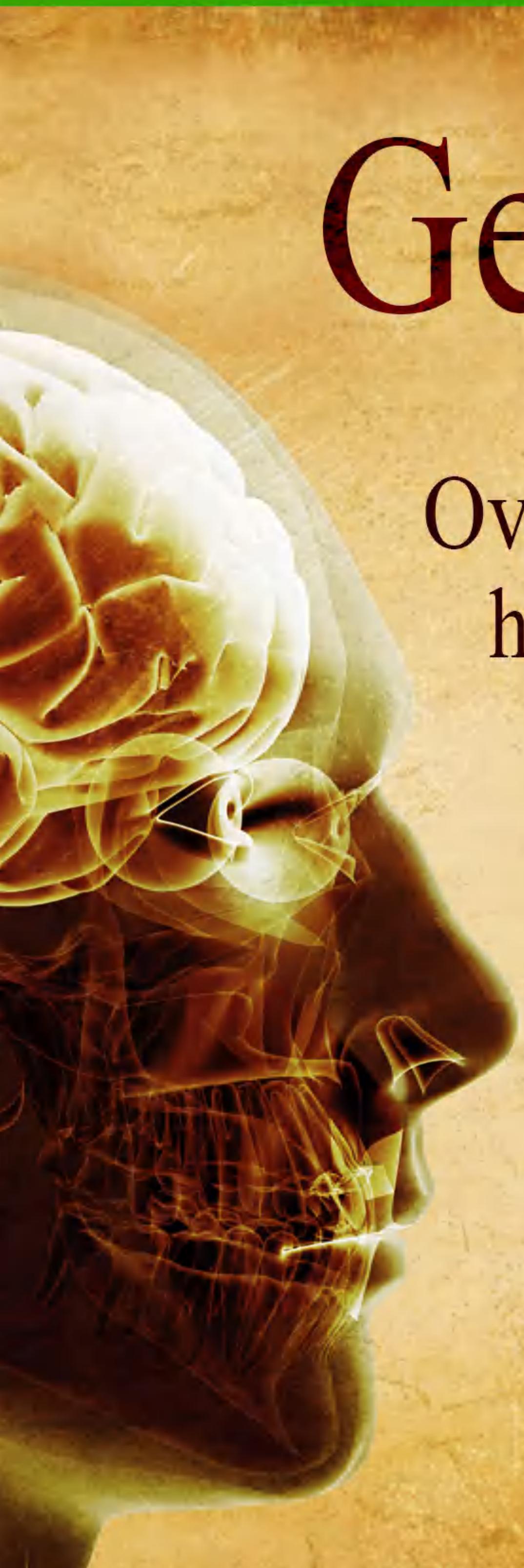


PLATE XLVI. Electric light bath cabinet (upright form) ready for use.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

the chest, also the thighs and legs. Wash off the face with water.

Friction Mitt. Dip the mitt in the second pail of 90° F., and beginning with the back and backs of the legs, go over each part twice rubbing all thoroughly; turn the patient and treat the chest, abdomen, arms and the same manner. Wash off with the rest of the pail at 90° F.

Shampoo. Treat each part as in the Swedish shampoo hands, a loofah, or bath brush and the pail of water at

Finish with prolonged tepid or cool shower or spray the close a short cold spray. Dry thoroughly with towels. The patient should be careful not to take cold ward.

PACKS

Packs are procedures in which a considerable portion body is enveloped in wet sheets or blankets for therapeutic purposes.

I. Hot Blanket Packs

The hot blanket pack is a procedure in which hot are used to communicate heat to the body.

Full Hot Blanket Pack—H. B. P.

(*a*) *Articles Necessary.* Two double blankets or one and one double blanket; one hot water bottle and three bags half filled with hot water at 160° F., a bowl or pail of water with compresses for the head, neck and heart, Turkish towels; a tumbler, a drinking tube and pitcher of water for drinking.

(*b*) *Preliminaries.* Move the bowels by enema, give a foot bath, and have the patient drink hot water.

(*c*) *Procedure.* Spread a double blanket on the treatment table or bed. Adjust a cold compress to the patient's head while his feet are still in the hot foot bath. Fold the sheet blanket or another double blanket (the latter holds the heat longer) lengthwise in convenient width for passing through wringer or wringing by hand. Wring from boiling water,

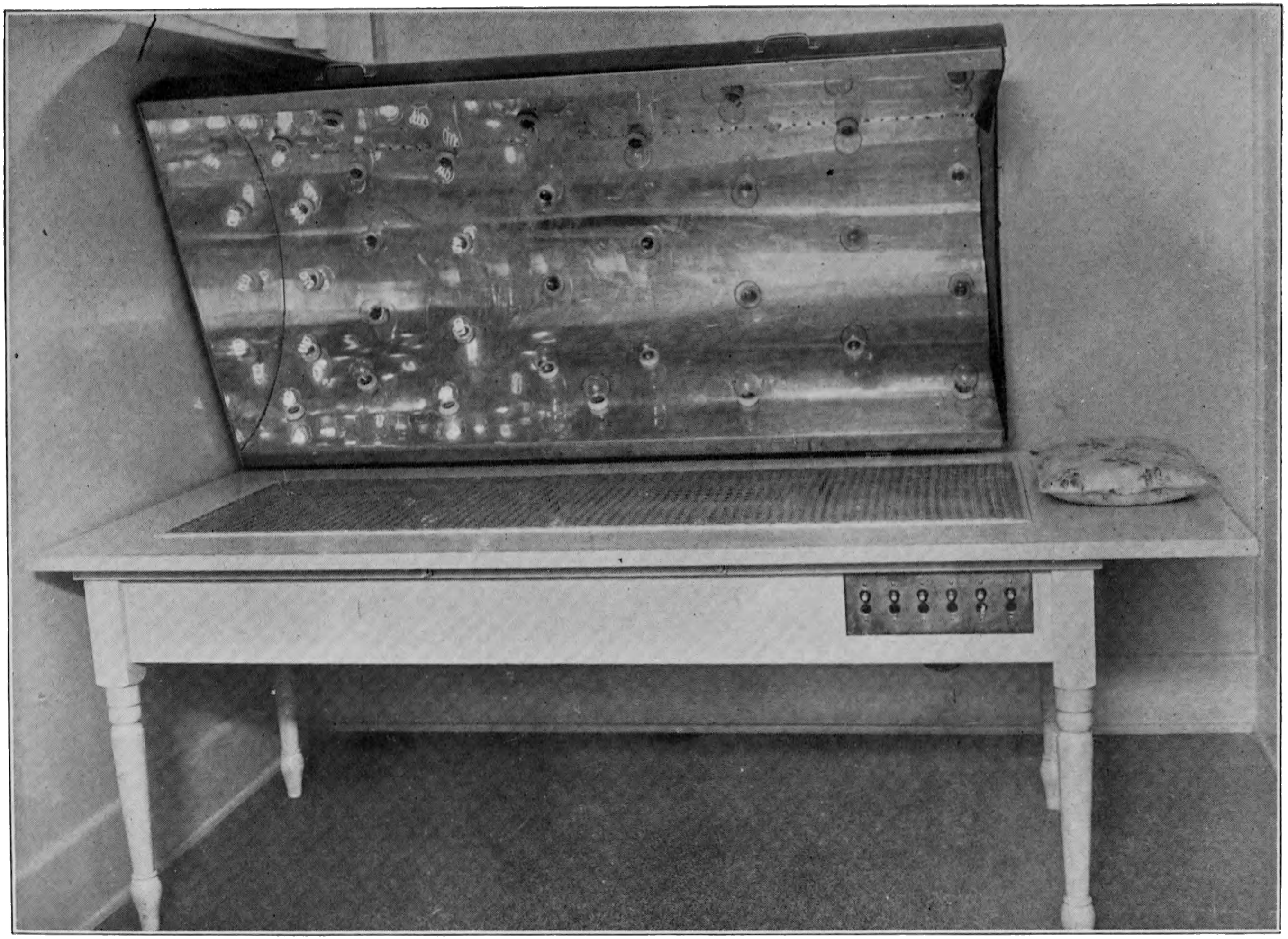


PLATE XLVII. Electric light bath cabinet, horizontal form.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

covered) there is danger of burns resulting. If comp made, they should at once be covered more thoroughly.

In some cases it is necessary to use a cold compress or bag to the heart.

General free perspiration should be induced by the Long continued heat without perspiration results in harm

In giving packs in case of paralyzed sensation, uncons ness, under or soon after anesthesia, in diabetics, drop the insane, it is safer if a thickness of dry blanket int between the patient and the wet blanket. Hot-water should be more thoroughly covered and the water used in should be at a lower temperature than ordinary.

(*e*) *Effects*. The hot blanket pack is a vigorous sw measure. It also produces decided derivation. Any swe treatment decreases internal congestion, but this action is more marked when the wet blanket is placed next to the Where the congestion is not localized in some particular but consists of a general internal congestion, a general s ing treatment is usually sufficient for its relief. This is case in the first stage of many fevers, especially the exanth ata, in colds, la grippe, etc.

In uremia, eclampsia and acute Bright's disease, both sud ific and strong derivative effects should be secured. In ot forms of renal congestion this is also necessary. In kid insufficiency the skin excretes much larger quantities of poi than in health. Free or profuse perspiration greatly aids in this vicarious function. This effect is not, however, the only one nor the most important effect of sweating measures. The congestion of the skin secured by a hot pack reduces the con gestion and high blood pressure in the kidney so that it soon begins to functionate when these causes are removed. The hot blanket pack is also useful in pneumonia and sometimes in typhoid fever. It is almost indispensible in the treatment of renal colic and gall-stone colic. In these conditions the pain is decreased immediately the pack is applied; in some cases it entirely obviates the necessity for morphine, while in others the dose may be cut to one-third or one-fourth the amount that would otherwise be required.

Dry Blanket Pack—D. B. P.

Sweating may be produced by enveloping the body in a dry woolen blanket and using hot-water bottles in the same way as with a wet pack. The same preliminaries should be observed, especially the giving of the hot foot bath before. It is quite essential that the patient take a considerable quantity of a hot drink during the treatment. Hot lemonade is ideal as it favors both diaphoresis and diuresis. The sweating may be as profuse as with the wet pack but the derivation is less efficient. Since no wet blanket is used, the patient may be first wrapped in a dry sheet and then in the dry blanket. The perspiration will be absorbed by the sheet and so, in a short time, the effect will somewhat approach that of the sweating wet sheet pack.

Hot Trunk Pack—H. Tr. Pk.

The method of applying the hot trunk pack is the same as with the full blanket pack. The wet blanket should include the pelvis but exclude the arms, reaching up to the axilla. The outside dry blanket should include the whole body but be used only for protection; it should not be wrapped tightly about the patient. It is usually best to apply a large dry fomentation cloth between the patient and the wet blanket. Place a hot-water bottle over the abdomen between the folds of the dry blanket, and spine bags on either side of the trunk. A hot foot bath should begin before and continue during the pack. Time, twenty to thirty minutes. If given for the relief of the pain of any form of colic, omit the cold friction at the close.

The hot trunk pack has the same general effect as the hot blanket pack. Since it covers less surface the derivative effects are less. It is especially useful in digestive disturbances and in relieving the pain of renal and biliary colic, also in intestinal colic.

Revulsive Trunk Pack—Rev. Tr. Pk.

The revulsive trunk pack consists of a hot trunk pack given as directed above and followed by a wet sheet trunk pack. Only this one change from heat to cold is made. The wet sheet is wrung from water at about 60° F. and applied to the

trunk after removing the wet flannel blanket. The ... described under the heading of wet sheet packs.

The hot blanket should be removed while it is ... the wet sheet applied at once in much the same manner ... the revulsive compress. The wet sheet trunk pack ... remain in place until the heating stage is reached when ... be removed and a cold mitten friction or alternate hot ... spray douche given to the parts covered by the pack, ... with the same to the feet. If desired, the wet sheet trunk ... may be made a hot and heating trunk pack by inserting ... water coil or a hot-water bottle over the stomach.

The revulsive trunk pack is used for tonic purposes, ... chronic congestions of the liver and the other digestive ...

Hot Pelvic Pack—H. Pelv. Pk.

The hot pelvic pack is applied in the same manner as ... trunk pack. It should come well above the crests of ... and include nearly half of the thighs. It is useful in the ... of pelvic pain from dysmenorrhea, cystitis, proctitis, etc. ... effects do not greatly differ from those of the hot sitz ... large, very hot fomentations to the pelvis, both of which ... ments are much easier to apply.

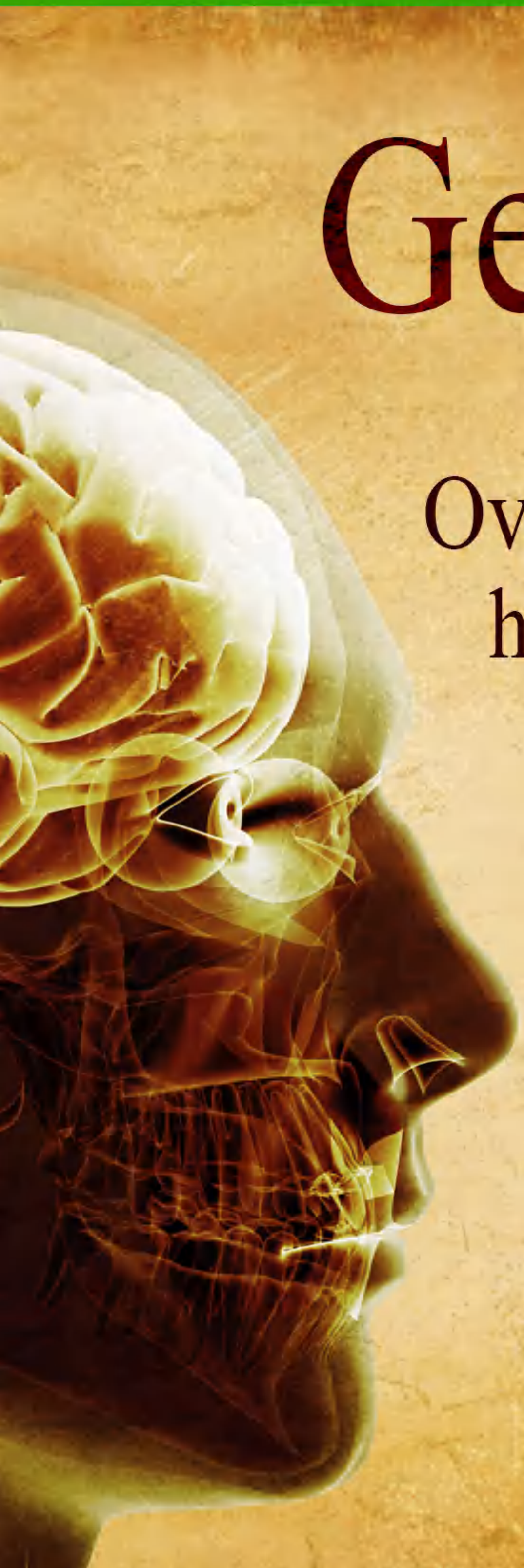
Revulsive Pelvic Pack—Rev. Pelv. Pk.

This treatment is applied in the same way as the revul... trunk pack. The cold pack should be prolonged to the hea... stage. The effects are somewhat similar to those of the re... sive sitz and hot half bath. It is useful in chronic congest... and chronic inflammations of the pelvic organs, such as chron... metritis and endometritis with much thickening, also in s... involution.

Hot Hip and Leg Pack—H. Hp. & Lg. Pk.

The hip and leg pack should include the feet, legs, thighs and ... pelvis, reaching slightly above the crests of the ilia. A hot ... water bottle should be placed at the feet within the folds of the ... dry blanket and a spine bag between the legs. Time, twenty ... to forty minutes. Taking one limb out at a time, finish with a ...

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

These treatments are sometimes spoken of as
packs, but this designation may cause confusion with
sive pack in which a cold (heating) wet sheet
hot blanket pack.

Ice bags may be used with the full pack or with
partial packs. The following combinations are
acute stages of the diseases indicated:—

APPENDICITIS—Hot hip and leg pack, with ice
appendiceal rigion.

PERITONITIS—Hot hip and leg pack, or leg pack
an ice compress or ice cap to abdomen.

PUERPERAL INFECTIONS AND ACUTE SALPINGITIS—Hot
leg pack, with ice to pelvis (suprapubic region).

PNEUMONIA—Hip and leg pack or full blanket
cracked ice compress or ice bags over lobe affected.

MENINGITIS—Hot leg pack, with ice cravat, ice
bag to base of brain and upper spine.

MASTOIDITIS—Hot hip and leg pack or full blanket
ice cravat or ice bag over the carotid artery, ice cap
and fomentations to mastoid.

ALVEOLAR ABSCESS—Same as mastoiditis, except give
tations to the jaw.

RENAL CONGESTION—Hot trunk pack or full blanket
with ice bag to lower third of sternum.

Other combinations will suggest themselves to the
ful mind.

Electrothermal Pack—Elec. Pk.

The electrothermal pack is given by means of a
prepared blanket containing flexible resistance wire. If
be used dry, the body or part to be treated should be wr
in a dry sheet or thin flannel blanket, and then in the ele
blanket, and the electricity turned on. The amount of
and consequent effect may be governed by the strength of
current. If to be used wet, wrap the patient in a sheet
nearly dry from cold or tepid water, and then in the el
blanket. The treatment is concluded by a cold mitten
spray or douche.

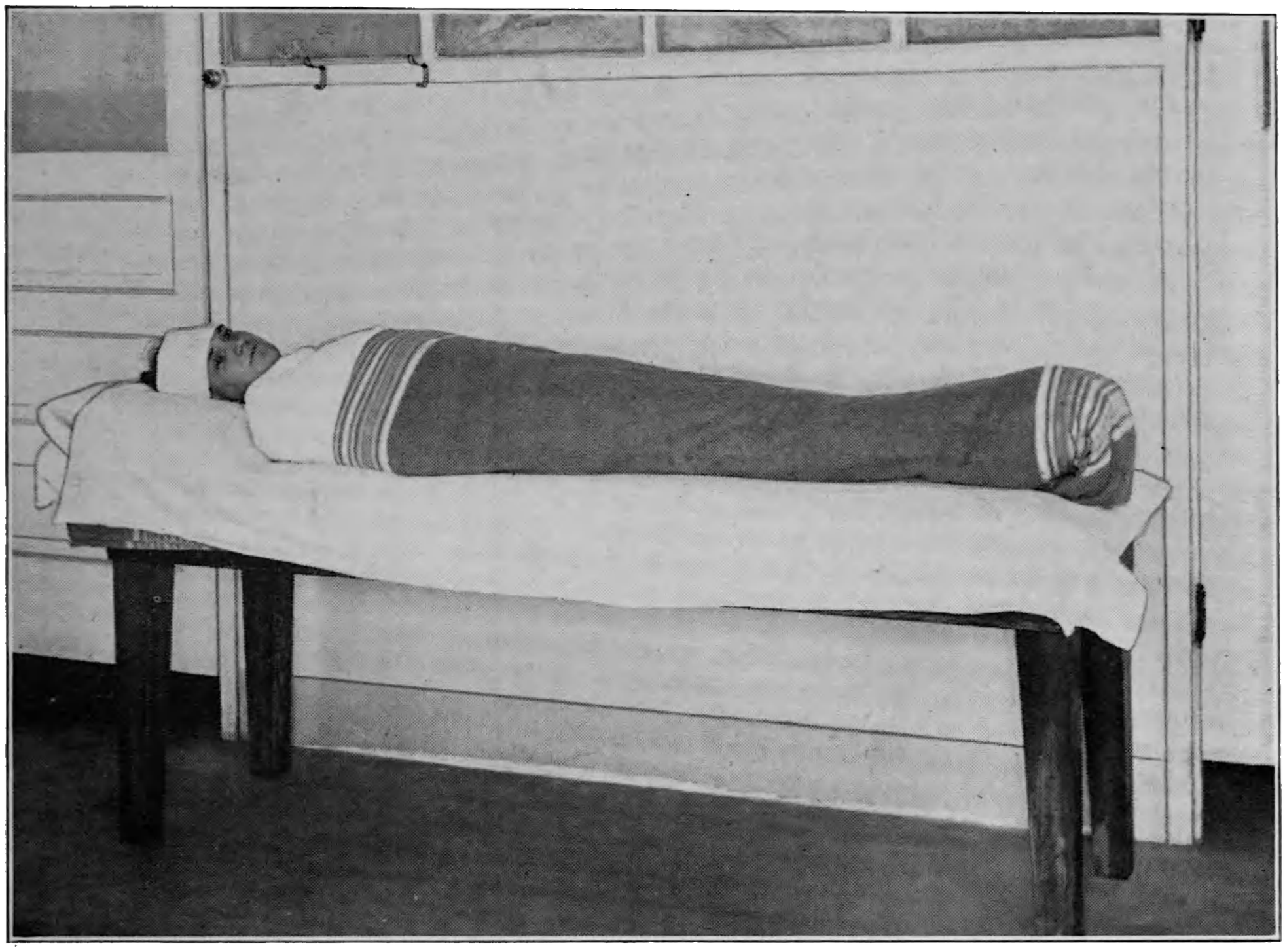


PLATE XLVIII. The hot blanket pack.

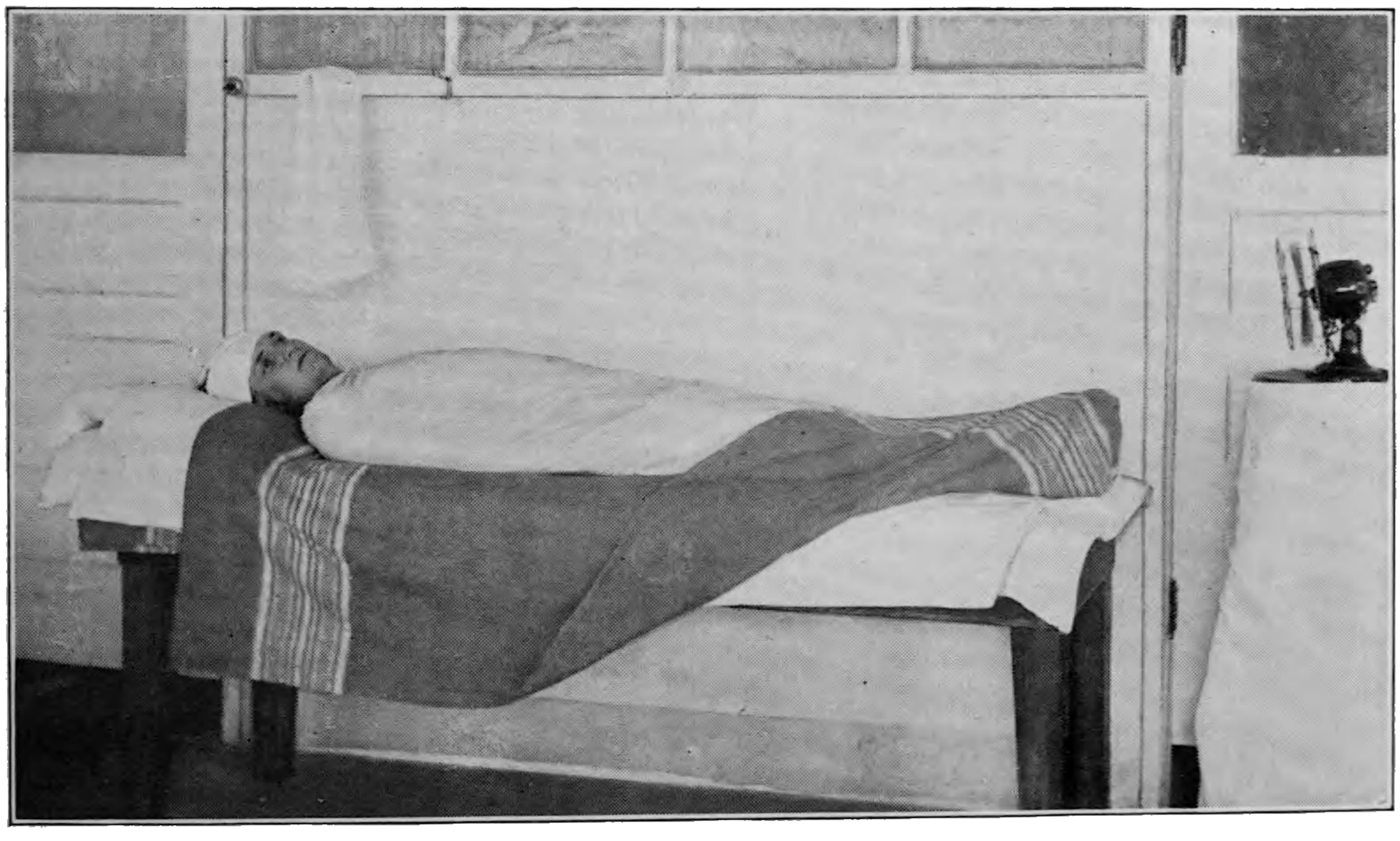


PLATE XLIX. The evaporating wet sheet pack.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

sheet with the shoulders three or four inches below the upper edge. Both arms should be raised while one side of the sheet is quickly wrapped around the body drawing it tightly in contact at all places and tucking the edge under the opposite side. Below the hips the sheet is wrapped around the leg of the same side. The arms are now lowered and the opposite side of the sheet drawn tightly over the body and tucked in. The sheet is now folded over the shoulders and across the neck. The narrower edge of the blanket is drawn tightly around the body and tucked in along the side. The wider edge is disposed of in a similar manner, pulling it tightly to bring all parts in close contact and the extra amount wrapped entirely around the patient. The foot end is doubled under the feet. A Turkish towel is placed about the neck to protect the face and neck from contact with the blanket and more perfectly exclude the air. An additional blanket may be laid over the patient and tucked in along the sides and about the feet, or two blankets may be placed on the table at first.

(*d*) *Precautions*. The wet sheet must come in close contact with the body at all points. The dry blanket must effectually prevent the entrance of air, otherwise chilling will result. "Warming up" should occur promptly. The feet must be kept warm during the entire treatment. It is permissible to place a hot-water bottle to the feet to hasten reaction in case this is delayed.

(*e*) *Stages*. According to the degree of warming the pack undergoes, it passes through four stages, *viz.*, *cooling or evaporating*, *neutral*, *heating and sweating*. It is often desirable to prolong the effect of one stage so that this effect may predominate. Accordingly the treatment is varied as follows:—

1. Cooling or Evaporating Wet Sheet Pack—Evap. W. S. P. This is the first stage of the pack before the sheet has been warmed to the temperature of the body. It requires from five to twelve minutes to accomplish this. If at the end of this time the sheet is removed and another applied, the effect is intensified, or the blanket may be folded back and cold water sprinkled on the patient over the wet sheet. In case of vigorous patients the dry coverings may be omitted entirely, considerable

water left in the sheet, and the patient fanned to hasten evaporation, more water being sprinkled on the sheet as soon as it is warmed slightly. The electric fan may be used where very rapid evaporation is desired. (*Plate XLIX.*)

Effects. The evaporating wet sheet pack is a powerful antipyretic measure. It is useful in typhoid fever and in other continued fevers where repeated antipyresis is necessary. It is usually best not to remove the pack for renewal but sprinkle on more cold water. As in the use of the cold tub bath in typhoid fever, rubbing is necessary if the water is very cold or the sheet sprinkled frequently. This is known as the *rubbing wet sheet pack.* Percussion should not be used. The greater the amount of water applied to the body, the stronger are the antipyretic effects, and consequently the quicker is the temperature of the patient reduced.

If desirable, the sheet may be wrung from hot water, the coverings being omitted. This is spoken of as a *hot evaporating sheet.* It is useful where slight chilliness exists. This treatment is not only antipyretic but also lessens heat production because of the initial heat and the consequent atonic reaction.

2. Neutral Wet Sheet Pack—Neut. W. S. P. The neutral stage begins when the temperature of the pack reaches or slightly exceeds the temperature of the skin, *viz.*, about 94° F. It may be prolonged by removing all but one or two dry coverings after the warming up has well begun. This allows of sufficient evaporation to prevent the accumulation of heat above the temperature of the body. The protection must be uniform and the entrance and circulation of air prevented.

Effects. The effects of the neutral wet sheet pack have been considered under the treatment of insomnia. A neutral temperature is secured the same as in the neutral bath. The marked sedative effects of the neutral pack are due more to the derivation secured than to the neutral temperature. In normal sleep there is a lessening of the amount of blood in the brain and a local decrease of blood pressure. The neutral pack brings about these changes and so aids in inducing relaxation and sleep.

If the pack is removed before sleep is produced, uncover one

part at a time, drying thoroughly and wrapping [illegible] dry sheet, or entirely remove the pack and immed[illegible] the patient in a warmed sheet, finishing the dryi[illegible] as possible.

If the pack is removed after the patient has slept, the treatment by a wet hand rub or cold mitten fric[illegible] ing to the degree of tonic effect desired.

The neutral wet sheet pack is also of use in the [illegible] fevers, in mania, epilepsy, chorea, infantile convul[illegible] various other agitative neuroses. (*Plate XXI.*)

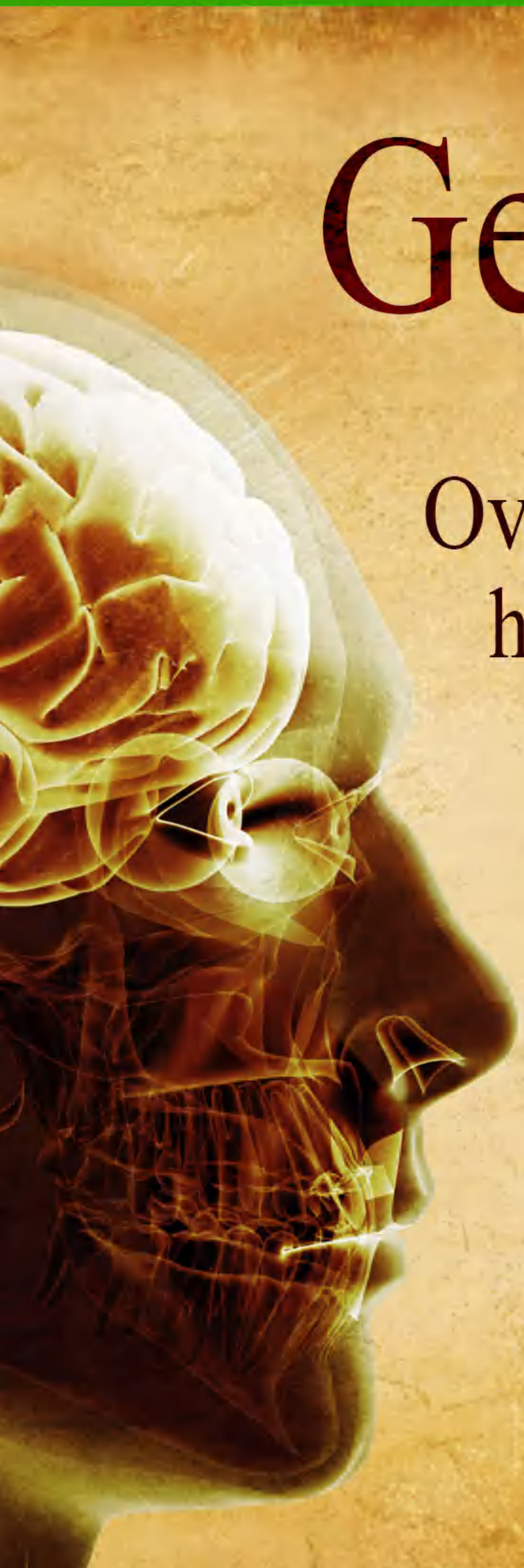
3. Heating Wet Sheet Pack—Heat. W. S. P. The [illegible] stage begins when the warming of the pack raises the [illegible] perature slightly above its usual degree; it ends after [illegible] ning of general perspiration which marks the establish[illegible] a full reaction. For tonic effects the pack should [illegible] about twenty minutes. When the stage of a pack is [illegible] scribed, this treatment is intended.

Effects. Tonic and heating effects are secured by [illegible] may be prolonged by applying cold water to the head [illegible] continuously so as to check extreme sweating. The [illegible] effect of the heating wet sheet pack is the production of [illegible] tion. The reaction and heating up of the skin, caused [illegible] accumulation of body heat, congest the skin and so lessen [illegible] amount of blood in the internal organs. The distinction [illegible] tween the neutral and the heating wet sheet packs is [illegible] great importance. Like the neutral and warm baths [illegible] effects differ more in degree than in kind. Both produce [illegible] vation. As used in insomnia and mania, the pack is pro[illegible] longed and is consequently at the heating stage during [illegible] greater part of the treatment.

The heating pack possesses quite a range of usefulness [illegible] securing mild tonic and derivative effects. It may be used [illegible] anemia, chlorosis, infectious fevers, convalescence from fe[illegible] neurasthenia, diabetes, etc.

4. Eliminative or Sweating Wet Sheet Pack—Sweat. W. S. P. The production of general perspiration marks the beginning [illegible] the sweating stage. The sweating may be increased or pro[illegible] longed by additional coverings, hot-water bottles placed [illegible]

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Hot and Heating Trunk Pack—H. & Heat Tr. P

This treatment is the same as that previously described under the heading Winternitz coil. A single blanket is folded crosswise of the treatment table or bed so that the upper edge may reach well up under the arms. A sheet doubled (in the case of feeble patients a single thickness) to a width which will reach from the axilla to below the hips is wrung from cold water and placed over the blanket. The patient lies down upon this and while both arms are raised, one end of the wet sheet is pulled tightly across and around the trunk. Over the epigastric and umbilical regions outside of the sheet, place a quart hot-water bottle half filled with water at 135° F. (*Plate XIX.*) Wrap the other end of the sheet about the bottle over the hot-water bottle and cover snugly with a dry blanket, folding over one end at a time. A Winternitz coil (*Plate XVIII.*) or an electric pad may be used in place of the hot-water bottle. Continue the treatment from forty minutes to two hours. General sweating should not be produced. The pack may be begun half an hour before the meal. Take the patient out with a cold mitten friction or an alternate spray douche to the abdomen and spine.

Effects. The hot and heating trunk pack is the *most* effective hydrotherapeutic measure for the treatment of *digestive disturbances*. It promotes gastric secretion and gastric digestion. Liver activity and intestinal digestion proceed more normally. Excessive or reverse peristalsis (vomiting) is checked, and decreased gastric motility stomach movements are hastened. Because of more perfect digestion and more normal peristalsis gas formation is markedly decreased or entirely checked.

The hot and heating trunk pack is indicated in persistent vomiting, dyspepsia, flatulence, splanchnic neurasthenia, chronic congestion of the liver and in anemia of the liver.

In cases of almost complete arrest of gastric digestion or of persistent vomiting, the pack should be applied about twenty minutes before the meal and continued for two or three hours. A cold mitten friction should be given at the close. The feet should be warmed by a hot foot bath before the treatment and

kept warm during the treatment. The hot foot bath may be continued while the treatment lasts, if this is not over thirty minutes, otherwise it is well to dry the feet and wrap them in dry flannel so that the patient may rest more perfectly. For further details of the uses and effects, see treatment of atonic dyspepsia.

Heating Pelvic Pack—Heat. Pelv. Pk.

On the treatment table spread a blanket as for a full pack. Next fold a single blanket to form a square and then diagonally to form a triangle. Arrange this on the large blanket so that the base is upward and the apex downward where it may be folded about the pelvis when the patient reclines. Over this place a sheet similarly folded and wrung nearly dry from water at 60° F. The patient now reclines, and with legs flexed and knees separated, the apex of the wet sheet is brought into close contact with the perineum and spread over the abdomen. With legs extended, each lateral angle of the wet sheet is drawn down tightly across the hips, lower abdomen and upper thigh. The triangular piece of dry flannel is now applied in the same manner, and the patient covered with the large blanket. Continue the pack twenty or thirty minutes.

Effect. The heating pelvic pack is a mild tonic and derivative means the same as the heating trunk pack. It helps to equalize the pelvic circulation and reduce congestions of the pelvic viscera. It relaxes hypertonic muscles and stimulates atonic muscles. The heating pelvic pack is not used as much as the sitz bath in the treatment of pelvic disorders. It is indicated in chronic congestions of the pelvic organs, amenorrhea, chronic metritis, backache, chronic colitis, etc. When used in cases of much pelvic pain or other pelvic distress, a hot-water bottle or coil should be placed next to the wet sheet over the lower abdomen and suprapubic region in the same manner as in the hot and heating trunk pack.

SPRAYS AND DOUCHES

A spray or douche consists in the projection of one or more streams of water against the body. Many different appliances

are used in giving these treatments. They possess a wide range of adaptability that almost any desired effect may be produced by them. For this reason both the physician and the nurse should become thoroughly proficient in the use of the spray and douche controller. For a description of this controller, see the section on hydrotherapeutic appliances, *Plate L* and *Figs. 67, 72.*

Shower Bath—Sh.

A shower or rain bath consists in the projection of many fine streams falling upon the patient. In the shower bath gravitation is the principal force utilized; the effect, however, is often enhanced by added pressure. The nozzle or disc from which the water descends should be about two inches in diameter and from ten to sixteen inches above the patient's head. There should be sufficient force to cause the water to flow rapidly. The room should be very warm and protected from drafts. See that the patient's feet are dry before entering the shower. If the wetting of the hair is objectionable, as with women, protect by a rubber or oilskin cap, or with a shower head attached by a ball joint direct it forward at an angle of forty-five degrees. Turn on the shower and adjust to the proper temperature before the patient enters.

1. Hot Shower—H. Sh. Begin the hot shower at 100° F., and gradually raise the temperature to from 110°—115° or slightly above. Time, one to five minutes. It is used chiefly as a preparation for the cold shower or douche. It may be necessary to use a cold compress to the head during the hot shower. If only a hot shower is prescribed, cool rapidly to 90° or 85° F., and dry quickly with sheet and towels, finishing by fanning the patient with a dry sheet.

2. Cold or Cool Shower—C. Sh. The cold shower is usually preceded by a hot shower. When the patient has become warmed, lower the temperature rapidly from hot to the limit of tolerance or reactive ability of the patient and maintain at this point long enough for a vigorous tonic effect. Those who have become accustomed to cold treatment may take the cold shower

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

without the preliminary hot shower. Cool, 70°—90° F.; cold, 55°—70° F. At first, before the patient becomes accustomed to the shower, the upper limits should be utilized and in each succeeding treatment the temperature lowered by 1° or 2° daily and the time prolonged to from one-half to three or more minutes. Effects, tonic.

3. Neutral Shower—Neut. Sh. In giving a neutral shower, begin with the water at 100° F., and very gradually lower it to 97°—94° F. The treatment should last from three to five minutes. The patient should be dried quickly without percussion or unnecessary friction. Effects, sedative.

4. Graduated Shower—Grad. Sh. After a prolonged or vigorous sweating bath where much heat has been communicated to the body, it is desirable to lower the temperature of the shower slowly for gradual cooling and to abstract as much heat from the body as possible without producing a decided thermic reaction. Apply a cold compress to the head before the patient leaves the hot bath. Begin at 108°—110° F., quickly raising the temperature to 115° or 118° F. Maintain this until the patient feels well warmed and is ready to welcome the cold. Gradually lower the temperature to between 80° and 90° F., maintaining it at this point for from two to four minutes. Dry as quickly as possible with sheets and towels and see that the patient is not exposed to cold air or drafts for at least an hour after.

5. Revulsive Shower—Rev. Sh. Begin the shower at 105°—108° F. and gradually raise the temperature to from 110°—115° F. or slightly above; continue at this point for one to two minutes. When the patient has been thoroughly warmed, turn the mixer quickly to cold at a temperature of 60°—85°. After five to ten seconds turn the mixer valve back to the former temperature for one to two minutes. Three complete changes from hot to cold are made. After the last cold, dry quickly with sheets and towels as usual.

Effects. The revulsive shower has a mild tonic and stimulant effect. The patient should become accustomed to it before taking the alternate hot and cold shower. The change from

one to the other may be made gradually by lengthen duration of the cold with each succeeding treatment.

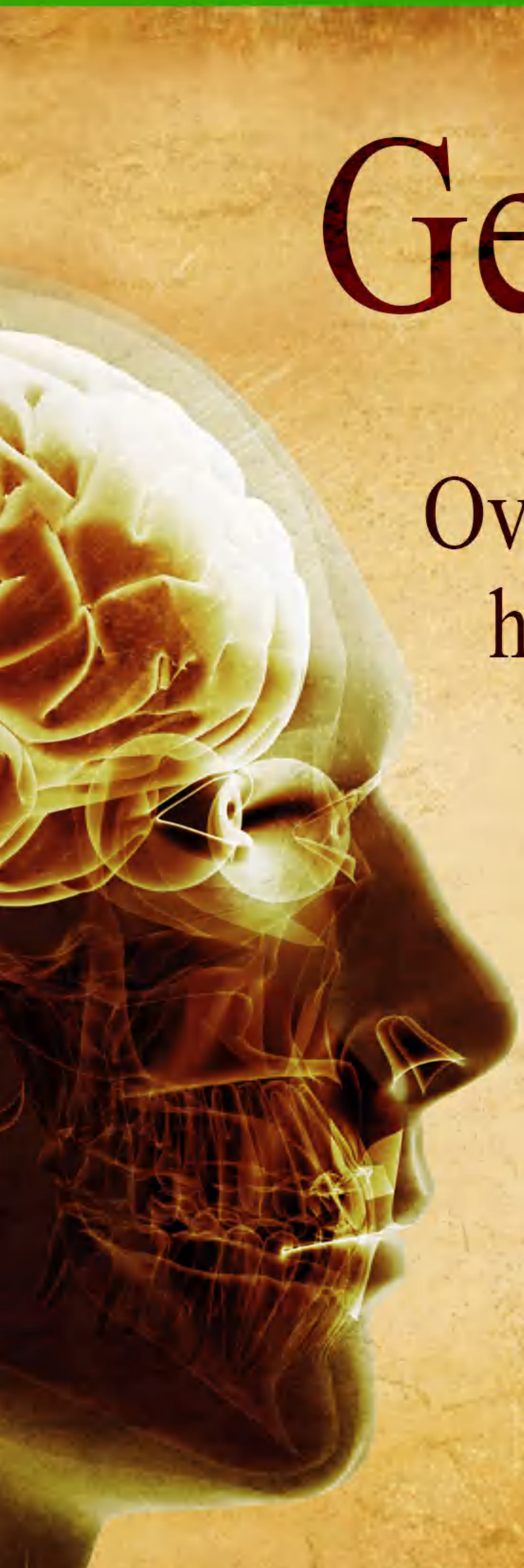
6. Alternate Hot and Cold Shower—H. & C. Sh. T the best results the changes should be abrupt from hot As the water must traverse about fifteen feet of pipe reaches the patient, an absolutely instantaneous chan possible. Begin with the hot at a temperature of 10 F., raising the temperature quickly to the limit of t and continue it about one minute; then turn the mi quickly to cold and continue fifteen to thirty seconds. again to hot for about one minute and follow this by cold and so on for three complete changes of hot a finishing with the cold and drying as usual.

Effects. The alternate hot and cold shower is a vigoro and stimulant. It should not be ventured upon witho siderable preliminary training by milder measures. So it more agreeable than the spray and easier to react to.

Sprays—Spr.

A spray bath consists in the simultaneous projection of against all parts of the body by horizontal jets surroundi patient. For this purpose four upright pipes, arranged square and having perforations on the side of each toward center, are used. Since these pipes are stationary, it is nec sary to have a short patient stand on a stool so that the w may not strike the face. A tall patient must bend the knee order to have the spray cover the entire trunk. To overco this inconvenience and to spread the streams of water more, four rosettes may be arranged along each pipe at inte vals of sixteen inches, the upper row being moveable. effects and uses of the spray are the same as those of shower, with the possible difference that the application is som what more general and there is more or less mechanical stim lation due to percussion or pricking of the jets. This is great as the pressure is increased by the full opening of the spra valve. However this depends entirely on the size of the open ings in the pipes or rosettes. If many and very fine the treat ment is most agreeable. Hot, cold, neutral, graduated, revul

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

making changes when necessary for the particular c
condition in hand. In order to guard against burning
sible, keep the index finger of the hand holding the
in contact with the stream of water as it emerges f
nozzle. This should be done with the most perfect
ances and even when no trouble at all is anticipated.
steady hand, apply the douche accurately to the par
treated and have the thermometers under constant ob

The following are the general directions for douch
ferent temperatures. In giving these any form of no
be used and any portion of the body treated. To enum
the possible variations and the particular surface to be
together with the reflex or hydrostatic effects derived fr
would require a small volume in itself. As in all hyd
peutic procedures, practical instruction is of far more
than any amount of text description and text illustration.
designations as the Scotch douche, Charcot douche, et
non-descriptive and as far as possible should be droppe
hydrotherapeutic nomenclature.

In giving douches it is essential that the changes be
from hot to cold. This is best secured by two douch
each with its own mixer so that both may be kept
during the entire treatment, the changes being made by
the two alternately. In this way the changes are absol
instantaneous. The following types serve only as a gen
guide. The successful physician will find use for many g
tions between the revulsive and alternate hot and cold dou
The treatment must be adapted to each individual case.

1. Hot Douche—H. D. Where the hot douche alone is
it is given for a relatively long time, two to five minutes,
temperature of 105°—125° F., and followed by a very b
application of cold, five to fifteen seconds; temperature 60°—
90° F. This is supposed to be just long enough to remo
from the skin the heat communicated by the hot douche.
principle is identical with that of the revulsive douche exc
that in the latter, three or more changes are employed, w
here only one is given and the duration is much longer.

Effects. The hot douche produces dilatation of the cutan

vessels and so where applied to a considerable area, effective derivation is secured. Where applied to a small area, the dilatation of the vessels in the deep part through a reflex channel may equal or exceed the hydrostatic effect. Percussion intensifies the reflex effect. The hot douche is used for the relief of pain, irritation, neuralgia, sciatica, etc. In these cases percussion is undesirable.

2. Neutral Douche—Neut. D. Temperature, 94°—97° F.; time, three to six minutes. The broken jet or spray douche is used since sedative effects are sought. The neutral spray douche is especially beneficial when given to the spine. No force should be used and the patient should sit on a stool with the back to the operator. If given properly this treatment is essentially a neutral pour.

3. Cold Douche—C. D. Temperature, 55°—70° F. The cold douche is seldom given alone, but when not preceded by hot, the percussion jet should be used. Given in this way, vigorous fluxion is produced in the part treated with a corresponding derivation from other parts. For this reason it is very effective in relieving cold feet.

4. Revulsive Douche—Rev. D. Three abrupt changes from hot to cold are used. Temperature of the hot, 112°—115° F.; time, a half to two minutes; temperature of the cold, 55°—70° F.; time, five to ten seconds. Unless given with high pressure, (percussion) the reaction is chiefly circulatory. Percussion is not usually desirable with the revulsive douche.

Effects. It will be noted that the duration of the cold is exceedingly brief as compared with the duration of the hot. In this item lies the difference between the revulsive and the alternate hot and cold douche. The effect of the revulsive douche is chiefly circulatory and greater in the surface blood vessels than in the deep part, *i. e.*, the reflex effect is not prominent. The surface effect is that of fluxion and if a sufficient surface is covered by the treatment, a hydrostatic (derivative) effect upon other parts is produced.

The revulsive spray douche is especially applicable to the chest, abdomen and over the liver and spleen, also to the spine, pelvis and perineum.

5. Alternate Hot and Cold Douche—H. & C. method of giving the alternate douche is the same as the revulsive douche except that the cold application is of shorter duration, being from one-third the duration of the hot with it, so that where the hot is given for one minute, the cold should last twenty seconds to one minute, depending upon the reactive powers of the patient. Percussion (H. & C. Perc. D.) adds much to the vigor and permanency of the reaction.

Effects. The alternate hot and cold douche produces a copious fluxion in the surface treated. When percussion is used the reflex effects become prominent especially if the douche is applied to only one or two parts of the body. As a tonic treatment, for example, the alternate hot and cold percussion douche to the spine and legs, powerful tonic and reflex effects are produced. The alternate percussion douche to the feet and legs is a most efficient derivative measure, especially when preceded by the hot leg bath. The extreme fluxion which it induces in the feet and legs produces a decided and permanent derivation.

The following list of treatments, which may be given by means of the spray and douche apparatus, will help to show the technique and something of the principles involved in the effects desired.

As a General Tonic—H. & C. Perc. D. to spine, legs, and feet.

To Produce Reaction in One Unaccustomed to Cold—H. Spr. with H. & C. Perc. D. to spine and legs at same time.

To Relieve Congestive Headache—H. & C. Perc. D. to feet with C. Comp. to head.

Passive Congestion of the Liver—Rev. or Alt. H. & C. D. (Perc. or Spr.) over hepatic area.

Sciatica—Prolonged H. Fan D. over sciatic nerve.

Varicose Ulcers—H. & C. Spr. D. to legs, six to eight changes.

Hypochlorhydria—Rev. Spr. D. to epigastrium and H. & C. Perc. D. to mid-dorsal spine.

Lumbago—H. & C. Perc. D. to lower back.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

patient has just come from a warm bath of some sort, temperature may be used for the first pail and the other respondingly lower, or only two pails used. In s... treatments lower the degree of the applications until ... 50°—60° is used for the third pail. Rub the patient vi... after the last pail and dry as from spray or shower. ... pour is conveniently used after the tub or slab sham... glow, etc. A cold pail pour to the hips is given after ... half-bath and the hot sitz bath for revulsive effects.

2. Local Affusions. These may be designated acc... the part treated and the temperature of the application. ... affusion relieves pain. The circulatory excitation so... way to an atonic reaction. A neutral affusion, especial... spine, is sedative. A cold affusion, if short, is sti... and tonic; if prolonged, it reduces congestion and inflam... stimulating phagocytosis. A long continued cold pou... head is strongly antipyretic. The alternate hot and co... is a powerful stimulant and tonic, producing fluxion in t... treated, with derivation from other parts. It produ... decided local leucocytosis and stimulates phagocytosis. B... of these effects it is a very useful measure in treati... infected part where it is impossible or undesirable to comp... immerse the part in water.

In giving an affusion to the spine, the patient may sit o... edge of a bath tub or on a stool in the tub. In giving a p... to the arm, hand, foot, etc., the part may be held over a s... tub while the water is poured from a pail or large pitcher. ... treat the head by a pour the patient should lie on a cot w... head resting over the end and a tub underneath. In givi... local affusions the water should fall a distance of three or f... inches to one or two feet according to the part treated a... effects desired.

ENEMATA

An enema is an injection of fluid into the rectum.

General Directions:—

(*a*) *Articles Necessary.* An enema can with a capacity o... one-half to two gallons or a fountain syringe or combination... bag.

Five or six feet of rubber tubing with cut-off.

A glass or hard rubber enema tube.

A disinfectant solution for the enema tube. One to three per cent lysol acts both as a disinfectant and a soap for cleansing. A water thermometer. Toilet paper.

If given in the room, there should be in addition a standard or hook for suspending the enema can, a bed pan, slop jar and several newspapers.

In the treatment room shelves or hooks are most convenient for holding the can, they should be so arranged that the elevation of the enema can may be varied from one to four feet above the patient. (*Plates LIII, LIV, LV.*)

(*b*) *Procedure.* Fill the can with from two to six quarts of water at the proper temperature (test with a thermometer).

The patient should be warm, especially the feet. All clothing not removed should be loose.

Position of the patient—dorsal, sitting, right Sims or knee-chest.

Release the cut-off and allow the water to run until the stream is at the same temperature as the water in the can. Close cut-off and lubricate the enema tube, being careful to wash it beforehand, removing the disinfectant solution.

The patient should insert the tube unless very ill or unable to do so. Instruct the patient to take as much water as possible. To make it easier to do this, stop the flow by pinching the tube two or three times during the taking of the enema. Close cut-off and remove the tube. If possible the patient should retain the water a few minutes before discharging.

Repeat until a thorough bowel movement is secured or other desired result is obtained.

I. Plain Water Enemata

Rectal Injection or **Enema—E.** or **En.**

In the ordinary enema the desired amount of fluid is injected, allowed to remain a short time and then passed. The procedure is different from rectal irrigation, in which there is a continuous inflow and outflow of fluid.

1. Hot Enema—H. En. The temperature of the hot enema should vary from 103°—110° F. according to the condition of the patient and the result desired. It is useful in relieving irritation, the pain of inflammation in the rectum or prostate and pain of hemorrhoids. It also aids in expelling gas, and helps to check diarrhœa by decreasing rectal tenesmus. It may be used as a preliminary measure in the treatment of dysmenorrhœa. The hot enema is also used to warm and stimulate the body in shock. It markedly relieves the pain in acute pelvic and lower abdominal inflammations such as salpingitis and appendicitis.

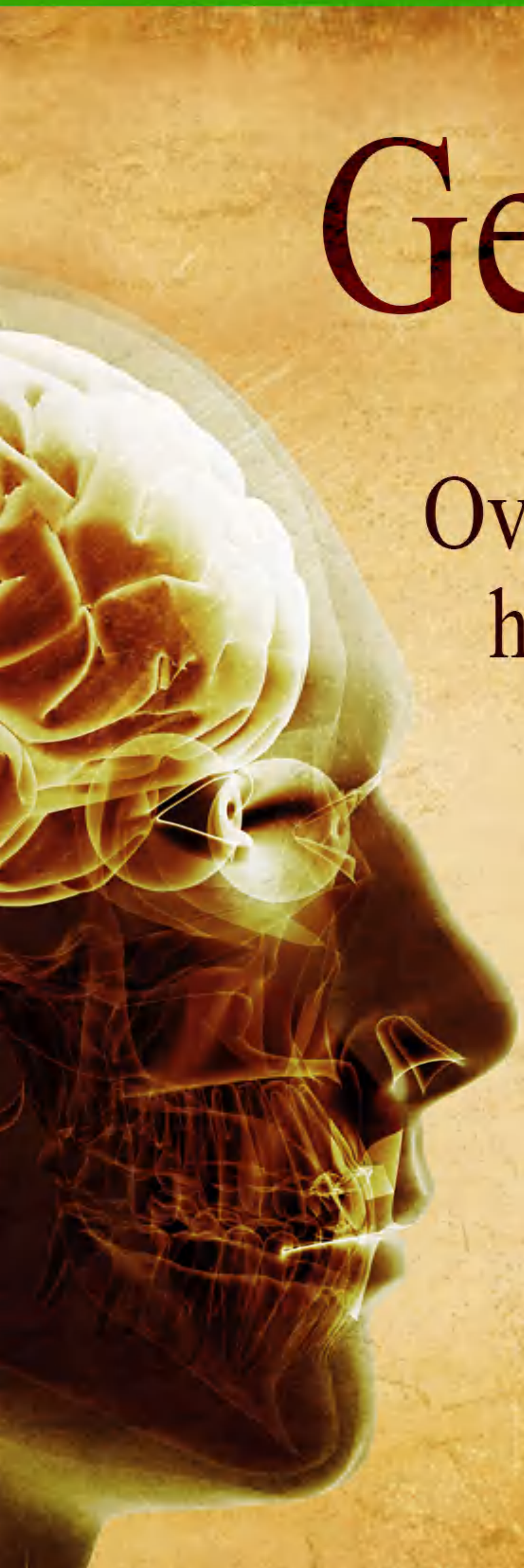
2. Warm Enema—En. The ordinary enema for cleansing purposes should be given at a temperature of 95°—100° F. Where it has to be repeated frequently it is better to use tepid water, *i. e.*, 80°—92° F., to avoid as far as possible the relaxing effect of warm water.

3. Cold Enema—C. En. In giving the cool or cold enema, the temperature of the water may vary from 55°—80° F. Up to about 70° F. it may be regarded as cold, and from 70°—80° F. as cool. The cold enema is a powerful stimulant to bowel movements and should be more generally used for this purpose in place of the warm enema. For this reason it is useful in overcoming the enema and cathartic habits. If retained ten or fifteen minutes or frequently repeated, is useful in shrinking hemorrhoids. It may also be used in fever, but for this purpose prolonged rectal irrigation is much more convenient and effective.

Graduated Enema—Grad. E.

The graduated enema is not a single treatment, but a series of treatments. It is used to overcome the enema or cathartic habits. As usually given, it extends over a period of ten to twelve days. It should be preceded on two or three successive days by thorough coloclysters of water at 90°—100° F. to remove accumulated feces. The series of enemata is begun with a large amount of tepid water and finished with a small amount of cold water, one enema being given daily. In some cases the first two or three of the series may be omitted.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

or, if given to a bed patient, into a jar placed at the

bed.

1. Hot Rectal Irrigation—H. Rec. Irrig. When

used is at a temperature of 102°—105° or 106° F. the

produces decided effects in the relief of pain and

mus. It may also be used with great benefit in cases

cystitis with frequent and painful urination.

2. Cold Rectal Irrigation—C. Rec. Irrig. Cold

tion is a very useful antipyretic measure. For

the water should not be very cold, but from about 70°

and the treatment continued about forty-five minutes

Cold irrigation is also useful in stimulating bowel

but for this purpose it possesses no advantage over

enema.

3. Alternate Hot and Cold Rectal Irrigation—Alt. H. Rec. Irrig. In giving alternate hot and cold irrigations

necessary to use two enema cans with tubing connected

Y-tube so that the alternations may be controlled.

should be allowed to run from one-half to two minutes

cold from fifteen to thirty seconds. From five to twelve

more complete changes may be made in a single treatment.

The greater the extremes of temperature, the greater

the effect. It is possible to use a plain enema tube, inject

but a small amount and allowing the water to pass out through

the enema tube after each injection.

This treatment is a most efficient measure in the relief of

chronic inflammations of the pelvic organs, especially of the

bladder, prostate, posterior urethra and rectum. For these purposes it should be given daily or three or four times a week.

It is also one of the most effective means of combating chronic

atonic constipation.

Coloclyster—Ccl.

In a coloclyster the fluid is introduced into the colon.

When the coloclyster is used to produce thorough cleansing

of the large bowel, four to six pints of water or saline solution

at a temperature of 100°—104° F. are used for each injection.

An ordinary enema, and if necessary a soap-suds enema,

first used to cleanse the lower bowel. Have the patient take the knee-chest or right Sims position. Use an ordinary enema tube, but if results are not obtained, it may be necessary to use the high bowel catheter (colon tube). As the water enters, rub along the colon up the left side, across the abdomen and down on the right side so as to fill well the large bowel. As much water as possible should be injected, but this should be done slowly. Remove the enema or colon tube and, as the water is expelled, reverse the movements along the colon to favor complete emptying. It may be necessary to repeat the procedure.

Effects. The coloclyster is used to produce a full and complete evacuation of the bowels, and for cleansing the large bowel in cases where an ordinary enema does not produce the desired results. It is also used to remove fecal impaction. When some medicament or antiseptic is introduced it may be used to disinfect the large intestine or destroy parasites, as the amœba coli. (See quinine also quassia enema.)

II. Medicated Enemata

Saline Enema—Sal. En.

For whatever purpose the saline enema is used, it should be preceded by a thorough cleansing enema unless the bowel has already been cleared of feces.

1. Saline Enema to be Retained and Absorbed. The absorption of saline fluid from the rectum is useful in hemorrhage, surgical shock and pelvic and abdominal abscesses after drainage has been instituted. To be absorbed most rapidly, the sodium chloride solution should be isotonic with blood serum or slightly hypotonic. A physiologic salt solution is so called because it is isotonic with blood serum.

Intermittent Proctoclysis. One-half pint of physiologic salt solution (0.95 per cent) at a temperature of 100°—105° F. is given slowly or by high bowel catheter. To make this, use one level teaspoonful (4.5 grams) of salt to the pint of water. For a hypotonic solution (more rapid absorption) use a little less salt. After this has been absorbed, another one-half pint may

be given. If this amount is not readily retained, use five ounces only.

Continuous Proctoclysis. Murphy Method.[1] The fluid is to be administered through a fountain syringe to which is attached a three-eights inch rubber hose with a hard rubber vaginal douche tip with multiple openings. This tube is to be flexed almost to right angles three inches from its end; a straight tube must not be used, as the tip produces pressure on the posterior wall of the rectum when the patient is in the Fowler position. The tube is inserted into the rectum to the full flexion angle and secured in place by adhesive strips, bringing it to the side of the thigh so that it can not come out; the rubber tubing is passed under the bedding to the head or foot of the bed, to which the fountain is attached.

Two or three inches from the fountain syringe interpose a Y-tube and to the upper limb attach a piece of rubber hose of the same size as the outlet tube. Fasten the free end of this to the top of the fountain syringe so that what returns through it will fall into the container. When flatus is voided, the gas passes more readily through the upper tube than directly into the fountain syringe. This reduces the pressure at such times and so aids in preventing expulsion of the fluid onto the linen.

The fountain syringe should be suspended from six to fifteen inches above the level of the buttocks and raised or lowered to just overbalance hydrostatically the intra-abdominal pressure, *i. e.*, it must be just high enough to require from forty to sixty minutes for one and one-half pints to flow in, the usual quantity given every two hours. *The flow must be controlled by gravity alone, and never by a forceps or constriction on the tube,* so that when the patient endeavors to void flatus or strain, the fluid can rapidly flow back into the can, otherwise it will be discharged in the bed. *It is this ease of flow to and from the bowel that insures against over-distention and expulsion onto the linen.* The fountain had better be a glass or graded can, so that the flow can be estimated. The temperature of the water in the fountain can be maintained at 100° by encasement in hot-water bags. The fountain is refilled every two hours with

1 Slightly modified from the original description by J. B. Murphy.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

water at about 100° F. Follow by a plain [illegible] the soap suds.

Effects. The soap suds enema facilitates [illegible] bowels and should be used where the plain [illegible] duce results.

Oil Enema—Oil En.

In administering the oil enema, use the colon [illegible] small enema can giving one and one-half to three or [illegible] of warmed cotton seed or other vegetable oil. It [illegible] retained from two to ten or twelve hours or over ni[illegible] it the next morning and follow by soap suds and pla[illegible]

Effects. The oil enema is used to remove ha[illegible] impacted feces. It has a soothing, relaxing effect, and [illegible] fore used to overcome spastic constipation, as of clot[illegible] poisoning. When given two or three days after an [illegible] for hemorrhoids it softens and loosens the clot so that [illegible] without causing pain or starting fresh bleeding.

Honey or Molasses Enema

Give one-half to one pint of a warmed solution consi[illegible] two parts soap suds and one of molasses by high bowel c[illegible] Follow by plain enema. For less of the cathartic acti[illegible] four ounces of honey or molasses to the pint of plain [illegible] water.

Effects. The honey or molasses enema has a purging [illegible] similar to that of the hypertonic saline enema. It al[illegible] removing the mucous casts and mucous accumulation[illegible] chronic colitis.

Asafoetida Enema

To one pint of warm water add four ounces of an emul[illegible] of asafœtida, prepared by agitating one-half dram of asafo[illegible] powder in four ounces of water; or add one ounce of tincture [illegible] asafœtida to a pint of warm water. Give as an ordinary enem[illegible] It is used to expel flatus.

Turpentine Enema

To a pint of soap suds solution add ten to twenty drops of oil [illegible]

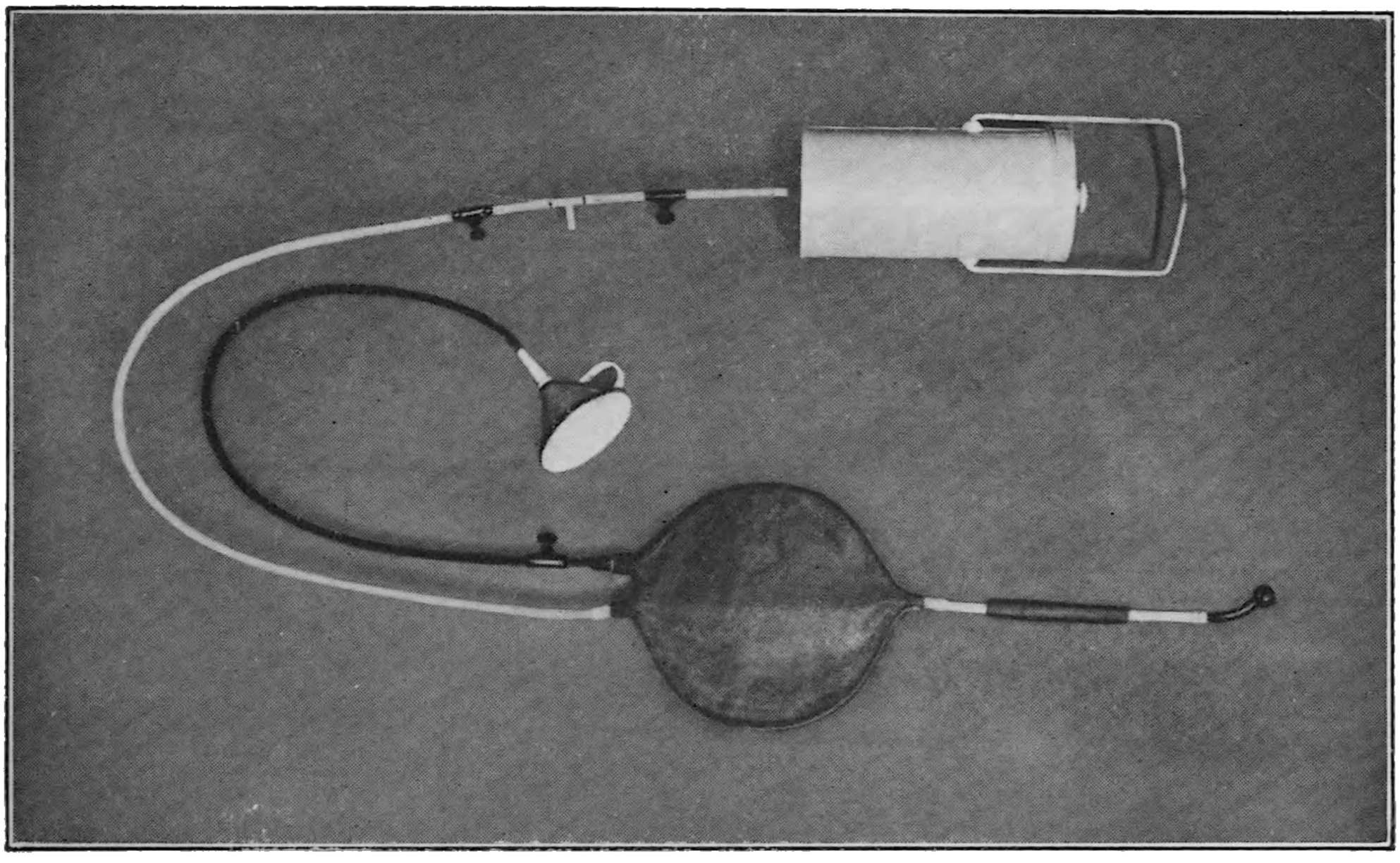


PLATE LI. A seepage apparatus with device for warming fluid.

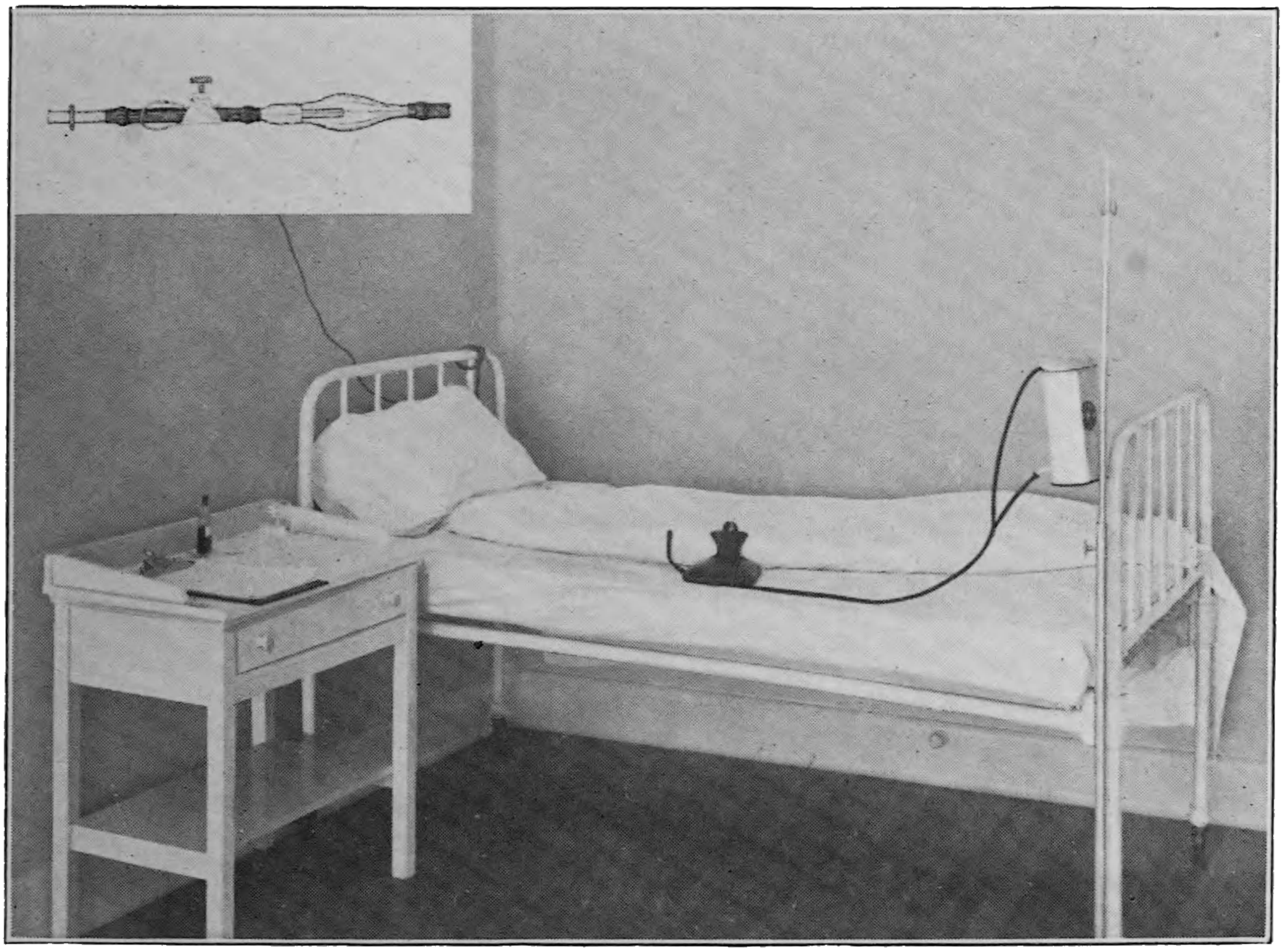
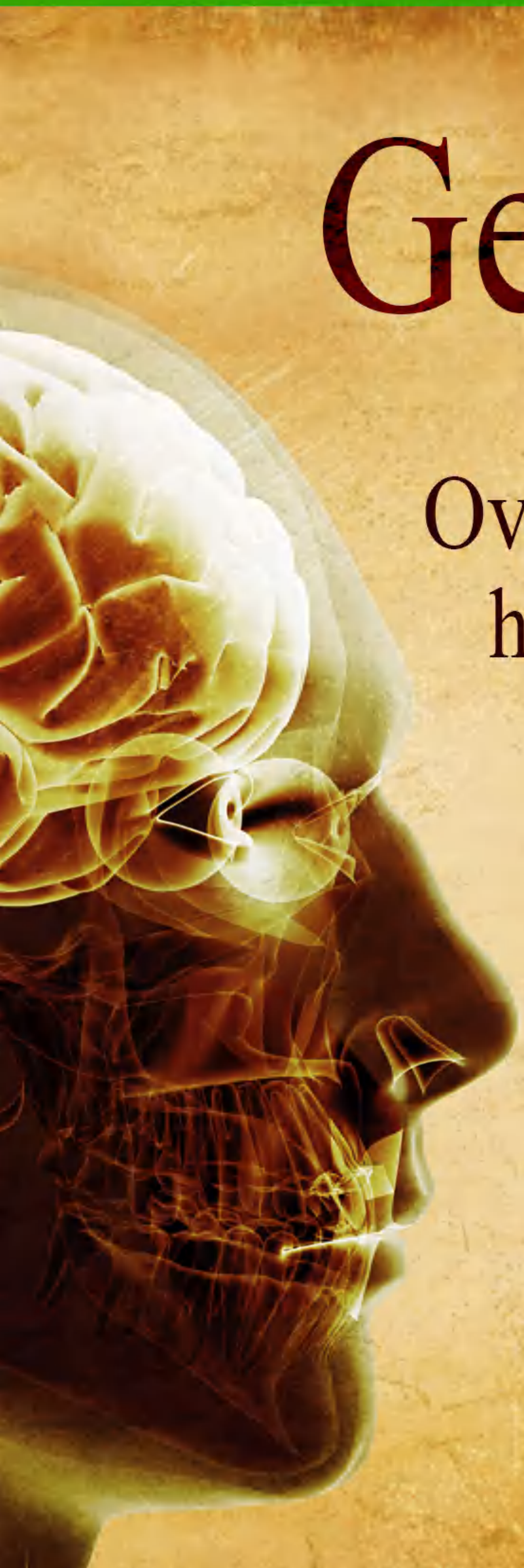


PLATE LII. Continuous proctoclysis with hot-water bottle for warming fluid; corner figure—dropping device.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

(*b*) An ounce of glycerite of tannin to one pint of [redacted] 100° F.

Quassia Enema

The quassia enema is used to destroy and remove th[redacted] pinworms (oxyuris vermicularis). Prepare an infu[redacted] quassia by pouring over one and one-half drams of finely [redacted] quassia wood, twenty ounces of warm water; let it stand [redacted] to thirty minutes and strain. Use a plain cleansing [redacted] first; then cleanse the colon thoroughly with warm wat[redacted] taining a teaspoonful of borax to the pint. Now inject in[redacted] colon (coloclyster) a half to a pint of the infusion of qu[redacted] retain as long as possible. A 1—10,000 bichloride so[redacted] may be used instead of the quassia. It should not be re[redacted] very long.

Quinine Enema

The quinine enema is used for amœbic dysentery. thorough cleansing of the bowel by low enema and [redacted] flushing, inject by high bowel catheter, from two to [redacted] more pints of a warmed solution of quinine; 1—1000 or [redacted] Large and frequently repeated coloclysters of cold water m[redacted] be used. Quinine kills the amœbæ. Cold water paraly[redacted] them for a time. Position of patient—hips elevated.

In very obstinate and long standing eases of amœbic dys[redacted] tery, colonic flushings with cold water or the quinine solut[redacted] are sometines carried out by means of appendicostomy.

VAGINAL DOUCHES OR IRRIGATION

A vaginal douche consists in the flushing or irrigating of the vaginal cavity by a fluid.

General Directions:—

(*a*) *Articles Necessary in the Treatment Room.* Douche bench, fountain syringe or douche can with a capacity of one or two gallons, five or six feet of rubber tubing, douche tube of glass or hard rubber, lubricant, disinfectant, sheets and napkins. Additional need in private room: Standard or hooks for douche can, a douche pan, slop jar, and rubber sheeting or papers.

(*b*) *Procedure.* Preparation of the douche. Fill the can with from two to four quarts of water at the prescribed temperature and place it from three to four feet above the patient. Always use a thermometer in preparing vaginal douches.

Preparation of patient. If the clothing is not removed, protect thoroughly. Always cover the patient with a sheet. Lubricate the tube with vaseline or soap. Release the cut-off and allow the water to run a few seconds. Instruct the patient to insert the tube unless helpless.

Position of patient. Dorsal position with hips raised and thighs and legs flexed.

I. Plain Vaginal Irrigation

Vaginal Irrigation for Ordinary Use

1. Hot Vaginal Irrigation—V. I. This is used for cleansing purposes. Two to four quarts of water are employed at a temperature of 105°—115° F. Finish with a pint of water at 70° F.

In the treatment of pelvic inflammations, the hot vaginal douche is usually given as a preliminary to the use of the sitz bath, hot half-bath or the hip and leg pack.

2. Very Hot Vaginal Irrigation—H. V. I. The very hot vaginal irrigation is designed for the relief of pain or to check hemorrhage. Two to four quarts of water are used at a temperature of 110°—125° F.

3. Alternate Hot and Cold Vaginal Irrigation—H. & C. V. I. Alternate hot and cold vaginal irrigation is given for tonic and stimulating effects. It is also used in chronic pelvic inflammations. Use two cans with a Y-tube connection. Put four quarts of water in one can at a temperature of 110°—120° F., and two quarts of water in the other at a temperature of 70° F.

Give the hot fifteen to thirty seconds and the cold five to ten seconds. Continue the alternations for five to ten minutes, beginning with hot and finishing with cold.

Vaginal Irrigation During Pregnancy

During pregnancy certain precautions must be observed. The pressure of the water must not be too great, *i. e.*, the

douche can must not be placed too high. Very cold extremely hot water should not be used. It is positive essary that the openings in the bulb of the douche tube eral and not directly on the end. During pregnancy irrigation is given chiefly for cleansing, for the tre leucorrhœa and for the relief of irritation. Use two quarts of water at a temperature of 98°—105° F. H douche can twelve to eighteen inches above the hips.

II. Disinfectant and Medicated Douches

Soap Suds Vaginal Irrigation—S. S. V. I.

Use two quarts of soap suds solution prepared from l soap or green soap solution at a temperature of 105°—1 Wrap the tube in cheesecloth and swab the vagina can but thoroughly, while the water is flowing. Follow by vaginal irrigation, then give a permanganate or bich douche.

The soap suds vaginal irrigation is used to prepare p for surgical operations or for special cleansing and disin purposes.

Permanganate of Potassium Vaginal Irrigation—P. V. I.

To one quart of water add two drams (two teaspoonfuls a saturated solution of potassium permanganate (1—20 Temperature, 110°—120° F. Precede by a plain vaginal irri tion. Oxalic acid (sat. sol.) will remove the stain.

The permanganate douche is used as a deoderant and disi fectant in the treatment of vaginal inflammations, leucorrho etc., also as a disinfectant preparatory to operation.

Bichloride of Mercury Vaginal Irrigation—Bichlor. V. I.

Use one dram (a teaspoonful) of a saturated solution of bichloride of mercury to one or two quarts of water (1—4000 or 8000). Temperature, 110°—115° F. Always precede by plain vaginal irrigation, so as to remove all mucus and other secretions. If this is not done the disinfectant properties of the bichloride are lessened by its combination with albuminous substances.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

PRESCRIPTION WRITING AND TREATMENT COMBINATIONS

NEITHER the art of prescription writing nor a knowledge of therapeutic effects can be obtained preliminary training and experience in the technique of therapy. Treatment combinations which are agreeable pleasing to the patient are perfectly compatible with s arrangement; in fact, combinations which are disagree rarely efficient and need alterations or additions in o become so. On an average, treatments given to amb patients in the treatment rooms should require about for or fifty minutes. Except with certain applications, a l time is usually detrimental rather than beneficial. Wi patients, in cases of nephritis, pleurisy, pneumonia and inflammatory diseases, organic nervous diseases, etc. case should be a law unto itself as to the duration of trea and the frequency with which applications are to be rep A mistake very commonly made in prescribing hydroth is the giving of a different treatment each day. If a med were to be taken, no one would think of altering it for day. For the same reason hydrotherapeutic treatment sh vary only as the patient's condition varies, as improve occurs, or some special result is to be obtained.

In the proper combining of procedures lies the philosophy securing a predetermined physiologic effect, and hence a d sired therapeutic result in a given case. It requires a far mo intimate knowledge of normal and abnormal physiology in orde to prescribe hydrotherapy than it does to prescribe medicin substances for internal medication. The securing of results i difficult cases requires also a much closer personal supervision.

In making treatment combinations it should be a genera rule *to combine for simultaneous application as many of the ind vidual procedures to be given as possible and secure the desire result.* For example,—in giving a hot foot bath, hot and cold to the spine, and a cold mitten friction, the patient may take the hot foot bath and the hot and cold to the spine simultane-

ously, if they are able to sit up. The cold friction should be begun with the arms when the last fomentation has been applied to the spine. After treating the arms, the fomentation is removed from the spine and the cold friction given to the back. The feet are removed from the hot water only when the attendant reaches the legs and feet with the cold friction. This combination is more pleasing to the patient, it secures better results, and requires less time than where each procedure is given separately, one following the other. Such a combination is much easier to give in case of a prescription for a hot foot bath, fomentations to the abdomen and a cold mitten friction. The patient may recline for all of the treatment. The hot foot bath is started, then the fomentations to the abdomen, and when the third one has been placed, begin the cold friction with the arms, removing the fomentation to the abdomen when ready to treat the anterior part of the trunk. The feet are next removed from the hot water and the friction given to the legs and the feet. Lastly the patient turns and the back is treated. Given in this way, the reaction from the cold friction is more prompt in appearing and more complete, because the hot applications give a sensation of heat. The use of the hot foot bath, the ice bag to the heart, the cold compress to the head and neck simultaneously with other applications *act precisely like adjuvant and corrigens agents in medicinal therapy.*

Also as a general rule, *treatments to be given on a treatment table should precede treatments to be given in the wet rooms.* For example,—fomentations over the liver, a salt glow, and a hot and cold percussion douche to the spine and legs. Coming in any other order than that given would entail repeated drying of the skin surface, and so lessen the pleasing effect of the treatment.

This same prescription serves to illustrate the principle that *the milder procedures should be given first, those which produce the greatest reaction last.* The fomentation is a mild application, the salt glow is more vigorous, and the hot and cold douche to the spine and legs the most stimulating of the three. The first two prepare the patient for the last application. Given in any other order, the treatment would resemble an anticlimax.

Somewhat the same principle is involved in the ... *a single treatment there should not be given two ... cations of cold, both of which are designed to produce a ...* For example,—a cold mitten friction and a wet sheet ... not be given in the same treatment, nor a cold towel ... hot and cold douche to the spine and legs. Such ... draw too heavily upon the patient's reactive power.

Such sweating treatments as the electric light bath ... or Turkish baths should be immediately followed by ... spray or pail pour so as to wash off the skin surface ... body quickly and produce such a reaction that the ... not take cold.

In the application of therapeutic agents the physician ... incline more and more to *specific* therapy. But each ca... be studied with a view to individualizing the treatment ... treat the patient, not merely his disease.

The following prescriptions will serve to illustrate ... given above and in a general way be suggestive of the ... treatment in the conditions named.

Onset of Grippe

H. Lg. B., Fo. Sp., C. C. Hd. & Nk., drink hot lemon ... free perspiration), Grad. Sh. 115°—90°, 5 Min.

Chronic Cold in Head

H. Ft. B. or H. Lg. Pk., Alt. H. & C. Hd, 30 Min.; ... Hd. & Nk., H. & C. Perc. D. Ft. (6 changes).

Dilated Colon and Atonic Constipation

Fo. Abd., C. rub Z. 80°, 5 Min.; Alt. H. & C. Fan. D. ... Alt. H. & C. Perc. D. to lower D. and L. Sp., S. Sinu... electrode to lower D. and L. Sp., labile hand Spg. to ... over colon.

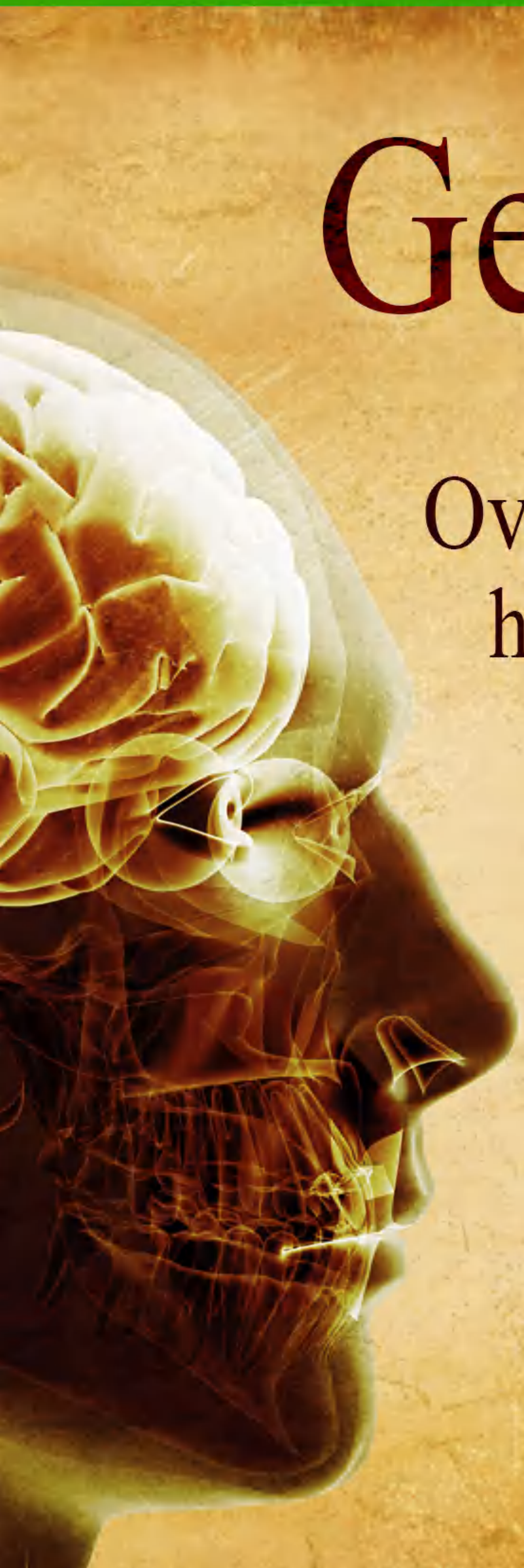
Acute Salpingitis (Left)

H. Hp. & Lg. Pk., ice bag above left groin, 20—30 M... Cmf. Leave ice bag over tube or apply heating compress.

Acute Pleurisy (Right)

H. Ft. B., Fo. Rt. Ch. (until pain is relieved, 4 or 5 ...

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

Old Gleet

Alt. H. & C. Rec. Irrig., Rev. Z., Alt. H. & C

Splanchnic Neurasthenia

H. Ft. B., C. coil Abd., C. C. Hd., 30 Min.; Cmf.,

Persistent Vomiting

Hot & Heat. Tr. Pk. (apply 10 Min. before meal, to 2 Hrs., Cmf.

Hyperchlorhydria

Two glasses hot water 15 Min. before meal; ice after meal 20 Min.

Chronic Mitral Insufficiency
(with cardiac liver and edema of legs)

Ice Bg. Ht., Rev. C. liver, Alt. H. & C. Lg. B. (6 o Cmf., Cf. Lgs.

Acute Endocarditis with Dilated Heart

Ice Bg. over Ht. 30 Min. every Hr., H. Lg. Pk. knees only), ice Bg. Ht., Cmf. (give twice daily).

Insomnia

Fo. Sp., O_2 B. (5 P. M.).

Varicose Ulcer

Alt. H. & C. Lg. B., 30 Min. daily (increase usual du of cold to equal with, then greater than, the hot), Alt. H. Spr. D. Lgs.

Lumbago

Fo. lower Bk., H. & C. Perc. D. to same, short static to painful muscles.

Trophic Ulcer or Diabetic Gangrene of Foot

Alt. H. & C. Ft. B., 30 Min. twice daily.

Hemorrhoids

Prolonged C. Shal. Z., 90°—70°, 10 to 15 Min.; Alt. H. C. perineal D.

HYDROTHERAPEUTIC APPARATUS AND TREATMENT ROOMS

THE plan and equipment for hydrotherapeutic treatment rooms must of necessity vary with the institution in which they are to be used and the class of cases to be treated. We shall have most to say of treatment rooms for general use in institutions that accept all classes of medical and surgical cases and the ward equipment in general hospitals.

In hospitals for the insane the equipment need not be extensive in variety, but many pieces of the same kind are necessary. Especially should the receiving ward appliances for the treatment of mania be numerous enough to treat many cases simultaneously. The tubs for the continuous flowing bath together with their mixers and controllers and the pack tables with their outfit make up the chief equipment required. These should be separate from other appliances as perfect quiet is essential. For general use, another room or rooms should be fitted with a spray and douche controller and its spray, shower, douches, bidet or other attachments. Sitz tubs and flowing bath tubs are best not connected with the spray and douche controller, but should be separately controlled. In the same room or an adjoining room should be the electric light bath cabinet and the hot air and steam cabinets for the Turkish and Russian baths. Here and there, convenient to the general wards of the institution, should be arranged pack tables and tubs for the flowing bath, also a fomentation tank and an enema and vaginal douche bench.

General Treatment Rooms

In sanataria and office treatment rooms the plan and equipment should be ample for administering all forms of hydrotherapy. Convenience of use and economy of operation are most essential. In any but very small institutions separate rooms should be provided for men and women so that they may be used at any hour of the day or night. Considerably more than fifty per cent of all cases are best treated in the forenoon

hence the disadvantage of common rooms in which
hour must be arranged.

As far as possible treatment rooms should be on the
floor because of the great expense not to say almost
bility of rendering floors wholly non-leaking. Howev
may be accomplished by the use of sheet lead as a
cement or the use of the more expensive floorings of wo
plastone, etc. Glazed tile walls and unglazed tile floo
very serviceable but are not proof against cracking. M
excellent for the walls of spray and douche stalls but so
crete walls are equally durable.

Every treatment room should be divided into three s
sets of apartments by partitions from floor to ceiling so
different temperature may be maintained in each. Thi
essential which should not be overlooked or disregard
otherwise great annoyance, inconvenience and even
may result to patients from overheating and taking cold.
first room should contain the matron's, treatment directo
head nurse's office, the linen supplies, waiting room, a
patient's dressing rooms. The temperature of this room s
be about 68° F. and well ventilated. The next room sh
contain the individual treatment rooms, each provided wi
treatment table, a stool and hooks or bars for towels, she
etc. The temperature of this room should be about 80° F.
so that it is comfortable for patients while taking packs, fom
tations, cold frictions, massage, etc.

The third room which we may appropriately speak of as t
wet room is to be maintained at a higher temperature and co
tains at one end sitz tubs, leg tubs, the full length bath tub
salt glow room, etc. If the temperature of the wet rooms is to
high these appliances should be separated from it. At th
other end of the wet room should be installed the spray and
douche controller and its attachments and all the appliances for
hot baths such as the electric light, Turkish and Russian cabi-
nets or rooms. If thought best these latter may be placed in a
room immediately adjoining the spray and douche apparatus
but in any case the patient should have to go only a few steps
from any hot bath to the spray, so that there will be no oppor-

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

Treatment Appliances

The Fomentation Tank. This should be an enameled iron tank of oblong deep form preferably with an end outlet. If it is to set against the wall it may be filled by an ordinary wall faucet. Where many nurses are working at the same time it is best to have the fomentation tank set away from the wall so that two wringers may be attached (*Plate XXIII*). In this case the inlet should be from below just above the trap for the waste (*Fig. 61*). The waste should be controlled by a valve, never by the ordinary plug in the bottom of the tank. The

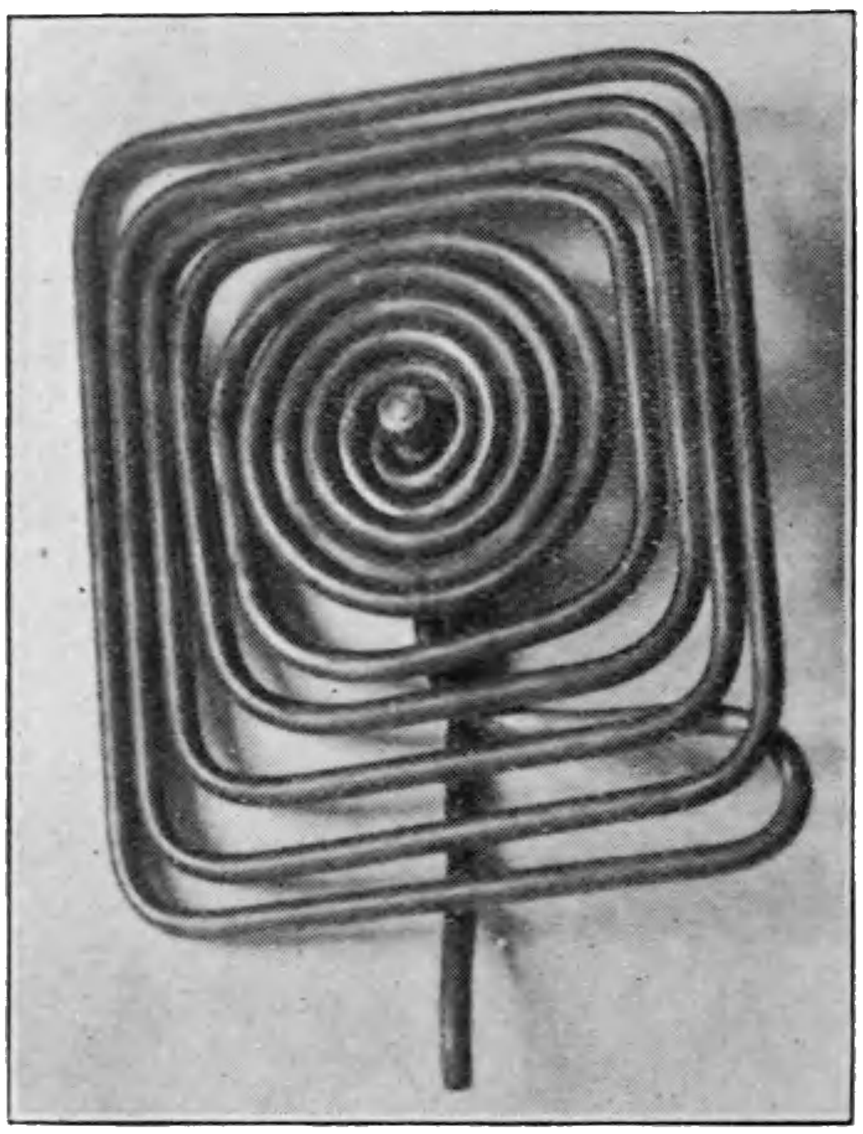


Fig. 62 Steam coil for heating fomentation water—obverse.

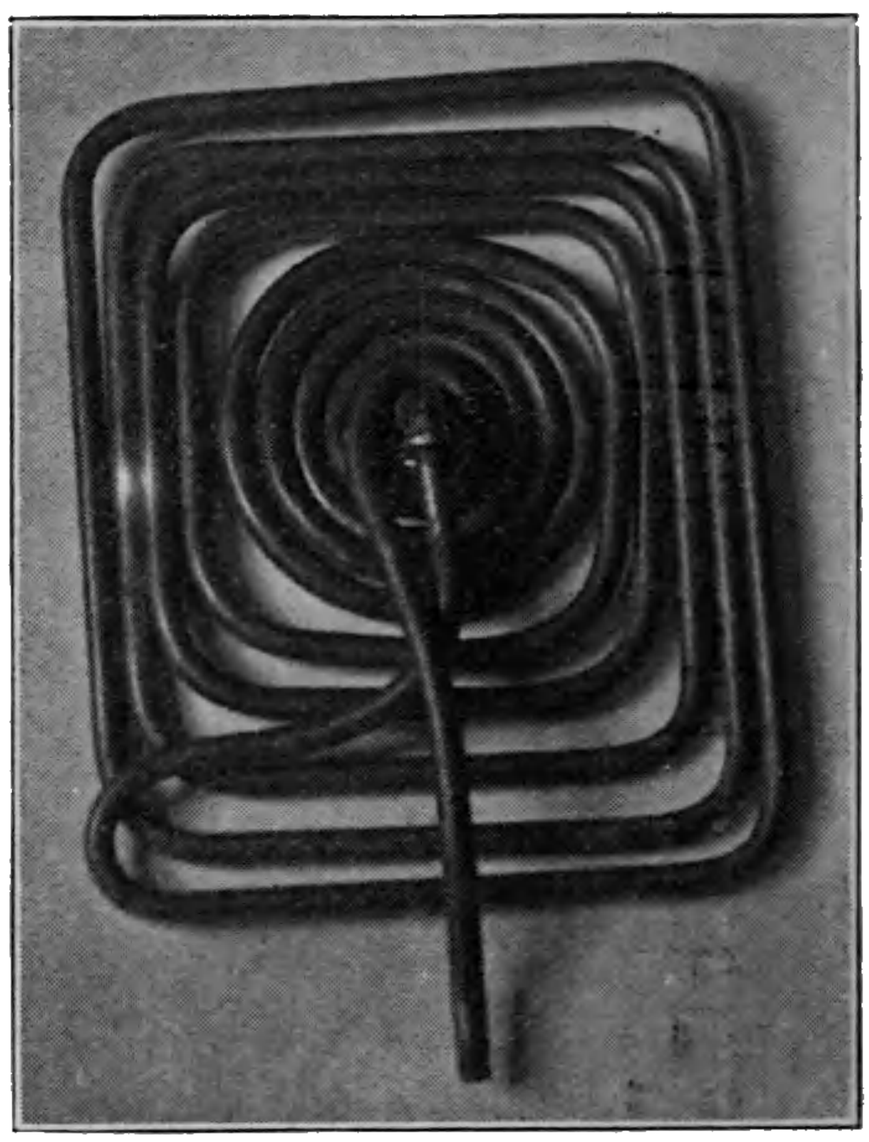


Fig. 63. Steam coil for heating fomentation water—reverse.

water should be heated by a long copper coil (twelve or fifteen feet of eighth-inch pipe) through which live steam passes. The supply pipe to this coil also enters from below and is controlled by a valve. The entering steam should go to the center of the coil and the steam exit be by a perforated disk also at the center of the coil (*Figs. 62 and 63*). This arrangement prevents "bumping" and the operation of the coil is absolutely noiseless even in cold water. The wringers should be extra long and may be made by replacing the rubber-covered rollers of an ordinary steel spring wringer by rollers made of two-

inch galvanized iron pipe. When bolted on at the end of the tank and ready for use, the rollers should be covered with heavy unbleached muslin by rolling the cloth on so as to make the covering about three layers thick.

Steam Boxes. When heated directly by live steam, fomentations and packs are hotter and the heat is retained longer than when wrung from boiling water. For this purpose steam boxes may be provided or several cloths steamed in a papier

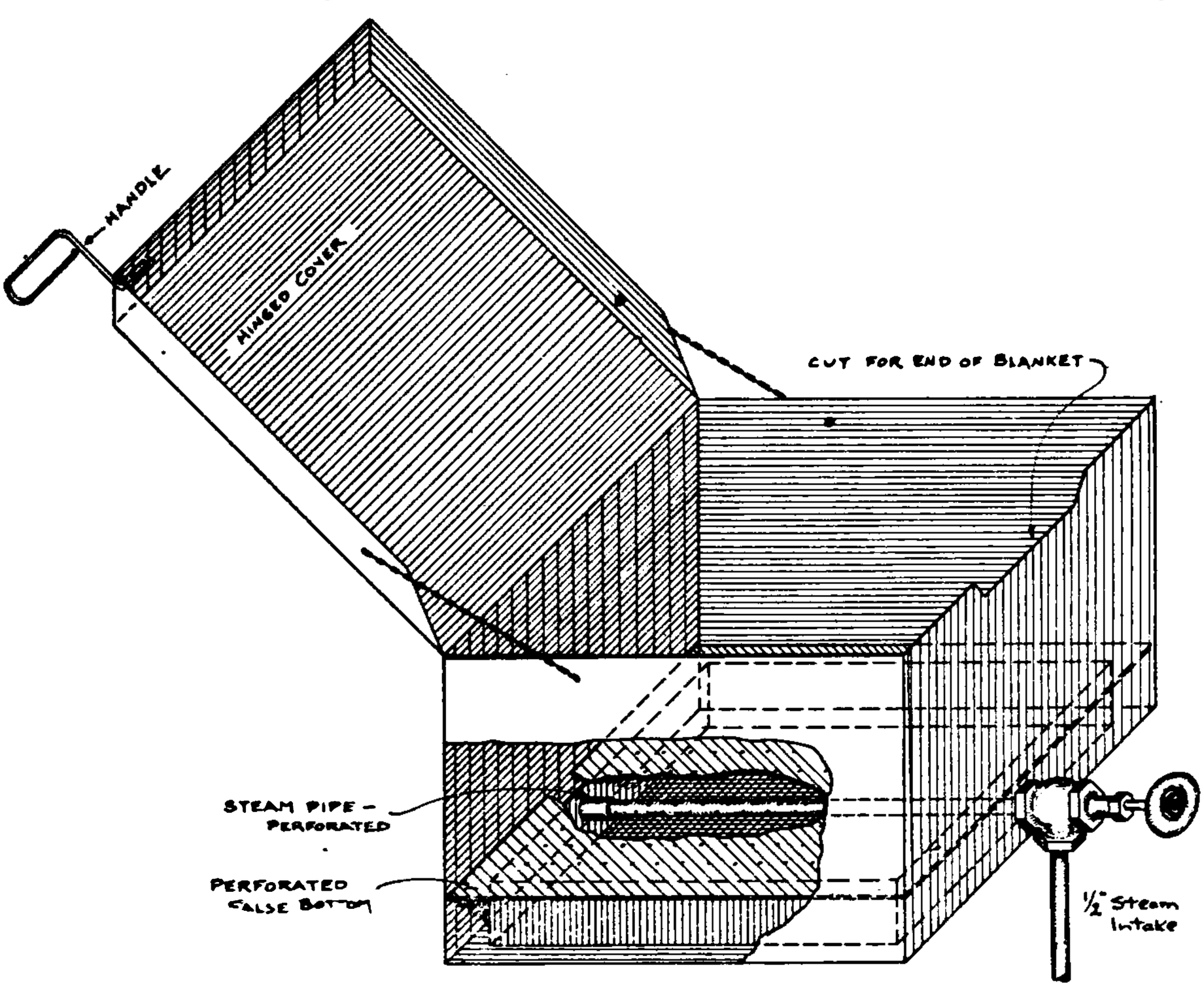


Fig. 64. Plan of steam box.

mache pail. In the former case the boxes may be arranged as shown in *Plates XXIV and XXV*. The steam inlet should be by a perforated pipe below a perforated false bottom (*Fig. 64*). The box should have an outlet for the condensed steam. One end of the box should have a long shallow notch in it through which the end of the folded fomentation cloth or pack blanket may project. The cover should have turned down edges one and one-half or two inches wide which should fit over the walls of the steam box. The steam should be turned off when the box is opened.

Leg Tubs. These should be made of heavy galvanized iron. They should be sixteen inches in diameter and twenty-four inches high. The bottom should be set up about two inches from the base. It should have an extra ring of galvanized iron soldered underneath to help support the weight of the water. The outlet may be by a large size molasses faucet (*Fig. 65.*) or a flume gate of galvanized iron (*Fig. 66. and Plate IX.*). Two such tubs are necessary.

Foot Tubs. Foot tubs should be made of medium weight galvanized iron. An elliptical shape is best with rigid handles at the ends. The base should be about eleven inches in cross diameter and fifteen inches long. The sides should flare to a cross diameter of about fifteen inches and a long diameter of

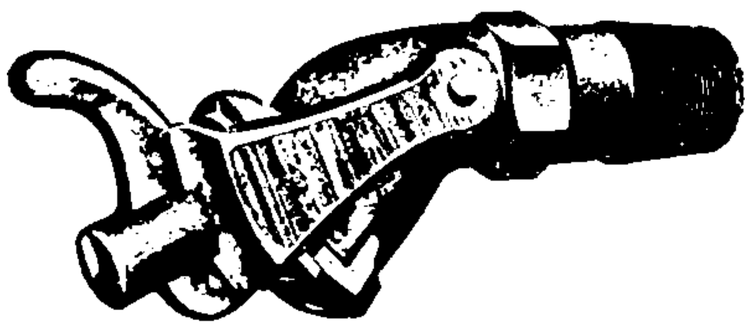


Fig. 65. Molasses faucet outlet for leg tub.

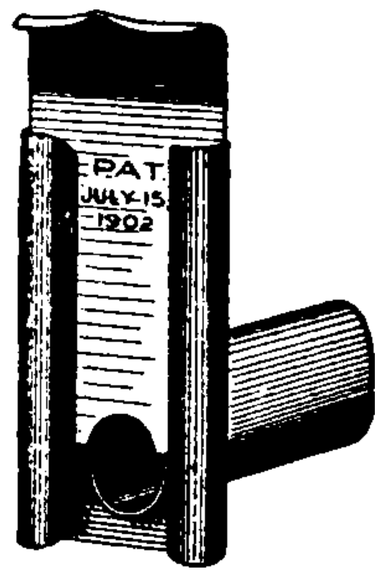
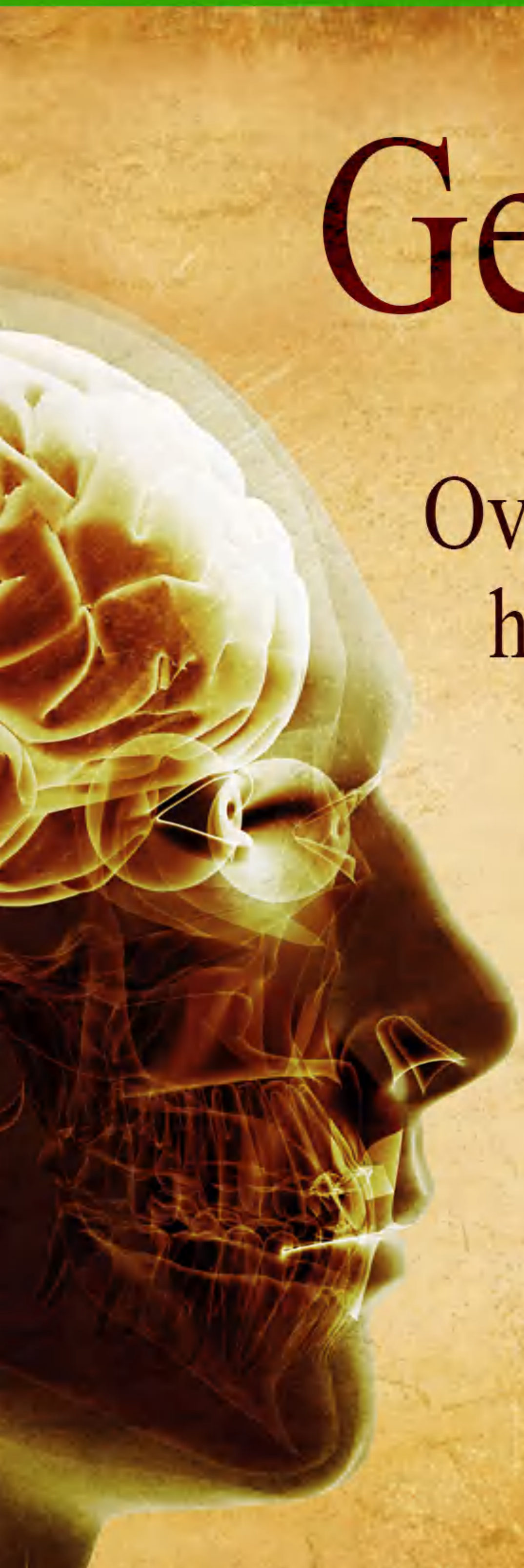


Fig. 66. Campbell flume gate outlet for leg tub.

nineteen or twenty inches. The tub should be nine inches deep. Two extra sets of hot and cold water faucets should be provided at some convenient place for the filling of foot tubs, pails, basins, etc., so that it will not be necessary to go to bath tubs or the douche controller for this purpose.

Bath Tubs. Bath tubs should be six feet long for men and five and a half or six feet for women. They should be set up from the floor four to six inches. If this extra base is of well painted wood it will serve also for the insulation necessary in giving electro-thermal baths. For the latter purpose the mixing faucet supply should be attached to the wall at the foot of the tub and have no connection with the tub itself (*Plate XXXIX*). The outlet should also be disconnected from the plumbing, the waste water running into a cement gutter. The overflow should be carried up under the roll of the tub and

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

be of rigid material as it is too suggestive of confinement in nervous patients and is undesirable in any case.

Russian and Turkish Bath Rooms. The construction of these has been quite fully considered under technique. We prefer a cabinet in the form of a room so that the patient may recline on a marble slab with the head outside a sliding window. There is less danger of fainting with the patient in this position and the same may be said of the horizontal electric light cabinet. Besides this the marble slab may also be used for shampoo purposes and a shower for cooling off the patient be installed in the same room (*Plates XL and XLI*). Where steam coils are arranged under the marble slab a thick layer of some non-conductor of heat should be placed over these coils so that the marble will not become overheated.

Dryer. A dryer for fomentation cloths, sheets and towels is a necessity in every treatment room. This may be made after the plan of a laundry dryer being heated by steam coils. It is well to have several trays or carts that pull out separately. These may conveniently run on sliding door hangers or a similar device. Each one should be seven or eight inches wide by five or six feet high and consist of five or six half-inch gas pipe bars six feet long. The number of such pulls required will depend upon the number of patients to be treated. A dryer of six takes up but little space and is ample for twenty-five to forty patients a day. It is well for sake of convenience to install this near the fomentation tank and in the part of the wet rooms where the greatest amount of heat is needed. This economizes both time in labor and expense in heating as some heat will inevitably escape from the dryer, even though tightly built and separate ventilation provided for.

Enema and Douche Outfit. These rooms should be so arranged that they are ventilated entirely separate from the general treatment rooms, best directly to the outside. A bench of drain board material six feet long and about twenty-four inches wide should be fitted over the toilet fixture in place of the ring and lid. At the right hand end of this should be placed the standards for hanging the enema and douche cans. *Plate LIII* shows a standard for holding two irrigating cans

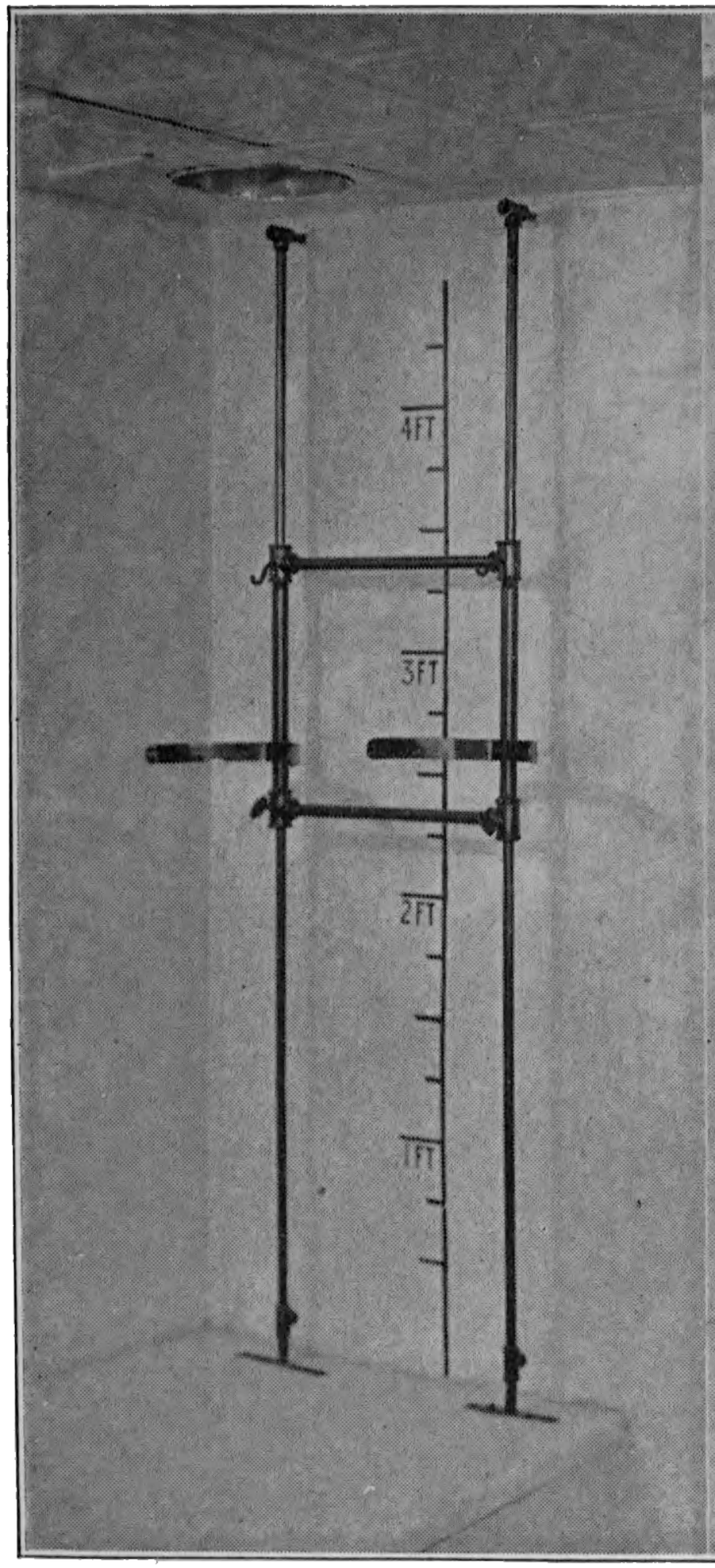


PLATE LIII. Adjustable standard for enema and douche cans.

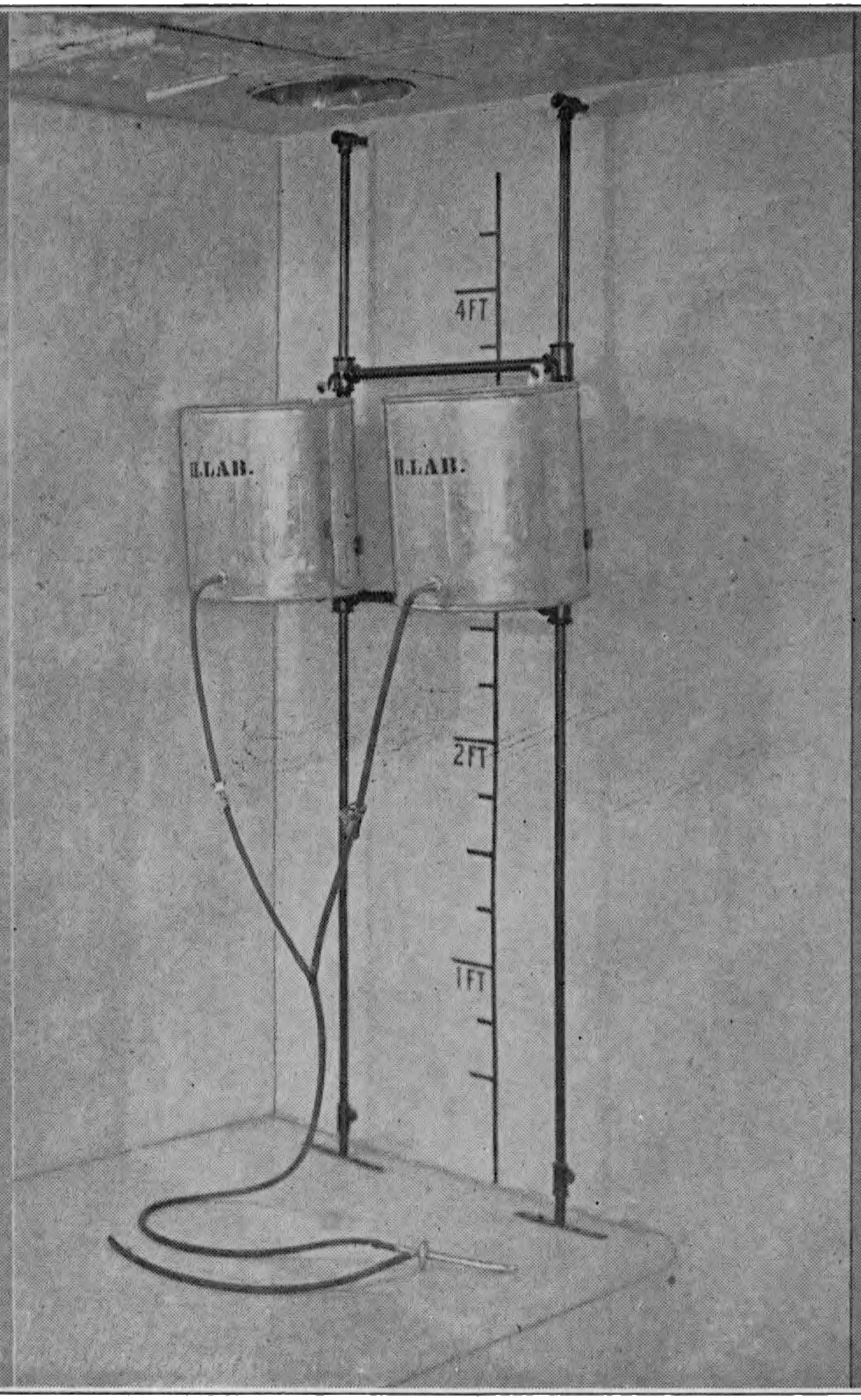


PLATE LIV. Enema cans arranged for alternate hot and cold rectal irrigation.

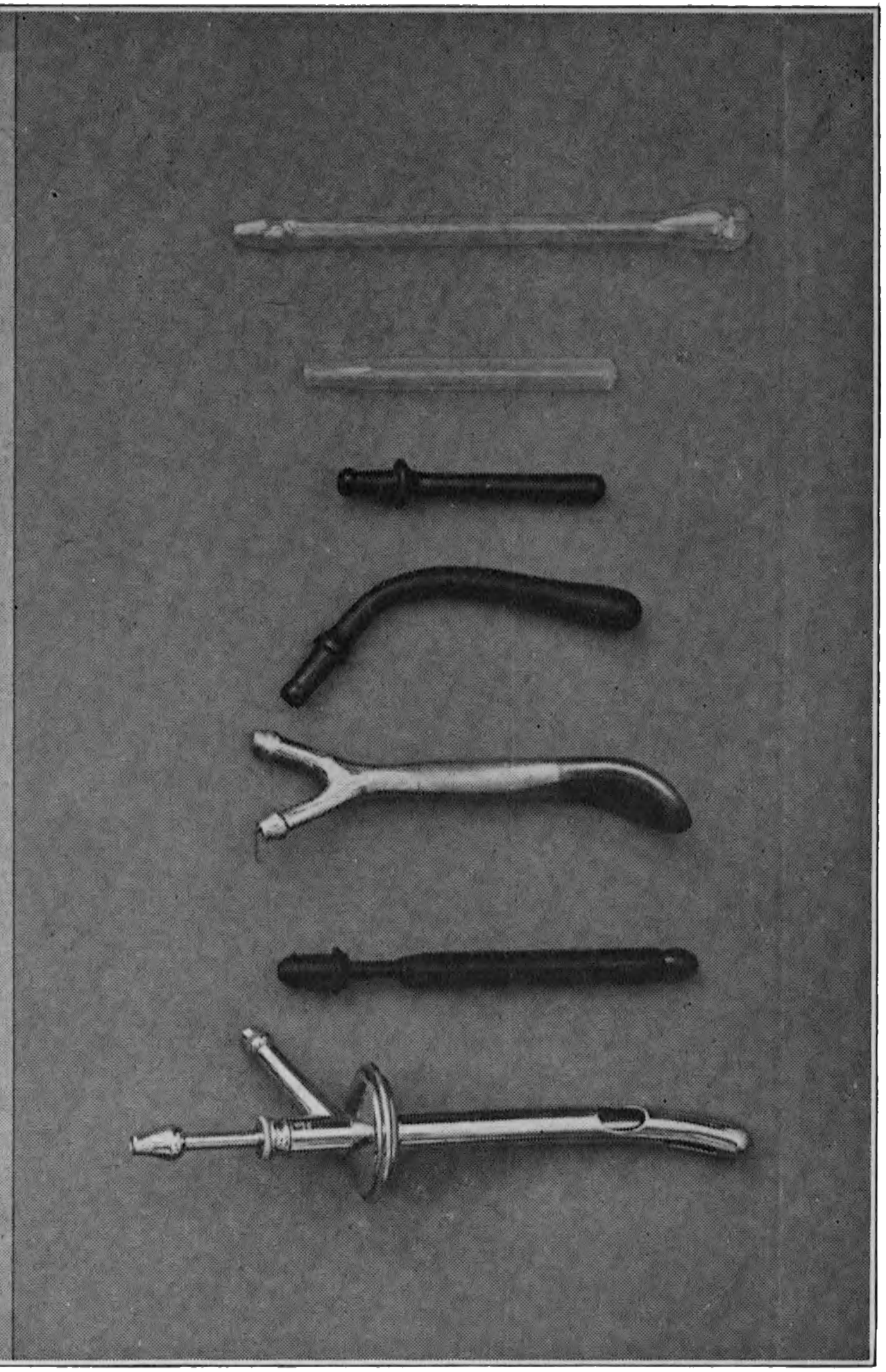


PLATE LV. Rectal and vaginal tubes.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

There are certain essentials without which satisfactory results are impossible. Of first importance is the water supply. The controller must be supplied with hot and cold water by pipes directly from reservoirs or tanks. These pipes should supply no other fixtures. They should be entirely independent of all other attachments. If this is not done the temperature of a douche stream or of the spray will vary whenever water is drawn from attached faucets. For example, if the hot and cold water supply to a nearby bath tub comes from the pipes

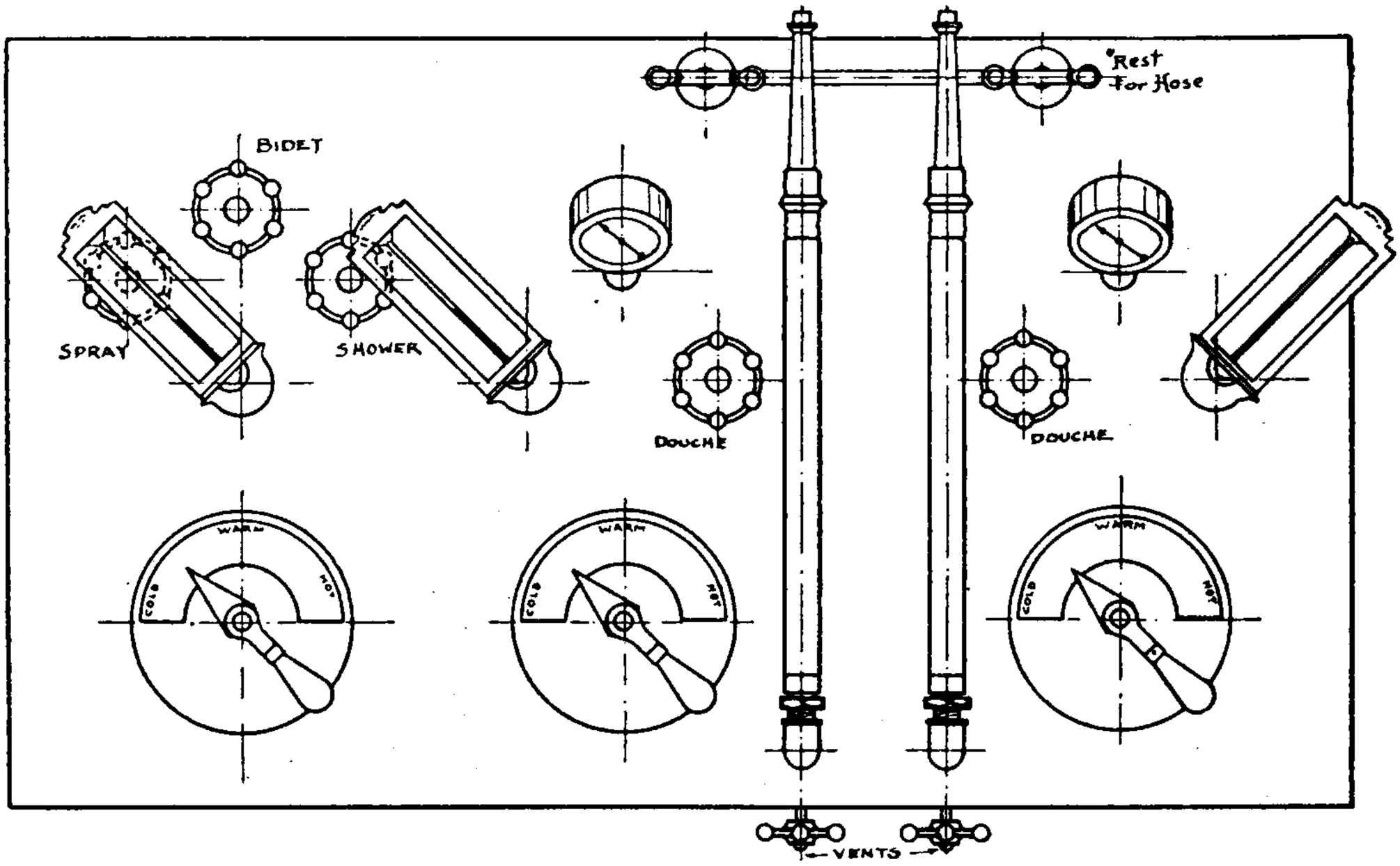


Fig. 67. Plan of top of table control shown in Plate L.

supplying the controller and, while a douche is being given at 115° F., the attendant at this bath tub opens the cold water faucet the pressure on the cold water supply to the douche being lowered, the proportion of cold water in the mixer will be instantly lessened and just as instantly the temperature of the douche will shoot up ten, twenty, or more degrees and the patient will be burned. Even with wholly independent supply pipes the pressure of the incoming water should be controlled by pressure regulators so that the pressure of the hot water and of the cold water may be adjusted to the same number of pounds. The temperature of the hot water should be regulated at the tank by a thermostat which should be arranged for about

185° F. The cold water should be supplied at a temperature of 40°—55° F., and except in summer does not usually require cooling.

There are two types of controller—the table control and the wall control.. The table control is usually more complete and more satisfactory. It is a more elegant piece of furniture but is likewise more expensive. The wall controllers on the market are most of them incomplete and less satisfactory than the table control. However, the handling of the douche hose is more convenient and with attention to the essentials of construction the wall control may be made nearly as complete and satisfactory as the table control.

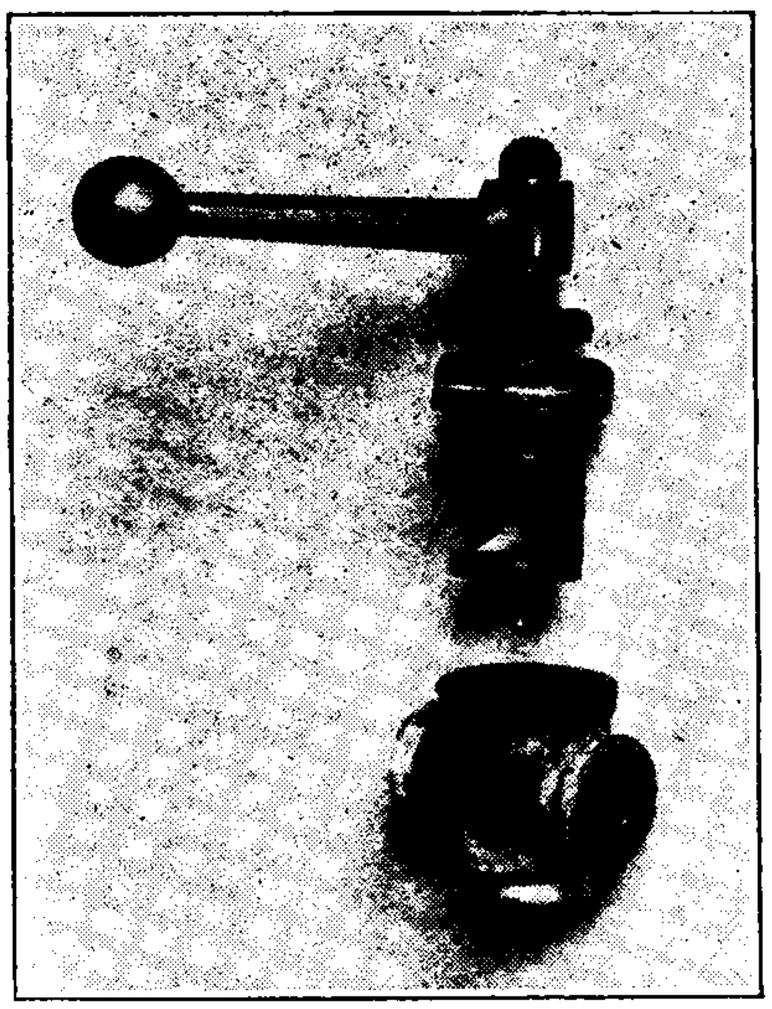


Fig. 68. Martinson mixer, showing its construction.

Plate L illustrates a hydrotherapy control table devised by the author. *Fig. 67* shows the arrangement of the top of this table. As will be seen it is a three unit controller, *i. e.*, it will deliver three independent streams of water at different temperatures. This requires three mixers, two of which supply douche hose—one for the hot douche and one for the cold douche. The third mixer supplies the spray, the shower, and the bidet, no two of which attachments is it desirable to use at the same time.

The internal construction is as follows: The pressure regulators are attatched to the supply pipes just before they divide for the three mixers. These pipes, one for the hot and one for the cold water, are one and one-half or two inches in diameter. From each are taken off three one-inch pipes, each of which latter are fitted with valves and check valves, the latter being placed as close to the mixers as possible. These check valves are an absolute necessity as otherwise the cold water pipes may fill with hot water through the mixer, or vice versa, even with a very slight difference in pressure. *Figs. 68 and 69* show

two styles of mixer valves. The first is less expensive and quite satisfactory. The second costs a little more but responds a little more evenly and hence is more satisfactory. Where used without other valves, it must open with the cold water first, and is therefore said to be non-scalding.

From the mixer the water passes over the bulb of the thermometer, which should be placed as close as possible to the mixer so that any changes in the temperature will be registered without delay. Beyond the thermometer is the valve which opens the douche and regulates the volume and pressure of the stream. Just beyond this valve the pressure gauge is attached.

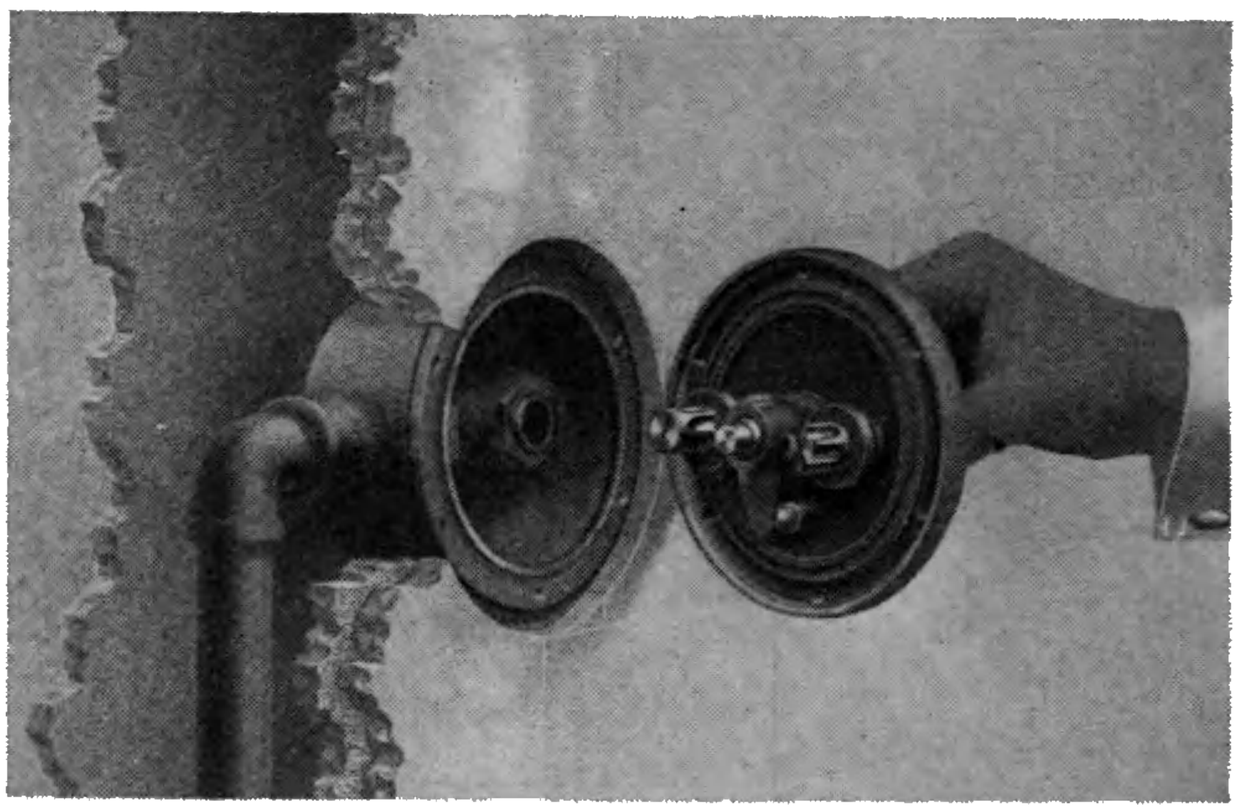
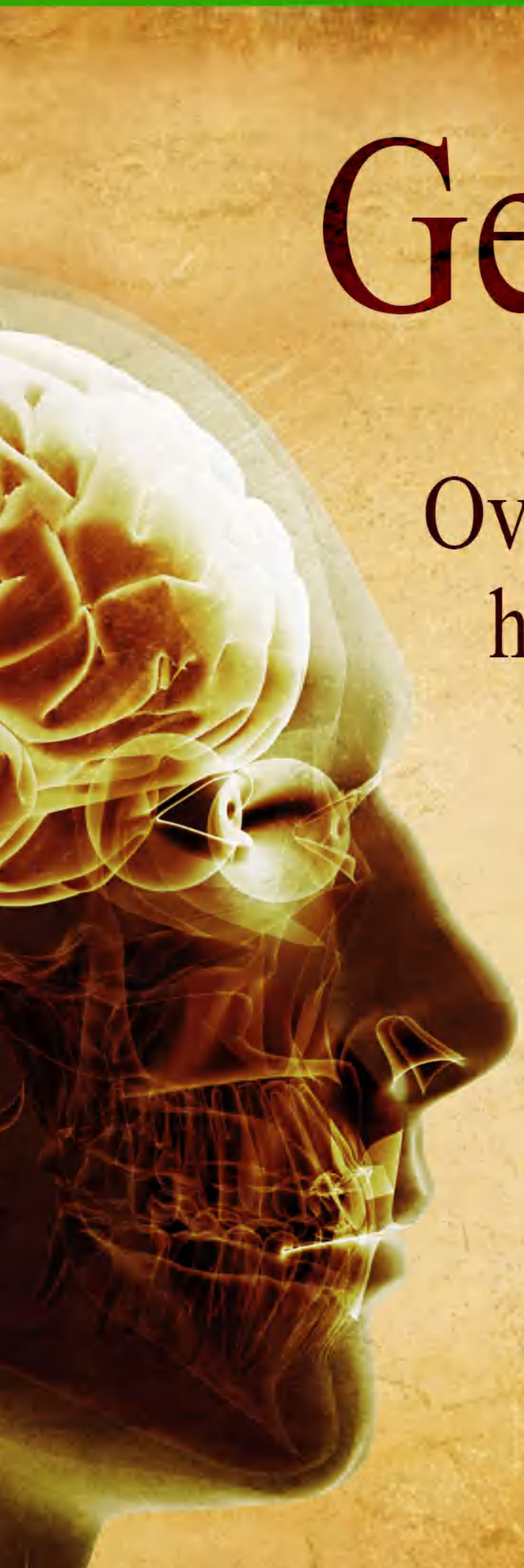


Fig. 69. Niedecken mixer, showing working parts.

It is placed here so as to register the "using" pressure, *i. e.*, the pressure administered to the patient. Still beyond this, but below the marble top of the table, the inch pipe divides into two three-fourth inch pipes, one for the douche hose and one to serve as a vent which latter is controlled by a valve. The vent valve should be opened whenever the douche is being used in order to keep going through the mixer the large volume of water, which is always required to maintain a constant unfluctuating temperature. Were there no vent, the temperature would rise unduly when a low pressure is being administered. In operating a controller with only one douche unit, it is impossible to secure absolutely instantaneous changes from hot to cold. For the method of operating the douche units the reader is referred to the section on spays and douches.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

eight inches in diameter. It is best to have it attached by a ball joint union so it may face directly downward or be inclined forward at an angle of forty-five degrees, so that the patient's head need not be wet. In *Plate L* the shower head is shown facing straight down. The spray is constructed of four upright pipes, to each of which are attached four rosettes. The upper row of rosettes are attached by ball joint unions so that they may be adjusted upward or downward for individuals of different heights.

The arrangement of the bidet is shown in *Fig. 71.* A ball union makes it possible to turn the arm carrying the rosette out of the way and back against the wall when it is not in use.

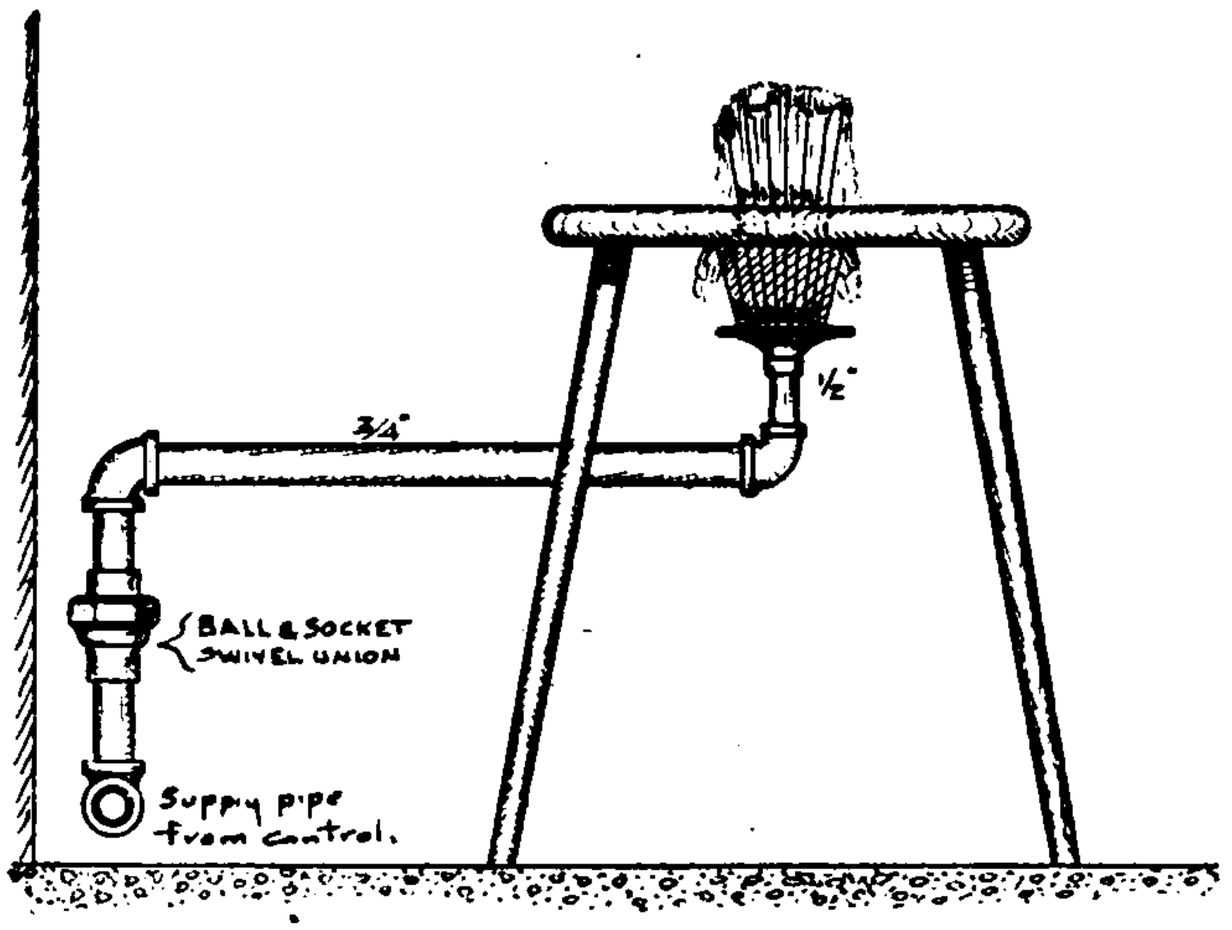


Fig. 71. Plan of seat spray for perineal douche.

The stream should not be a jet, but a spray douche, obtained by a rosette, as it is desired to cover a medium size surface without percussion. Since the volume of water is not large, the shower valve should be opened to act as a vent. In the case of the two unit wall control (*Fig. 72.*) the bidet is attached to the same mixer that supplies one of the douches, so that a regular vent is provided.

Fig. 72 shows a spray and douche controller of the wall type devised by the author. It consists of two instead of three units. One treatment combination, *viz.*, a hot spray simultaneous with an alternate hot and cold douche to the spine and legs it is impossible to give with this machine. If the changes in the douche temperature were made by the mixer, it would alter

the temperature of the spray, hence this treatment is impracticable without three units. Nevertheless, for all other treatments it is equally as efficient as the table control. On the other hand, it has the advantage that the operator sitting on a high stool facing the controller can keep his finger in the

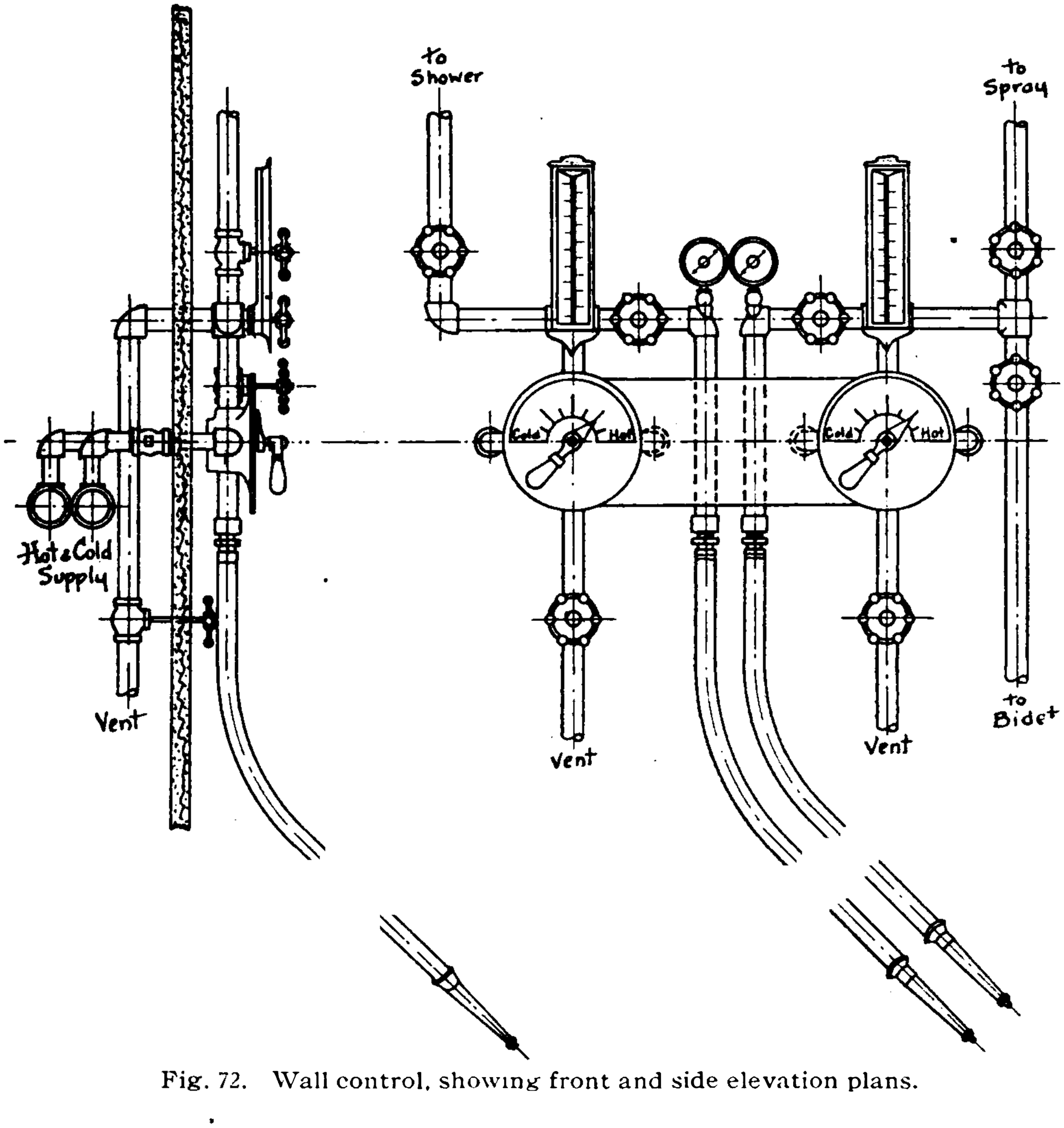


Fig. 72. Wall control, showing front and side elevation plans.

stream of water from the douche hose, and so add this element of protection to the patient in case the temperature of the water should suddenly run up while his eyes are on the patient instead of the thermometer. However, with the table control the thermometer and the patient are both in front of the operator and but a slight turn of the head or eyes is necessary to glance from one to the other.

The wall control should be supplied by independent pipes in the same way as the table control. It must also have pressure regulators, check valves, vents, etc. The thermometers, valves for douches, spray, shower, and bidet and the pressure gauges are in the same relative position as in the other type. The wall control may be fitted on an upright marble slab so that the pipes are concealed and only the valve wheels, thermometers, pressure gauges, faces of the mixers and the douche hose are visable. This makes a very presentable appearance. However, for practical purposes, the visable form made of nickeled pipe is just as good and less expensive. Having all the parts open to inspection, the mechanism is readily grasped by the learner. The thermometers should be turned so as to be read from a single observation point.

If ordinary pressure reducers, instead of automatic pressure regulators, are used to equalize the pressure on the hot and cold water supply, they should be so placed as to be readily accessible as they will need readjustment from time to time in case of large changes of pressure in the main supply. Let it be remembered that *constancy and equality of pressure* in the hot and cold water supply is the most important requisite to the satisfactory operation of any form of hydrotherapy controller.

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

saline, 443
shallow, 264, 440
shower, see sprays
sitz, 434
sun, in anemia, 268
in neurasthenia, 272
tub, 437
Turkish, 449
vapor, 448
Bath tubs, 500
Bed bath, 181, 182
Bier's hyperemia, 223
Biliary colic, 324
inflammations, 252
Biliousness, 364
Blanket packs 454
Blood, effects on composition of 100
reaction of, 108
viscosity of, 105
Blood poisoning, 230
Blood pressure, 47, 79, 89
effects of heart beat on, 89
effects of volume of fluid on, 89, 91
effects of vascular calibre and action on, 95
in Bright's disease, 351
laws of effects on, 97
Blood vessels, 41
action of, 46, 95, 286, 381
calibre of, 95, 381
capillary loops in skin, 41
effects of heat and cold on, 49
pumping action of, 97, 286, 381
in malaria, 201
reaction in, 49
Boils, 230
Bright's disease, 350
acute, 354
chronic, 356
Bronchitis, acute, 333
chronic, 335
Bronchopneumonia, 242, 493
in measles, 206
Bruises, 326
Burns, 325

Caffein, see coffee
Calorie, 20
Calorimeters, 145
Carbolic acid vaginal irrigation, 489
Carbon dioxide, effects on blood vessels, 51
influenced by heat, 128, 190
in fevers, 190
in Nauheim bath, 440
in surgical shock, see
respired by skin, 59
Carbuncles, 230
Cardiac changes in
Catarrhal jaundice, 252
Cathartics, in edema of tis, 357
Cellulitis, pelvic, 254
Centripetal friction,
Cerebral congestion,
Charcoal poultice, 418
Chest packs, 413
Chloral, on immunity,
Chloroform, on immunity
Chlorides, effect of cold
Cholangitis, 252
Cholecystitis, 252, 493
Chorea, 309 475
Circulation, 62
balance between
hydrostatic
blood pressure, 89,
blood pressure
composition of blood,
hydrostatic effects on,
in inflammations, 218
in pneumonia, 232
in surgical shock, 379
in typhoid fever, 188
quantity of fluid in, 52
effects on blood pressure
reflex effects on, 62
Clark's column, 66, 68
Clay and glycerine poultice
Coal tar products, in fever
Coffee, a cause of fever,
effects on purins, 360
Coil, cold water, 411
in typhoid, 185
hot water, 407
Leiter, 412
Cold air, in pneumonia, 234
on blood pressure, 99
Cold, effects on
antibodies, 110
ammonia, 115
blood pressure, 50, 79, 98
blood vessels, 50, 78
carbon dioxide elimination, 128
carbonaceous metabolism, 125

chlorides, 120
composition of blood, 100
extractives, 118
fever, 171
glycogen content of man, 280
heat elimination, 147, 151
heat production, 147, 150
muscular capacity, 130
nervous system in typhoid, 187
nitrogenous metabolism, 111
oxygen absorption, 128
perspiration, 57
phosphoric acid, 119
purin, 116
red cells, 101
respiratory quotient, 128, 280
skin muscles, 40
sulphates, 120
sweat glands, 57
toxin elimination in typhoid, 190
urea, 115
uric acid, 116
white cells, 101
Cold, hydrostatic effects of, 78, 81
intrinsic effects of, 29
local applications of, 397, 409
reaction to, 30
reflex effects of, 73
Cold-blooded animals, 28
Cold friction, effects on vasomotors, 50
in fever, 189
in heart disease, 288
in shock, 383
Cold plunge, 264
Cold treatments, see distinctive word in each
Colds, 333
Colic, 323
biliary, 324
intestinal, 324
renal, 324
Colitis, mucous, 256, 493
Collapse, 376
Colocyster, 480
Compresses, 404, 405, 409, 412
cold in typhoid, 184
heating, 397, 412
hot gauze, 404
joint, 416
medicated, 417
revulsive, 405
throat, 416
Conjunctivitis, 225
Constipation, 298, 475, 492
Continuous flowing bath, 301, 394, 438
Controller for sprays and douches, 503
Convection, heat loss by, 141
Coryza, acute, 333
chronic, 492
Cough, 333
in pneumonia, 238
Cravat, ice, 410
Creolin, vaginal irrigation, 489
Crile, investigations of, 376, 385
Croup, 333
Cystitis, 257, 493

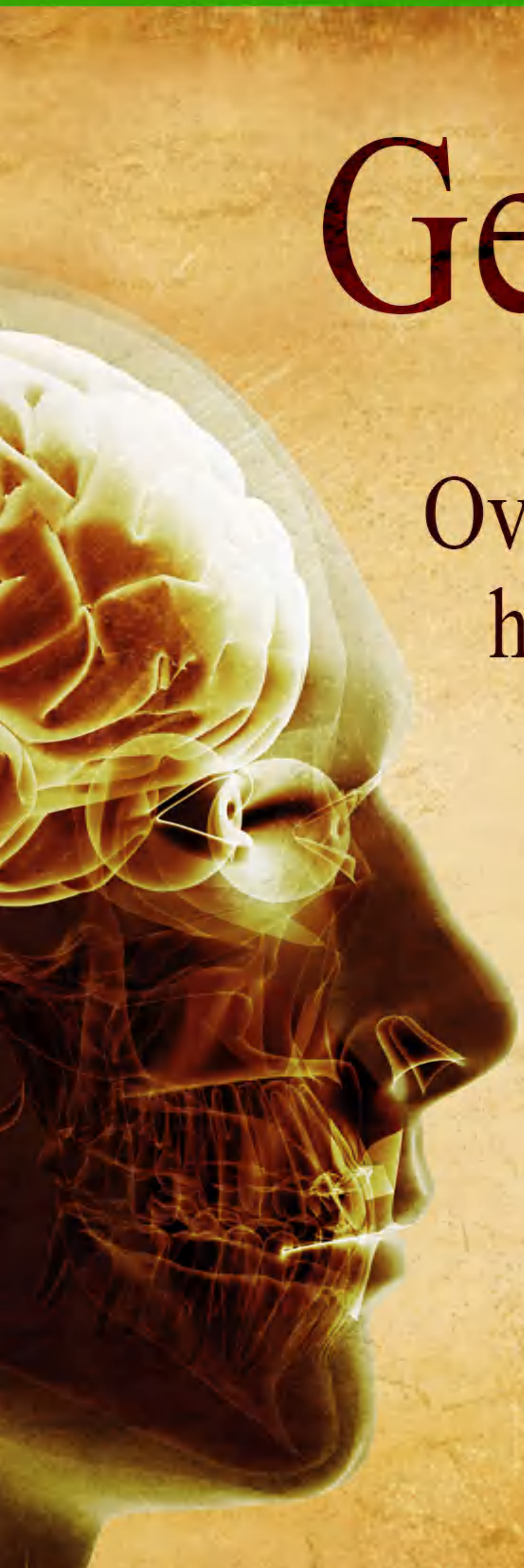
Dachryocystitis, 225
Depletion, 212
by simultaneous heat and cold, 213
by heat alone, 215
by cold alone, 215
Depressant effects, 32, 72
Derivation, 80, 212
areas for, 83
definition of, 212
Dermatomes of Head, 65
Dermographism, 37
Diabetes, 278
Dialysis, 24
Diaphoretic effects, 337
Diaphoretics, medicinal, 170, 357
Diet, in Bright's disease, 351
in diabetes, 279
in uremia and eclampsia, 361
low proteid, metabolism in 122
meat
effect on erdurance, 137
effect on liver, 359
purin-free in gout, 344
vegetable in gout, 345
Digitalis, in fevers, 118
in surgical shock, 386
Diuresis, effects of
cold bath on, 190
refrigerants on, 170
sweating on, 338
Diuretic effects, 339
Douches, 467, 471, 507
cold as a tonic, 263
vaginal, see vaginal irrigation
Dover's powder, in fever, 170
Dripping sheet rub, 263, 421
Drug habits, 394

Dryer for treatment rooms, 502
Duodenal ulcer, 319
Dysmenorrhoea, 323
Dyspepsia, 275, 364

Eclampsia, 358
Edema, absorption of, 94
  complicating heart disease, 293
  in Bright's disease, 353
  of lungs in heart disease, 294
Effects, analgesic, 304
  antiphlogistic, 212
  antipyretic, 160
  depressant, 32, 72
  derivative, 80, 212
  diaphoretic, 337
  diuretic, 339
  double, 88
  emmenagogic, 297
  excitant, 295
  expectorant, 331
  hemostatic, 370
  hydrostatic, 78
  intrinsic, 29
  metabolic, 111, 125, 278, 337, 341
  oxytocic, 297
  peptogenic, 363
  primary, 31
  principles of, 27
  reactionary, 30
  reflex, 62
    of cold, 73
    of heat, 76
  retrostatic, 80
  secondary, 31
  sedative, 72, 300
  stimulant, 72, 260, 295
  tonic, 32, 260
  vascular, 49
Effervescent bath, see Nauheim bath
Eggs in anemia, 265
Elastic tissue of skin, 40
Electric light bath, 450
Electric light cabinets, 501
Electric tub baths, 440
Electro-thermal baths, 440
  packs, 460
Emmenagogic effects, 297
Endocarditis, in scarlet fever, 209
  in rheumatic fever, 249, 494
Endometrtis, 254
Enemata, 398, 476
  asafoetida, 484
  astringent, 485
  cold, in typhoid, 185
  glycerine and Epson salts, 485
  graduated, 478
  medicated, 481
  molasses, 484
  oil, 484
  outfit for, 502
  plain water, 477
  quassia, 486
  quinin, 486
  saline, 481
  soap-suds, 483
  starch, 485
Epistaxis, 370
Erectores pilorum, 40
Ergograph experiments, 131, 272
Erysipelas, 227
Ether, method of giving, 375
  on immunity, 391
Exercise, effect on lymph movement, 53
  effect on reaction, 35
  in diabetes, 280
Expectorant effects, 331
Evaporation, effect on reaction, 36
  heat loss by, 142

Faradic tub bath, 441
Fatigue poisons, 135
Fever, 160
  causes of, 161
  circulatory failure in, 165
  heat mechanism in, 174
  hydrotherapy in, 163, 170
  manifestations of, 162
  medicinal antipyretics in, 168
  principals of treatment, 162
  rheumatic, 247
  scarlet, 206
  treatment of, 179
  typhoid, 179
  variations that produce, 175
Flexner's serum, 251
Fluxion, 216, 222
  definition of, 212
Fomentations, 400
Fomentation tank, 498
Foot baths, 431
Foot tubs, 500
Fractures, 326
Friction, 425
  cold mitten, 262, 418

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page



Get Smart

Over 2,000 years of human knowledge in 797,885 volumes

Instant access $8.99/month

Continue

*Fair usage policy applies

collateral, 213
passive, 50, 95, 219, 223
Hyperthyroidism, see goitre
Hypertonic solutions, 92, 483
Hypochlorhydria, 363, 474, 494
Hypodermoclysis, 95
Hysteria, 274

Ice bag, 411
effect of over heart, 67
in heart disease, 285
in goitre, 315
with hot packs, 459
Ice cap, see ice bag
Ice cravat, 410
Ice pack, 410
in pneumonia, 237
Ice rub, 422
in typhoid, 184
Ice water coil, 226
Icterus, 432
Immunity, 109, 164, 168, 197, 389, 391
Inebriety, 277, 396
Infections, post anesthetic, 389
see also fevers, inflammations, puerperal,
Inflammations, 212
biliary, 252
deep-seated, 318
defined, 218
of eye, 225
pelvic, 254
principles of treatment, 219
pathogenesis of, 218
superficial, 319
treatment of, 225
Influenza, 209, 492
Insanity, 394
Intestinal colic, 324
stimulants, 298
Insomnia, 277, 306, 494
Internal hydrotherapy, 24
Intrinsic effects of cold, 29
of heat, 30
time factor in, 32
Iritis, 225
Iron in anemia, 265
organic, 266
Isotonic solutions, 93
Ivy, poisoning by, 232

Jaundice, see icterus
catarrhal, 252
Joint compress, 416

Keratitis, 225
Kidneys in typhoid, 189, 191

Lactic acid as fatigue poison, 135
Latent heat, 21
Law, Berthollet's 346
Dastre-Morat, 82
Hilton's, 65
Muller's 97
of antagonism, 82
of balance between reflex and hydrostatic effects, 87
Leg bath, 432
pack, 459
Leg tubs, 500
Leucocytes, effects of alcohol on, 168, 391
anesthetics on, 391
coal tar products on, 168
cold on, 100, 189
heat on, 102, 200
quinin on, 169, 200
in fevers, 163, 164
in inflammations, 219
in malaria, 198
Leucocytosis, from cold, 100
in malaria, 198
Leucomaines, a cause of fever, 160
Leucopenia, in malaria, 200
in typhoid, 189
Light, 26
Lithium in gout, 345, 348
Liver, congestion of, 293
effects of meat diet on, 359
Locomotor ataxia, 312, 475
Lumbago, 322, 474, 494, see also rheumatism
Lymphatics, 41
absorption by, 41, 53
effects of stimulation on, 53
lymphatic hearts, 43
movements of, 44
quantitv of fluid, 53
valves of, 43
Lysol vaginal irrigation, 489

Mania, 394
Malaria, 194, 475
Maragliano, experiments of, 201
Massage, effects on blood cells, 103
effects on lymphatics, 53
in anemia, 267

in diabetes, 280
in heart disease, 287
in rheumatism, 348
Mastoiditis, 214, 228, 460, 493
Measles, 204
Meat diet, effect on liver, 359
Mechanical stimuli, 23
effects,
on blood pressure, 98
on carbon dioxide and oxygen, 129
on muscular capacity, 133
vibration, in heart disease, 288
Medicinal antipyretics, 168
Meningitis, 214, 251, 460
Menstruation in typhoid, 192
Menthol rub, 425
Mercury, specific heat of, 20
bichloride vaginal irrigation, 488
Metabolic diseases, 341
Metabolism, carbonaceous, 125
nitrogenous, 111
Migraine, 328
Mineral waters, 25
absorption of, 59
in rheumatism, 348
Mitten friction, see friction
Morphin, effect on phagocytes, 390
Morphin habit, 396
Mortality, in typhoid, 192
Mucous colitis, 256
Muscular tissue of skin, 40
capacity, 13
Myalgia, 322
Myelitis, 311
Myocarditis, 247
diphtheritic, 166

Nauheim bath, 51, 443
effect on blood pressure, 99
in heart disease, 288
Naumann, experiments of, 63
Nephritis, 350
acute, 354
chronic, 356
in scarlet fever, 208
in typhoid, 191
sweat glands in, 57
Nerves of skin, 61
secretory, 72
temperature, 61
vasomotor, distribution of, 41, 44
visceral, 72
Nervous system after cold bath, 187
Neuralgia, 215, 320
inflammatory, 321
toxic, 320
Neurasthenia, 269
splanchnic, 273, 494
Neutral bath, 437
douche, 473
electric tub bath, 440
pack, 463
shower, 469
sitz bath, 435
temperature, 38
Nitrogen economy, 113
Nitrogenous metabolism, 111
Nitroglycerin, in surgical shock, 386

Obesity, 341
with fatty heart, 295
rheumatism with, 347
Oertel method, 291
Oil enema, 484
rub, 428
Ophthalmia, 225
Osmosis, 24, 92
Osteomyelitis, 214, 217, 318
Otitis media, 227
Ovaritis, 254
Oxygen, effects of heat and cold on, 128, 190
Oxygen bath, 301, 307, 446
Oxytocic effects, 297
Ozone, on glycosuria, 281

Packs, 398, 454
blanket, 454
chest, 413
electro-thermal, 460
evaporating, 462
half-pack, 465
heating, 464, see also compresses
pelvic, 465
trunk, 465
hip and leg, 458
hot and heating trunk, 466
hot pelvic, 458
hot trunk, 457
hot, with ice bags, 459
ice, 410
leg, 459
neutral, 463

revulsive pelvic, 458
revulsive trunk, 457
sweating, 464
wet sheet, 461
in typhoid, 184
Pail pour, 263, 475
Pain, relief of, 304, 318
in pneumonia, 238
Palpitation, in heart disease, 295
Pancreatitis, subacute, 253
Paraesthesias, relief of, 305
Paralysis agitans, 310
spastic spinal, 311, 475
Passive hyperemia, 50, 95, 219, 223
Pathogenesis, of fever, 160
of inflammation, 174, 218
Pelvic, cellulitis, 254
inflammations, 254
pack, heating, 465
hot, 458
revulsive, 458
peritonitis, 254
Peptogenic effects, 363
Perforation in typhoid, 191
Pericarditis, 246
Peripheral heart, 45, 52, 286
measures which stimulate, 286
Peritonitis, 214, 460
pelvic, 254
Phagocytosis, in fevers, 163, 168
in malaria, 198
effects of anesthesia on, 389, 391
cold on, 109
drugs on, 168
morphin on, 390
Pharyngitis, 229, 493
Phases of reaction, 33
Phenacetin, in fevers, 168
Phlebitis, 256
Phosphoric acid, effect of cold on, 119
Physiologic agents, 27
effects, principles of, 27
stimulants, 260
therapy, realm of, 155
Pilocarpin, in fevers, 170
Pleurisy, 215, 244, 475, 492
complicating typhoid, 191
Plunge, cold, 264
Pneumonia, 232, 460, 475
complicating typhoid, 190
Poikilothermic animals, 28
Poisoning, ivy, 232
systemic, 342
Poultices, 397, 417
Prescription writing, 490
Properties of water, 17
Proctoclysis, Murphy method, 482
absorption of fluid, 93
in surgical collapse, 383
Prostatic hypertrophy, 493
Prostatitis, 258, 475
Proximal application, 74, 410
Psychic attitude, effect on reaction, 36
Puerperal infection, 214, 254, 460
Pulmonary congestion, 214, 333
hemorrhage, 371
Purin, diathesis, 343
a cause of fever, 161
as fatigue poison, 136, 138
effects of coffee on, 360
effect of cold on, 116
in gout, 343
Pyrexia, see fever

Quassia, enema, 486
Quinin, enema, 486
in fevers, 169
in malaria, 194, 199
in pneumonia, 239
prophylactic use of, 195, 197
protozoan immunity to, 197

Radiant heat, 408
Radiation, heat loss by, 141
Reaction, 30
ability, test of, 37
circulatory, 33, 49
conditions influencing, 35
deep reflex, 73, 76
incomplète, 34
in blood vessels, 49
in malaria, 204
nervous, 33
of short cold, 31
phases of, 33
rationale of, 31
repeated 34
suppressed, 34
thermic, 33
time factor in, 32
to heat, 32
types and degrees of, 34
Rectal injection, see enemata.
irrigation 479
tenesmus, 322

THIS PAGE IS LOCKED TO FREE MEMBERS
Purchase full membership to immediately unlock this page

SAVE $3,999,994

Did you know we sell paperback books too?

To buy our entire catalog in paperback would cost over $4,000,000

Access it all now for $8.99/month

*Fair usage policy applies

Continue

Sun baths, in anemia, 268
in neurasthenia, 272
Sunstroke, 282
Surgery, after-treatment, 389
hydrotherapy in, 373
immediate care, 375
preparatory treatment, 373
relation to physiologic therapy, 156
Surgical shock, 376
contributing causes, 377
drugs in, 385
hydrotherapy in, 383
treatment of, 382
Sweat glands, 54
in nephritis, 57
perspiratory influences, 57
vicarious functions, 56
Swedish shampoo, 452

Talcum rub, 430
Technique of hydrotherapy, 397
classification, 397
glossary of terms, 398
Temperature, common names of, 38
nerves of, 61
Tenesmus, 322
Therapeutics, 155
Therapy, basic principles of, 159
physiologic, realm of, 155
principles of, 27
Thermic stimuli, 22
Thermometers, 19
Thermotherapy, 17, 27
Throat compress, heating, 416
Tobacco blindness, 227
Tonic effects, 32, 260
frictions, 397, 418
sedatives, 303
Tonics, hydriatic vasomotor, 288
Tonsillitis, 229
in scarlet fever, 20
Tonus waves, 48
Towel rub, see rubs
Tracoma, 226
Traube-Hering waves, 46, 379
Trauma, relation to shock, 377, 388
Trunk pack, heating, 464
hot, 457
Tuberculosis, pulmonary, 275
Turkish bath, 449
shampoo, 453
Turpentine enema, 484
Tympanites, in typhoid, 192
Typhoid fever, 179
hot treatment in, 186
cold treatment of, 180

Ulcer, duodenal, 319
gastric, 319
rectal, 319
trophic, 494
varicose, 474, 494
Urea, effect of cold on, 115
in uremia, 359
Uremia, 358, 493
acute, 361
Urethritis, specific, 258, 475
Uric acid, effect of caffein on, 360
effect of cold on, 116
effect of heat on, 121
endogenous, in gout, 358
formation and destruction of, 344

Vaginal irrigation, 398, 486
Vaginitis, 258
Valvular heart disease, 283
Vapor bath, 448
Varicose ulcer, 474
Vasomotor center, 62, 66
paralysis of, in fevers, 165
in shock, 379
Vasomotor nerves, 41, 44, 62
Vasomotors, effect on blood vessels, 44, 62
failure in fevers, 165
in shock, 379
in typhoid, 188
Vasomotor tonics, in fevers, 167
in heart disease, 286
in surgical shock, 383
Veno-pressor mechanism, 380, 381
Vesical stimulants, 297
tenesmus, 322
Vibration, in heart disease, 288
Vinaj and Maggiori, experiments of, 130
Vinegar and salt rub, 424
Vinegar vaginal irrigation, 489
Viratrum viride, in fevers, 168
Vomiting, 494

Warm-blooded animals, 28
Water, expansion of, 18
mineral, 25, 345, 348

)perties of, 17
:r bottles, hot, 407
:r drinking, cold, effect on blood pressure, 98
:ct on urea excretion, 121
dysnepsia, 366
pneumonia, 239
surgery, 375, 391
hand rub, 262, 420, see rubs
sheet pack, 461, see packs
in typhoid, 184
Wet sheet rubs, 263, 421, see rubs
White cells, see leucocytes
Winternitz coil, 407
in dyspepsia, 365
in typhoid, 185
Winternitz pack, 407, 466
in dyspepsia, 365
Witchhazel rub, 425